

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions/Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

**© 2000**

The li  
copy  
may b  
the i  
signif  
check



This it  
Ce doc

10x





The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

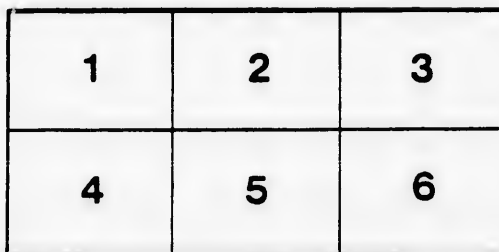
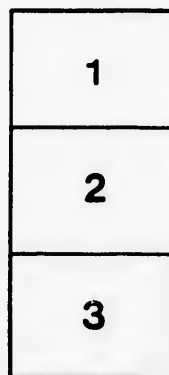
Lakehead University,  
Chancellor Paterson Library,  
Thunder Bay

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Lakehead University,  
Chancellor Paterson Library,  
Thunder Bay

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 238 - 5989 - Fax

C

A

# FIRST STEPS IN LATIN :

A

COMPLETE COURSE IN LATIN FOR  
ONE YEAR,

BASED ON

*MATERIAL DRAWN FROM CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES,  
WITH EXERCISES FOR SIGHT-READING, AND A  
COURSE OF ELEMENTARY LATIN READING.*

BY

R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.),

AUTHOR OF CRITICAL HISTORY OF CICERO'S EPISTULÆ AD FAMILIARES, HISTORY  
OF ROME, LATIN LESSONS, GREEK LESSONS, ETC.

---

Toronto :

ROSE PUBLISHING COMPANY.

400345

370.447

L53

1885



T  
co  
  
m  
of  
fr  
ti  
pr  
co  
of  
sh  
be  
on  
  
an  
m  
th  
th  
b  
b  
v  
la  
d  
o  
I  
T  
b  
h  
b  
I

## PREFACE.

---

THE aim of this book is to furnish pupils who have given little or no attention to the study of English grammar *a complete course in Latin for one year.*

The book opens with a short and easy review of English grammar. In the lessons, the changes in the forms, uses, and relations of words are explained and illustrated, so far as is practicable, from English, before introducing the Latin forms and constructions. In order to avoid or to lessen the bewilderment usually produced in the mind of the young beginner by the use of a complete Latin grammar, everything not essential to the structure of a simple sentence has, at first, been carefully excluded. In short, no effort has been spared to smooth the way for the beginner, and to prepare him for the intelligent reading of Cæsar or of any of the less difficult Latin authors.

Much care and study have been expended on the order and arrangement of the lessons, especially in the earlier part, aiming mainly at two things: First, to introduce very early in the course the simple verb-forms, which are easier than the nouns and open the way to a wide range of expression; and, secondly, to give not bare words and their inflections, but sentences *from the start*, with both questions and answers, in natural and easy succession. The vocabularies at the head of each lesson and the exercises for translation, both Latin and English, will afford abundant material for drill on the *forms*. The teacher, however, will find it an excellent oral exercise to combine these words into new sentences (both Latin and English), requiring the pupil to give the translation. The first associations with any language, especially when learned by the young, should be such as to make it as nearly as possible a living tongue; the scientific study of it should follow, not go before, some elementary knowledge of what it is in actual speech. I do not wish to be understood as advocating the neglect of syntax



or of etymology, but simply as urging that the time often given to parsing and memorizing and repeating formulas, which my experience has taught me help but little in the mastery of the language, can be much more profitably employed in the oral work just mentioned. The aim, of course, is to teach the pupil to read and write Latin; but may not this be accomplished more expeditiously and pleasantly by making the language *alive*,—by teaching pupils to *speak, write, and read Latin* as they are taught to speak, write, and read a modern language? A German university student, if the classics be his specialty, learns not only to read and write Latin, but even to speak it. If Latin is to maintain its present high place in our courses of study, it must offer something better than mere mental training or grammatical drill; it must introduce the student to the priceless treasures of art and literature which the Romans gathered from the ancient world, and which, transfusing with their own genius, they transmitted to coming ages. This work can be done in no way better than by teaching Latin as a *living language*. Is it not time that some one of our colleges or universities should offer opportunities for students to acquire a *speaking knowledge* of the Latin language?

For those who prefer the English method of pronunciation, a few simple rules have been given. The so-called Roman method, which is a very near approach to the ancient pronunciation, is now adopted by many of our leading colleges and high schools. Great pains have been taken in these lessons to teach the euphonic changes that occur in verbs in the formation of the perfect and participial stems. A thorough knowledge of the *phonetic value of the letters of the Roman alphabet* will help the student through most of these difficulties. This is quite aside from the question of pronunciation, which must, after all, be governed by the prevailing usage. The quantity of syllables, except final syllables that are short, and the final *o* of the first person present indicative of verbs, has been carefully marked, in order to secure accuracy of pronunciation; and, if a serious attempt is made to pronounce according to the Roman method, the pupil's ear should be trained to it from the start.

In enumerating the principal parts of verbs, I have ventured to deviate so far from common usage as to substitute in place of the so-called supine *the neuter of the perfect participle*. The supine in

*-um*, called by many grammarians one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs, in fact, to only about 250 Latin verbs; then, again, those verbs that are invariably intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only. This part, then, called in the dictionaries the supine in *-um*, must, in most cases, be the neuter of the perfect participle; and I have ventured, in the enumeration of the principal parts of the verb, to give it this name, and also to substitute, as Vanček and other grammarians have done, in place of *supine stem*, the more correct term *participial stem*. The retention of the *neuter* of the perfect participle, in enumerating the principal parts of the verb, instead of the masculine, is of importance from the fact just mentioned in regard to intransitive verbs, and also because it can be made to conform easily to the present usage of our dictionaries.

The words in the short vocabularies at the beginning of the lessons, as well as the examples to illustrate the rules of syntax, are mostly drawn from the first five chapters of Caesar's Gallic War. These vocabularies should be thoroughly committed to memory. The practice of selecting examples from authors of different periods and modes of expression tends, as it seems to me, rather to perplex young pupils than to give them definite ideas of the structure and formation of a Latin sentence. No effort is made in these vocabularies to teach the derivation of words; but, in the general vocabulary at the close of the book, the prefixes, stems, and endings of the words have been carefully indicated. In the chapter on the formation of words, attention is mainly confined to the formation of those words that the pupil can easily understand, and that can be made of service to him while studying these lessons.

Exercises for sight-reading have been introduced early in the course. The lesson read at sight can be assigned as the regular lesson of the next day, and made to serve as the basis for additional drill in syntax and etymology. On the third day, the pupil should be required to translate the same lesson, as a review exercise, into clear and accurate English, absolutely disregarding the literal construction of the words and sentences. These exercises will also afford ample means for practice in pronouncing Latin, which is best acquired in reading connected sentences, as is the case in a modern language. But in order to read Latin easily and

well, the oral practice, which I have mentioned, will be found a valuable and almost indispensable aid.

My aim has been to introduce the pupil, by the aid of easy examples, to the correct use of words and to the chief principles of syntax. When these examples have been studied, and the rules to be derived from them are thoroughly understood, the exercises that follow, both Latin and English, will be found sufficient to fix these principles in the memory. It is important, in fact indispensable to thoroughness, for the pupil to keep up the work of composition. If the exercises to be turned into Latin are too numerous, then a part of them can be omitted until the review; but some writing in Latin should be done every day.

The book may seem to some teachers to be too large for beginners. But I have endeavored to keep in view the needs of young pupils, and have thought it better to give too much explanation rather than not enough. Then, again, the numerous examples; the explanatory notes; the frequent illustration of Latin idioms by reference to English; the manner in which the paradigms are displayed; and the adjustment of the type, by which the pupil can learn not only the leading topics of the page, but also the relative importance of the various rules, remarks, and observations, have all necessarily added to the size of the book, but they will all, it is hoped, be found helpful to the pupil.

My acknowledgments are due to several of our best teachers, who have generously aided me by their counsel in the plan and in the numerous details of the book. The entire work, while going through the press, has received, in addition, the valuable revision and oversight of GEORGE W. COLLORD, Professor of Latin in the COLLEGIATE AND POLYTECHNIC INSTITUTE, Brooklyn; of CASKIE HARRISON, sometime Professor of Ancient Languages in the UNIVERSITY OF THE SOUTH, now one of the Principals of the BROOKLYN LATIN SCHOOL, to whom I am especially indebted for many valuable suggestions in the revision of the chapters on syntax; D. A. KENNEDY, DEARBORN-MORGAN SCHOOL, Orange, N. J.; and of Miss C. T. DAVIS, Professor of Latin in the PACKER COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

R. F. L.

BROOKLYN, N.Y.,  
September, 1885.

## CONTENTS.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
Review of English Grammar .....	1-20
INTRO- } DUCTORY } Synopsis for Review .....	20
} Origin of Latin Language .....	21
I. Alphabet; Classification of Letters .....	23-27
II. Pronunciation; Syllabication; Quantity; Accent .....	27-36
VII.-VIII. Latin Verb and Conjugation .....	36-41
IX.-X. First Conjugation .....	41-45
XI. Latin Nouns and Declension .....	46-50
XII. First Declension .....	51-53
XIII. Subject and Predicate; Agreement of Verbs and Subject- Nominative .....	53-55
XIV. Subject and Object; Direct Object .....	55-57
XV.-XVII. Second Declension; Appositive and Genitive with Nouns; Dative with Transitive Verbs .....	57-64
XVIII. Prepositions .....	64-65
XIX.-XX. Adjectives; First and Second Declension; Agreement of Adjectives .....	66-71
XXI.-XXII. First Conjugation; Active Voice; Imperative Mode; Questions; Vocative .....	71-76
XXIII.-XXXI. Third Declension; Rules of Position; Rules of Gender .....	76-97
XXXI. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, and Instrument. ....	97-99
XXXII. Subject and Copula; Predicate Noun; Predicate Adjec- tive .....	99-102
XXXIII. Indicative of <b>sum</b> ; Predicate Genitive .....	102-104
XXXIV.-XXXV. Adjectives of the Third Declension .....	105-110
XXXVI.-XXXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives; Ablative with Com- paratives; Genitive and Dative with Adjectives; Irregular and Defective Comparison .....	110-118
XXXIX. Uses of Adverbs; First Conjugation; Voices of Verbs ..	119-122
XL. Formation, Classification, and Comparison of Adverbs, 122-125	122-125
XLI. First Conjugation, <i>continued</i> .....	126-129

e found a

l of easy  
nciples of  
e rules to  
exercises  
ent to fix  
indispens-  
x of com-  
umerous,  
but some

or begin-  
of young  
planation  
ples; the  
dions by  
s are dis-  
upil can  
e relative  
ons, have  
will all, it

teachers,  
an and in  
ile going  
revision  
in in the  
f CASKIE  
s in the  
ls of the  
ebted for  
n syntax;  
e, N. J.;  
PACKER

F. L.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
XLII. Second Conjugation; Ablative of Agent .....	129-132
XLIII.-XLV. Second Conjugation, <i>continued</i> ; Stems.....	132-139
XLVI. Fourth Declension .....	140-141
XLVII. Fifth Declension.....	142-143
XLVIII.-LI. Third Conjugation; Laws of Enphony; Ablative of Accompaniment; Two Accusatives.....	144-157
LII.-LV. Fourth Conjugation; Two Accusatives of the Same Person and Thing; Subjective, Possessive, and Ob- jective Genitive; Dative with Intransitive Verbs; Accusative and Ablative of Time.....	157-167
LVI. Verbs in <i>-io</i> .....	168
LVII. Uses of the Dative: Dative of Advantage and Disad- vantage, Dative of Possessor, Dative of Apparent Agent, Dative of Reference, and Dative of Purpose or End .....	169-171
LVIII. Prepositions; Dative with Compounds .....	171-174
LIX. Classes of Conjunctions.....	175-177
LX. Genitives in <i>-ius</i> ; Imperative Mode, Active Voice....	177-180
LXI. Numerals; Accusative of Time and Space; Ablative of Difference .....	180-185
LXII. Imperative Passive of the Four Conjugations; Place Where .....	186-189
LXIII. Classification of Sentences; Analysis of Simple Sen- tences.....	189-192
LXIV.-LXIX. Pronouns: Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demon- strative; Partitive Genitive; Determinatives; Rela- tives; Agreement of Relatives, Interrogatives, and Indefinites.....	192-209
: LXX. Uses of the Ablative: Ablative Proper; Instrumental Ablative; Locative; Separation, Cause, etc.; Perfect Participles denoting <i>parentage</i> , etc. ....	209-211
LXXI. Reading Latin as Sight .....	211-212
LXXII. Infinitive Mode; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	213-216
LXXIII. Infinitive and Subject-Accusative; Complementary In- finitive; Exercises for Sight-Reading.....	216-219
LXXIV. Participles; Ablative Absolute; Exercises for Sight- Reading.....	219-225
LXXV. Gerund and Gerundive; Exercises for Sight-Reading ..	225-230
LXXVI. Inflection and Syntax of Supines; Exercises for Sight- Reading.....	231-233

PAGES.
...129-132
...132-139
...140-141
...142-143
e of
...144-157
ame
Ob-
rbs;
...157-167
... 168
sad-
rent
ose
...169-171
...171-174
...175-177
...177-180
tive
...180-185
lace
...186-189
Sen-
...189-192
non-
ela-
and
...192-209
ntal
fect
...209-211
...211-212
...213-216
In-
...216-219
ght-
...219-225
g. 225-230
ght-
...231-233

LESSONS.	PAGES.
LXXVII. Locative : Names of Places ; Place from which ; Place in which, etc. ....	234-239
LXXVIII.-LXXXIII. Subjunctive Mode ; Subjunctive of <b>sum</b> ; Dative of Possessor ; Subjunctive of <b>āmo</b> .....	239-250
LXXXII. Subjunctive in Independent Sentences : Optative, Hortatory Deliberative, Potential, Concessive .....	248-250
LXXXIII.-LXXXIV. Deponent Verbs of First Conjugation ; Ablative with Deponents .....	250-255
LXXXIV. Deponent Verbs of the Four Conjugations ; Semi-Deponents .....	253-256
LXXXV. Periphrastic Conjugations ; Dative of Agent .....	256-259
LXXXVI. Table of the Four Conjugations .....	259-268
LXXXVII. Genitive and Ablative of Quality ; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	268-270
LXXXVIII.-XCIII. Irregular Verbs : <b>possum</b> , <b>prōsum</b> ; <b>vōlo</b> , <b>nōlo</b> , <b>mālo</b> ; <b>fēro</b> ; Ablative of Specification ; Ablative of Difference ; <b>eo</b> ; <b>ēdo</b> ; Ablative and Genitive of Price ; <b>fiō</b> .....	270-285
XCIII. Defective Verbs ; Instrumental Ablative ; Ablative of Measure ; Ablative of Distance ; Ablative of Material ; <b>ōpus</b> and <b>ūsus</b> ; <b>praeditus</b> ; Ablative of Manner ; Ablative of Accompaniment ; Ablative of Characteristic ; Tabular View of the Uses of the Ablative .....	285-290
XCIV. Impersonal Verbs ; Genitive with Verbs .....	291-296
XCv. Classification of Dependent Clauses ; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	296-299
XCvI. Tenses in Dependent Clauses, Primary and Secondary ; Sequence in Consecutive Clauses ( <b>322</b> . Obs.) ; after Perfect Infinitive ( <b>350</b> . 2) .....	299-305
XCvII. Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses :	
1. Final Clauses ; Object Clauses ; Verbs of <i>Hindering</i> , Verbs of <i>Fearing</i> , etc. ....	306-309
2. Consecutive Clauses and their Uses ; Exception in the Sequence of Tenses (see <b>322</b> . Obs.) ; Relative Clauses of Result .....	309-314
3. Conditional Sentences and their Classification ; Rules for Sequence of Tenses not Applicable ( <b>319</b> . Obs.) ; Uses of <b>dum</b> , <b>mōdo</b> , and <b>dummōdo</b> in Conditional Clauses ; Disguised Conditions .....	314-320

LESSONS.	PAGES.
4. Comparative Clauses with Indicative and Subjunctive, <i>dōnec, quoad</i> ; Subsequent Action with <i>antēquam</i> and <i>priusquam</i> ; Construction of <i>cum</i> : (1) <i>cum inversum</i> , (2) Iterative use of <i>cum</i> , (3) <i>cum</i> Historical, (4) Causal and Concessive <i>cum</i> . . . . .	320-321 321-323 323-325 325-332
8. Substantive Clauses and their Classification . . . . .	333-337
9. Interrogative Clauses: Rhetorical Questions, Direct Questions, Double Questions, Indirect Questions, Dependent Double Questions, Questions and Answers, . . . . .	337-341
XCVIII. Indirect Discourse; Infinitive in Indirect Discourse; Tenses in Indirect Discourse; Sequence of Tenses after other Modes; Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or a Participle; Reflexive Pronouns; Pronouns in Indirect Discourse; Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse; Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse; Imperative Sentences in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	342-355
XCIX. Relative Clauses: Simple Relative Clauses; Relative Clauses introducing <i>purpose, result, condition, cause, concession</i> ; Indefinite Relative; Relative Clauses in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	355-358
Intermediate (or Parenthetic) Clauses; Attraction of Mode . . . . .	358-359
Partial Indirect Discourse . . . . .	359-362
—	
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES . . . . .	363-369
SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	370-381
FABLES . . . . .	382-383
LIFE OF CÆSAR . . . . .	383-388
THE HELVETIAN WAR, FROM "WOODFORD'S EPITOME OF CÆSAR," . . . . .	388-397
NOTES . . . . .	398-418
SKETCH OF CÆSAR'S LIFE . . . . .	402-406
INDEX . . . . .	419-431
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	1-57
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	58-76





1. A Noun is the name of anything, as, a person, place, or thing; as, *boy, house, man, tree, city.*
2. A Pronoun is a word used for a noun; as, —  
*Can you tell me who wrote the line?*

Obs. We have stated that the words of our language may be divided into eight classes, or parts, of speech. When we examine these parts of speech, we shall soon find it necessary to divide some of the classes into other classes. For example, the word *city* may mean any city, *i.e.* it is a name *common* to the whole class; while the word *Boston* is a *proper*, or *particular*, name of an individual of this class. We may, therefore, subdivide nouns into *common* and *proper*. If we notice the use of nouns further, we shall see that they undergo certain changes in *form, meaning, and use*; for example, *the tree grows, and the trees grow*. Here we notice the word *tree* changes its *form* by assuming *s*; this change, or modification, in the form and meaning of the noun, *tree*, is called NUMBER. The word *tree*, denoting one, is in the *singular number*; and the word *trees*, denoting more than one, is in the *plural number*. Let us now examine the following words: —

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The <i>lion</i> is strong.        | 5. We praise the <i>author</i> .        |
| 2. The <i>lioness</i> is strong.     | 6. I, the <i>author</i> , have written. |
| 3. The <i>author</i> writes.         | 7. <i>Author</i> , hear thou.           |
| 4. The <i>author's</i> book is read. | 8. We call the <i>author</i> .          |

Obs. In Ex. 1 the pupil will notice that the word *lion* denotes a *male*, in Ex. 2 this word has been changed, or modified, in *form*, and now denotes a *female*. This modification of the noun to denote *sex* is called GENDER. There are three genders, — *masculine, feminine, and neuter*.

The changes that we have noted so far, affect the *meaning* of the noun; there are two other changes of nouns seen in Exs. 3–8, which affect the *uses and relations* of the words. In Ex. 3 the author is represented as doing an act, *viz., writing*; in Ex. 4, as *possessing a book*; and in Ex. 5, as *receiving* an action. These *uses* of nouns are called CASES. The use of the noun in Ex. 3, as subject, is called NOMINATIVE CASE; its use in Ex. 4, to denote possession, is called POSSESSIVE CASE; its use in Exs. 5 and 8, as object, is called OBJECTIVE CASE. The possessive is the only case of the noun that is indicated by a change in form.

In Exs. 6–8 the word *author* has three different uses. In Ex. 6 it denotes the *speaker*, in Ex. 7 the person *spoken to*, and in Exs. 5 and 8 the person *spoken of*. This change in the use of nouns is called PERSON. There are three persons, — the *first person*, as in

Ex. 6; the *second person*, denoting the one spoken to, as in Ex. 7; and the *third person*, denoting the one spoken of, as in Ex. 8.

## MODIFICATION.

*These changes in the form, meaning, and use of words, are called MODIFICATIONS.*

**Nouns.**

**3. A Noun, or Substantive, is the name of anything, as, a person, place, or thing; as, *man, book, Boston.***

1. A Proper Noun is the particular name of a person or place; as, *Brooklyn, Cicero.*

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all members of a class of objects; as, *city, river.*

Obs. There are two classes of common nouns, *collective* and *abstract*, that it may be well for the pupil to note:—

1. A collective noun is the name of a multitude of objects taken as a whole; as, *army, crowd, mob, legion, jury, multitude.*

2. An abstract noun is the name of a quality considered as taken away, or *abstracted*, from the object to which it belongs; as, *beauty, virtue, prudence, mildness.*

**4. Nouns are modified to express Number, Gender, Person, and Case.**

## NUMBER.

1. There are two Numbers: the *singular*, which denotes one thing; as, *man, boy.*

2. The *plural*, which denotes more than one; as, *men, boys.*

## GENDER.

3. There are three Genders: the *masculine*, which denotes the male sex; as, *lion, man.*

4. The *feminine*, which denotes the female sex; as, *lioness, woman.*

5. The *neuter*, which denotes neither male nor female; as, *book.*

## PERSON.

6. There are three Persons:

(1) The *first person*, which denotes the one speaking; as,

*We Americans hurry too much.*

- (2) The *second person*, which denotes the one spoken to ; as,  
*John*, bring me the book.
- (3) The *third person*, which denotes the one spoken of ; as,  
 The *boy* has gone to school.

## CASE.

7. Case is the modification of a noun or pronoun to show its relation to other words. There are four cases : —

(1) The Nominative, which usually denotes the subject, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* ; as,

*John* speaks.

(2) The Possessive, which denotes possession, and answers the question *whose?* ; as,

*John's* book. *Boys'* slates.

(3) The Objective, which denotes the relation of the direct object, or of a preposition ; as,

The man strikes the *boy*.

His wealth was gained by *industry*.

(4) The Independent, or Case Absolute, which denotes that the noun or pronoun has no dependence on any other word. Its most common uses are —

a. As the case of address ; as,

The fault, *dear Brutus*, is not in our stars, but in ourselves.

b. With a participle, forming a contracted clause ; as,

*The sun having risen*, we departed on our journey ;  
*i.e.* = *when the sun had risen*, etc.

c. By pleonasm, as when a noun introduces the subject of a remark, and then is left independent of the rest of the sentence ; as,

The Pilgrim *fathers*, where are they ?

*Pronouns.*

**5.** A pronoun (Lat. *pro*, *for*, and *nomen*, *name*) is a word used for a noun; as, *he*, *they*.

1. A Personal Pronoun is one that denotes by its form the speaker, the one spoken to, or the one spoken of. The first person, as *I*, *we*, is the speaker; the second person, *thou*, *you*, is the one spoken to; the third person, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, is that spoken of.

2. A Relative Pronoun is one that relates to some preceding word or words, called the *antecedent*, and connects clauses; as, *who*, *which*, *that*.

3. An Interrogative Pronoun is used to ask questions; as, *Who* is that? *Which* book have you? *What* man is that?

4. An Adjective Pronoun is one that may be used both as an adjective or as a noun; as, *this*, *that*, *each*, *all*.

*Adjectives.*

Obs. The noun does not always stand alone; other words may be added to it to explain or modify it; as, *swift messengers* come. Here the word *swift* names some quality possessed by messengers, and is said to *modify* messengers. It is called an *adjective* (Lat. *ad*, *to*, and *jacere*, *to throw*).

**6.** An adjective is a word used to modify a noun or pronoun; as, *dear friend*, *red book*, *they all remained*.

1. The modification of the adjective to show different degrees of quality is called *comparison*. There are three degrees of comparison:—

*a.* The Positive, which expresses the simple quality; as, *dear*, *good*, *bad*.

*b.* The Comparative, which expresses a greater or less degree of the quality; as, *dearer*, *better*, *worse*.

*c.* The Superlative, which expresses the greatest or least degree of the quality; as, *dearest*, *best*, *worst*.

2. Adjectives are compared in three ways: (1) Regularly, *i.e.* by adding *-er* to the positive to form the comparative, and *-est* to the positive to form the superlative; as, *high*, *higher*, *highest*. (2) By use of the adverbs *more* and *most*, or *less* and *least*, with the positive of adjectives of more than two

syllables ; as, *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.* (3)  
Irregularly ; as, *good, better, best.*

Obs. The adjectives *a, an,* and *the* are usually called Articles.

### EXERCISES.

Mention the parts of speech and the cases of the nouns and pronouns in the following sentences :—

1. Birds fly.
2. The lion was caged.
3. The industrious boy was praised.
4. These industrious boys are praised.
5. The river flows rapidly.
6. The boy's slate is on the desk.
7. The boys are in school.
8. She plays very nicely.
9. He writes more rapidly than I do.
10. The gate of the palace opens.
11. The house that you saw is sold.
12. Tell me what you did.
13. This is the man who called on you.
14. There is no terror, Cassius, in your threats.
15. The treaty being concluded, the council was dissolved.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Write a common noun. Write the plural of this noun. Write the possessive singular and plural. Write the singular of six nouns ; the plural of the same. Make a rule for forming the plural of nouns. Write the possessive case of each noun. Make a rule for forming the possessive case. Write the possessive plural. Write a pronoun. What is a pronoun ? Show how pronouns are used. Write all the personal pronouns. Write a noun and prefix an adjective ; compare this adjective. In how many ways may adjectives be compared ? What class of adjectives are usually compared by *more* and *most* ?

## LESSON II.

### PARTS OF SPEECH IN ENGLISH.

#### VERBS AND THEIR MODIFICATIONS.

Obs. If we say *the boy strikes*, the word *strikes* expresses the act done by the boy, — or is, as it is called, a VERB. Some other word, however, is necessary in order to complete the meaning ; adding the word *book*, we have *the boy strikes the book*, the book being the object that receives the action, which passes over from

*beautiful.* (3)

called Articles.

s of the nouns

The industrious  
ys are praised.

slate is on the  
ays very nicely.

The gate of the  
sold. 12. Tell

called on you.  
eats. 15. The

ved.

noun. Write the

f six nouns; the

plural of nouns.

for forming the

pronoun. What

all the personal

compare this adject-

ed? What class

LISH.

NS.

s expresses the

b. Some other

the meaning;

book, the book

passes over from

the doer. Verbs that represent the action as passing over from the *subject*, or doer of the action, to the *object*, or receiver of the action, are called **TRANSITIVE VERBS** (Lat. **trans**, *across*, and **eo**, *go*). In the sentence, *the boy sleeps*, the action does not pass over to an object; but the verb *sleeps* expresses only being or state, and is called an **INTRANSITIVE VERB**.

*The boy called his companion.* Here *called* represents the action as having taken place in past time; and, as *tense* means *time*, the verb is said to be in past time, or *past tense*. Notice further that the past tense of *called* is formed by adding *-ed* to *call*. All verbs that form their past tense (and perfect participle) in this way are called **REGULAR VERBS** (Lat. **regula**, *rule*, these parts being formed according to a uniform *rule*).

**7.** A verb is a word that asserts action, being, or state of being; as, *sleep, am, strike.*

**8.** Verbs are classified, according to their meaning, as—

1. Transitive Verbs, which require an object; as,

*The man strikes the table.*

2. Intransitive Verbs, which do not require an object; as,

*The horse runs.*

**9.** Verbs are classified, according to their form, as regular and irregular.

1. A Regular Verb is one that forms its past tense and past participle by adding *-d* or *-ed* to the present; as, *love, loved, loved.*

2. An Irregular Verb is one that does not form its past tense and past participle by adding *-d* or *-ed* to the present; as, *teach, taught, taught.*

**10.** Some verbs are found only in the third person singular. They have no personal subject, and are therefore called Impersonal Verbs; as, *it rains.*

**11.** Defective Verbs want certain parts; as, *can, ought, shall.*

**12.** An Auxiliary Verb (Lat. **auxilium**, *aid*) is one used to aid in the conjugation of other verbs; as *shall* in the sentence,

*The man shall tell his story.*

**Modifications of Verbs.****MODE.**

Obs. 1. When I say *the man strikes*, I assert striking as a *fact*. *The man may strike*: in this sentence I do not assert the action as a *fact*, but as *possible*. Again, *if the man strike, he will be sorry*: I now assert the action, not as an actual fact, but as a *condition* of the man's being sorry. I can also say, *man, strike!* but I do not assert that the man does actually strike, but simply *command* him to strike. The action expressed by the verb *strike* has been asserted in *four* different ways, or *modes*. The first is called the **INDICATIVE MODE**; the second, the **POTENTIAL MODE**; the third, the **SUBJUNCTIVE MODE**; the fourth, the **IMPERATIVE MODE**. There is another form of the verb, which expresses action, but cannot *assert* it of a subject; as, *he wishes to strike*. *To strike* expresses the action in a general way, without confining or limiting it to a subject; it is, therefore, called the **INFINITIVE MODE**, *i.e.* *without limit, unlimited*.

**VOICE.**

Obs. 2. *The man struck the boy*. In this sentence the verb *struck* shows that the subject, *man*, is the *actor*; if we change the sentence, still expressing the same idea, to *the boy was struck by the man*, then the verb, *was struck*, shows that the subject is no longer the *actor*, but is acted upon, or receives the action. This change in the form of the verb is called **VOICE**. The first form is called **ACTIVE VOICE**; and the second, the **PASSIVE VOICE**.

**13.** Verbs are modified to express voice, mode, tense, number, and person.

1. Voice is that modification of a *transitive verb* which shows whether the subject acts or is acted upon. There are two voices:—

a. The **Active Voice**, which shows that the subject does the action; as,

*The man strikes.*

b. The **Passive Voice**, which shows that the subject suffers the action; as,

*The man is struck.*

2. Mode (Lat. **modus**, *manner*) denotes the manner of asserting the action or being. There are five modes:—

a. The **Indicative**, which asserts the action (or being) as a fact, or inquires after a fact; as,

*He came. Did he come?*

b. The Potential, which asserts power, possibility, or necessity of the action or being; as,

*He may come. He must come.*

c. The Subjunctive, which asserts the action or being as a mere condition, supposition, uncertainty, or wish; as,

*If you had come, this would not have happened.*

Obs. The Subjunctive mode has but few forms now in common use, in which it differs from the forms of the Indicative and Potential; as,

*If I were in your place. If he be loved. If he love.*

d. The Imperative, which asserts the action or being as a command or entreaty; as,

*Come thou.*

e. The Infinitive (*infinitivus, unlimited*), which expresses the action or being in a general way, without asserting it of any person or thing; as,

*He wishes to go.*

That is, it is *unlimited* (hence its name) as to number and person. The verb in the other modes is called *finite*, that is, *limited* in number and person. *He wishes to go. To go* does duty here as a verb, expressing action, and as a *verbal noun*, the object of *wishes*

## TENSE.

Obs. In the sentences *I strike, I struck, I shall strike*, the mode, or manner, of asserting the action is the same, but the time is different. *I strike* expresses the action as present; *I struck*, as past; and *I shall strike*, as future. The first form is called PRESENT TIME, or PRESENT TENSE, as *tense* means *time*; the second, the PAST TENSE; the third, the FUTURE TENSE. There are also three other forms of the verb, asserting the action as completed in the present, the past, or the future: (1) *I have struck*; (2) *I had struck*; (3) *I shall have struck*. The first, *have struck*, represents the action as completed at the present time, and is called the PERFECT TENSE, or the PRESENT PERFECT; the second, *had struck*, represents the action as completed in past time, and is called the PLUPERFECT TENSE, or PAST PERFECT; the third, *shall have struck*, represents the action as to be completed before some other future action, and is called the FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.



3. Tense expresses the time of the action or being; the time may be *present*, *past*, or *future*. There are seven tenses:—

a. The Present expresses action or being as present; as,

He *runs*.

b. The Imperfect expresses action or being as going on in past time; as,

He *was running*.

c. The Future expresses action or being as yet to come; as,

He *will run*.

d. The Perfect expresses action or being as completed in present time; as,

He *has run*.

e. The Past Tense (aorist, or historical perfect) expresses action or being as ended in past time; as,

He *ran*.

f. The Pluperfect expresses action as ended before some other past action or being; as,

He *had run*.

g. The Future Perfect expresses action or being to be completed before some other future action; as,

He *shall have run*.

#### PERSON.

If we change the subject in the first sentence to *thou*, or to *he*, we must then change the verb *strike* to *strikest*, or to *strikes*. These changes are made for the sake of *agreement* between the subject and the verb,—the verb ending in *-est* agrees with *thou* in the second person, and the verb ending in *-s* agrees with *he* in the third person. Both of these subjects are singular number; if the subject is plural, the verb must be plural; as, *the men strike*. Hence, verbs agree with their subjects in *number* and *person*.

4. Number and Person of a verb are those modifications which show its agreement with the number and person of the subject; as,

The *boy runs*.    The *boys run*.

## PARTICIPLES.

Obs. In the sentence *the sun rising causes the day*, the word *rising*, while not directly asserting the action of *rising* of the sun, still assumes such an action; *causes* directly asserts the action. We may also say, *the rising sun causes the day*, but here *rising* has become an adjective, modifying *sun*. Hence, the participle may be defined as *that form of the verb which partakes of the nature of an adjective, and expresses the action as assumed.*

**14.** The Participle is a form of the verb that partakes of the nature of the verb and adjective. There are three participles:—

1. The Present, which represents the action or being as going on at the time denoted by the verb; as,

The river, *flowing* from the mountains, waters the plain.

2. The Past, which represents the action or being as completed at the time denoted by the verb; as,

The soldier, *covered* with wounds, fell.

3. The Perfect, which represents the action or being as completed previous to the time denoted by the verb; as,

*Having climbed* to the top of the hill, we saw the beautiful landscape.

## EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, and voice, of each of the following verbs:—

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. They sing.              | 13. They are chosen.          |
| 2. They have sung.         | 14. They were ruled.          |
| 3. I do fight.             | 15. He has been struck.       |
| 4. I have sung.            | 16. We are blamed.            |
| 5. They were calling.      | 17. You were being praised.   |
| 6. They will call.         | 18. You will be blamed.       |
| 7. They had called.        | 19. The boy is called.        |
| 8. They called.            | 20. The girl has been called. |
| 9. They have called.       | 21. The king was wounded.     |
| 10. They are calling.      | 22. They will be punished.    |
| 11. They had fought.       | 23. They had been punished.   |
| 12. They will have fought. | 24. He has been praised.      |

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a verb? Write a sentence containing a transitive verb. How are verbs classified? Mention the modifications of verbs. Write a verb in the indicative mode. What is a participle? Define the word. How many modes are there? How many tenses? Define tense.

## LESSON III.

## PARTS OF SPEECH IN ENGLISH.

## ADVERBS.—PREPOSITIONS.—CONJUNCTIONS.—INTERJECTIONS.

*Adverbs.*

Obs. A noun and a verb are both necessary in order to form a sentence. We have learned that modifying words are often added to nouns to explain or to express the idea more clearly. Words are often added to the verb for the same purpose. If we say, *the boy reads*, we express the fact in a general way; but, if we wish to speak of the *manner* of reading, then we say, *the boy reads badly*, adding the word *badly*; if, of the *time*, we add the word *now*: *the boy reads now*; of the *place*, we add the word *here*: *the boy reads here*. We may join words to these modifiers, and say, *the boy reads very badly*, that is, *very* modifies *badly*; we may join a word to an adjective, as, that book is *very good*. These words that we join with *verbs, adjectives, or adverbs*, to modify their meaning, are called ADVERBS (Lat. *ad*, *to*, and *verbum*, a word, or verb).

15. An Adverb is a word used to modify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs; as, *he speaks plainly*; *it is remarkably cold weather*; *he strikes very hard*.

## COMPARISON.

1. Adverbs are compared in the same way as adjectives; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sweetly	more sweetly	most sweetly
soon	sooner	soonest
well	better	best

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

2. Adverbs may express *time, place, manner, cause, or degree.*

*a.* Adverbs of Time answer the question, *when?*; as, *lately, yesterday.*

*b.* Adverbs of Place answer the question, *where?*; as, *there, here.*

*c.* Adverbs of Manner answer the question, *in what way?*; as, *excellently, well.*

*d.* Adverbs of Cause answer the question, *why?*; as, *why.*

*e.* Adverbs of Degree answer the question, *in what degree?*; as, *too, very.*

**Prepositions.**

Obs. Adverbs modify verbs, as, *the horse stands there*; but we may wish to express the idea with more distinctness than is possible even with the use of an adverb, as, *the horse stands in his stall.* These words, *in his stall*, standing for the adverb *there*, are called a *phrase*, and the word *in*, that shows the relation between *stands* and *stall*, is called a **PREPOSITION**.

**16.** A Preposition (Lat. *prae, before*, and *pono, place*) shows the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word; as, *he came to town; to die for one's country.*

**Conjunctions.**

Obs. In the sentence *John and James read*, the two words, *John* and *James*, are united by the word *and*. In the sentence *a brave and prudent man acts discretely*; here the two adjectives are connected by *and*. Again, in the sentence *the man works in summer and in winter*; here the two phrases, *in summer* and *in winter*, are connected by *and*. *The earth is round, and no one doubts it*, is composed of two sentences, or *clauses*, connected by *and*. The words that connect other words or sentences are called **CONJUNCTIONS** (Lat. *con, together*, and *jungo, join*).

**17.** A Conjunction is a word used to connect words, phrases, or clauses.

Conjunctions are—

*a.* Co-ordinate, when they connect words, phrases, or clauses of the same rank; as, *and, but, or, nor.*

*b.* Subordinate, when they connect clauses of different rank; as, *if, because, when.*

### *Interjections.*

18. An Interjection is a word used to express sudden emotion or feeling; as, *alas! Oh!*

### EXERCISES.

Mention the parts of speech in the following sentences:—

1. This book was given to me. 2. These birds fly very swiftly. 3. The child likes to play. 4. The brave soldiers fell in battle. 5. We saw a beautiful landscape. 6. The gallant soldier fell, covered with wounds. 7. I saw the sun sinking behind the hills. 8. The Delta of the Mississippi was once at St. Louis. 9. They made Victoria queen. 10. Alas! how many changes have occurred. 11. Mary and Elizabeth lived and reigned in England. 12. Give me the book. 13. If he give me the book, I shall rejoice. 14. If I were in your place, I would go.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a preposition? What is a phrase? Write a sentence containing an adverb; expand this into a phrase. Write two nouns connected by *and*; by *but*. In the sentence, *the earth is round, and no one doubts it*, **and** is a co-ordinate conjunction; but in the sentence, *the sea, when it had spent its fury, became calm*, **when** is a subordinate conjunction.



## LESSON IV.

### FORMS OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

19. The conjugation of the English verb in Latin form, *i.e.* the names of the tenses are those used in conjugating a Latin verb, is as follows:—

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Indicative Mode.</i>	
<p style="text-align: center;">PRESENT TENSE.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I love. 2. Thou lovest. 3. He, she, or it loves.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We love. 2. Ye or you love. 3. They love.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Progressive Form.</i></p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I am loving. 2. Thou art loving. 3. He, she, or it is loving.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We are loving. 2. Ye or you are loving. 3. They are loving.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Emphatic Form.</i></p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I do love. 2. Thou dost love. 3. He, she, or it does love.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We do love. 2. Ye or you do love. 3. They do love.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">PERFECT TENSE.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I have loved. 2. Thou hast loved. 3. He, she, or it has loved.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We have loved. 2. Ye or you have loved. 3. They have loved.</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: center;">AORIST.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I loved. 2. Thou lovedst. 3. He, she, or it loved.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We loved. 2. Ye or you loved. 3. They loved.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Emphatic Form.</i></p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I did love. 2. Thou didst love. 3. He, she, or it did love.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We did love. 2. Ye or you did love. 3. They did love.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">IMPERFECT TENSE.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I was loving. 2. Thou wast loving. 3. He, she, or it was loving.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We were loving. 2. Ye or you were loving. 3. They were loving.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">PLUPERFECT TENSE.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I had loved. 2. Thou hadst loved. 3. He, she, or it had loved.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We had loved. 2. Ye or you had loved. 3. They had loved.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">FUTURE TENSE.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall love. 2. Thou wilt love. 3. He, she, or it will love.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall love. 2. Ye or you will love. 3. They will love.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.</p> <p><i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall have loved. 2. Thou wilt have loved. 3. He, she, it will have loved.</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall have loved. 2. Ye or you will have loved. 3. They will have loved.</p>

<i>Imperative Mode.</i>	
PRESENT TENSE.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. — 2. Love (you or thou). 3. —	<i>Plur.</i> 1. — 2. Love (ye). 3. —
<i>Infinitive Mode.</i>	
PRESENT TENSE, To love.	PERFECT TENSE, To have loved.
<i>Participles.</i>	
PRESENT, Loving.	PAST, Loved.      PAST PERFECT, Having loved.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Indicative Mode.</i>	
PRESENT TENSE.	FUTURE TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I am being loved. 2. Thou art being loved. 3. He, she, or it is being loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We are being loved. 2. Ye or you are being loved. 3. They are being loved.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall be loved. 2. Thou wilt be loved. 3. He, she, or it will be loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall be loved. 2. Ye or you will be loved. 3. They will be loved.
OR,	PERFECT TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I am loved. 2. Thou art loved. 3. He, she, or it is loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We are loved. 2. Ye or you are loved. 3. They are loved.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I have 2. Thou hast 3. He, she, or it has <i>Plur.</i> 1. We have 2. Ye or you have 3. They have
	} been loved.
IMPERFECT TENSE.	HISTORICAL PERFECT.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I was 2. Thou wast 3. He, she, or it was <i>Plur.</i> 1. We were 2. Ye or you were 3. They were	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I was loved. 2. Thou wast loved. 3. He, she, or it was loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We were loved. 2. Ye or you were loved. 3. They were loved.
	} being loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.		FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I had been loved.		<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall have been loved.	
2. Thou hadst been loved.		2. Thou wilt have been loved.	
3. He, she, or it has been loved.		3. He, she, or it will have been loved.	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We had been loved.		<i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall have been loved.	
2. Ye or you had been loved.		2. Ye or you will have been loved.	
3. They had been loved.		3. They will have been loved.	
<b>Imperative Mode.</b>			
PRESENT TENSE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1. —		<i>Plur.</i> 1. —	
2. Be (you or thou) loved.		2. Be (ye or you) loved.	
3. —		3. —	
<b>Infinitive Mode.</b>			
PRES. TENSE, To be loved.		PRES. PERF. TENSE, To have been loved.	
<b>Participles.</b>			
PRESENT, Being loved.		PAST, Been loved.	
PAST PERFECT, Having been loved.			

1. Conjugation is the regular arrangement of all the forms of a verb.

NOTE. Conjugate in the same manner the verbs *hear, teach, rule, choose, run, see*.

## LESSON V.

### THE SENTENCE.

20. A Sentence is the expression of a thought in words; as, *iron melts*.

21. Every sentence has two parts:—

1. The Subject,<sup>1</sup> or that about which something is said; as,  
*Birds fly.*



2. The Predicate, or that which is said about the subject; as,  
The leaves *tremble*.

## EXAMPLES.

Subject.	Predicate.
Birds	fly.
Boys	study.
Birds	twitter.

3. The Subject is always a noun, or some word used as a noun. The subject is sometimes modified by a word, or group of words, and the combination is then called the *modified*, or *logical subject*; as,

*The cold wind* blows.

4. The Predicate is always a verb, or contains a verb. The predicate may be modified by other words, and the combination is then called the *modified*, or *logical predicate*; as,

The leaves *fall quietly*.

5. The verb may be intransitive, and then the subject and verb make complete sense, and the predicate contains nothing but the verb; as,

*Time flies*.

6. The verb may be transitive, and then an object is required to complete the sentence, and the verb and object together make up the predicate; as,

The man *strikes the table*.

7. The verb may be *copulative*,<sup>2</sup> and then a *complement* is required to complete the sentence. The verb and complement together make up the predicate; as,

The man *is old*.

8. The analysis of a sentence is the separation of it into its parts.

EXAMPLE. — *Time flies*.

Obs. This is a sentence, because it expresses a thought. *Time* is the subject, because it is that about which something is said; *flies* is the predicate, because it says something of the subject.

The following method of analysis will be found useful for young pupils. The subject is marked s.; the predicate is marked (1) v.I., *i.e.* Verb Intransitive; (2) v.T. and o., *i.e.* Verb Transitive and Object; (3) v.C. and c., *i.e.* Verb Copulative and Complement:—

s.	v.I.	
Soldiers	fight.	
s.	v.T.	o.
Cæsar	conquers the	Germans.
s.	v.C. c.	
The river	is	deep.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences:—

1. The enemy crossed the river.
2. Columbus discovered America.
3. The flowers bloom.
4. The flowers are beautiful.
5. Gold is yellow.
6. A shepherd watches sheep.
7. Study pays.
8. The boy learns his lesson.
9. The sun shines bright.
10. The lady is tall.
11. Ripe fruit is healthful.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The subject of a sentence may be found by asking *who?* or *what?* with the verb; as, *birds fly*. Who or what fly? Ans. *birds*. The predicate may be found by asking *what?* about the subject; as, *birds fly*. What about birds? Ans. *They fly*,—*fly* is the predicate.

2. *Copulative* means the same as **copula**, a link, coupler. It joins, or links, the subject with the complement; as, *snow is white*,—*snow* is the subject, *is* is the copula, and *white* the complement. There are several other copulative verbs besides *to be*; as, *become*, *seem*, *appear*. The adjective standing in the predicate is called the *predicate adjective*, and the noun is called the *predicate noun*.

Define simple sentence. Of what is a sentence composed? Define subject. What must the subject be? What is meant by copula? Classify verbs according to their meaning. Define object. What is a transitive verb?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

<b>The Noun</b>	{	<i>Uses . . . . .</i>	{ Subject. Object. Complement. Principal Word in a Phrase.
		<i>Classes . . . . .</i>	{ Common. Proper.
		<i>Modifications</i>	{ <i>Number:</i> Singular; Plural. <i>Gender:</i> Masculine; Fem.; Neuter. <i>Person:</i> First; Second; Third. <i>Case:</i> Nominative; Possessive; Objective.
<b>The Pronoun</b>	{	<i>Uses . . . . .</i>	Same as those of Nouns.
		<i>Classes . . . . .</i>	{ Personal. Relative. Interrogative. Adjective.
		<i>Modifications</i>	Same as those of Nouns.
<b>Verb . . .</b>	{	<i>Uses . . . . .</i>	Predicate.
		<i>Classes . . . . .</i>	{ <i>Form:</i> Regular; Irregular. <i>Meaning:</i> Transitive; Intransitive. <i>Voice:</i> Active; Passive.
		<i>Modifications</i>	<i>Mode:</i> Indicative (Potential); Subjunctive; Infinitive.
			<i>Tense:</i> Present; Imperfect; Future; Perfect; Aorist; Pluperfect; Future Perfect. <i>Person:</i> First; Second; Third. <i>Number:</i> Singular; Plural.
<b>Adjective</b>	{	<i>Uses . . . . .</i>	Modifier; Complement.
		<i>Modification .</i>	<i>Comparison</i> { Positive Degree. Comparative Degree. Superlative Degree.
<b>Adverb . .</b>	{	<i>Classes . . . . .</i>	Time; Place; Manner; Degree; Cause.
		<i>Modifications</i>	{ Positive Degree. Comparative Degree. Superlative Degree.
<b>Con- junctions</b>	{	<i>Classes . . . . .</i>	{ Co-ordinate. Subordinate.

## SIMPLE SENTENCE.

<b>Parts . . .</b>	{	Subject.	<b>Meaning</b> {	Declarative.
		Predicate.		Interrogative.
		Complement.		Imperative.
				Exclamatory.

## LATIN LANGUAGE.

---

*Origin of Latin.*—The Latin language was spoken at Rome and in the adjoining district, the plain of Latium, from which latter it derives its name. It is closely related to the tongues spoken by the Samnites, Sabines, and other kindred races, to which the general name of *Sabellian* has been given. These Sabellian tribes, on first entering Italy, settled along the mountain ridges, from which they descended to the plains like streams that flood and fertilize the valleys. The Latins, who settled near the Tiber, belonged to the oldest of these successive migrations; then came the Sabines, the Aequians, Hernicans, and Volscians, who at first pressed hard on the Latins, and hemmed them into the narrow plain between the Tiber and the Alban hills, but in course of time coalesced with them and formed one nation.

*How Related.*—The Latin, as well as the Greek, Sanskrit, Teutonic, Celtic, and Zend, are all sister languages, and together help to form the Indo-European family. The original language from which these sprang was spoken by the progenitors of all these peoples, who once lived together somewhere in Central Asia, and by successive migrations peopled India and Europe, whence the name *Indo-European*. The name Aryan (pronounced *är-yan*) is often applied to this parent language, and to the groups that have descended from it.

*Where Spoken.*—The conquests of the Romans caused the Latin language to spread, not only over Italy and Sicily, but over the greater part of France and Spain.

**Origin of the Romance Languages.**—With the decay of Roman power, German tribes invaded and settled the provinces where Latin had been spoken; and from the consequent intermingling of tongues the various modern languages—Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Provençal, Wallachian, and Rhaeto-Romanic (or *Romansch*)—arose. The English language, although in its origin and its most essential words a Teutonic tongue, being the successor of the Anglo-Saxon, has borrowed at different times nearly half its words directly or indirectly from the Latin.

**Golden Age of Latin.**—The earliest Latin writings that have been preserved were composed about two hundred years before Christ. The language ceased to be spoken in the sixth century of our era. The best writers, as Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, Vergil, Horace, and Livy, flourished in a period—called the Golden Age of Latin Literature—of about one hundred years immediately preceding and following the Christian era.

**Periods of Roman Literature.**—Roman literature may be divided into the following periods:—

- I. The PRE-HISTORIC PERIOD, to Livius Andronicus, B.C. 210.
- II. The ARCHAIC PERIOD, from Livius Andronicus to Cicero, B.C. 210–70.
- III. The GOLDEN AGE, B.C. 70 to A.D. 14.
  1. The *Ciceronian Period*.
  2. The *Augustan Period*.
- IV. The SILVER AGE, A.D. 14–117.
- V. The PERIOD OF POSITIVE DECLINE (*Brass and Iron Ages*), A.D. 117 to the sixth century.

# FIRST STEPS IN LATIN.

## LESSON I.

### THE ALPHABET.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *w*.

2. Letters are divided, according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance, into vowels and consonants.

3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The vowels may be long, short, or common, *i.e.* sometimes long and sometimes short. They are marked as follows:—

1. Long . . . . .	ā	ē	ī	ō	ū
2. Short . . . . .	ă	ĕ	î	ô	û
3. Common . . . . .	ã	ẽ	ĩ	õ	ũ

4. A diphthong ("double sound") is the union of two vowels in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au, eu, ei,* and *ui*; the last three occur in only a few words.

5. The consonants *p, b, t, d, c (k, q), g,* are called mutes; and *m, n* (nasals), *r, l* (liquids), *h, j, f, v* (spirants), *s* (sibilant), semi-vowels.

6. The double consonants are *x (= cs or gs)* and *z (ts or ds)*; *j* and *v* are consonant forms of *i* and *u*.

## CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.'

I. *Vowels.*

7. Vowels are produced when the vocal organs are open, so as to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound; when the vocal sound is interrupted, consonants are produced, but no sharp line separates the least open vowels from the most open consonants.

8. The vowels may be divided according to their quality into —

- |                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|
| 1. Open . . . . .   | a     |
| 2. Medial . . . . . | e o   |
| 3. Close . . . . .  | i y u |

9. The open vowel is pronounced like *a* in *father*, the mouth being fully open. Starting with this sound, and by gradually contracting the vocal organs, the medial vowels, the close vowels, and the more open consonants (like *i* or *j = y*, *v = w*) are produced; and at last the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete when the mutes are uttered.

10. *e* is a medial vowel between open *a* and close *i*; *o* is medial between open *a* and close *u*; *y* occurs in Greek words only.

OBSERVATION 1. The vowel *i* and the consonant *i* (often written *j*) were not distinguished in form by the Romans. But *i*, combined with a vowel in the same syllable, was a consonant, and was sounded like *y*; as, *mājor* (*mā-yor*). It is now usually written *j*.

Obs. 2. The vowel *u* and the consonant *u = v*, are often interchanged; as: *mōn-ūi*, *I have admonished*; *amā-vi*, *I have loved*; the ending *-ui* in *mōnui* becomes *-vi* in *amāvi*.

II. *Consonants.*

11. Consonants are divided, according to the organs of speech by which they are chiefly uttered, into —

- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. Labials (or lip-letters) . . .      | p, b, m, f, v.  |
| 2. Dentals (or teeth-letters) . . .    | t, d, n, s.     |
| 3. Linguals (or tongue-letters) . . .  | r, l.           |
| 4. Palatals (or palate-letters) . . .  | i, or j = y.    |
| 5. Gutturals (or throat-letters) . . . | c k q, g, n, h. |

12. Consonants are divided, according to the degree of breathing required in their utterance, into—

1. **Smooth** . . . . . p, t, c (k, qu).
2. **Middle** . . . . . b, d, g.
3. **Rough** . . . . . f (ph), th, ch.

13. The following table shows the consonants according to the two classifications mentioned:—

	Labials.	Dentals.	Gutturals.
Smooth mutes . . . .	p	t	c (k, qu)
Middle mutes . . . .	b	d	g
Rough mutes . . . .	f (ph), v	th	ch

14. Consonants may also be classified, according to the manner in which they are uttered; as,—

1. **Surds**<sup>2</sup> . . . . . p, t, k, c, qu.
2. **Sonants** . . . . . b, d, g.

15. The following table shows the classification of consonants:—

	Mutes.		Semi-Vowels.			
	Surds.	Sonants.	Nasals.	Liquids.	Spirants.	Sibilants.
Labial . . . .	p	b	m	...	f, v	...
Dental . . . .	t	d	n	...	...	s, z
Lingual . . . .	...	...	...	r, l	...	...
Palatal . . . .	...	...	...	...	i, or j=y	...
Guttural . . . .	c k q	g	n <sup>3</sup>	...	h	...

Obs. 1. *k* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words.

Obs. 2. *q* is used only before *u*.

EUPHONIC CHANGES.<sup>4</sup>

16. In Latin words, vowels and consonants are often changed in order to secure an easier utterance. These changes are called *euphonic changes*.



### I. Vowel Changes.

17. Vowels are in general changed in the direction from the strongest to the weakest, *i.e.* following the vowel scale on page 24, from *a* to *i* on one side, or from *a* to *u* on the other, but sometimes across from *o* to *e*. Thus:—

1. *a* changed to *i*; as, **conficio** from **con** and **facio**.
2. *i* changed to *o*; as, **virginis** and **virgo**.
3. *e* changed to *i*; as, **obsideo**, from **ob** and **sedeo**.
4. *a* changed to *e*; as, **confectum** from **con** and **factum**.
5. *o* changed to *u*; as, **corporis**<sup>5</sup> from **corpus**.

### II. Consonant Changes.

18. A guttural (*c, g, q, or h*) before *s* unites with it, forming *x*; as,—

1. **ducs** = **dux** (gen. **duc-is**).
2. **regs** = **rex** (gen. **reg-is**).
3. **coqusi** = **cocsi** = **coxi**.
4. **vehsi** = **vexi**.

19. *s* between two vowels is generally changed to *r*; as,—

1. **corpōris** from **corpus**.
2. **eram** and **ero** from stem **es-**.

20. *d* and *t* before *s* are dropped or changed to *s*; as,—

1. **pēs** for **peds** (gen. **pēdis**).
2. **possum** for **potsum**.

This change, by which two consonants become *alike*, is called *assimilation* (from **ad**, *to*, and **similis**, *like*, a change that makes a consonant *like* the following consonant). Assimilation is partial when the consonant is adapted to the following letter, but does not become identical with it; as,—

3. **scribsi** = **scripsi**.
4. **regsi** = **repsi** = **rexi**.

21. Assimilation is very common in the final consonant of prepositions compounded with other words; as,—

**affēro**, compounded of **ad** and **fēro**.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The pupil should omit the study of the classification of the letters for the present; the explanation will be found convenient for reference, and when the verb is taken up the attention of the pupil will be called to this subject as explaining most of the vowel and consonant changes.

2. The distinction between a surd and a sonant is the same as that between *p* and *b* as heard in *pad* and *bad*.

3. Before a guttural, as in *ink*.

4. See p. 183.

5. 102. 3. c.

Write the alphabet. How many letters has the Latin alphabet? How many vowels are there? Write the long vowels. Write the diphthongs. What diphthongs are seldom used?

## LESSON II.

## PRONUNCIATION.

22. The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. In the United States general usage favors one of two ways, which may be called the *Roman* (or *Phonetic*) and the *English*. Whatever method of pronunciation may be adopted, the pupil should be made thoroughly familiar with the leading features of the Roman method, which is a near approximation to the ancient pronunciation.

## ROMAN METHOD.

23. By the Roman method every letter has always the same sound. Each simple vowel is either long or short; a short vowel has the same sound as the corresponding long vowel, but occupies only half as much time in utterance.

## I. Sounds of the Vowels.

ā as in *āh*, like *a* in *father*.

ǎ as in *ǎh*, like *a* in *idea*

ē as in *prey*.

ĕ as in *met*.

ī as in *machine*.

ĭ as in *sit*.

ō as in *holy*.

ŏ as in *obey*.

ū as *oo* in *moon*.

ŭ as in *full*.

*y* has a sound between that of *i* and *u*, like the French *u*, or German *ü*.

## II. Sounds of the Diphthongs.<sup>1</sup>

ae like ay (*yes*), or ai in *aisle*.

oe like oi in *coin*.

au like ow in *how*.

eu like ew in *few*.

ei like ei in *eight*.

ui like we in *we*.

## III. Sounds of the Consonants.

c is always hard, like c in *come*.

g is always hard, like g in *gun*.

j is like y in *yet*.

s is always sharp, like s in *sea*.

t is always like t in *time*.

v is like w in *we*.

qu is like qu in *quart*.

ch has the sound of k.

th is like th in *thin*.

ph is like f.

bs and bt are like ps, pt.

gu and su, when making a syllable with the following vowel, like gw, sw.

24. The double consonants are :  $x = cs$  (*ks*),  $z = dz$ . The letters not mentioned have the same sound as in English.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce the following words : —

1. *ā'-lā*,<sup>2</sup> *wing*; *rā'-pā*, *turnip*; *fā'-mēs*, *hunger*; *rē'-mex*, *rower*; *ā-rē'-nā*, *sand*; *frē'-nā*, *bridle*. 2. *tā-bel'-lā*, *tablet*; *ī'-tēr*, *journey*; *mī-ni'ster*, *servant*; *dō'-lōr*, *pain*; *hū'-mē-rūs*, *shoulder*; *ā'-nū-lūs*, *finger ring*; *suā'-dē-ō*, *I advise*. 3. *prae-sī'-dī-ŭm*, *guard*; *nau'-tā*, *sailor*; *poe'-nā*, *punishment*; *sae'-pē*, *often*. 4. *lae-tī'-tī-ā*, *joy*; *prē'-tī-ŭm*, *price*; *pā-tī-en'-tī-ā*, *patience*; *coe'-lūm*, *heaven*; *cā'-pūt*, *head*; *ō'-eū-lūs*, *eye*; *jū'-dex*, *judge*; *vir'-go*, *maid*; *inā'-chī-nā*, *machine*; *pul'-chēr*, *beautiful*.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Diphthongs occupy twice as much time in utterance as the short vowels.

2. The words will be accented and syllabicated until the subjects of accentuation and syllabication have been explained.

How is Latin generally pronounced in this country? How is long *a* pronounced? Why is a knowledge of the Roman method important? *N* before *c*, *g*, *qu*, and *x* has the sound of *ng* in anger. What consonants have the same sound as in English? Are any letters silent?

## LESSON III.

## SYLLABICATION.

**25.** A Latin word is divided into as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

Obs. The English words *mīle*, *accurate*, *separate*, *abate*, would, as Latin words, be syllabicated as follows: **mī-le**, **ac-cu-rā'-te**, **se-pa-rā'-te**, **a-bā'-te**.

**26.** A single consonant between two vowels is joined to the second vowel.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. fā'-ber, <i>artisan.</i>  | 3. rē-gi'-na, <i>queen.</i> |
| 2. lau'-do, <i>I praise.</i> | 4. dō'-mī-nus, <i>lord.</i> |

**27.** When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first syllable, and the second to the second syllable.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. an'-nus, <i>year.</i> | 3. pen'-na, <i>feather.</i> |
| 2. bel'-lum, <i>war.</i> | 4. mit'-to, <i>I send.</i>  |

**28.** Two or more consonants not doubled between two vowels belong to the following vowel, but *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, in connection with another consonant, are joined to the preceding vowel.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. H'-brī, <i>books.</i>       | 5. am'-bō, <i>both.</i>     |
| 2. fau'-stus, <i>lucky.</i>    | 6. lin'-gua, <i>tongue.</i> |
| 3. frā'-trēs, <i>brothers.</i> | 7. an'-guis, <i>snake.</i>  |
| 4. hō'-spēs, <i>guest.</i>     | 8. ma'-gnus, <i>great.</i>  |

29. The parts of compounds are treated as separate words.

## EXAMPLES.

1. ab'-est (ab, away, est, he is), he is away.
2. in-u'-ti-lis (in, not, utilis, useful), useless.
3. ob-ī'-re (ob and ire), to go.

30. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*, or *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penultimate*, or *penult*; and the one before the penult, the *antepenultimate*, or *antepenult*.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. an-ten'-nā, sail-yard.     | 4. in-fā'-mi-ā, infamy.   |
| 2. fē-ne'-strā, window.       | 5. mā'-lā, apples.        |
| 3. im-pē-dī-men'-tā, baggage. | 6. dī-sci'-pū-lūs, pupil. |

Obs. In the foregoing words point out the *ultimate*, the *penult*, and the *antepenult*.

## EXERCISES.

Syllabicate and pronounce the following words: —

1. serī'ba, clerk; in'sūla, island; sāl, salt; rā'nā, frog; ārā'trā, plough. 2. ma'ppā, napkin; disci'pūlus, scholar; ar'mā, arms; al'tērā, another; pēs, foot; hābē'na, thong; bel'lum, war; sā'nitās, health; pā'rīēs, a wall; dō'lōr, pain; māgi'ster, master. 3. vul'uūs, wound; consuētū'dō, custom; suā'vis, sweet; hae'dūs, kid; prē'tiūm, price; scicā'trix, scar; laetī'tiā, joy; re'gnūm,<sup>1</sup> kingdom; pū'ēr, boy; injū'rīā, injury; dī'xit,<sup>2</sup> he said; mā'gnus, great; a'mnis,<sup>3</sup> river; ad'eō,<sup>4</sup> I go to; līt'tērā, letter.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The combination *gn* can begin a syllable.
2. *x* is treated in syllabication as a single consonant.
3. The combination *mn* can begin a syllable.
4. Compounded of *ad*, to, and *eō*, I go.

What is a syllable? How is the accent of a syllable determined? How can the number of syllables in Latin be found? Why does *b* belong to the first syllable in **abest**? What is the last syllable called? The last but one? Write three Latin words, and syllabicate each.

---

## LESSON IV.

### QUANTITY.

**31.** The quantity of syllables is the relative time occupied in pronouncing them. A syllable containing a long or short vowel is said to be long or short *by nature*, because the Romans so pronounced it. The quantity of such syllables must be learned by observation and practice.

#### EXAMPLES.

- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>ā'rǎ</i> , altar.       | 3. <i>rā'nǎ</i> , frog.     |
| 2. <i>proe'lium</i> , battle. | 4. <i>ǎrūtrum</i> , plough. |

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the italicized syllables contain *long vowels* or *diphthongs*, and are therefore long. The syllables not italicized contain *short vowels*, and are therefore short.

**32.** The following rules of quantity decide the length of most syllables not long or short *by nature*. A syllable is long in quantity —

1. If it contains a diphthong.
2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, or *z*, or any two consonants except a mute followed by *l* or *r*.
3. A syllable formed by contraction is long.

**33.** A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the letter *h*.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>lingua</i> , tongue.        | 5. <i>jūstus</i> , just.     |
| 2. <i>annus</i> , year.           | 6. <i>bellum</i> , war.      |
| 3. <i>arvum</i> , ploughed field. | 7. <i>dux</i> , leader.      |
| 4. <i>laudo</i> , I praise.       | 8. <i>proelium</i> , battle. |

Obs. In each of the foregoing examples the italicized vowel is followed by two consonants, or by a double consonant; the vowel may be long (as in Ex. 5) or short (as in Exs. 1, 2), but the syllable in each case is long. When a short vowel is so placed, it is said to be long *by position*. In Exs. 2, 5 the quantity of the syllable and of the vowel is the same, *i.e.* long or short. Exs. 4, 8 contain a diphthong, and are long. The *i* in *proelium* is short, according to 33.

34. A syllable may therefore be —

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Long by nature . . . . .    | as, <i>āra</i> .                    |
| 2. Short by nature . . . . .   | “ <i>rāna</i> .                     |
| 3. Long by position . . . . .  | “ <i>annus, gāza</i> . <sup>1</sup> |
| 4. Short by position . . . . . | “ <i>via, trāho</i> .               |

35. In a syllable long by position merely, the vowel is pronounced short; as, —

1. *lūx*, like *oo* in *moon*.
2. *nūx*, like *u* in *full*.

36. But *nf*, *ns*, and *j* make both the preceding vowel and syllable long.

NOTE. In the following lessons the quantity of every syllable not determined by the preceding rules will be marked as indicated in Lesson I.; excepting final syllables, which will be marked only when they are long, or until rules have been given by which their quantity may be determined. Thus, in *āra*, the absence of any mark over the final *a* indicates that it is short.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *x* and *z*, though double consonants, are treated as single consonants in syllabication.

What is meant by a vowel being short *by nature*? When is a vowel short by nature? When long? What is the difference between the length or quantity of a vowel, and the length or quantity of a syllable?

In *jūstus* the italicized vowel and syllable are both long; in *annus* the italicized syllable is long, but the vowel is short. The vowel is said to be long *by position*. Remember, then, that the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable. Is the vowel in *rex* long by nature? Is the vowel in *dux* long by nature?



## LESSON V.

### ACCENT.

**37.** Accent is a special stress of the voice placed upon a syllable in pronouncing it.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *va-ga'-ry*. 2. *in-fer'*. 3. *dis'-mal*. 4. *de-riv'-ing*.

**38.** The accent of Latin words is determined by the following rules:—

1. In words of two syllables the accent is always on the first.
2. In words of more than two syllables the penult, if long, is accented; if short, the antepenult is accented.<sup>1</sup>

#### EXAMPLES.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>an'nus</i> , year.                 | 5. <i>dē'vōro</i> , I devour.                 |
| 2. <i>stē'la</i> , star.                 | 6. <i>pō'pūlus</i> , people.                  |
| 3. <i>in'sūla</i> , <sup>2</sup> island. | 7. <i>impērā'tor</i> , commander.             |
| 4. <i>matrō'na</i> , married woman.      | 8. <i>ingē'nium</i> , <sup>2</sup> character. |

#### EXERCISES.

Spell, syllabicate, and pronounce the following words:—

1. *rēgīna*, queen; *āquīla*, eagle; *insūla*, island. 2. *dōmīnus*, lord; *bellum*, war; *annus*, year; *āmīcus*, friend.
3. *jūdex*, judge; *puērī*, boys; *virgīnēs*, maidens; *ānīmālia*, animals; *flūmen*, river; *cīvītās*, state.



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The accent, as affected by an enclitic, will be explained later.

2. Notice that the penult is short.

What is accent? Write a word with the accent on the penult. How do you accent Latin words of two syllables? Of three syllables? Is the last syllable of a Latin word ever accented? Does the *quantity* of the *syllable* or of the *vowel* determine the place of accent? (*Ans.* The quantity of the syllable; the vowel may be short, but the syllable long.) When can a short penult take the accent?

## LESSON VI.

## THE ENGLISH METHOD.

39. For those who prefer to retain the English pronunciation, the following rules are given. The pupil should notice that the long or short vowel-sounds indicated in these rules are wholly independent of the real quantity of the vowel.

1. In monosyllables the vowel has —

*a.* The long sound, if it ends the syllable; as, **si**, **me**, **spe**.

*b.* The short sound, if followed by a consonant; as, **āb**, **cum**, **hōc**, **hās**. Except **post**, monosyllables in *es*, and (in plural cases) *os*, where it has the long sound; as, **rēs**, **hōs**, **ēs**.

2. An accented penult has —

*a.* The long vowel-sound before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*), or before a vowel or diphthong; as, **pā'ter**, **lib-er-ā'tis**, **dē'us**, **sa'cra**, **pa'tris**.

*b.* The short vowel-sound before two consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*) or *x*; as, **reg'num**, **rex'i**.

3. An accented antepenult has —

*a.* The long vowel-sound before a vowel; as, **ē'adem**, **hī'e-mis**, **fū'e-rat**.

*b.* The short vowel-sound before a consonant; as, **in'su-la**, **i-tin'e-ris**.

EXCEPTIONS. (*a*) *u* before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) has the long sound: **jū've-nis**, **lū'ri-dus**, **pu'tri-dus**; but before *ll* the short sound, as in **res-pub'li-ca**.

(b) *a, e, o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by two vowels, the first of which is *e, i*, or *y*, have the long sound; as, **impe'ri-um, do'ce-o, a'cri-a.**

4. In all unaccented syllables the vowel-sound is —

*a.* Long, if followed by a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*): as **do-lo'ris**; but final syllables ending in a consonant are short, in a vowel, long; as, **con-sul** (except *es*, and in plural cases *os* at the end of the word).

*b.* Short before *x*, or any two consonants; as, **bel-lo'rum, rex-is'set.**

EXCEPTION. Final *a* is sounded as in the last syllable of *America*, as **men'sa**; and the vowel-sounds in **tibi** and **sibi** are as in the English *lily*.

NOTE. Compounds generally follow the same rules; but if the first part ends in a consonant, the vowel-sound is short: as, **ob'it, red'it, ab'e-rat, præ-ter'e-a, trans'i-tur** (except **post** and its compounds, and final syllables in *as* and *os* of plural cases: as, **post-quam, hos'ce**).

5. Diphthongs follow the same rules as the vowels which represent them in English; thus, —

*a.* *æ* and *æ* have the sound of *e*; that is, long in **caelum, a-mœ' nus**, short in **hæs'i-to, a-mœn'i-tas**.

*b.* In poetry *ei* may be regarded as a diphthong, as in **dein'de**, having the sound of *i* in mind; *eu, au, oi*, have, when diphthongs, the same sound as in *feud, author, coin*, as **Orpheus, Oileus, aurum**; *ui* is a diphthong, having the long sound of *i* in **huic, cui, hui**; *u*, in connection with other vowels or diphthongs, sometimes has the sound of *w* after *g* or *s*, as **qui, lin'gua, sua'deo, quæ'ro**.

*c.* In such words as **Gaius, Pompaius, Aquileia**, *i* is sounded like *y*; as, **Gaius, Pom-paius**, etc.

6. Consonants have generally the same power as in English; thus, —

*a.* Before *e, i, y*, and the diphthongs *æ, eu, ai*, *c* has the sound of *s*, and *g* of *j*; *ch* has always the sound of *k*, as in *chemist*; *c, s, t* often have the sound of *sh* before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *eu* when preceded by an accented syllable, and *x* of *ksh*, as **socius, censui, ratio, caduceus, anxius**.

NOTE. It is to be understood that in these examples the rule is only *permissive*, and that usage varies considerably among the best authorities. In general, when the word, or the combination of letters, is *distinctly foreign to us*, it may be better to retain the pure consonant sound, as in **men-ti-ē'tur, Min'cius, ca-du'ce-us, Ly'si-as, Mœ'si-a, ax-i-o'ma, noc'ti-um**.

It is very common, in English pronunciation, to slur or suppress the more difficult consonant-sounds, particularly in such cases as *en, gn, ps, pt, tm, or x*, at the beginning of a word, as in **Cnidus, gnotus, pseudopteris, Tmolus, xylon**. But in an accurate pronunciation of these as *Latin or Greek words*, the full consonant-sound will be retained.

Finally, there can be no correct rule to authorize the slipshod and slovenly habit of enunciation which is frequently allowed. To cultivate a *clear and vigorous utterance of unfamiliar words* is one of the incidental benefits of careful instruction in a foreign tongue.

## LESSON VII.

### LATIN VERBS.

**40.** Verbs in Latin, as in English, assert *action, being, or state of being*.

**41.** Verbs are also classified, according to their meaning, into —

1. *Transitive verbs*, which require an object; as, —

*He beats the slave.*

2. *Intransitive verbs*, which do not require an object; as, —

*The man runs.*

**42.** Verbs have also *voice, mode, tense, number, and person*.

**43.** Verbs have two voices: —

1. The *active voice*, which shows that the subject does the action; as, —

*The father loves his son.*

2. The *passive voice*, which shows that the subject suffers the action; as, —

*The son is loved by his father.*

**44.** There are four modes: the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive*. The indicative, imperative, and infinitive have, in general, the same use in Latin as in English. The use of the subjunctive can be learned best in connection with the syntax of the verb.

45. Verbs have six tenses<sup>1</sup>: three for *incomplete action* and three for *completed action*.

### I. Tenses for Incomplete Action.

1. PRESENT . . . . . *I write, I am writing.*
2. IMPERFECT . . . . . *I was writing, I wrote.*
3. FUTURE . . . . . *I shall write, I will write.*

### II. Tenses for Completed Action.

1. PERFECT . . . . . *I have written, I wrote.*
2. PLUPERFECT . . . . . *I had written.*
3. FUTURE PERFECT . . . . . *I shall have written.*

Obs. The *indicative mood* has all six tenses; the *subjunctive* has the present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect; the *imperative* has the present and future only; and the *infinitive* has the present, perfect, future, and future perfect.

46. Tenses are also distinguished as, —

### I. Principal, or Primary, Tenses.

1. PRESENT . . . . . *I write.*
2. PERFECT DEFINITE . . . . . *I have written.*
3. FUTURE . . . . . *I shall write.*

### II. Historical, or Secondary, Tenses.

1. IMPERFECT . . . . . *I was writing.*
2. AORIST, or HISTORICAL PERFECT . . . . . *I wrote.*
3. PLUPERFECT . . . . . *I had written.*

47. The present, future, pluperfect, and future perfect<sup>2</sup> tenses have, in general, the same use in Latin as in English.

48. The imperfect tense expresses an action as going on in past time, *i.e.* a continued, repeated, or customary past action; as, —

*I was writing. I used to write.*

49. The perfect tense has two uses, distinguished as perfect definite and aorist, or historical perfect, corresponding to the perfect and past tenses in English; as, —

*I have written* (definite).

*I wrote* (aorist, or historical, perfect).

50. Verbs, like nouns, have two *numbers*, singular and plural; and three *persons*, first, second, and third.

51. The voice, mode, tense, number, and person of a Latin verb is indicated by the endings; as,—

*āmat*, he loves.      *āmābat*, he was loving.

52. The various verbal forms that have voice, mood, tense, number, and person, make up the *finite*<sup>s</sup> verb. Besides these, there are three other forms derived from verbs, and partaking of their signification. These are:—

1. The *participle*, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective. A Latin verb has four participles: two in the active, the present and the future; and two in the passive, the perfect and the gerundive; as,—

*Active.*

PRESENT . . . . . *āmāns*, loving.  
FUTURE . . . . . *āmātūrus*, about to love.

*Passive.*

PERFECT . . . . . *āmātus*, loved.  
GERUNDIVE . . . . . *āmandus*, deserving to be loved.

2. The *gerund*, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*; as,—

*āmandī*, of loving.

3. The *supine*, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension. It has two forms, one in *-um*, the other in *-u*; as,—

*āmātum*, to love.      *āmātū*, to be loved.

53. The principal parts of a verb are, the *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *perfect indicative*, and the *perfect participle*. These are called the *principal parts*, because all the other parts of the verb are formed from them.

Obs. The supine in *-um*, called by many grammarians one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs, in fact, to only about two hundred Latin verbs; then, again, those verbs that are invariably intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only. This part, then, called in the dictionaries the supine in *-um*, must,

in most cases, be the neuter of the perfect participle; and I have ventured, in the enumeration of the principal parts of the verb, to give it this name, and also to substitute, in place of *supine stem*, the more correct term *participial stem*.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The six tenses are found only in the indicative mood.
2. The imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called the *preterite tenses*.
3. A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a *finite verb*.  
How many tenses in Latin? Define the word *tense*. Define *voice* as used in grammar. (*Ans.* Voice is a modification which shows whether the subject acts or is acted upon.) Define *mode*. Mention the primary tenses. How are voice, mode, tense, etc., expressed in English? (*Ans.* By the use of *auxiliaries*, or *helping words*.) How in Latin?

LESSON VIII.

CONJUGATION OF THE LATIN VERB.

Obs. In English, the mode, tense, number, and person of verbs are indicated chiefly by certain words prefixed to the verb, but in some cases by the endings of the verbs; as, Present, *he writes*; Future, *he will write*; Imperfect, *he was writing*. In Latin, these forms are always denoted by the endings of the verb; as, *amat*, *he loves*; *amabit*, *he will love*; *amabat*, *he was loving*. Each of these Latin words shows its person by its ending, which is, therefore, called the *personal ending*; hence, with Latin verbs, the *personal pronouns* may be, and generally are, omitted. The changing of these endings to denote some modification of meaning, or to show some relation to other words, is called CONJUGATION.

54. In order to determine how to conjugate a Latin verb, it is necessary to know the Present Infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.
1. <i>āmo</i> , I love;	<i>āmāre</i> , to love.
2. <i>mōneo</i> , I advise;	<i>mōnēre</i> , to advise.
3. <i>rēgo</i> , I rule;	<i>rēgēre</i> , to rule.
4. <i>audio</i> , I hear;	<i>audīre</i> , to hear.

Obs. The pupil will notice that the infinitive in Latin is formed not as in English, by placing the preposition *to* before the simple form of the verb, but by adding *-re*. Each of these verbs has, also, a characteristic vowel before the infinitive ending, which in **āmo** is *-ā-*, in **mōneo** is *-ē-*, in **rēgo** is *-ĕ-*, and in **audio** is *-ī-*.

55. Accordingly, Latin verbs are divided into four classes, called *Conjugations*, distinguished from one another by the characteristic vowel before the ending *-re* of the present infinitive active, as follows:—

Conjugation.	Characteristic Vowels.	Infinitive Endings.
I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ē	ē-re
III.	ĕ	ĕ-re
IV.	ī	ī-re

1. The vowel before *-re* is called the *stem-characteristic*; thus, the stem of verbs of the first conjugation ends in *ā*, the second in *ē*, the third in *ĕ*, the fourth in *ī*.

2. Besides the present stem, there is often a simpler form that forms the basis of the entire conjugation, called the *verb-stem*. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the verb-stem is generally the same as the present stem; in the third conjugation *reg-* is the verb-stem, and *rĕgĕ-* the present stem; as,

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Verb-stem . .	āmā-	mōnē-	rĕg-, minu-	audī-
Infinitive . .	āmā-re, <i>to love.</i>	mōnē-re, <i>to advise.</i>	rĕg-ĕre, <i>to rule.</i> minu-ĕre, <i>to lessen.</i>	audī-re, <i>to hear.</i>

3. The verb-stems of the first, second, and fourth conjugations end in the vowels *ā*, *ē*, *ī*; the verb-stem of the third conjugation ends in a consonant or in *u*; hence the distinction of *vowel* and *consonant* conjugations.

Tell to which conjugation each of the following verbs belongs: —

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1. *laudo*, I praise; <sup>1</sup>
2. *dēleo*, I destroy;
3. *tēgo*, I cover;
4. *mūnio*, I fortify;
5. *audio*, I hear;
6. *hābeo*, I have;
7. *haurio*, I drain;
8. *nūmēro*, I count;
9. *fūgio*, I flee;
10. *erro*, I wander;
11. *mōveo*, I move;

## INFINITIVE.

- laudāre*, to praise.  
*dēlēre*, to destroy.  
*tēgēre*, to cover.  
*mūnīre*, to fortify.  
*audīre*, to hear.  
*hābēre*, to have.  
*haurīre*, to drain.  
*nūmērāre*, to count.  
*fūgēre*, to flee.  
*errāre*, to wander.  
*mōvēre*, to move.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Notice that the pronoun *I* is supplied in translating.  
 How many conjugations are there? How is each distinguished?  
 What is meant by the conjugation of a verb? How does the Latin verb express tense? person? number?

## LESSON IX.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

56. All verbs whose characteristic vowel before the ending *-re* in the Present Infinitive is *-ā-* belong to the first conjugation.

*Present Tense.*

57. The Present Tense is formed by adding personal endings to the Present Stem.<sup>1</sup>

tin is formed  
 e the simple  
 rbs has, also,  
 hich in *āmo*

into four  
 m one an-  
 ending *-re*

characteristic;  
 ends in *ā*,

imple form  
 called the  
 njugations  
 t stem; in  
*rēgē-* the

Conj. IV.

audi-  
 audi-re,  
 to hear.

th conju-  
 the third  
 e distinc-



## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Present Stem + o <sup>2</sup>	āmo	<i>I love.</i>
2	“ “ + s	āmās	<i>Thou lovest.</i>
3	“ “ + t	āmāt	<i>He loves.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mus	āmāmus	<i>We love.</i>
2	“ “ + tis	āmātis	<i>You love.</i>
3	“ “ + nt	āmānt	<i>They love.</i>

Obs. 1. Note that the vowel in the ending of the third person singular is shortened; short vowels in final syllables are generally not marked.

Obs. 2. In English we indicate the *person* and *number* of the verb chiefly by means of pronouns standing before the verb; as,

Sing. 1. <i>I love.</i>	Plur. 1. <i>We love.</i>
2. <i>Thou lovest.</i>	2. <i>You love.</i>
3. <i>He loves.</i>	3. <i>They love.</i>

The verb changes its ending in but two forms; with these exceptions it would be impossible to tell the person or number of this verb unless a pronoun was used with it. In Latin the endings of the verbs were originally pronouns, and they are changed, as the pronouns in English are, to indicate the person and number of the verb; as,

<i>love-we</i>	<i>love-he</i>	<i>love-thou</i>
āmā-mus	āmā-t	āmā-s

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INFINITIVE.
laudo, <i>praise.</i> <sup>3</sup>	laudā. <sup>4</sup>	laudāre.
porto, <i>carry.</i>	portā.	portāre.
pugno, <i>fight.</i>	pugnā.	pugnāre.
voco, <i>call.</i>	vocā.	vocāre.
dōno, <i>give.</i>	dōnā.	dōnāre.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. laudat. <sup>5</sup>	3. pūgnamus. <sup>6</sup>	5. dōnātis.	7. dōnās.
2. vōcant.	4. portas.	6. laudāmus.	8. pūgnant.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The endings were originally personal pronouns: **laudās** means not *love*, but *thou lovest*. The pronoun, when used as the subject of the verb, need not, therefore, be expressed. Note, further, that the endings show the number and person of the subject, but not the gender.

Obs. This is true, in general, only when the verb is of the *first* or *second* person. With the *third* person, a definite subject should be expressed, unless implied in what precedes or follows.

2. Note that the Present Indicative = *present stem* + personal endings, and that **āmā + o = āmo**; also, that it has lost the *m* (which appears in **sum, inquam**). The *o* stands for *m* and the preceding vowel; as, **āmo = āma-o-m**.

3. Read, *I praise*, etc.

4. The stem is **laudā**, and by adding the personal ending we get **lauda-o**, which is contracted into **laudo**.

5. Remember that the present tense in English has three forms:—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| } | 1. <b>laudo</b> , <i>I praise, I am praising, I do praise.</i>                |
|   | 2. <b>laudās</b> , <i>thou praisest, thou art praising, thou dost praise.</i> |
|   | 3. <b>laudāt</b> , <i>he praises, he is praising, he does praise.</i>         |

6. Observe that no separate Latin word is required for the pronouns *I, thou, he, we, they*, etc.; thus, **pūgnāmus**, *we fight*, contains the pronoun *we*, and is a complete sentence in one word, *i.e.* contains a subject and predicate; as,

**pūgnā-mus**

*fight-we*

**pūgnā**, signifying *fight*, is the stem, and **-mus**, signifying *we*, the personal ending.

How is the first conjugation distinguished? What is meant by the characteristic vowel? How is the stem found? What are the personal endings? What do these endings show? Does the present tense denote completed or incomplete action? Ans. The present stem, and the tenses formed from it,—present, imperfect, and future,—denote incomplete action.

lish.

e.  
lovest.  
oves.  
ove.  
love.  
love.

third person  
re generally

umber of the  
verb; as,

these excep-  
mber of this  
e endings of  
nged, as the  
mber of the

ITIVE.

e.  
e.  
e.

dōnās.  
pūgnant.

## LESSON X.

FIRST CONJUGATION (*continued*).*Imperfect and Future Tenses.*

58. The Imperfect and Future Tenses are formed, like the Present, by adding the endings to the Present Stem.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

IMPERFECT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Present Stem + bam	ămābam	<i>I was loving.</i>
2	“ “ + bas	ămābās	<i>Thou wast loving.</i>
3	“ “ + bat	ămābat	<i>He was loving.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmus	ămābāmus	<i>We were loving.</i>
2	“ “ + bātis	ămābātis	<i>You were loving.</i>
3	“ “ + bant	ămābant	<i>They were loving.</i>
FUTURE.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Present Stem + bo	ămābo	<i>I shall love.</i>
2	“ “ + bis	ămābis	<i>Thou wilt love.</i>
3	“ “ + bit	ămābit	<i>He will love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bīmus	ămābīmus	<i>We shall love.</i>
2	“ “ + bitis	ămābitis	<i>You will love.</i>
3	“ “ + bunt	ămābunt	<i>They will love.</i>

1. Analysis of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active: —

1. Present ind. = Pres. stem + Personal endings.
2. Imperf. ind. = Pres. stem + Tense-sign (-ba-) + Personal endings.
3. Future ind. = Pres. stem + Tense-sign (-bi-) + Personal endings.

Obs. The future, like the present, has lost the *m* in the first person singular: **āmābo** = **amābom** as the present **amo** = **amom** (cf. **sum**).

## VOCABULARY.

## PRESENT.

1. **rōgo**, *ask*.
2. **āro**, *plough*.
3. **pāro**, *prepare*.
4. **narro**, *narrate*.

## PRESENT STEM.

- rogā-**  
**ārā-**  
**pārā-**  
**narrā-**

## EXERCISES.

Analyze; translate into English:—

- |                                    |                        |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <b>rōgat</b> .                  | 6. <b>pūgnābātis</b> . |
| 2. <b>narrant</b> .                | 7. <b>dōnābīmus</b> .  |
| 3. <b>rōgābis</b> . <sup>1</sup>   | 8. <b>pārābit</b> .    |
| 4. <b>portābant</b> . <sup>2</sup> | 9. <b>ārābunt</b> .    |
| 5. <b>laudābāmus</b> .             | 10. <b>vōcābis</b> .   |

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. In translating the second person singular, as well as the second person plural, *you* is commonly used; as, **āmās**, *you love*, and **āmātis**, *you love*; but **ārās** is used of one person, and **āmātis** of more than one.

2. Observe that, in the conjugation of the imperfect and future, the stem and personal endings are the same as in the present; that between these there is a tense-sign, **-ba-** in the imperfect and **-bi-** in the future. The elements of the verb then, in the imperfect and future tenses, are: 1st. The Stem; 2d. The Tense-sign; 3d. The Personal Endings; as,

**laudā-bā-mus**

*praising-were-we*

**laudā-** Being the stem; **-ba-**, *were*, the tense-sign; and **-mus**, *we*, the personal ending.

What is tense? How many divisions of time? What is mode? How many modes? How is the present tense formed? How the future? Write the inflection in the imperfect; in the future.

LESSON XI.  
LATIN NOUNS.

INFLECTION.

59. The meaning of Latin nouns is altered by Inflection; that is, by changing the form of the word, generally the endings, to denote some modification of its meaning, or to show its relation to other words. The Inflection of nouns, of pronouns, and of adjectives, is called *Declension*. The Inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation*.

*Stem and Suffix.*

60. The body of the word, to which the suffix is attached, is called the *stem*; as,

**mīlītis**: *mīlīt-* is the stem, and *-is* the termination.

When the stem ends in a vowel and the suffix begins with a vowel, contraction takes place, and the final vowel of the stem sometimes disappears; as,

**mensae**: the stem is *mensā-*, and the suffix *-is*, which unite to form **mensae**, the *s* being dropped.

1. Each case-form, therefore, contains two distinct parts: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word; and the *case-suffix*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word; as, in

**mīlītis**, of a soldier: the general idea, *soldier*, is expressed by the stem **mīlīt-**; the relation of, by the suffix **-is**.

Obs. It may be found convenient to divide inflected words not only into stem and termination, but into *base* and *termination*, the *base*<sup>1</sup> being the part of the word that remains unchanged by inflection; as, **servus** (which stands for **servos**), a slave, gen. **servī**, of a slave. **servō-** is the stem, **-ī** is the termination, or case-suffix; the *o* is dropped before *i* to form **servi**, of a slave; but **serv-**, to which the case-endings are added, remains unchanged by inflection, and may be called the *base*.

*Modifications of Nouns.*

61. In Latin, as in English, nouns have Gender, Number, Person, and Case.

## GENDER.

62. The gender of English nouns is determined by their meaning.<sup>2</sup> Gender of Latin nouns is determined either by their *meaning* or by their *endings*. When determined by their meaning, it is called *Natural Gender*; when by their endings, *Grammatical Gender*.

63. Rules for gender according to meaning:—

1. Names of male beings are masculine; as,  
**Rōmūlus**, *Romulus*; **agricōla**, *farmer*; **ēquus**, *horse*.
2. Names of females are feminine; as,  
**Cornēlia**, *Cornelia*; **mūlier**, *woman*; **puella**, *girl*.
3. Some nouns without *natural gender* have their gender determined by their meaning; as:
  - (1) Rivers, winds, months, and mountains are masculine; as,  
**Tībēris**, *the Tiber*; **Aquīlo**, *north wind*; **Aprīlis**, *April*.
  - (2) Cities, countries, towns, islands, trees, poems, and gems are feminine; as,  
**Aegyptus**, *Egypt*; **Cōrinthus**, *Corinth*.
  - (3) Indeclinable nouns are neuter; as,  
**fās**, *divine right*; **nīhil**, *nothing*.

## NUMBER AND PERSON.

64. Latin nouns have two numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and three persons, *first*, *second*, and *third*.

## CASES.

65. In Latin<sup>3</sup> the same noun may have six different forms to express its relation to other words; these forms are called the *six cases of the noun*. The names of the cases are:—

1. The Nominative, the case of the subject of the sentence. It answers the question *who?* or *what?*; as,

**The boy reads.** Who reads?—*The boy.*

**The fire burns.** What burns?—*The fire.*

*Boy* and *fire* are, therefore, in the nominative case.

2. The Genitive, usually translated into English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*. It answers the question *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?*; as,

**The man's coat.** Whose coat?—*The man's.*

**The heat of the fire.** Of what?—*Of the fire.*

*Man's* and *of the fire* are genitives.

3. The Dative, usually translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*. It answers the question *to* or *for whom* or *what?*; as,

*The teacher gives a book to the boy.* To whom?—*To the boy.*

*To the boy* is, therefore, in the dative.

4. The Accusative, the object of a transitive verb, and of many Latin prepositions. It names the object, *whom?* or *what?*; as,

*The man strikes the boy.* Strikes whom?—*The boy.*

*The child fears the fire.* Fears what?—*The fire.*

*Boy* and *fire* are accusative.

5. The Vocative, or the case used in addressing a person or thing; as,

**O boy! O fire!**

*The fault, dear Brutus, is not in our stars.*

*Boy, fire,* and *Brutus* are in the vocative case.

6. The Ablative, usually translated by *from,* *with,* *by,* *in,* or *at;* as,

*The boy strikes the ball with the bat.* With what?—*With the bat.*

Then *with the bat* is the ablative.

Obs. 1. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the *oblique cases*.

Obs. 2. A seventh case, the Locative, denoting the place *where,* is found in a few words.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE CASES AND OF THEIR USES.

Latin Case.	Answers what Question.	Examples.	Answer.	Corresponding Case in English.
NOM.	Who? or what?	puer lægit, the boy reads.	puer, boy.	Nominative.
GEN.	Whose? of whom? of what?	filia rēgīnae laudat, the queen's daughter praises.	rēgīnae, queen's, or of the queen.	Possessive, or of with genitive.
DAT.	To or for whom? or what?	vir puērō librum dat, the man gives a book to the boy.	puērō, to or for the boy.	Objective with to or for.
ACC.	Whom? what?	rēgīna filiam vōcat, the queen calls (her) daughter.	filiam, a or the daughter.	Objective.
VOC.	Used in addressing a person or thing.	disce, puer, learn, boy, or O boy!	puer, O boy!	Independent.
ABL.	With, in, from, by, at, whom? or what?	rex virum culpā libērat, the king frees the man from blame.	culpā, from blame.	Objective with with, in, from, by, at.

DECLENSION.

66. Latin nouns have five Declensions, which are distinguished by the final letters of the stem, or by the terminations of the genitive singular; as,

Declension.	Genitive Ending.	Characteristic.
I.	ae	ā = a-stems. <sup>4</sup>
II.	ī	ō = o-stems.
III.	īs	ī or a consonant = consonant or i-stems.
IV.	ūs (uis)	
V.	ēi	ū = u-stems. ē = e-stems.

Obs. The method of distinguishing the declension by the ending of the genitive singular had better be adopted at first, because it is used in dictionaries and vocabularies to designate the declen-



sion, and because the use of the stem is confusing to young pupils. The plan of cutting off *-rum* or *-um* from the genitive plural in order to find the stem, and so determine the declension, presupposes that the pupil is already able to decline the word.

### 1. General Rules of Declension : —

- (1) Neuter nouns of all declensions have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike; the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are also alike, and always end in *ā*.
- (2) The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike in all nouns of the third, fourth, and fifth declensions.
- (3) The nominative and vocative are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension.
- (4) The dative and ablative plural are always alike.
- (5) The genitive plural always ends in *-um*.

### EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences. State the Latin case to be used to represent each noun : —

1. The sailor has a cottage.
2. The cottage of the sailor has a table.
3. Galba sees the gates of Rome.
4. Titus wounded the man with an arrow.
5. Titus gave the book to his friend.
6. The sailors of Galba wound the sailors of Titus with arrows.
7. The soldiers of Cæsar defend the towers with stones.
8. Cæsar sees the walls of Rome.
9. The leaders of the people give peace to the city.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The base is the same as the stem with the final vowel removed; the endings, therefore, contain the final vowel of the stem and the suffixes, both being obscured by contraction. If the stem ends in a consonant, then the stem and base are the same, and the endings are the simple case-endings; as, *rēg-is*. *Reg-* is both the stem and the base to which the case-endings may be attached unchanged.

2. Note that gender in English denotes *sex*, — masculine nouns denoting *males*, feminine nouns *females*, and neuter nouns *neither male nor female*. In Latin, this natural distinction of gender is applied only

to *males* and *females*; the gender of all other nouns depends on artificial distinctions, and is determined by special rules.

3. English nouns have few changes of forms. The possessive case is the only one that always has a special form.

4. The final vowel of the stem is called the *stem-letter*, or *stem-characteristic*.

Define inflection. How many cases have nouns? How is the gender of Latin nouns determined? What is meant by grammatical gender? Name the cases. What is inflection? How does inflection differ from declension? What parts of speech are declined? What are the properties of Latin nouns? Define the word "properties." How many declensions have Latin nouns? Explain the meaning of *stem*; of *base*.

LESSON XII.

NOUNS. — FIRST DECLENSION.

67. Nouns of the First Declension end in *-ā* and *-ī*,<sup>1</sup> feminine; *-ās* and *-īs*,<sup>1</sup> masculine.

Nouns in *-ā*<sup>2</sup> are thus declined: —

PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.	Case Endings.	
			Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>mensa</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>a table</i> . <sup>4</sup>	<i>mensae</i> , <i>tables</i> .	-a	-ae
GEN.	<i>mensae</i> , <i>of a table</i> .	<i>mensārum</i> , <i>of tables</i> .	-ae	-ārum
DAT.	<i>mensae</i> , <i>to, for a table</i> .	<i>mensīs</i> , <i>to, for tables</i> .	-ae	-īs
ACC.	<i>mensam</i> , <i>a table</i> .	<i>mensās</i> , <i>tables</i> .	-am	-ās
VOC.	<i>mensa</i> , <i>O table</i> .	<i>mensae</i> , <i>O tables</i> .	-a	-ae
ABL. {	<i>mensā</i> , <i>with, from, or</i> <i>by a table</i> .	<i>mensīs</i> , <i>with, from, or</i> <i>by tables</i> .	-ā	-īs

VOCABULARY.<sup>5</sup>

*āqua*, -ae,<sup>6</sup> F.,<sup>7</sup> *water*.

*puella*, -ae, F., *girl*.

*insūla*, -ae, F., *island*.

*porta*, -ae, F., *gate*.

*nauta*, -ae, M., *sailor*.

*āgrīcōla*, -ae, M., *farmer*.

*victōria*, -ae, F., *victory*.

*umbra*, -ae, F., *shade*.

## EXERCISES.

Decline the following words like *mensa*. Give the meaning,<sup>8</sup> the case, the stem, the gender, the number, and the case-endings of each:—

- |                       |                         |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <i>insūlae</i> .   | 4. <i>puellis</i> .     | 7. <i>puella</i> . |
| 2. <i>agricōlae</i> . | 5. <i>puellae</i> .     | 8. <i>nantae</i> . |
| 3. <i>nautārum</i> .  | 6. <i>agricōlārum</i> . | 9. <i>āquae</i> .  |

68. The declension of the following Greek nouns is inserted for convenience of reference; they should be omitted for the present:—

Cases.		<i>cōmētēs</i> , M., <i>comet</i> .	<i>ēpitōmē</i> , F., <i>epitome</i> .	<i>Aenēās</i> , M., <i>Aeneas</i> .
Singular.	NOM.	<i>cōmētēs</i>	<i>ēpitōmē</i>	<i>Aenēās</i>
	GEN.	<i>cōmētae</i>	<i>ēpitōmēs</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>
	DAT.	<i>cōmētae</i>	<i>ēpitōmae</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>
	ACC.	<i>cōmētēn</i>	<i>ēpitōmēn</i>	<i>Aenēān</i> (-am)
	VOC.	<i>cōmētā</i>	<i>ēpitōmē</i>	<i>Aenēā</i>
	ABL.	<i>cōmētā</i>	<i>ēpitōmē</i>	<i>Aenēā</i>
Plural.	NOM.	<i>cōmētae</i>	<i>ēpitōmae</i>	
	GEN.	<i>cōmētārum</i>	<i>ēpitōmārum</i>	
	DAT.	<i>cōmētīs</i>	<i>ēpitōmīs</i>	
	ACC.	<i>cōmētās</i>	<i>ēpitōmās</i>	
	VOC.	<i>cōmētae</i>	<i>ēpitōmae</i>	
	ABL.	<i>cōmētīs</i>	<i>ēpitōmīs</i>	

SYN. *Porta* is the *gate* of a city; *jānuā*, the *door* (street-door) of a house; *valvae*, *folding-doors* in a temple and fine buildings.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Nouns in *-ē*, *-ās*, and *-ēs* are Greek words, mostly proper names.
2. All nouns in *-ā* are feminine unless they denote males; as, *nautā*, a sailor, is masculine by signification. (See 63.)
3. The base of *mensa* is *mens-*, and to this the case-endings are added to form the cases. The stem of *mensa* is *mensā-*; the final *-ā* of the stem disappears in the dative and ablative plural.

4. As there is no article in Latin, **mensa** may mean *table, a table, or the table*, according to the sense required.

\* 5. The pupil should learn the vocabularies so well that he can give at once the English when the Latin is pronounced, or the Latin when the English is pronounced.

6. The ending *-ae* is the case-ending of the genitive. (See 61.)

7. In the vocabularies, *m.* indicates the *masculine gender*; *f.*, the *feminine*; and *n.*, the *neuter*.

8. In translating the exercises, give all possible meanings of each form. For example, **insulae** may be genitive or dative singular, or nominative or vocative plural: *of an (the) island, to or for an (the) island, the islands, and O islands (or ye islands)*.

How do you distinguish nouns of the first declension? How the gender? How do you find the stem? (This can be found by taking away the case-ending of the genitive plural, *-rum*.) How do you accent **agricolae**? What is the quantity of the penult of **puella**? How many numbers have Latin nouns? How many cases? Name them. How many genders?

### LESSON XIII.

#### SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. **agricola vocat**, *the farmer calls.*
2. **agricolae vocant**, *the farmers call.*
3. **puellae laudant**, *the girls praise.*

Obs. In the sentence **the farmer calls**, *farmer* is the subject, and is in the nominative case; *calls* is the predicate. Study the other examples, and note (1) if the subject is singular, the verb is singular; (2) if the subject is plural, the verb must also be plural; and (3) that the subject and the predicate agree in person as well as in number. Hence the following rules:—

##### SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE.

**69. RULE I.**—The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.

## AGREEMENT OF THE VERB.

**70. RULE II.** — A finite verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

**71.** Model for parsing nouns : —

**agrīcōla vōcat**, *the farmer calls* : **agrīcōla** is a masculine noun, masculine by signification (64)<sup>1</sup>; first declension, because it has *-ae* in the genitive singular; stem, *agrīcōlā-*; declined, sing. *agrīcōla*, *agrīcōlāe*, *agrīcōlāe*, *agrīcōlāe*, *agrīcōlāe*, *agrīcōlāe*, plural *agrīcōlāe*, *agrīcōlārūm*, *agrīcōlīs*, *agrīcōlās*, *agrīcōlāe*, *agrīcōlīs*. It is nominative singular, and is the subject of **vōcat**, according to Rule I. : *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*

**72.** Model for parsing verbs : —

**agrīcōla vōcat**, *the farmer calls* : **vōcat** is a transitive verb of the first conjugation, indicative mode, present tense, third person singular, to agree with the subject **agrīcōla**, according to Rule II. : *A finite verb agrees with the subject-nominative in number and pers.n.*

## VOCABULARY.

**rēgīna**, -ae, F., *queen*.

**scrība**, -ae, M., *clerk*.

**dēlecto**,<sup>2</sup> -āre, *delight*.

**occūpo**, -āre, *take possession of, seize*.

**pūgno**, -āre, *fight*.

**cōn-firmo**, -āre, *establish*.

**porto**, -āre, *carry*.

**dōno**, -āre, *give*.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences ; parse each word ; translate into English : —

1. **rēgīna** laudat.<sup>3</sup>

2. **scrībae** portant.

3. **puellae** laudant.

4. **Laudās**.<sup>4</sup>

5. **Laudāmus**.

6. **Rēgīnae** dōnant.

Translate into Latin : —

1. We fight, they fight, he fights. 2. The<sup>5</sup> sailor calls.  
3. The queen praises. 4. The queens praise. 5. We praise.  
6. They establish.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. These figures refer to sections in this book.
  2. Give the infinitive of each verb.
  3. When the subject of the verb is expressed, the pronoun, although contained in the verb, is not needed in English; thus, *rēgīna laudat*, *the queen praises*, not *the queen she praises*.
  4. The subject of *laudās* is implied in the ending of the verb.
  5. Remember that the article is not to be translated.
  6. As to the order of words in the Latin sentences, the subject usually stands first, but the predicate may be placed before the subject for the sake of emphasis.
- What is a transitive verb? Define subject; predicate. What part of speech must the subject always be? Why is the *u* in *puella* short?

## LESSON XIV.

## SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *agrīcōla nautās vōcat*, *the farmer calls the sailors*.
2. *rēgīna puellās laudat*, *the queen praises the girls*.
3. *āmficitiar cōnfirmat*, *he establishes friendship*.

Obs. In the sentence **the farmer calls the sailors**, *farmer* is the subject, *calls* the predicate, and *sailors*, which completes the meaning of the verb by telling *whom* or *what* the farmer calls, is the direct object. Notice that this object in English is in the *objective case*, and follows the verb *calls*; the direct object in Latin is in the *accusative case*, and precedes the verb. Hence the following rule:—

## DIRECT OBJECT.

**73. RULE III.**—The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

*a.* Many verbs that are transitive in Latin are translated into English by a verb and preposition; as, *pēcūniam postūlat*, *he asks for (demands) money*.

## 74. Model for parsing the object: —

**agricōla nautās vōcat**, *the farmer calls the sailors*: **nautās** is a masculine noun of the first declension, masculine by signification, and first declension because it has *-ae* in the genitive singular; stem, *nautā-*; declined, sing. *nauta*, *nautae*, *nautae*, *nautom*, *nauta*, *nautā*, plural *nautae*, *nautārum*, *nautis*, *nautās*, *nautue*, *nautīs*. It is in the accusative plural, the object of **vōcat**, according to Rule III.: *The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.*

## VOCABULARY.

<b>filia</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>-ae</i> , F., <i>daughter</i> .	<b>pāro</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>prepare</i> .
<b>pēcūnia</b> , <i>-ae</i> , F., <i>money</i> .	<b>āro</b> , <i>plough</i> .
<b>āmīcītia</b> , <i>-ae</i> , F., <i>friendship</i> .	<b>do</b> , <sup>3</sup> <i>give</i> .
<b>ēpistūla</b> , <i>-ae</i> , F., <i>letter</i> .	<b>exspecto</b> , <i>expect</i> .

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English: —

1. **Agricōlae**<sup>4</sup> **nautam** vōcant. 2. **Vōcāmus**. 3. **Rēgīna** **filiam**<sup>5</sup> amat. 4. **Rēgīna** **āmīcītiā** cōfirmat. 5. **Laudāmus**.
6. **Puella** **ēpistūlam** exspectābat.

Translate into Latin: —

1. The queen calls. 2. The queen calls her<sup>6</sup> daughter.
3. They establish friendship. 4. They praise, they call, they prepare. 5. The queen praises. 6. We praise.
7. The girls are expecting<sup>7</sup> letters.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. A few words of the first declension have the dative and ablative plural in **-ābus**; as, **filia**, *a daughter*; **dea**, *a goddess*.
2. Write the infinitive.
3. The infinitive of **do** is **dāre**; short *a* before *-re*.
4. See 63.
5. Render *her daughter*. The pronouns *his*, *her*, *their*, are seldom expressed in Latin, when no confusion could arise from their omission. In translating, they are to be supplied from the context.

6. Not to be translated.

7. Remember that the indicative has three forms in English.

Which cases of the first declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Write the ablative singular of *fīlia*. How many ways can you translate *vōcant*? Name the stem of *vōcant*. Is *vōcant* a complete sentence? why? What is a sentence? What is the case of the direct object in Latin? What tenses express incomplete action? Where does the direct object usually stand?

LESSON XV.

NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

75. Nouns of the Second Declension end in *-er*, *-ir*, *-us*, and *-os*, masculine; *-um* and *-on*, neuter.

a. Those in *-os* or *-on* are Greek words, chiefly proper nouns.

1. Nouns in *-us* are declined as follows:—

PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>dōminus</i> , a lord.	<i>dōminī</i> , lords.
GEN.	<i>dōminī</i> , of a lord.	<i>dōminōrum</i> , of lords.
DAT.	<i>dōminō</i> , to or for a lord.	<i>dōminīs</i> , to or for lords.
ACC.	<i>dōminum</i> , a lord.	<i>dōminōs</i> , lords.
VOC.	<i>dōmine</i> , O lord.	<i>dōminī</i> , O lords.
ABL. }	<i>dōminō</i> , with, from, or by a lord.	<i>dōminīs</i> , with, from, or by lords.

2. The stem of nouns of the second declension ends in *-ō-*; thus the stem of *dōminus* is *dōminō-*.

3. The characteristic *-o-* becomes *-u-* in the nominative of nouns in *-us* or *-um*; it disappears in the endings *-i* and *-īs* (for *-o-i* and *-o-is*). The nominative singular of *dōminus* was originally *dōminos*.



4. The case-endings are as follows :—

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	-us	-ī
GEN.	-ī	-ōrum
DAY.	-ō	-īs
ACC.	-um	-ōs
VOC.	-e	-ī
ABL.	-ō	-īs

5. The genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* often ends in a single *-ī*: as, *filius*, gen. *filī*; *Hōrātius*, gen. *Hōrātī*. The vocative of proper names in *-ius* contract *-ie* into *-ī* without change of accent: as, *Hōrātī*, *O Horātius*; also, *filius* has *filī* in the vocative.

6. Nearly all nouns in *-us* are *masculine*; but the names of *trees*, *plants*, etc., are *feminine* by the general rule (63. 3 (2)).

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>servus</i> , -ī, M., <i>slave</i> .	<i>filius</i> , -ī, M., <i>son</i> .
<i>amicus</i> , -ī, M., <i>friend</i> .	<i>hortus</i> , -ī, M., <i>garden</i> .
<i>oculus</i> , -ī, M., <i>eye</i> .	<i>postūlo</i> , <i>demand</i> .
<i>Gallus</i> , -ī, M., <i>a Gaul</i> .	<i>Rōmānus</i> , -ī, M., <i>a Roman</i> .
<i>expugno</i> , <i>storm</i> , <i>capture</i> .	<i>pugno</i> , <i>fight</i> .

#### EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English :—

- |                           |                        |       |  |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-------|--|
| s.                        | o.                     | v. t. |  |
| 1. Rēgina amīcum amat.    | 4. Amīcōs amābātis.    |       |  |
| 2. Amīcī servōs vocābunt. | 5. Amīcī amīcōs amant. |       |  |
| 3. Servōs laudābimus.     | 6. Servī pugnant.      |       |  |

LESSON XVI.

NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

76. Nouns in *-er, -ir*, are declined as follows:—

PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	māgister, a master.	māgistrī, masters.
GEN.	māgistrī, of a master.	māgistrōrum, of masters.
DAT.	māgistrō, to or for a master.	māgistrīs, to or for masters.
ACC.	māgistrum, a master.	māgistrōs, masters.
VOC.	māgister, O master.	māgistrī, O masters.
ABL. }	māgistrō, with, from, or by a master.	māgistrīs, with, from, or by masters.
NOM.	puer, a boy.	puērī, boys.
GEN.	puērī, of a boy.	puērōrum, of boys.
DAT.	puērō, to or for a boy.	puērīs, to or for boys.
ACC.	puerum, boy.	puērōs, boys.
VOC.	puer, O boy.	puērī, O boys.
ABL. }	puērō, with, from, or by a boy.	puērīs, with, from, or by boys.

1. *deus, a god* (stem *deo-*), is declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	deus	deī, diī, dī
GEN.	deī	deōrum
DAT.	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs
ACC.	deum	deōs
VOC.	deus	deī, diī, dī
ABL.	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs

2. The endings of the nominative and vocative singular are wanting in nouns in *-er*; thus, *puer* is for *puerus*; the *e* in *puer* belongs to the stem, and is not dropped. Most other nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in *-ro-*,

preceded by another consonant, drop *us* and insert *e* in the nominative; as, *āger*, stem *agro-*. The *-us* of the nominative and vocative has been dropped, and *e* inserted. The following nouns retain *e* in all the cases: viz., *puer*, *boy*; *sōcer*, *father-in-law*; *gēner*, *son-in-law*; *vesper*, *evening*; *libēri* (used only in plural), *children*; and a few others.

### *The Genitive and the Appositive.*

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Labiēnus lēgātus**, *Labiēnus, the lieutenant.*
2. **Filia<sup>1</sup> rēgīnae**, *the daughter of the queen, or the queen's daughter.*
3. **Filia āmīcī**, *the daughter of the friend, or the friend's daughter.*

Obs. In the first example, observe that the noun *lieutenant* denotes the same person or thing as *Labiēnus*; it modifies *Labiēnus* by telling *what* *Labiēnus* is meant. It has the same case and the same number, and is said to be in *apposition* (a modifier in *near position*).

In the second example, *of the queen, or queen's*, limits *daughter* by telling *what* or *whose* daughter is spoken of, and is, therefore, a modifier of it. The three examples represent two kinds of noun modifiers,—the *possessive* and the *explanatory*; or, in Latin, the *genitive* and the *explanatory*. In Latin, note that the limiting word in the first example is in the same case as the word it limits; that it denotes the same person or thing as the noun, or name, preceding. In the second and third examples note: (1) that the limiting word is in the genitive; (2) that it denotes a different person or thing from that denoted by the limited noun; and (3) that the relation of this genitive to the limited noun is expressed in English either by *of* or by the *possessive*. Notice, finally, that the genitive stands after the noun which it limits. It may, however, be placed before the noun for the sake of emphasis; as, *rēgīnae filia*, *the QUEEN'S daughter*. Hence the following rules:—

#### APPOSITIVE.

**77. RULE IV.**—A noun used to describe another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

1. This construction is called *apposition*, and the limiting noun an *appositive*.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

78. RULE V. — A noun limiting the meaning of another noun, and denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

VOCABULARY.

äger, ägrī, M., <i>field.</i>	campus, -ī, M., <i>field.</i>
gēner, gēnērī, M., <i>son-in-law.</i>	fāber, fabrī, M., <i>smith.</i>
vir, virī, M., <i>man.</i>	ēnuntio, <i>report.</i>
liber, librī, M., <i>book.</i>	pōpūlus, -ī, M., <i>people.</i>
narro, <i>narrate, tell.</i>	vasto, <i>lay waste.</i>
vīcus, -ī, M., <i>village.</i>	schōla, -ae, F., <i>school.</i>

SYN. Ager is a *field* in general; arvum, the *ploughed field*; and campus, the *enclosed field*, or *plain*.

EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English: —

1. Servī agrum ārābunt. 2. Puērī vōcant. 3. Virī laudant. 4. Fīliam<sup>1</sup> rēgīnae laudant. 5. Gēner ārat. 6. Māgistrī vōcant. 7. Fīlium<sup>2</sup> vōcat.

Translate into Latin: —

1. We are ploughing<sup>3</sup> the field.<sup>4</sup> 2. They call the boys. 3. They praise the man's sons. 4. They were praising the men. 5. The queen's daughter is calling.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. What is the dative plural?
  2. Form the genitive and vocative.
  3. How many forms has the indicative present?
  4. Notice the order of the Latin words.
- What endings do nouns in -r drop? Is the vowel *u* in *puer* long or short? Which syllable of *Hōrātius* is accented? Of *Hōrātī*?

## LESSON XVII.

## NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

79. Nouns in *-um* are declined as follows: —

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	bellum, <i>war.</i>	bellā, <i>wars.</i>
GEN.	bellī, <i>of war.</i>	bellōrum, <i>of wars.</i>
DAT.	bellō, <i>to or for war.</i>	bellīs, <i>to or for wars.</i>
ACC.	bellum, <i>war.</i>	bellā, <i>wars.</i>
VOC.	bellum, <i>O war.</i>	bellā, <i>O wars.</i>
ABL.	bellō, <i>with, from, or by war.</i>	bellīs, <i>with, from, or by wars.</i>

1. Like bellum, decline: —

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. templum, <i>temple.</i> | 3. exemplum, <i>example.</i> |
| 2. dōnum, <i>gift.</i>     | 4. oppidum, <i>town.</i>     |

*Dative Case after Transitive Verbs.*

## EXAMPLES.

1. Puērō librum dat, *he gives the book to the boy.*
2. Galba Belgīs insīdiās p̄rat, *Galba prepares snares for the Belgians.*

Obs. In the sentence, *he gives the book to the boy* or *he gives the boy the book*, note that the verb *gives* is transitive, and that it is followed by the direct object, *book*, in the accusative, and an indirect object, *boy*, in the dative. Hence the following rule: —

## INDIRECT OBJECT.

80. RULE VI. — The indirect object of an action is put in the dative.

1. After many transitive verbs the dative of the indirect object is used, together with the accusative of the direct.

2. The indirect object is also used after some intransitive and passive verbs. But some verbs, transitive in English, are intransitive in Latin; and some, intransitive in English, are transitive in Latin.

VOCABULARY.

*littēra*, -ae, f., letter (of alphabet).

*littērae* (pl.), -ārum, f., letter, epistle.

*insīdiae* (pl.), -ārum, suar- s, ambush.

*oppīdum*, -ī, n., town.

*rōsa*, -ae, f., rose.

*matrōna*, -ae, f., married woman.

*cōnsīlium*, -ī, n., counsel, plan.

*auxīlium*, -ī, n., aid.

*festīno*, hasten.

*via*, -ae, f., way, road.

*castellum*, -ī, n., castle, fort.

*castra*, -ōrum, n., camp.

*Belgae*, -ārum, m., Belgians.

*jūgum*, -ī, n., yoke.

*monstro*, show.

*porta*, -ae, f., gate.

*dōno*, give.

*im-plōro*, implore.

✓ **SYN.** *Puērī*, children, as a class; *libērī*, children, with reference to their parents.

EXERCISES.

10 Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English: —

1. *Agrīcōla nautīs viam mōnstrat.*
2. *Mātrōnae filiābus rōsās dant.*
3. *Fīlia<sup>1</sup> rēgīnae puellīs librōs dōnābit.<sup>2</sup>*
4. *Tītus Lābiēnus lēgātus cōnsīlia Gallōrum ēnunciāt.*
5. *Rōmānīs cōnsīlia Belgārūm ēnunciābit.*
6. *Rōmānī oppīda expūgnābunt.*

Translate into Latin: —

1. He gave the book to the boy.
2. Labienus was storming the town.
3. We report the plans of the Gauls.
4. We report the plans of the Gauls to the Romans.
5. They show the way to the men.

PROBLEMS AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Fīlia** is the subject, which is modified by *rēgīnae*; *dōnābit* is the simple predicate, modified by the direct object *librōs*, and the indirect object *puellīs*.

2. Note the order of the words: the indirect object usually precedes the direct.

What nouns of the second declension are neuter? What is the difference in the manner of declining *māgister* and *puer*? What cases are alike in neuter nouns?

## LESSON XVIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

81. Latin Prepositions are used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *in Galliam*, into Gaul.
2. *in Galliā*, in Gaul.
3. *cum vīrīs*, with (in company with) the men.
4. *ex* (or *ē*) *prōvinciā*, from (out of) the province.
5. *per oppīda*, through the towns.

Obs. Note that the preposition *in*, with the accusative, means *into*; with the ablative, it means *in*. *per* means *through*, and is followed by the accusative; *cum* is followed by the ablative, and means *with* (in company with).

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>cum</i> , prep. w. abl., with.	<i>prōvincia</i> , -ae, F., province.
<i>dē</i> , prep. w. abl., from, concerning, for.	<i>sine</i> , prep. w. abl., without.
<i>ē</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>ex</i> , prep. w. abl., from, out of.	<i>Gallia</i> , -ae, F., Gaul.
<i>ā</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>ab</i> , prep. w. abl., from, away from.	<i>in</i> , prep. w. acc., into; w. abl., in or on.
<i>ad</i> , prep. w. acc., to, towards.	<i>ambūlo</i> , walk.
<i>frūmentum</i> , -ī, N., grain.	<i>hābīto</i> , dwell in.
<i>ōra</i> , -ae, F., coast, shore.	<i>porto</i> , carry.
	<i>comporto</i> , collect.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English:—

1. Frūmentum in prōvinciam<sup>2</sup> portant.
2. In oppidō hābitābat.
3. Māgister cum puērīs in agrō ambūlat.
4. Vir ab insūlae orā ambūlat.
5. Cum Belgīs amīcītiā cōnfirmant.
6. Frūmenta ex agrīs comportant.
7. Auxīlium ā virīs implōrant.
8. Rōmānī agrōs vastābunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They dwell in the town.
2. In the province.
3. Into the province.
4. He conveys grain from the fields.
5. In the town.
6. Into the town.
7. He conveys the grain into the town.
8. He walks in the field with (his)<sup>3</sup> son.
9. They walk away from the shore.
10. With the Gauls.
11. He establishes friendship with the Romans.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** and **ex** before either a vowel or a consonant.

2. A preposition with its noun is a *phrase*; when the phrase limits a verb, as it does in this case, it is called an *adverbial phrase*; when it limits a noun, it is an *adjective phrase*. No special model is necessary for parsing nouns with prepositions.

3. Observe the distinction between the prepositions **in** and **ex**, and **ad** and **ab**. **in** (with the accusative) and **ex** denote motion *to* and *from* the *inside* of a place; **ad** and **ab** (or **a**) denote motion *to* and *from* the *outside* of a place. Thus, **venit in Itāliam**, when one comes *into* Italy; **ex Itāliā**, when one comes *out of* Italy; but **ad Itāliam**, *to* Italy, when there is no notion of entering into Italy conveyed; just so **ab Itāliā**, *away from* Italy, when it is simply expressed that he came away from Italy.

3. Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

Which cases do prepositions govern? Mention a preposition that governs the accusative. What kind of a phrase is a preposition and its noun?



## LESSON XIX.

## ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

**82.** Adjectives are words used to describe nouns; and as nouns are of different genders, adjectives are declined to agree with the genders of the noun.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have one form for the masculine gender, another for the feminine, and a third for the neuter. Thus: —

The *masculine* is declined like **dōmīnus**.

The *feminine* is declined like **mēnsa**.

The *neuter* is declined like **bellum**.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **vīr bōnus**, a good man.
2. **rēgīna bōna**, a good queen.
3. **vīrī bōnī**, good men.
4. **vīrōs bōnōs**, good men.
5. **templum māgnūm**, a great temple.

Obs. In these examples, note that the adjectives are all in the same *gender, number, and case* as the nouns. Hence the following rule: —

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

**83. RULE VII.** — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

1. Declension of adjectives of the first and second declensions (stems ending in *-ō-* or *-ā-*) is as follows: —

PARADIGM. — **bōnus**, good.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	bōnus	bōna	bōnum	bōnī	bōnae	bōna
GEN.	bōnī	bōnae	bōnī	bōnōrum	bōnārum	bōnōrum
DAT.	bōnō	bōnae	bōnō	bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs
ACC.	bōnum	bōnam	bōnum	bōnōs	bōnās	bōna
VOC.	bōne	bōna	bōnum	bōnī	bōnae	bōna
ABL.	bōnō	bōnā	bōnō	bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs

2. Decline together **mūrus altus**, a high wall.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<b>mūrus altus</b> , a high wall.	<b>mūrī altī</b> , high walls.
GEN.	<b>mūrī altī</b> , of a high wall.	<b>mūrōrum altōrum</b> , of high walls.
DAT.	<b>mūrō altō</b> , to or for a high wall.	<b>mūrīs altīs</b> , to or for high walls.
ACC.	<b>mūrum altum</b> , a high wall.	<b>mūrōs altōs</b> , high walls.
Voc.	<b>mūre alte</b> , O high wall.	<b>mūrī altī</b> , O high walls.
ABL.	{ <b>mūrō altō</b> , with, from, or by a high wall.	<b>mūrīs altīs</b> , with, from, or by high walls.

3. Adjectives usually stand *after* their nouns, but an emphatic adjective may stand *before* the noun.

4. Adjectives are often used as nouns, especially in the plural masculine or neuter: as. **bōnī**, good men; **multa** (neut. plur.), many things; **omnia**, all things.

## 84. Model for parsing an adjective:—

**rēginam bōnam laudo**, I praise the good queen: **bōnam** is an adjective of the first and second declensions; stems, *bonō-* and *bonā-*; declined, singular *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*, etc.; plural *bōnī*, *bōnae*, *bōnā*, etc. It is in the accusative feminine singular, and agrees with **rēginam**, according to Rule VII.: *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

## VOCABULARY.

<b>multus</b> , -a, -um, many.	<b>dīscīpūlus</b> , -ī, M., pupil.
<b>nōvus</b> , -a, -um, new.	<b>mūrus</b> , -ī, M., wall.
<b>cārus</b> , -a, -um, dear.	<b>lacrima</b> , -ae, F., tear.
<b>altus</b> , -a, -um, high or deep.	<b>Rhēnus</b> , -ī, M., Rhine (river).
<b>māgnus</b> , -a, -um, large.	<b>rīpa</b> , -ae, F., bank.
<b>flūvius</b> , -ī, M., river.	<b>lātus</b> , -a, -um, broad.
<b>rāpīdus</b> , -a, -um, swift.	<b>vērus</b> , -a, -um, true.

SYN. **Mūrus** denotes any wall; **pāries** (gen. -ētis), wall of a house; **moenia** (gen. -ōrum, regularly contracted to -um), -um, wall of a city to protect from the enemy.

ENSIONS.

nouns; and  
re declined

sions have  
e feminine,

od men.  
good men.

re all in the  
e following

eir nouns

nd declen-

Neuter.

bōna  
bōnōrum  
bōnis  
bōna  
bōna  
bōnis

85. Decline together the following, making the adjective agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.

1. oppidum munitum, a fortified town.
2. puer bonus, a good child.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

- 12
1. Multis cum lacrimis.
  2. In<sup>1</sup> provinciam magnam.
  3. Per multos agros.
  4. Bonis cum servis.
  5. Trans<sup>2</sup> Rhenum pugnat.
  6. Importamus frumentum in Galliam.
  7. Magister bonus discipulo<sup>3</sup> caro librum novum dat.
  8. Ad ripam Rheni.

Translate into Latin: —

1. Of the high walls.
2. Across the broad river.
3. The master gives the book to the good boy.
4. With many men.
5. With good slaves.
6. Across the broad rivers.
7. The good girl loves the queen.

X SYN. **Magister** (*magis*, greater) is a master of a school, of a feast, etc.; **dominus**, master of a family, or of slaves.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Note the meaning of **in**, followed by the accusative.
  2. The preposition **trans** is followed by the accusative, and means across.
  3. The pupil is expected to analyze the sentences, to point out the modifiers of the subject and of the predicate, and to parse each word.
- What is an adjective? Of what declensions are adjectives? The rule for the agreement of adjectives?

## LESSON XX.

## ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

86. Besides adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, there are others of three terminations in *-er*, *-a*, *-um*. They are declined as follows: —

PARADIGM. — *niger*, black.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
VOC.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

*tēner*, tender.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	tēner	tēnēra	tēnērum	tēnērī	tēnērae	tēnēra
GEN.	tēnērī	tēnērae	tēnērī	tēnērōrum	tēnērārum	tēnērōrum
DAT.	tēnērō	tēnērae	tēnērō	tēnērīs	tēnērīs	tēnērīs
ACC.	tēnērum	tēnēram	tēnērum	tēnērōs	tēnērās	tēnēra
VOC.	tēner	tēnēra	tēnērum	tēnērī	tēnērae	tēnēra
ABL.	tēnērō	tēnērā	tēnērō	tēnērīs	tēnērīs	tēnērīs

1. *niger* is declined in the masculine like *māgister*, and drops the *e*; *tēner* is declined in the masculine like *puer*, and keeps the *e*. Both are declined in the feminine like *mensa*, and in the neuter like *bellum*.

2. Most adjectives in *-er* drop the *e* in inflection; *i.e.*, are declined like *niger*. The following retain the *e*, and are declined like *tēner* : —

- |                             |                            |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>miser</i> , wretched. | 4. <i>alter</i> , another. | 7. <i>gibber</i> , crook-backed. |
| 2. <i>asper</i> , rough.    | 5. <i>exter</i> , outside. | 8. <i>liber</i> , free.          |
| 3. <i>tēner</i> , tender.   | 6. <i>lacer</i> , torn.    | 9. <i>prosper</i> , fortunate.   |

And the compounds of *-ger* and *-fer*.

87. Decline together, making the Adjective agree with the Noun in gender, number, and case : —

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>puer aeger</i> , a sick boy.           | 2. <i>vir liber</i> , a free man. |
| 3. <i>puella pulchra</i> , a beautiful girl. |                                   |

## VOCABULARY.

aeger, -gra, -grum, <i>sick</i> .	pöpulus, -i, M., <i>people</i> .
miser, -era, -erum, <i>wretched</i> .	meus, -a, -um (voc. M. mī), <i>my</i> .
noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	pēricūlum, -i, N., <i>danger</i> .
asper, -era, -erum, <i>rough</i> .	lōcus, <sup>2</sup> -i, M., <i>place</i> .
Römānus, <sup>1</sup> -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	castra, -ōrum (pl.), N., <i>camp</i> .
Rhōdānus, -i, M., <i>Rhone (river)</i> .	mātrīmōnium, -i, N., <i>marriage</i> .
occūpo, <i>seize</i> .	lūdus, -i, M., <i>school</i> .

X SYN. Miser (opp. beātus, *fortunate*), said of one who feels himself *unfortunate*; infēlix (opp. fēlix), of one for whom nothing goes according to his wish.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each nom., and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

- 12  
1. Māgnō cum<sup>3</sup> pēriculō. 2. Ex Galliā. 3. In Galliam.  
4. In Galliā. 5. Trāns Rhōdānum in Galliam. 6. In aspēris  
lōcis castra lāta conlōcat. 7. Römānī libēra Gallōrum<sup>4</sup> op-  
pida occūpant. 8. Puellae bōnac rēgīnam pulchram āmant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. In great danger. 2. With great danger. 3. (In com-  
pany with) the beautiful girl. 4. The beautiful girl loves  
the queen. 5. Out of Gaul into Italy. 6. Into the free  
town. 7. The Roman people seize the towns.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

X 1. In the Latin expression for *Roman people* the adjective Römānus always follows the noun.

2. lōcus is masculine in the singular, but is both masculine and neuter in the plural, and is thus declined: nom. lōcī, *passages in books*, and lōca, *places*; gen. lōcōrum; dat. lōcīs; acc. lōcōs and lōca; voc. lōcī and lōca; abl. lōcīs.

X 3. cum stands between the adjective and the noun.

4. The genitive of the possessor (190) usually stands between the noun and the adjective limiting the noun.

With what cases are Latin prepositions used? When is in used with the accusative? What is the gender of nouns of the second declension? How does virī agrī differ in meaning from agrī virī!

What is the meaning of **castra** in the singular? (See General Vocab.)  
 What is the regular position of an adjective? What is the stem of **tēner**? Is *-a* final in the first declension ever long? When? What is the regular position of the genitive? Give the reasons for the accent of the following words: **āmīcī, servōrum, tēnēra, Rhōdānus.**

LESSON XXI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.

88. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses denote completed action, and are formed by adding the endings to the perfect stem.

89. The Perfect Stem of a verb of the First Conjugation is formed by adding *-vī* to the present stem; as,

EXAMPLES.

Pres. Infln.	Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Perf. Ind.
āmāre pūgnāre	āmā- pūgnā-	āmāvī- pūgnāvī-	āmāvī pūgnāvī

Obs. The *i* in the perfect is undoubtedly a part of the stem; and, as there is nothing to be gained by considering *āmāv-* the perfect stem, the correct form is here given.

PERFECT TENSE.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.		
			Perfect.	Aorist.	
Sing. 1	Perf. stem	āmāvī	<i>I have loved.</i>	<i>I loved, or</i>	
	“ “ + stī	āmāvīstī		<i>I did love.</i>	
	“ “ + t	āmāvīt		<i>Thou lovedst.</i>	
Plur. 1	“ “ + mus	āmāvīmus	<i>He has loved.</i>	<i>He loved.</i>	
	“ “ + stis	āmāvīstis		<i>We have loved.</i>	
	“ “ } + runt or re	āmāvērunt or āmāvēre		<i>We loved.</i>	
2	“ “		<i>You have loved.</i>	<i>You loved.</i>	
				<i>They have loved.</i>	<i>They loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	ămăvēram	<i>I had loved.</i>
2	" " + rās	ămăvērās	<i>Thou hadst loved.</i>
3	" " + rat	ămăvērat	<i>He had loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rāmus	ămăvērāmus	<i>We had loved.</i>
2	" " + rātis	ămăvērātis	<i>You had loved.</i>
3	" " + rant	ămăvērant	<i>They had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ro	ămăvēro	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
2	" " + ris	ămăvēris	<i>Thou wilt have loved.</i>
3	" " + rit	ămăvērit	<i>He will have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rīmus	ămăvērīmus	<i>We shall have loved.</i>
2	" " + rītis	ămăvērītis	<i>You will have loved.</i>
3	" " + rint	ămăvērint	<i>They will have loved.</i>

Obs. The characteristic vowel of the stem is shortened in the first person plural of the perfect, and in the third person plural it is changed to *ē*; in the pluperfect and future perfect it is changed to *ĕ*. Final consonants are usually less distinctly pronounced, and for this reason are oftener dropped. In this way **ămăvērunt** is shortened to **ămăvēre**,—in this form *v* is never dropped.

## 1. Analysis of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active of all Conjugations:—

1. Perfect = Perf. stem + Personal endings.
2. Pluperfect = " " + Tense sign *-ra-* + Personal endings.
3. Fut. perfect = " " + Tense sign *-ri-* + Personal endings.

2. In the tenses formed from the perfect stem, *v* between two vowels is often suppressed, and the second vowel is merged in the first (except *ie*); as,

## EXAMPLES.

PLUPERFECT . . . .	ămăvēram =	ămaeram =	ămāram
FUTURE PERFECT . . .	ămăvēro =	ămaero =	ămāro
PERFECT, 3d per. plur. .	ămăvērunt =	ămaerunt =	ămārunt
PERFECT, 2d per. plur. .	ămăvistī =	ămaistī =	ămāstī

3. The synopsis of the verb consists of the different forms, arranged according to the stems (see p. 261). The synopsis of the Indicative Mode is as follows:—

PRESENT STEM, <i>āmā-</i> .			PERFECT STEM, <i>āmāvī-</i> .		
PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
IND. . .	<i>āmo</i>	<i>āmābam</i>	<i>āmābo</i>	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmāvēram</i> <i>āmāvēro</i>

## VOCABULARY.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
<i>vōcō</i>	<i>vōcāre</i>	<i>vōcāvī</i> , <i>call</i> .
<i>occūpo</i>	<i>occūpāre</i>	<i>occūpāvī</i> , <i>seize, occupy</i> .
<i>vasto</i>	<i>vastāre</i>	<i>vastāvī</i> , <i>lay waste, devastate</i> .
<i>vōlo</i>	<i>vōlāre</i>	<i>vōlāvī</i> , <i>fly</i> .
<i>vulnēro</i>	<i>vulnērare</i>	<i>vulnērāvī</i> , <i>wound</i> .
<i>rōgo</i>	<i>rōgāre</i>	<i>rōgāvī</i> , <i>ask</i> .
<i>dō</i>	<i>dāre</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>dēdī</i> , <i>give</i> .
<i>hiēmo</i>	<i>hiēmāre</i>	<i>hiēmāvī</i> , <i>pass the winter</i> .

*in mātīmōnium dāre*, to give in marriage.

SYN. *Vōco*, call, and to address with the appropriate title; *nōmīno*, call, or mention by name.

## EXERCISES.

3 Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. *Vōcāvērāt*.
2. *Pūgnāvērīt*.
3. *Pūgnābīt*.
4. *Rōgāvērātīs*.
5. *Vōcāvērīmūs*.
6. *Laudāvērīt*.
7. *Vastāvīt*.<sup>2</sup>
8. *Gallī oppīdum occūpāvērānt*.
9. *Amīcītiām cum Rōmānīs cōfirmāvērīt*.
10. *Cirenn<sup>3</sup> Rōmān hiēmāvērānt*.
11. *Cassīus Tit<sup>4</sup> filiām in mātīmōnium dēdīt*.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They had called.
2. We have called.
3. Ye were calling.
4. They will call.
5. They call, or are calling.
6. They did fight.
7. They fought.
8. They have fought.
9. They had fought.
10. We praise the boy.
11. We praised the boy.
12. We have praised the boy.
13. We had praised.
14. We shall have praised.

English.

loved.  
hadst loved.  
d loved.  
ad loved.  
ad loved.  
had loved.

have loved.  
wilt have loved.  
ll have loved.  
all have loved.  
will have loved.  
will have loved.

ortened in the  
erson plural it  
perfect it is  
distinctly pro-  
In this way  
rn *v* is never

uture Perfect

sonal endings.  
sonal endings.

n, *v* between  
nd vowel is

= *āmāram*  
= *āmāro*  
= *āmārunt*  
= *āmāstī*



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **do** is irregular; it has a short before *-re*, and the perfect is **dēdī**.
2. Translate the perfect both ways; as, *he has laid waste, and he laid waste.*
3. The preposition **circum** means *around*, and is followed by the accusative, as are also **trāns**, *across*, **inter**, *between, among*, and **propter**, *on account of*.
4. Note the two objects of **dēdīt**.

Obs. Note that the pluperfect and future perfect have, in addition to the personal endings, a tense sign, *-ra, -ri*; as,

**āmāvē-ra-nt**, *loved-had-they*,

the perfect stem being **āmāvī-**; the pluperfect tense sign *-ra*, *had*; the personal ending *-nt*, *they*.

What kind of time does the perfect denote? What are the divisions of time? How is the present stem found? The perfect stem? Decline **fīlia**.

## LESSON XXII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.—QUESTIONS.

90. Simple sentences are, in Latin as in English:—

1. DECLARATIVE; as, **puer laudat**, *the boy praises.*
2. INTERROGATIVE; as, **puerne<sup>1</sup> laudat**, *does the boy praise?*
3. IMPERATIVE; as, **laudāte**, *praise ye.*
4. EXCLAMATORY; as, **quam fortiter pūgnat**, *how bravely he fights!*

91. In Latin, questions are asked by means of Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs, or Particles, and are not distinguished by the order of the words, as they are in English.

1. In simple questions, expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, an Interrogative Particle is used, indicating what answer is expected.

a. Questions with the syllable *-ne* appended (enclitic) ask for information, without indicating what answer is expected.

b. Questions with *nōne* expect the answer *yes*.

c. Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*.

2. For questions with Interrogative Pronouns, see 245.

92. The Imperative Mode is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties.

## PRESENT.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem	amā	<i>Love, or love thou.</i>
3	—	—	—
<i>Plur.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem + te	amāte	<i>Love, or love ye.</i>
3	—	—	—

## FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem + to	amāto	<i>Thou shalt love.</i>
3	“ “ + to	amāto	<i>He shall love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem + tōte	amātōte	<i>Ye shall love.</i>
3	“ “ + nto	amanto	<i>They shall love.</i>

## VOCATIVE.

93. RULE VIII. — The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

## VOCABULARY.

arma, -ōrum (pl.), N., *arms.*

proelium, -ī, N., *battle.*

Galba, -ae, M., *Galba.*

porta, -ae, F., *gate.*

aedificium, -ī, N., *building.*

vir, virī, M., *man.*

insidiae, -ārum (pl.), F., *snares.*

rōsa, -ae, F., *rose.*

narro, tell, *narrate.*

cōpia, -ae, F., *abundance.*

cōpiae (pl.), F., *forces.*

Tītus, -ī, M., *Titus.*

nātūra, -ae, F., *nature.*

nēgōtium, -ī, N., *business.*

SYN. **Vir**, a man, a distinguished man, a husband; **hōmo**, -**īnis**, a man, a human being, includes both sexes (**hōmo**, when opposed to **vir** = a fellow).

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. **Vastāte** prōvinciam. 2. **Vitā**, **Tite**, proelium. 3. **Vocā** puērōs. 4. **Mātrōnae**<sup>1</sup> puellam vocat? Vocat. 5. **Nōnne** Galba īnsidiās parat? 6. **Num** poēta rēgīnac<sup>2</sup> rōsam dat? 7. **Mātūrāte**, virī.<sup>3</sup> 8. **Mātūrā**, Cassī.<sup>4</sup> 9. **Dāte**, virī, Rōmānīs arma.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Call. 2. Call (ye). 3. Call the men. 4. Does the sailor call? Yes. 5. Does the farmer plough? 6. Tell the story. 7. Call the men, Cassius. 8. Hasten, men. 9. Haste (ye). 10. Call the men from<sup>5</sup> the fields. 11. Praise (ye). 12. Praise the pupils.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **-ne** is an enclitic, *i.e.* it seems to lean on the word before it. The most common enclitics are **-que** (*and*), **-ve**, and **-ne**, used in asking questions, and also **cum**, *with*, when used with pronouns; as,—

**puērī puellaeque adsunt**, *the boys, and girls too, are here.*

**-que** is the enclitic; in English, *too* is the enclitic. The **-ne** appended to **mātrōna** in Ex. 4 throws the accent on the penult; as, **mā-trō-na'ne**.

2. Dative case.

3. See Rule VIII.

4. See 75. 5.

5. Use the preposition.

From what stem is the imperative formed? Does the imperative denote completed action? Give the personal endings of the imperative. Note that the imperative has no first person. How many tenses has the imperative?

Obs. For words not found in the short vocabularies, consult the general vocabulary.

LESSON XXIII.

NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**94.** Nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-is* belong to the Third Declension.

*a.* The nominative endings are various: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t,* and *x*; and nouns of all three genders belong to this declension.

**95** Nouns of the Third Declension may be divided into classes:—

- 1. Nouns whose stem ends in a consonant.
- 2. Nouns whose stem ends in the vowel *i*.

**96.** Nouns whose stem ends in a consonant increase in the genitive; that is, the genitive has more syllables than the nominative; as, *jūdex, jūdīc-is*.

**97.** Nouns whose stem ends in a vowel do not increase in the genitive; as, *turris, turris*. See **110** and **113**.

**98.** Consonant stems are divided, like the consonants, into—

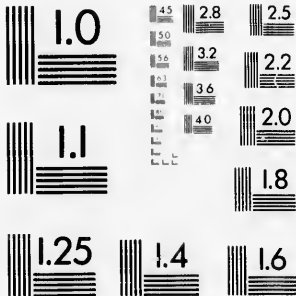
- 1. Labial stems . . . . . *p, b, v, m.*
- 2. Dental stems . . . . . *t, d, s, n.*
- 3. Lingual stems . . . . . *r, l.*
- 4. Guttural stems . . . . . *c, g.*

**99.** The sign of the Nominative Singular is *s*, which, however, is dropped after *l, n, r, s*, or combines with *c* or *g* of the stem to form *x = c* or *g + s*; *t* or *d* disappears before *s*; as, st. *milit- + s = mīlits = mīlis* (with change of vowel) = *mīles*. The nominative of neuter nouns is the same as the stem (with sometimes changed vowel, see **100. 2**).



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

## I. Consonant Stems.

100. Stems ending in a Labial: *p, b, v, m*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>prīnceps</i> , <i>m.</i> , a chief.	<i>prīncipēs</i> , chiefs.
GEN.	<i>prīncipis</i> , of a chief.	<i>prīncipum</i> , of chiefs.
DAT.	<i>prīncipī</i> , to or for a chief.	<i>prīncipibus</i> , to or for chiefs.
ACC.	<i>prīncipem</i> , a chief.	<i>prīncipēs</i> , chiefs.
VOC.	<i>prīnceps</i> , O chief.	<i>prīncipēs</i> , O chiefs.
ABL.	<i>prīncipe</i> , with, from, or by a chief.	<i>prīncipibus</i> , with, from, or by chiefs.

Cases.		<i>trabs</i> , <i>F.</i> , a beam.	<i>hiems</i> , <i>F.</i> , winter.	Case-Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	<i>trabs</i>	<i>hiēms</i>	-s
	GEN.	<i>trābis</i>	<i>hiēmīs</i>	-īs
	DAT.	<i>trābī</i>	<i>hiēmī</i>	-ī
	ACC.	<i>trābem</i>	<i>hiēmēm</i>	-em
	VOC.	<i>trabs</i>	<i>hiēms</i>	-s
	ABL.	<i>trābe</i>	<i>hiēme</i>	-e
Plural.	NOM.	<i>trābēs</i>	<i>hiēmēs</i>	-ēs
	GEN.	<i>trābūm</i>	<i>hiēmūm</i>	-um
	DAT.	<i>trābibus</i>	<i>hiēmibus</i>	-ibus
	ACC.	<i>trābēs</i>	<i>hiēmēs</i>	-ēs
	VOC.	<i>trābēs</i>	<i>hiēmēs</i>	-ēs
	ABL.	<i>trābibus</i>	<i>hiēmibus</i>	-ibus

1. Note that the stems are **prīncip-**, **trāb-**, **hiēm-**.

2. In forming the nominative, the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is often changed. The most common changes are:—

- (1) From *i* to *e*; as **prīnceps**, from stem **prīncip-**.
- (2) From *i* to *u*; as **cāput**, from stem **cāpīt-**.
- (3) From *i* to *o*; as **virgo**, from stem **virgīn-**.
- (4) From *o* to *u*; as **corpus**, from stem **corpor-** (which stands for **corpos-**).
- (5) From *e* to *u*; as **ōpus**, from stem **ōpēr-**.

3. The case-endings of *princeps* appear distinct and separate from the stem.

4. The genitive ending *-is* is short.

## VOCABULARY.

*inter*, prep. w. acc., *between*,  
*among*.

*verbum*, -i, n., *word*.

*princeps*, *principis*, m., *chief*,  
*leader*.

*Cassius*, -i, m., *Cassius*.

*sub*, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under*.

*conjūro*, *conjūrāre*, *conjūrāvī*  
*plot*, *conspire*.

*Divitiācus*, -i, m., *Divitiacus*.

*fābūla*, -ae, f., *story*, *fable*.

*ēlōquentia*, -ae, f., *eloquence*.

✓ **Syn.** *Princeps* (*prīmus cāpio*), the *foremost*, whose example others follow, — the first in *rank* and *authority*; *prīmus*, the first in *time* and *order* (often interchangeable).

**101.** Decline together the following : —

1. *princeps māgnus*, a great chief.

2. *trabs longa*, a long beam.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs : —

1. Ad *prīncipem* Galliae. 2. Cum *prīncipe* Galliae.  
3. *Prīncipēs* circum Rōmam hiēmāvērunt. 4. *Tītus prīncipēs* laudat. 5. Cum *prīncipibus*. 6. *Vir prīncipēs* vocat.

Translate into Latin : —

1. With<sup>1</sup> the chiefs. 2. He praises the chiefs. 3. The chiefs have passed the winter around Rome. 4. To *Divitiācus*, the chief<sup>2</sup> of the Gauls.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. In company *with* = *cum*.

2. Appositive.

How are nouns of the third declension classified? How is the nominative formed from the stem? How is the stem formed? Of what genders are nouns of the third declension?



## LESSON XXIV.

## NOUNS.—THIRD DECLENSION.

102. Stems ending in Dentals: *t, d, s, n*.1. Stems in *t, d*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	pēs, <i>m., a foot.</i>	pēdēs, <i>feet.</i>
GEN.	pēdis, <i>of a foot.</i>	pēdum, <i>of feet.</i>
DAT.	pēdī, <i>to or for a foot.</i>	pēdibus, <i>to or for feet.</i>
ACC.	pēdem, <i>foot.</i>	pēdēs, <i>feet.</i>
VOC.	pēs, <i>O foot.</i>	pēdēs, <i>O feet.</i>
ABL.	pēde, <i>with, from, or by a foot.</i>	pēdibus, <i>with, from, or by feet.</i>
NOM.	mīles, <i>m., a soldier.</i>	militēs, <i>soldiers.</i>
GEN.	militis, <i>of a soldier.</i>	militum, <i>of soldiers.</i>
DAT.	militī, <i>to or for a soldier.</i>	militibus, <i>to or for soldiers.</i>
ACC.	militem, <i>soldier.</i>	militēs, <i>soldiers.</i>
VOC.	mīles, <i>O soldier.</i>	militēs, <i>O soldiers.</i>
ABL.	militē, <i>with, from, or by a soldier.</i>	militibus, <i>with, from, or by soldiers.</i>

2. Stems in *s (r)*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>m., flower.</i>	fūrēs, <i>flowers.</i>
GEN.	fōris, <i>a flower.</i>	fōrum, <i>of flowers.</i>
DAT.	fōrī, <i>to or for a flower.</i>	fōribus, <i>to or for flowers.</i>
ACC.	fōrem, <i>flower.</i>	fūrēs, <i>flowers.</i>
VOC.	fōs, <i>O flower.</i>	fūrēs, <i>O flowers.</i>
ABL.	fōre, <i>with, from, or by a flower.</i>	fōribus, <i>with, from, or by flowers.</i>

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		opus, N., work.	corpus, N., body.	gēnus, N., kind.	fulgur, N., lightning.
Singular.	NOM.	ōpus	corpus	gēnus	fulgur
	GEN.	ōpēris	corpōris	gēnēris	fulgūris
	DAT.	ōperī	corpōrī	gēnērī	fulgūrī
	ACC.	ōpus	corpus	gēnus	fulgur
	VOC.	ōpus	corpus	gēnus	fulgur
	ABL.	ōpēre	corpōre	gēnēre	fulgūre
Plural.	NOM.	ōpēra	corpōra	gēnēra	fulgūra
	GEN.	ōpērum	corpōrum	gēnērum	fulgūrum
	DAT.	ōpēribus	corpōribus	gēnēribus	fulgūribus
	ACC.	ōpēra	corpōra	gēnēra	fulgūra
	VOC.	ōpēra	corpōra	gēnēra	fulgūra
	ABL.	ōpēribus	corpōribus	gēnēribus	fulgūribus

3. Stems in *n*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		rēgiō, F., region.	virgo, F., virgin.	nomen, N., name.
Singular.	NOM.	rēgiō	virgo	nōmen
	GEN.	rēgiōnis	virginis	nōminis
	DAT.	rēgiōnī	virginī	nōminī
	ACC.	rēgiōnem	virginem	nōmen
	VOC.	rēgiō	virgo	nōmen
	ABL.	rēgiōne	virgine	nōmine
Plural.	NOM.	rēgiōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
	GEN.	rēgiōnum	virginum	nōminum
	DAT.	rēgiōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus
	ACC.	rēgiōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
	VOC.	rēgiōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
	ABL.	rēgiōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus

a. The stems are **pēd**, **mīllī**\*, **flōr**-, **ōpēr**-, **corpōr**-, **gēnēr**-, **fulgūr**-, **rēgiōn**-, **virgin**-, **nōmīn**-; in some instances the vowel is variable.

b. Note that the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*; as, **pēs** for **pēds**, **mīles** for **mīllits** (with change of vowel).

c. Note that *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels; as, *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*); *hōnos*, later form *hōnor*, *hōnoris* (for *hōnōsis*).

d. In the nominative and vocative singular, the case-ending *s* is sometimes dropped; as, *fulgur*, *rēgiō*, *virgo*, *nōmen*. Nominatives in *o* have also lost the final *n* of the stem; the stem of *rēgiō* is *rēgiōn*.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>cāput</i> , <i>cāpītis</i> , N., <i>head</i> .	<i>carmen</i> , <i>-inis</i> , N., <i>song</i> .
<i>flūmen</i> , <i>flūmīnis</i> , N., <i>river</i> .	<i>lēgātīō</i> , <i>lēgātīōnis</i> , F., <i>embassy</i> .
<i>Jūra</i> , -ae, N., <i>the Jura</i> .	<i>virtūs</i> , <i>virtūtis</i> , F., <i>valor</i> .
<i>ob</i> , prep. w. acc., <i>on account of</i> .	<i>longus</i> , -a, -um, <i>long</i> .
<i>canto</i> , -āre, <i>āvī</i> , <i>sing.</i>	<i>cūpīditās</i> , -ātis, F., <i>desire</i> .

SYN. *Pōpūlus* (originally the patricians) came to include the whole people; *plebs*, the plebeians, a part of the people without political rights, until political equality was established by the Licinian law, B.C. 367; *Quīrītēs*, the Roman people in their civil capacity.

## 103. Decline together the following: —

1. *caput māgnūm*, a large head.
2. *mīles bōnus*, a good soldier.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs: —

1. *Mīlītēs laudant*.
2. *Rēgīna virtūtem mīlitūm laudat*.
3. *Virgīnēs carmen longūm cantant*.
4. *Ad flūmen Rhōdānum*.
5. *Mīlītēs ob cūpīditātem glōriæ pūgnant*.
6. *Prīnceps mōrēs vīrīs<sup>1</sup> dābat*.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Note that the ending *-is* is long in plural cases of the second declension.

How is the stem of nouns of the third declension found? What cases are alike in neuter nouns? The stems of Latin words often appear in English words derived from the Latin; as, *prīncip-al* (*prīncip-*, stem of *prīnceps*).

## LESSON XXV.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

104. Stems ending in a Lingual: *r, l*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	victor, <i>m., a conqueror.</i>	victōrēs, <i>conquerors.</i>
GEN.	victōris, <i>of a conqueror.</i>	victōrum, <i>of conquerors.</i>
DAT.	victōrī, <i>to or for a conqueror.</i>	victōribus, <i>to or for conquerors.</i>
ACC.	victōrem, <i>conqueror.</i>	victōrēs, <i>conquerors.</i>
VOC.	victor, <i>O conqueror.</i>	victōrēs, <i>O conquerors.</i>
ABL.	victōre, <i>with, from, or by a conqueror.</i>	victōribus, <i>with, from, or by conquerors.</i>

1. In the nominative and vocative singular of **victor**, *s* is not added.

2. Most nouns in *-er* are declined like **anser**, but those in *-ter*, and a few others, are declined like **pāter** : —

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		sol, <i>m., sun.</i>	cōsul, <i>m., consul.</i>	pāter, <i>m., father.</i>	anser, <i>m., goose.</i>
Singular.	NOM.	sōl	cōsul	pāter	anser
	GEN.	sōlis	cōsūlis	patris	ansēris
	DAT.	sōlī	sūlī	patri	ansērī
	ACC.	sōlem	onsūlem	patrem	ansērem
	VOC.	sōl	cōsul	pāter	anser
	ABL.	sōle	cōsūle	patre	ansēre
Plural.	NOM.	sōlēs	cōsūlēs	patrēs	ansērēs
	GEN.	—	cōsūlum	patrum	ansērum
	DAT.	sōlibus	cōsūlibus	patribus	ansēribus
	ACC.	sōlēs	cōsūlēs	patrēs	ansērēs
	VOC.	sōlēs	cōsūlēs	patrēs	ansērēs
	ABL.	sōlibus	cōsūlibus	patribus	ansēribus

## VOCABULARY.

cōsul, cōsūlis, M., <i>consul</i> .	sōror, sōrōris, F., <i>sister</i> .
agger, aggeris, M., <i>mound</i> .	impērātor, -tōris, M., <i>commander</i> .
frāter, frātris, M., <i>brother</i> .	ōrātor, ōrātōris, M., <i>orator</i> .
Caesar, Caesāris, M., <i>Cæsar</i> .	victor, victōris, M., <i>victor</i> .

## 105. Decline together the following:—

1. cōsul dēsīgnātus, *consul elect*.
2. tīmor māgnus, *great fear*.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give the stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Cōsul ōrātōrem laudat.
2. Cōsul ōrātōris elōquentiam laudāvit.
3. Frāter sōrōrem amat.
4. Fratrem libērāvit.
5. Caesar sōrōrem in matrīmōnium dedit (*gave*).
6. Caesar cōsul cōsūlem Tītum accūsāverat.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They have praised the orator.
2. They praise the orator's eloquence.
3. The brothers love (their) sisters.
4. They have liberated the consul.
5. To Cæsar, the consul.
6. They accuse Cæsar, the consul.
7. The judge praises the king.
8. I praise the justice of the king.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

How is the nominative singular of most nouns formed? (*Ans.* The nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem.) What exceptions? (*Ans.* Neuters, and nouns whose stem ends in a lingual.) pāter, māter, frāter (gen. patris, matris, fratris), seem not to increase in the genitive. The stems are really pāter, māter, frāter, and they are contracted to pātr-, mātr-, frātr-; *i.e.*, pātris stands for pāteris, etc.

## LESSON XXVI.

## NOUNS.—THIRD DECLENSION.

106. Stems ending in a Guttural: *c, g*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	jūdex, M., <i>a judge.</i>	jūdicēs, <i>judges.</i>
GEN.	jūdicis, <i>of a judge.</i>	jūdicum, <i>of judges.</i>
DAT.	jūdicī, <i>to or for a judge.</i>	jūdicibus, <i>to or for judges.</i>
ACC.	jūdicem, <i>judge.</i>	jūdicēs, <i>judges.</i>
VOC.	jūdex, <i>O judge.</i>	jūdicēs, <i>O judges.</i>
ABL.	jūdice, <i>with, from, or by a judge.</i>	jūdicibus, <i>with, from, or by judges.</i>

Cases.		rēx, M., <i>king.</i>	rādīx, F., <i>root.</i>	dux, M. & F., <i>leader.</i>	lex, F., <i>law.</i>
Singular.	NOM.	rēx	rādīx	dux	lēx
	GEN.	rēgis	rādīcis	dūcis	lēgis
	DAT.	rēgī	rādīcī	dūcī	lēgī
	ACC.	rēgem	rādīcem	dūcem	lēgem
	VOC.	rēx	rādīx	dux	lex
	ABL.	rēge	rādīce	dūce	lēge
Plural.	NOM.	rēgēs	rādīcēs	dūces	lēgēs
	GEN.	rēgum	rādīcum	dūcum	lēgum
	DAT.	rēgibus	rādīcibus	dūcibus	lēgibus
	ACC.	rēgēs	rādīcēs	dūcēs	lēgēs
	VOC.	rēgēs	rādīcēs	dūcēs	lēgēs
	ABL.	rēgibus	rādīcibus	dūcibus	lēgibus

1. Note that the stems are *rādīc-*, *rēg-*, *rādīc-*, *dūc-*, and *lēg-*; *jūdic-* has a variable vowel.

2. The case-endings are the same as those given in 100.

3. The *s* of the nominative and vocative singular unites with *c* or *g* of the stem to form *x*; as, *rēgs* = *rēx*. See 32. 2.

## FINAL SYLLABLES.

4. Hitherto long final syllables have been marked; the quantity of final syllables will hereafter be marked only when not determined by the following rules:—

- a. Most monosyllables are long.  
 b. Final *i*, *o*, and *u* are long; *a*, *e*, and *y*, short. Final *a* is long in the ablative singular of the first declension.  
 c. Final *as*, *es*, and *os* are long; *is*, *us*, and *ys*, short.

5. In the increments of nouns and of adjectives *a* and *o* are generally long; *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, short.

Exc. *-is* is long in plural cases.

## VOCABULARY.

vōx, vōcis, F., <i>voice</i> .	gēnus, gēnēris, N., <i>kind</i> .
sine, prep. w. abl., <i>without</i> .	glōria, -ae, F., <i>glory</i> .
rēx, rēgis, M., <i>king</i> .	urbs, urbis, F., <i>city</i> .
rādix, rādīcis, F., <i>root</i> .	rēgūla, -ae, F., <i>rue</i> .

107. Decline together the following:—

1. flūmen lātum, *a broad river*.
2. pāter vester, *your father*.

SYN. Flūmen (*fluo*, *to flow*), properly a *stream*, with the idea of *flowing*; flūvius, general word for a *river*; amnis, *a broad, deep river*; rīvus, *a brook*.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Rēgēs pūgnāvērunt.
2. Rēgem vocāvistī.
3. Rōgīna iudicem bēnignū landābat.
4. Jūdex pūerō librūm dōnat.
5. Sine rēge.
6. Ad rēgem.
7. Multa gēnēra frūmentī importābimus.
8. Prīncipēs Gallōrum pūgnāvērunt.
9. Rōmulus frātre m libērāvit.
10. Rōmulus urbī nōvāe nōmen dat.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What nouns belong to the third declension? What is meant by the stem of a word? How may the stem of nouns of the third declension be found? (*Ans.* 1st. The stem of nouns ending in a consonant is found by dropping is of the genitive singular; 2d. The stem of nouns ending in a vowel is found by dropping es of the genitive singular; 3d. The stem of monosyllabic nouns ending in two consonants is found by dropping -is for the singular, and -s only for the plural: as, **urbs**, *st. urb-* (sing.), *urbi-* (plural). See 113.) What becomes of the *s* that is added to the stem to form the nominative in **dūx** (gen. **dūc-is**)? of the *d* in the stem of **lāpis** (gen. **lāpid-is**)? What is the ending of the genitive singular of nouns of the third declension?

## LESSON XXVII.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**108.** Vowel stems of the Third Declension end in *-i*; as, **turris**, stem *turrī-*. Nouns of this class include the following:—

1. Nouns in *-is* and *-es* not increasing in the genitive.
2. Nouns in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.
3. Monosyllables with stems ending in two consonants.
4. Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<b>turris</b> , <i>F., a tower.</i>	<b>turrēs</b> , <i>towers.</i>
GEN.	<b>turris</b> , <i>of a tower.</i>	<b>turrium</b> , <i>of towers.</i>
DAT.	<b>turrī</b> , <i>to or for a tower.</i>	<b>turribus</b> , <i>to or for towers.</i>
ACC.	<b>turrem</b> , or <b>-im</b> , <i>a tower.</i>	<b>turrēs</b> , or <b>-īs</b> , <i>towers.</i>
VOC.	<b>turris</b> , <i>O tower.</i>	<b>turrēs</b> , <i>O towers.</i>
ABL.	<b>turre</b> , <b>-ī</b> , <i>with, from, or by a tower.</i>	<b>turribus</b> , <i>with, from, or by towers.</i>



## PARADIGMS

Cases.		īgnis, M., <i>fire.</i>	hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	nūbēs, F., <i>cloud.</i>	Case- Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	īgnis	hostis	nūbēs	-is, -ēs
	GEN.	īgnis	hostis	nūbis	-is
	DAT.	īgnī	hostī	nūbī	-ī
	ACC.	īgnem	hostem	nūbem	-em, -im
	VOC.	īgnis	ostis	nubis	-is
	ABL.	īgne, -ī	hoste	nūbe	-e, -ī
Plural.	NOM.	īgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs	-ēs
	GEN.	īgnium	hostium	nūbium	-ium
	DAT.	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus	-ibus
	ACC.	īgnēs, -is	hostēs, -is	nūbēs, -is	-es, -is
	VOC.	īgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs	-ēs
	ABL.	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus	-ibus

1. Only five or six nouns in common use have *-i-ā* in the accusative singular; and about as many have *-em* or *-im*.
2. All stems in *-i-* have *-ium* in the genitive plural; the accusative plural is often written *-is* instead of *-ēs*.

## 109. Decline together the following:—

1. ignis cōlūrus, a bright fire.
2. collis asper, a rugged hill.

## VOCABULARY.

cānis, cānis, M. and F., <i>dog.</i>	inter, prep. w. acc., <i>between,</i> <i>among.</i>
hostis, hostis, M. and F., <i>enemy.</i>	fīnis, fīnis, M., <i>limit; pl., territory.</i>
supĕro, -āre, -āvī, <i>conquer.</i>	nūmĕrus, -ī, M., <i>number.</i>
prō, prep. w. abl., <i>before, for,</i> <i>instead of.</i>	latro, latrāre, latrāvī, <i>bark.</i>

17  
X SYN. **Hostis** is a foreign enemy in war; **inimicus**, a private, personal enemy; **adversarius**, any opponent.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Cānis<sup>1</sup> latrat.
2. Nōnne hostēs agrōs vastant?
3. Caesar hostēs supĕrābat.
4. Rēx turrēs oppugnābit.

5. *Militēs* pro libertate pugnaut. 6. Inter finēs Gallōrum.  
7. In hostium nūmērō. 8. Cānēs pugnaut. 9. Caesar  
turrim oppugnābat.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Cānis* forms the genitive plural in *-um*, as *cānum*; so also *pānis*, *bread*: and *jūvēnis*, *a youth*.

Do nouns having *i*-stems increase in the genitive? What is meant by increasing in the genitive? How do such nouns form the nominative from the stem? What vowel change is common? In what does the genitive plural usually end?

## LESSON XXVIII.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

110. Neuters ending in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar* are declined as follows: —

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		<i>māre, sea.</i>	<i>ānīmal, an animal.</i>	<i>calcār, spur.</i>	Case-Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	<i>māre</i>	<i>ānīmal</i>	<i>calcār</i>	<i>-e</i>
	GEN.	<i>māris</i>	<i>ānīmālis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	<i>-is</i>
	DAT.	<i>marī</i>	<i>ānīmālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
	ACC.	<i>māre</i>	<i>ānīmal</i>	<i>calcār</i>	<i>-e</i>
	VOC.	<i>māre</i>	<i>ānīmal</i>	<i>calcār</i>	<i>-e</i>
	ABL.	<i>mārī</i>	<i>ānīmālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
Plural.	NOM.	<i>māria</i>	<i>ānīmālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>-ia</i>
	GEN.	<i>mārium</i>	<i>ānīmālium</i>	<i>calcārium</i>	<i>-ium</i>
	DAT.	<i>māribus</i>	<i>ānīmālibus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
	ACC.	<i>māria</i>	<i>ānīmālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>-ia</i>
	VOC.	<i>māria</i>	<i>ānīmālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>-ia</i>
	ABL.	<i>māribus</i>	<i>ānīmālibus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

1. The stem of *māre* ends in *-i-*, which is changed in the nominative to *e*. The stem of *ānimal* ends in *-āli-*, the *i* being dropped, and the *a* shortened in the nominative singular; as, stem *ānīmāli-*, nominative *ānīmāl*. *ānīmāl* stands for *ānīmāle*, the final *e* being lost, and does not, therefore, increase in the genitive.

### 111. Rules for Position:—

1. Adjectives and genitives generally follow their nouns.
2. Adverbs and oblique cases, with or without prepositions, generally immediately precede the verb.
3. The indirect object generally precedes the direct object.
4. When a noun with an adjective is limited by a noun in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; as, *māgnūm rēgīnæ pōcūlum*, *the large cup of the queen*; or, *the queen's large cup*.
5. The rules may be reversed for the sake of emphasis; then the emphatic place for the *verb* is at the beginning;
  - for the *object*, at the end of a sentence;
  - for the *genitive*, before the noun it limits;
  - for the *adjective*, before the noun;
  - for the *adverb*, at a distance from the verb;
  - for the *indirect object*, after the direct.

### VOCABULARY.

tōlēro, tōlērāre, tōlērāvī, bear, <i>endure.</i>	tempus, tempōris, N., <i>time.</i>
ānimal, ānīmālis, N., <i>animal.</i>	jūs, jūris, N., <i>right, law.</i>
crēmo, -āre, -āvī, <i>burn.</i>	collis, collis, M., <i>hill.</i>
custōs, custōdis, M., <i>guard.</i>	vectīgal, vectīgālis, N., <i>tax,</i> <i>revenue.</i>
frīgus, frīgōris, N., <i>cold, frost.</i>	nōmen, nōmīnis, N., <i>name.</i>

### 112. Decline together the following:—

1. *nāvis longa* (lit., *a long ship*), *a ship of war.*
2. *vectīgal māgnūm*, *a large revenue.*
3. *māre māgnūm*, *a great sea.*

## EXERCISES.

7 Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Nautae märe ämant.
2. Dux hostium finēs rēgis vastāvērat.
3. Rēx lēgēs vīris dābat.
4. Propter frīgōra.
5. In (*on*) colle.
6. Mīles vulnus tōlērat.
7. Bōnōs hōmīnēs laudāmus.

## LESSON XXIX.

## NOUNS.—THIRD DECLENSION.

**113.** Many nouns in *-s* and *-x*, generally preceded by a consonant, were originally *i*-stems. These are:—

1. Nouns of one syllable, with stems ending in two consonants, or in a long vowel followed by one consonant.

2. Nouns of two or more syllables ending in *-ns* or *-rs*.

3. Note that these nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems, and in the plural like vowel stems.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	nox, F., <i>night.</i>	mūs, M., <i>mouse.</i>	arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>
Singular.	NOM.	urbs	nox	mūs	arx
	GEN.	urbis	noctis	mūris	arcis
	DAT.	urbī	noctī	mūrī	arcī
	ACC.	urbem	noctem	mūrem	arcem
	VOC.	urbs	nox	mūs	arx
	ABL.	urbe	nocte	mūre	arce
Plural.	NOM.	urbēs	noctēs	mūrēs	arcēs
	GEN.	urbium	noctium	mūrium	arcium
	DAT.	urbibus	noctibus	mūribus	arcibus
	ACC.	urbēs, -īs	noctēs, -īs	mūrēs, -īs	arcēs
	VOC.	urbēs	noctēs	mūrēs	arcēs
	ABL.	urbibus	noctibus	mūribus	arcibus

**Rules for the Oblique Cases of Nouns of the Third Declension.**

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

**114.** The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine nouns generally ends in *-em*; but a few proper nouns in *-is*, denoting places or rivers, have the accusative in *-im*, and also *sitis*, *tussis*, and *vīs*; a few have either *-em* or *-im*, as *febris*, *turris*, *nāvis*.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

**115.** The ablative singular commonly ends in *-e*; but

1. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar* have *-i* in the ablative.
2. Nouns that have *-im* in the accusative, and names of months in *-er* or *-is*, have *-i* in the ablative.
3. Nouns that have *-em* or *-im* in the accusative have their ablative in *-e* or *-i*: *īgnis*, *fire*, *nāvis*, *vessel*, *turris*, *tower*, *cīvis*, *citizen*, *finis*, *end*, and a few others, have *-e* or *-i*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

**116.** The genitive plural generally ends in *-ium*; but

1. Nouns that have *-i* or both *-e* and *-i* in the ablative singular have *-ium* in the genitive plural.
2. Nouns in *-es* and *-is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *-ium* in the genitive plural.
3. Nouns of one syllable ending in *-s* or *-r* preceded by a consonant have *-ium* in the genitive plural.
4. Nouns of two or more syllables ending in *-ns* or *-rs*, and names of nations in *-īs* and *-ās*, generally have *-ium* in the genitive plural.

VOCABULARY.

*mōs*, *montis*, M., *mountain*.

*urbs*, *urbis*, F., *city*.

*pars*, *partis*, F., *part*.

*lītus*, *lītōris*, N., *shore*.

*sto*, *stāre*, *stētī*, *stand*.

*lūx*, *lūcis*, F., *light*.

*ante*, prep. w. acc., *before*.

*servo*, *servāre*, *servāvī*, *preserve*.

**117.** Decline together the following:—

1. **sīnistra pars**, *the left side.*
2. **rūpēs sīnistra**, *a rock on the left.*
3. **ōpus complētum**, *a finished work.*

Obs. Note that, in nouns of the third declension, the stem is the same as the nominative; as, **cōnsul**, genitive **cōnsul-is**, or becomes the same after the vowel is modified; as, **nōmen**, genitive **nōmīn-is**; or that *s* is added to the stem to form the nominative; as, **hostis**, genitive **hosti-s**.

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. Partem urbis occupant.
2. Cōsul in urbe hābitābat.
3. Rōmūlus urbī nōvae nōmen dat.
4. Frātrēs in lītore mārīs cum sōrōrībūs stant.
5. Ante lūcem.
6. De monte in flūmen.
7. In monte.
8. In pāce pārānus bellum.
9. Militēs arcem servābant.

SYN. **Oppīdum** is a *fortified town, a fortress; a small city or town; urbs*, a *large city* (with reference to its buildings; especially to *Rome*); **cīvītās**, a *state*, (1) a community living under the same laws; (2) right of citizenship; **rēs pūblica**, a *commonwealth*.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

What is the genitive plural of **mōns**, **urbs**, **pars**? Are these words declined in the singular like consonant stems? What three classes of nouns of the third declension? (*Ans.* 1st. Consonant stems; 2d. Vowel stems; 3d. Mixed stems.) What nouns have *-i* as the regular ending in the ablative singular? What nouns have *-e* or *-i*? In what does the nominative plural of masculine and feminine nouns end? (*Ans.* **-ēs**.) In what, the nominative plural of neuter nouns? (*Ans.* In **-a**, and those whose ablative singular ends in *-i* only, or in *-e* and *-i*, have **-ia**.) What nouns have **-ium** in the genitive plural? How is the nominative formed from the stem? What is the regular ending of the accusative singular? What nouns have **-im** in the accusative?

## LESSON XXX.

## THIRD DECLENSION.—RULES OF GENDER.

**118.** The rules for gender, when determined by the meaning, have been given under 63.

## EXAMPLES.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>Caesar</b> , M., <i>Caesar</i> . | 7. <b>hostis</b> , M. OF F., <i>enemy</i> .  |
| 2. <b>nauta</b> , M., <i>sailor</i> .  | 8. <b>civis</b> , M. OF F., <i>citizen</i> . |
| 3. <b>vir</b> , M., <i>man</i> .       | 9. <b>jūdex</b> , M. OF F., <i>judge</i> .   |
| 4. <b>Tullia</b> , F., <i>Tullia</i> . | 10. <b>Rōma</b> , F., <i>Rome</i> .          |
| 5. <b>mūlier</b> , F., <i>woman</i> .  | 11. <b>Rhēnus</b> , M., <i>Rhine</i> .       |
| 6. <b>puella</b> , F., <i>girl</i> .   | 12. <b>Mārtius</b> , M., <i>March</i> .      |

Obs. Examine the foregoing words, and give the gender of each noun and the rule. Note that Exs. 7-9 designate either *males* or *females*, and that they are of the *common gender* (c.).

*Rules of Gender.*

**119.** The following are the rules for gender when determined by the endings of the nominative singular:—

1. Nouns of the third declension ending in *-o*, *-or*, *-ūs*, *-er*, *-ēs*, *-ēs* (increasing in the genitive to *-idis* or *-ītis*) are masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>sermō</b> , <b>-ōnis</b> , M., <i>speech</i> .  | 5. <b>pēs</b> , <b>pēdis</b> , M., <i>foot</i> .       |
| 2. <b>dōlor</b> , <b>-ōris</b> , M., <i>pain</i> .    | 6. <b>trāmes</b> , <b>-ītis</b> , M., <i>path</i> .    |
| 3. <b>flōs</b> , <b>flōris</b> , M., <i>flower</i> .  | 7. <b>ēques</b> , <b>-ītis</b> , M., <i>horseman</i> . |
| 4. <b>carcer</b> , <b>-ēris</b> , M., <i>prison</i> . | 8. <b>mīles</b> , <b>-ītis</b> , M., <i>soldier</i> .  |

2. Nouns of the third declension ending in *-ās* (gen. *-ātis*), *-ēs* (not increasing in the genitive), *-is*, *-ys*, *-x*, *-s* (preceded

by a consonant); also *-do*, *-go* (gen. *-inis*), *-io* (abstract<sup>1</sup> and collective<sup>2</sup>), and *-ūs* (gen. *-ūdis*, *-ūtis*), are feminine.

EXAMPLES.

- |                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. aetās, -ātis, F., age.     | 8. pars, partis, F., part.           |
| 2. civitās, -ātis, F., state. | 9. trabs, trābis, F., a beam.        |
| 3. nūbēs, -is, F., cloud.     | 10. imāgo, -inis, F., image.         |
| 4. nāvis, -is, F., ship.      | 11. multitūdo, -inis, F., multitude. |
| 5. chlāmys, -ydis, F., cloak. | 12. ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., speech.       |
| 6. pāx, pācis, F., peace.     | 13. lēgiō, -ōnis, F., legion.        |
| 7. urbs, urbis, F., city.     | 14. virtūs, -ūtis, F., virtue.       |

3. Nouns of the third declension ending in *-a*, *-e*, *-ī*, *-y*; *-c*, *-l*, *-t*; *-ar*, *-us* (genitive *-ōris* or *-ēris*), and *-men* (genitive *-mīnis*), are neuter.

EXAMPLES.

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. poēma, -ātis, N., poem.       | 8. tempus, -ōris, N., time.    |
| 2. māre, -is, N., sea.           | 9. gēnus, -ēris, N., class.    |
| 3. lac, lactis, N., milk.        | 10. nōmen, -inis, N., name.    |
| 4. vectīgal, -ālis, N., revenue. | 11. agmen, -inis, N., army.    |
| 5. cāput, -itis, N., head.       | 12. lātus, -ēris, N., side.    |
| 6. calcar, -āris, N., spur.      | 13. rēte, rētis, N., net.      |
| 7. guttur, -ūris, N., throat.    | 14. ānīmal, -ālis, N., animal. |

120. The following nouns in common use are exceptions to these rules:—

Exc. 1. *Arbor*, a tree, *cāro*, flesh, and *linter*, boat, are feminine; *aequor*, the sea, *marmor*, marble, and *cor*, cordis, the heart, are neuter; *ordo*, rank, is masculine; *iter* is neuter.

Exc. 2. Latin nouns ending in *-nis* are masculine or doubtful; as, *crīnis*, hair, *ignis*, fire, *pānis*, bread, are masculine. The following are masculine or feminine: *amnīs*, a river, *cīnis*, ashes, *fīnis*, end, *clūnis*, the haunch, *cānis*, a dog, *fūnis*, a rope; the plural *finēs*, boundaries, is always masculine.

Exc. 3. *Dēns*, a tooth, *fōns*, a fountain, *mōns*, a mountain, and *pōns*, a bridge, are masculine.



## 121. Nouns Irregular in Declension.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		bōs, M. & F., or.	vis, F., strength.	suis, M. & F., swine.	nix, F., snow.	sēnex, M., old man.	Jūpiter, M., Jupiter.
Singular.	NOM.	bōs	vis	suis	nix	sēnex	Jūpiter
	GEN.	bōvis	vis (rare)	suis	nivis	sēnis	Jōvis
	DAT.	bōvī	vī (rare)	suī	nivī	sēnī	Jōvī
	ACC.	bōvem	vīm	suem	nivem	sēnem	Jōvem
	VOC.	bōs	vis	suis	nix	sēnex	Jūpiter
	ABL.	bōve	vī	sue	nive	sēne	Jōve
Plural.	NOM.	bōves	vīrēs	suēs	nivēs	sēnēs	
	GEN. {	bōvum	vīrium	suum	nivium	sēnum	
	houm						
	DAT. {	bōbus	vīribus	suibus	nivibus	sēnibus	
	būbus		subus				
	ACC.	bōvēs	vīrēs	suēs	nivēs	sēnēs	
VOC.	bōvēs	vīrēs	sues	nivēs	sēnēs		
ABL. {	bōbus	vīribus	suibus	nivibus	sēnibus		
hūbus		subus					

Cases.		Iter, N., journey.	jūs-jūrandum, N., oath.	māterfāmiiliās, mother of a family.
Singular.	NOM.	iter	jūs-jūrandum	māterfāmiiliās
	GEN.	itinēris	jūris-jūrandī	mātrifāmiiliās
	DAT.	itinēri	jūrī-jūrandō	mātrifāmiiliās
	ACC.	iter	jūs-jūrandum	mātrefāmiiliās
	VOC.	iter	jūs-jūrandum	māterfāmiiliās
	ABL.	itinēre	jūrē-jūrandō	mātrēfāmiiliās
Plural.	NOM.	itinēra	jūrājūrandā	mātrēs-fāmiiliās
	GEN.	itinērum	—	mātrumfāmiiliās
	DAT.	itinēribus	—	mātribusfāmiiliās
	ACC.	itinēra	jūrājūrandā	mātrēs-fāmiiliās
	VOC.	itinēra	jūrājūrandā	mātrēs-fāmiiliās
	ABL.	itinēribus	—	mātribusfāmiiliās

1. The locative case of nouns of the third declension ends like the dative, sometimes like the ablative; as, **Karthāgīni**, or **Karthāgīne**, at Carthage; **rūrī**, in the country.

EXERCISES.

Determine by the foregoing rules the gender of the following nouns : —

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. cōsul, -ūlis, consul.</p> <p>2. sermō, -ōnis, discourse.</p> <p>3. ōrātiō, -ōnis, speech.</p> <p>4. dux, dūcis, leader.</p> <p>5. multītudo, -inis, multitude.</p> <p>6. impērātor, -ōris, commander.</p> <p>7. lēgiō, -ōnis, legion.</p> <p>8. obses, -idis, hostage.</p> <p>9. pōtestās, -ātis, power.</p> <p>10. ānimal, -ālis, animal.</p> <p>11. turris, -is, tower.</p> <p>12. contentiō, -ōnis, contention.</p> <p>13. crīmen, -inis, charge.</p> | <p>14. civītās, -ātis, state.</p> <p>15. lēgātiō, -ōnis, embassy.</p> <p>16. lēx, lēgis, law.</p> <p>17. virtūs, -ūtis, virtue.</p> <p>18. frīgus, -ōris, cold.</p> <p>19. ōnus, -ēris, load.</p> <p>20. vulnus, -ēris, wound.</p> <p>21. crūs, crūris, leg.</p> <p>22. custōs, -ōdis, guard.</p> <p>23. rādīx, -īcis, root.</p> <p>24. princeps, -īpis, chief.</p> <p>25. sēmen, -inis, seed.</p> <p>26. litus, -ōris, shore.</p> |
|--|--|

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. An abstract noun is the name of a quality ; as, *valor, virtue*.
2. A collective noun denotes in the singular number, a collection of individuals ; as, *army, legion*.

How many ways of determining the gender of nouns ? What are they ? What nouns are masculine by signification ? What, by termination ? What nouns in common use are exceptions ? Give the rules for feminine nouns. What are the terminations of neuter nouns ?

LESSON XXXI.

ABLATIVE.

CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS, AND INSTRUMENT.

EXAMPLES.

1. pallidus irā fuit, *he was pale with anger.*
2. māgnō flētū auxiliū ā Caesāre pētunt, *with a flood of tears they seek aid from Caesar.*
3. Divitiācus Gallōrum ānīmōs verbīs cōnfirmit, *Divitiacus encourages the minds of the Gauls by (or, by means of) words.*

M.	Jūpiter,
m.	M., Jupiter.
	Jūpiter
	Jōvis
	Jōvi
	Jōvem
	Jūpiter
	Jōve

āniliās,
a family.
miliās
miliās
miliās
āniliās
miliās
miliās
miliās
āniliās
āniliās
fāniliās
miliās
miliās
fāniliās

nsion ends  
Karthāgīni,

4. *frātrēs ferrō prō patriā dīmīcant*, the brothers fight with the sword for their country.  
 5. *mīlītēs lāpīdībūs pūgnant*, the soldiers fight with stones.

Obs. In the foregoing examples the nouns that denote the *cause* (*frā*), the *manner* (*frētū*), the *means* (*verbīs*), the *instrument* (*ferrō*, *lāpīdībūs*), by which the action of the verb is performed, are in the ablative without a preposition, and are modifiers of the predicate. This usage is expressed by the following rule:—

ABLATIVE CASE.

**122. RULE IX.**—The cause, manner, means, and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

**123. Rule for position:—**

Expressions of *manner*, *means*, and *instrument* are placed after the direct object; those of *cause* usually precede it; all precede the predicate.

VOCABULARY.

<i>pēdes</i> , <i>pēdītis</i> , M., <i>foot-soldier</i> .	<i>tīmīdus</i> , -a, -um, <i>timid, afraid</i> .
<i>lāpis</i> , <i>lāpīdis</i> , M., <i>stone</i> .	<i>passer</i> , <i>passēris</i> , M., <i>sparrow</i> .
<i>sāgitta</i> , -ae, F., <i>an arrow</i> .	<i>musca</i> , -ae, F., <i>fly</i> .
<i>vester</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .	<i>dēvōro</i> , -āre, -āvī, <i>devour</i> .

Syn. *Cōnsilium*, *advice, counsel*; *concilium*, *an assembly, a meeting* (of part of the people); *lex*, *a law passed in a cōmītia*, an assembly of the whole people, and regularly approved; *scītum* (*plēbiscītum*), *a law passed in a concilium*.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Caesar urbem erēmat. 2. Pāter tuus urbēs Galliae igne (or ignī) erēmat. 3. Regnum cōpiūs conciliābat.  
 4. Vīrōs igne (or ignī) erēmat. 5. Hostium sāgittae rēgem vestrum vulnerant. 6. Amāte, puērī, sōrōrēs. 7. Cōnsilēs oppidīs nōmīna dant. 8. Mīlītēs cōsulīs laudant. 9. Virgīnem tīmīdam vōcant. 10. Passer mūgnō cum gaudiō muscam dēvōrābat. 11. Marcī filius Gallīs signum tūbā dat.

Translate into Latin : —

1. He gives a name.
2. He gives a name to the city.
3. He gives a name to the new city.
4. The soldiers have called.
5. The soldiers have called the consul.
6. They have praised.
7. They have praised the eloquence of the consul.
8. The father calls (his) son.
9. The consul praised the soldier.
10. The consul praised the valor of the soldier.
11. They are fighting.
12. They are fighting with the sword.
13. The brothers are fighting with the sword.
14. To<sup>2</sup> the city.
15. Into the city.
16. Out of the city.
17. Away from the city.
18. With the chiefs.
19. They burn the city.
20. They burn the city with fire.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The ablative of manner commonly takes **cum** unless an adjective is used, then **cum** may be omitted.

2. Note that when there is motion towards a person or place (except names of towns), a preposition with the accusative is used; the dative is wrong.

What nouns end in *-i* in the ablative singular? In *-ium* in the genitive plural? What is the gender of **mōns**? Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the second declension. What is the gender of **nauta**? Give the rule. The gender of nouns not provided for by the rules must be learned by practice; as, **jūs** (gen. **jūris**), *right*, and **īter** (gen. **ītinēris**), *journey, march*, are both neuter. Name the stems of **māre**, **mōs**, **ānīmal**, **īter**, **īgnis**, **mōus**, **rex**, **corpus**.

## LESSON XXXII.

## SUBJECT AND COPULA.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **rēgīna bōna**, a good queen.
2. **rēgīna bōna est**, the queen is good.
3. **Tullia, filia rēgīnae, poētam laudat**, Tullia, the daughter of the queen, praises the poet.

4. *Tullia filia rēgīnae est, Tullia is the daughter of the queen*  
 5. *puella amāta est, the girl is loved.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that in Ex. 1 the adjective simply modifies the noun, without the intervention of a verb; in Ex. 2 the adjective is connected with the noun by means of the verb *est*. The first adjective is called an *attributive adjective*, the second is a *predicate adjective*, and is called the *complement*. In Ex. 3 note that the descriptive noun *filia* stands in the same part of the sentence as the subject which it modifies; it is called an *appositive*. In Ex. 4 the descriptive noun is used to form the predicate, and is called a *predicate noun*, or *complement*. Note that the predicate adjective agrees with its noun in *gender, number, and case*, the predicate noun agrees with the subject in *case*. Note the position of the predicate adjective; it may, however, precede the verb for the sake of emphasis. In Ex. 5 the verb *sum* helps to form the perfect tense of the verb, and is therefore called an *auxiliary verb*; hence, —

**124.** The verb *sum* is either an *auxiliary* or a *copulative verb*. It is an auxiliary verb when it helps to form some of the tenses of other verbs; it is copulative when it joins the subject to some other word which is used to describe the subject. The word thus used to describe the subject may be a noun or an adjective, and is called the *complement*. If the descriptive word is a noun, it is called a *predicate noun*; if it is an adjective, then it is called a *predicate adjective*.

PREDICATE NOUN.

**125. RULE X.** — A noun in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with it in case.

Obs. Note that a noun used to describe another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case. When the descriptive noun is in the same part of the sentence, it is called an *APPOSITIVE*; and when it stands in the predicate, usually after intransitive verbs of *to be, to become, to remain*, etc., and with passive verbs of *naming, calling, choosing, appointing*, etc., it is called a *PREDICATE NOMINATIVE*.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.

**126. RULE XI.** — A predicate adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case.

**127. Partial Paradigm of sum, I am.**

**Obs.** The verb **sum, I am**, belongs to none of the four conjugations; it is both irregular and defective, *i.e.*, it wants certain parts. It is used in Latin, as in English, to help conjugate the passive voice of regular verbs.

**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

PRESENT STEM, <b>es-</b>		PERFECT STEM, <b>fuī-</b>	
PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	FUTURE PART.
<b>sum</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>fuī</b>	<b>fūtūrus</b>

**INDICATIVE PRESENT.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1 <b>sūm, I am.</b>	<i>Plur.</i> 1 <b>sūmūs, we are.</b>
2 <b>ēs, thou art.</b>	2 <b>estis, you are.</b>
3 <b>est, he is.</b>	3 <b>sunt, they are.</b>

**VOCABULARY.<sup>5</sup>**

<b>testis, testis, M. &amp; F., witness.</b>	<b>bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., warlike.</b>
<b>Ārar, Arāris, acc. Arārim, M., the Arar (now the Saone).</b>	<b>pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.</b>
<b>cōmes, -itis, M. &amp; F., a companion.</b>	<b>mūlier, mūliēris, F., woman.</b>
<b>cāsa, -ae, F., cottage.</b>	<b>ēquus, -i, M., horse.</b>

**128. Decline together the following:—**

1. **rēliquae cōpiæ** (pl.), *the remaining forces.*
2. **puella pulchra**, *a beautiful girl.*
3. **oppidum māgnum**, *a large town.*

**SYN.** **Festīno**, *hasten impatiently, hurry*; **prōpēro**, *hasten with energy, but without hurry or impatience.*

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

- |    |      |    |    |      |    |
|----|------|----|----|------|----|
| s. | v.c. | c. | s. | v.c. | c. |
|----|------|----|----|------|----|
1. Puella est pulchra.
  2. Equus est animal.
  3. Oppidum est magnum.
  4. Pōpulus Rōmānus est testis.
  5. Flūmen est Arar.<sup>1</sup>
  6. Amīci sūmus *(we are)*.
  7. Caesar est impērātor.
  8. Ariovistus est rēx.
  9. Virtūs est cōmes sapiētiæ.
  10. Puella est nautæ filia.
  11. Est *(it is)* cāsa agricolæ.
  12. Est<sup>2</sup> *(there is)* parva insūla.
  13. Multa animālia pulchra sunt.

Translate into Latin: —

1. We are, they are, you are. 2. The fields are large.  
 3. The islands are small. 4. She is the daughter of the sailor.  
 5. We are Romans. 6. The cities are large.  
 7. There is a large town. 8. We are friends. 9. It is a large town.  
 10. The town is large.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. What is the rule for the gender of *Arar* ?  
 2. In English, when the subject is indefinite, we use the word *there* with some form of the verb *to be*; as, *insula est parva* may mean *the island is small, an island is small, (there) is a small island, (it) is a small island, or the island is a small (one).*

What is the present tense of *sum* ? Why is *sum* called a copula ? What is the noun or adjective after it called ? Why ? Note that the complement, if a noun, agrees with the subject in case; if an adjective, in gender, number, and case. Note that the verb *sum* in all the foregoing examples is *copulative*.

### LESSON XXXIII.

#### INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. — PREDICATE GENITIVE.

129. The verb *sum* is conjugated in the Indicative Mode as follows: —

#### PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Person.	Present.	Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>fui, I have been.</i>	<i>I was.</i>
2	<i>es, thou art.</i>	<i>fuisti, thou hast been.</i>	<i>Thou wast.</i>
3	<i>est, he is.</i>	<i>fuit, he has been.</i>	<i>He was.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>sumus, we are.</i>	<i>fuimus, we have been.</i>	<i>We were.</i>
2	<i>estis, you are.</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been.</i>	<i>You were.</i>
3	<i>sunt, they are.</i> }	<i>fuērunt, } they have been.</i>	<i>They were.</i>
		<i>fuere, }</i>	

## GENERAL PARADIGM.

Person.	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.
Sing. 1	ēram, <i>I was.</i>	fuēram, <i>I had been.</i>
	ēras, <i>thou wast.</i>	fuērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>
	ērat, <i>he was.</i>	fuērat, <i>he had been.</i>
Plur. 1	ērāmus, <i>we were.</i>	fuērāmus, <i>we had been.</i>
	ērātis, <i>you were.</i>	fuērātis, <i>you had been.</i>
	ērant, <i>they were.</i>	fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>
	Future.	Future Perfect.
Sing. 1	ēro, <i>I shall or will be.</i>	fuēro, <i>I shall or will have been.</i>
	ēris, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	fuēris, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>
	ērit, <i>he will be.</i>	fuērit, <i>he will have been.</i>
Plur. 1	ērīmus, <i>we shall or will be.</i>	fuērīmus, <i>we shall or will have been.</i>
	ērītis, <i>you will be.</i>	fuērītis, <i>you will have been.</i>
	ērunt, <i>they will be.</i>	fuērunt, <i>they will have been.</i>

## 130. Predicatio Genitive.

## EXAMPLES.

1. haec dōmus Caesāris est, *this house is Cæsar's property, or this is Cæsar's house.*
2. haec hostium ērant, *these things were the enemy's.*
3. est sapiētis, *it is the part of a wise man.*
4. hōc est praeceptōris, *this is the business of the instructor.*

ONS. In the foregoing examples, note that the noun which the genitive limits is omitted; that these genitives all stand in the predicate after the verb *sum*, and that the word to be supplied is a general word suggested by the sense. In translating into English, we supply the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc. The idiom may be expressed in the following rule:—

## PREDICATE GENITIVE.

131. RULE XII.—A noun in the predicate, denoting a different person or thing from the subject, is put in the genitive.



1. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate after *sum* and *fācio*, and the passives of *pūto*, *hābeo*, and *existīmo*.

2. The genitive of Personal Pronouns is never used in this construction; the nenter of the corresponding Possessive Pronoun is used; as,

## EXAMPLE.

*est tuum (not tuī) vidēre, it is your duty to see.*

## VOCABULARY.

<i>multitūdo, -inis, f., multitude.</i>	<i>tempus, temporis, n., time.</i>
<i>orātiō, -ōnis, f., speech, oration.</i>	<i>mercātor, -ōris, m., merchant.</i>
<i>miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched.</i>	<i>mors, mortis, f., death.</i>
<i>supplicium, -i, n., punishment.</i>	<i>crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, fre-</i>
<i>impērium, -i, n., power, sway.</i>	<i>quent, numerous.</i>

**SYN. Prōvōco**, (1) to call forth, summon; (2) to appeal to the people. **Appello**, (1) to address with the appropriate title; (2) to appeal to one magistrate from the decision of another.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Rēgīna erat pulchra.
2. Viri in proelio fuerant.
3. Ariovistus fuit rex Germanōrum.
4. Erīmus<sup>1</sup> beātī.
5. Eritis nūscīri.
6. Puellae fuerunt pulchrae.
7. Erantne puellae in silvā?
8. Num Caesar cōsul erit?
9. Cōpia Belgārum in provinciā sunt.
10. Sūmus in Galliā.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The pronoun is contained in the verb.
- Give the rule for the gender of nouns in *-do*. For nouns in *-io*. What are the principal parts of *sum*? Give a synopsis of *sum* in the indicative. What is the rule for a noun in the genitive? The position? What is meant by a predicate genitive? On what does the predicate genitive depend?

## LESSON XXXIV.

## ADJECTIVES. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**132.** Adjectives of the Third Declension are declined like nouns, and may have —

1. A different form for each gender in the nominative singular.
2. Two forms, — one for the masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter.
3. The same forms for all three genders.

**133.** Adjectives of the Third Declension in *-er* have three endings in the nominative, and are declined like **acer**, *sharp*. The stem ends in *-i-*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -is	ācrēs, -is	ācria
VOC.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

**134.** Decline like **acer** the following : —

1. **cēler**, **cēleris**, **cēlere**, *swift*.
2. **ēquēster**, **ēquēstris**, **ēquēstre**, *equestrian*.
3. **ālācer**, **ālācris**, **ālācre**, *lively, eager*.

1. **Cēler** is the only adjective of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r* in the oblique cases. **Cēler**, when used as an adjective, has the genitive plural in *-rum*; but as a noun, denoting military rank, it has **cēlerum** in genitive plural, and **cēlere** in ablative singular.

Obs. Note that adjectives ending in *-er* have *-i* in the *ablative singular of all genders*.

135. Adjectives of two endings have *-is* or *-or* in the nominative masculine and feminine, and *-e* or *-us* in the neuter. They are declined like *mītis*, *mīld*, and *mītiōr*, *mīldr*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	mītis	mīte	mītēs	mītia
GEN.	mītis	mītis	mītium	mītium
DAT.	mītī	mītī	mītibus	mītibus
ACC.	mītem	mīte	mītēs, -īs	mītia
VOC.	mītis	mīte	mītēs	mītia
ABL.	mītī	mītī	mītibus	mītibus

*mītiōr*, *mīldr* (comparative degree).

NOM.	mītiōr	mītius	mītiōrēs	mītiora
GEN.	mītiōris	mītioris	mītiōrum	mītiorum
DAT.	mītiōrī	mītiorī	mītiōribus	mītioribus
ACC.	mītiōrem	mītius	mītiōrēs, -īs	mītiora
VOC.	mītiōr	mītius	mītiōrēs	mītiora
ABL.	mītiōre, -ī <sup>1</sup>	mītiorē, ī	mītiōribus	mītioribus

Obs. Adjectives ending in *-is* are also *i*-stems, and have *-i* in the ablative of all genders. Note that comparatives have *two endings* in the nominative; and that the ablative singular ends in *-e* or *-i*, and the nominative plural in *-es* and *-a*, not *-ia*.

1. *Mītis* is declined like *ācris*, *ācre*; all comparatives of adjectives are declined like *mītiōr*, except *plūs*, *more*, which is declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
VOC.	—	—	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## VOCABULARY.

ūtilis, ūtile, *useful*.nāvālis, nāvāle, *naval*.silvester, -tris, -tre, *wooly*.vōlūcer, vōlūcris, vōlūcre,  
*winged*.omnis, omne, *all*.immortālis, immortāle, *immortal*.fortis, forte, *brave*.Germānus, -i, m., *German*.ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, severe*.

## EXERCISES.

20 Translate into English: —

1. Puer est tristis. 2. Timor omnēs milītēs occūpāvit.  
3. Lēgēs sunt ūtilēs. 4. Iter est facile. 5. Equī sunt  
cēlērēs. 6. Cum omnibus cōpiīs. 7. Milītēs fortēs erunt.  
8. Dñi immortālēs sunt. 9. Tempus brève est. 10. Cōsul  
virtūtem milītis fortis laudat.

Translate into Latin: —

1. The boys were sad. 2. The journeys are difficult.  
3. The soldiers were brave. 4. The gods are immortal.  
5. The horse is swift. 6. The laws are severe. 7. The  
consul praises the brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers will be  
brave. 9. They will be brave.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Endings enclosed in brackets are rare.

Give the stem of **ācer**. How are adjectives of three endings declined? Give the ablative singular of **ācer**. How are adjectives of two endings declined? Give the ablative singular of **mītis**. The genitive plural. What is an adjective?

## LESSON XXXV.

## ADJECTIVES. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**136.** Adjectives of one ending in the nominative are strictly consonant stems, but they follow in part the declension of vowel stems; that is, they have *-i* or *-e* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the neuter plural, and *-ium*

in the genitive plural. In other cases they follow the declension of consonant stems. They all end in *s*, *x*, *l*, or *r*, and are declined like **audāx**, *bold*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	audāx		audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	audācia
DAT.	audāci		audācibus	
ACC.	audācem	audāx	audācēs(is)	audācia
VOC.	audāx		audācēs	audācia
ABL.	audāci or audāce		audācibus	

*ingēns, vast.*

NOM.	ingēns		ingentēs	ingentia
GEN.	ingentis		ingentium	
DAT.	ingentī		ingentibus	
ACC.	ingentem	ingēns	ingentēs, -īs	ingentia
VOC.	ingēns		ingentēs	ingentia
ABL.	ingentī or ingente		ingentibus	

1. Present Participles are declined like **āmāns**, except in the ablative singular, where they have *-e*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	<i>fēlix, happy.</i>		<i>amans, loving.</i>		<i>prudens, prudent.</i>		
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	
Singular.	NOM.	fēlix		āmāns		prūdēns	
	GEN.	fēlicis		āmantis		prūdentis	
	DAT.	fēlici		āmanti		prūdentī	
	ACC.	fēlicem	fēlix	āmantem	āmans	prūdentem	prūdēns
	VOC.	fēlix		āmāns		prūdēns	
	ABL.	fēlici, -e		āmante, -ī		prūdentī, -e	
Plural.	NOM.	fēlices	fēlicia	āmantēs	āmantia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
	GEN.	fēlicium		āmantium		prūdentium	
	DAT.	fēlicibus		āmantibus		prūdentibus	
	ACC.	fēlicēs	fēlicia	āmantēs	āmantia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
	VOC.	fēlicēs	fēlicia	āmantēs	āmantia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
	ABL.	fēlicibus		āmantibus		prūdentibus	

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		vētus, old.		iēns, going.		pār, equal.	
		M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Singular.	NOM.	vētus		iēns		pār	
	GEN.	vētēris		euntis		pāris	
	DAT.	vētēri		euntī		pāri	
	ACC.	vēterem	vētus	cuntem	iēns	pārem	pār
	VOC.	vētus		iēns		pār	
	ABL.	vētēre (-i)		eunte, -ī		pāri	
Plural.	NOM.	vētērēs	vētēra	euntēs	euntia	pārēs	pāria
	GEN.	vētērum		euntium		pārium	
	DAT.	vētēribus		euntibus		pāribus	
	ACC.	vētērēs, -is	vētēra	euntēs	euntia	pārēs	pāria
	VOC.	vētērēs	vētēra	euntēs	euntia	pārēs	pāria
	ABL.	vētēribus		euntibus		pāribus	

*Rules for the Oblique Cases of Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

**137.** Most adjectives of the third declension have *-i* in the ablative singular, but consonant stems have *-ī* when used as adjectives, *-e* when used as nouns. Participles in *-us*, when used as such, or as nouns, regularly have *-e*; but as adjectives, *-ī*.

## GENITIVE AND NEUTER PLURAL.

**138.** The genitive plural commonly has *-ium*. Consonant stems have *-ium* when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or by a consonant; *-um*, when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a short vowel; as, *audāx*, gen. plur. *audācium*; *dīves*, gen. sing. *dīvitis*, gen. plur. *dīvītum*; so *vētus* (*vētēris*), *vētērum*; *ūber* (*ūberis*), *ūbērum*; *caelebs*, *unmarried*, *caelībum*. The neuter plural has *-ia*; only *vētus* has *vētēra*.

✗ Participles have *-ium*; as, *āmāns*, *āmāntium*.

**139.** Decline together the following:—

1. *puella fēlix*, a happy girl.
2. *māre ingēns*, a vast sea.
3. *dōnum ingēns*, a large gift.
4. *servus audāx*, a bold servant.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>fēlix</i> , gen. <i>fēlicis</i> , <i>happy</i> .	<i>rēcēns</i> , gen. <i>rēcēntis</i> , <i>recent</i> .
<i>audāx</i> , gen. <i>audācis</i> , <i>bold</i> , <i>audacious</i> .	<i>ōriēns</i> , gen. <i>ōrientis</i> , <i>rising</i> .
<i>dīves</i> , gen. <i>dīvītis</i> , <i>rich</i> .	<i>mūlier</i> , <i>mūliēris</i> , <i>woman</i> .
<i>pār</i> , gen. <i>pāris</i> , <i>equal</i> .	<i>flēns</i> , gen. <i>flēntis</i> , <i>weeping</i> .
<i>pōtēns</i> , gen. <i>pōtentis</i> , <i>powerful</i> .	<i>vētus</i> , gen. <i>vētēris</i> , <i>old</i> , <i>ancient</i> .
	<i>grēx</i> , gen. <i>grēgis</i> , <i>M., flock</i> .

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Militēs sunt audācēs.*
2. *Rēgēs sunt pōtētēs.*
3. *Vīrī dīvītēs sunt.*
4. *Mūliērēs fēlicēs ērant.*
5. *Belgæ spectant in<sup>1</sup> ōrientem sōlem.*
6. *Cōnsīlium dūcis audāx est.*
7. *Mūliērēs flentēs Caesārem implōrant.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. The soldier is brave.
2. The leaders are bold.
3. The men are rich.
4. The weeping woman implores the consul.
5. The town is old.
6. The women are not happy.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Towards.*

What adjectives have but one ending? Are they vowel or consonant stems? Do they increase in the genitive? In what does the ablative singular end? In what does the genitive plural end? Does the ablative always end in *-i*? Does the genitive plural always have *-ium*? Explain when they have *-i* in the ablative, and when *-e*.

## LESSON XXXVI.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES.

140. Adjectives are compared, in Latin as in English, in three ways: 1st. Regularly, *i.e.*, by adding peculiar terminations; 2d. By prefixing the adverbs *māgis* and *māxime*, *more* and *most*; and 3d. Irregularly.

## I. Regular Comparison.

141. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive, after the final vowel has been dropped, the following endings:—

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
-ior	-ior	-ius	-issimus	-issima	-issimum

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Stem.	Comparative.	Superlative.
dūrus, <i>hard.</i>	dūro-	dūrior, <i>harder.</i>	dūrissimus, <i>hardest, very hard.</i>
dulcis, <i>sweet.</i>	dulci-	dulcior, <i>sweeter.</i>	dulcissimus, <i>sweetest.</i>
prūdēns, <i>sagacious.</i>	prūdēt-	prūdēntior, <i>more sagacious.</i>	prūdētissimus, <i>most sagacious.</i>
fēlix, <i>happy.</i>	fēlic-	fēlicior, <i>happier.</i>	fēlicissimus, <i>happiest.</i>

1. Note that the stems are *dūrō*, *dulcī*, *prūdēt*, *fēlic*; the final vowel disappears before the initial vowel of the suffix.

2. All superlatives are declined like *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*.

3. All comparatives, except *plūs*, are declined like *mēlior*, *better*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	mēlior	mēlius	mēliorēs	mēliōra
GEN.	mēliōris		mēliōrum	
DAT.	mēliōrī		mēliōribus	
ACC.	mēliōrem	mēlius	mēliorēs, -is	mēliōra
VOC.	mēlior	mēlius	mēliorēs	mēliōra
ABL.	mēliōre, -ī		mēliōribus	

Obs. Note that the ablative singular ends in *-e* or *-ī*; the neuter plural in *-a*; the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, in *-ēs* or *-is*; and the genitive plural in *-um*, not *-ium*.



## 142. The Construction with Comparatives.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *servus est fēlicior rēge*, the slave is happier than the king.
2. *servus est fēlicior quam rēx*, the slave is happier than the king.

Obs. In the first example, note that the comparative is followed by the ablative; in the second example, *quam*, *than*, is used with the comparative, and the following word is in the same case as the noun preceding the adjective. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES.

143. RULE XIII.—The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam*, *than*, is omitted.

1. Comparatives with *quam* are followed (by the nominative, or) by the case of the corresponding noun before them.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *fortiōrem vīdī nēmīnem quam Mārium*, I have seen no braver man than Marius; or
2. *Hibernia l. aor quam Britānnia existimātur*, Ireland is considered smaller than Britain.

144. Model for parsing comparatives and superlatives:—

*servus est fēlicior rēge*, the servant is happier than the king: *fēlicior* is an adjective in the comparative degree, from the positive *fēlix*; stem *fēl-* comp. *fēlicior*, super. *fēlicissimus*. *Fēlicior* is an adjective of the 3rd declension, and is declined like *mēlior*, *mēlius*, etc. It is nominative singular masculine, and agrees with *servus*. Rule VIII.: *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

## VOCABULARY.

<i>rāpāx</i> , -ācis, <i>venerous</i> .	<i>āer</i> , <i>āēris</i> , m., <i>the air</i> .
<i>Cicērō</i> , <i>Cicērōnis</i> , m., <i>Cicero</i> .	<i>clārus</i> , -a, -um, <i>clear, famous</i> .
<i>doctus</i> , -a, -um, <i>learned</i> .	<i>vēlōx</i> , gen. <i>vēlōcis</i> , <i>swift</i> .
<i>grāvis</i> , -e, <i>heavy, severe</i> .	<i>mendāx</i> , -ācis, <i>lying</i> .

SYN. *Vulnēro*, to wound by a cut or thrust; *saucio*, to wound in any way.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

- 21  
1. Vir felix erat. 2. Vir felicior erat. 3. Jūdēx sapiēns est. 4. Jūdēx sapiētiōr erat quam rēx. 5. Sūmus<sup>2</sup> pōtētēs. 6. Estis pōtentiōrēs. 7. Rēgēs sunt pōtētissimī. 8. Cicērō erat vir doctissimus. 9. Lūx est vclōciōr quam sōpnus. 10. Rōma clāriōrissimā<sup>2</sup> urbs erat. 11. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 12. Jūra est mōns altissimus.

Translate into Latin: —

- 22  
1. The men are happy. 2. We are happier. 3. The soldiers are brave. 4. The brave soldiers are powerful. 5. The soldiers are more powerful. 6. The journey was difficult. 7. Gold is heavier than silver. 8. The servants are very happy. 9. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 10. Cicero was a very renowned orator. 11. The soldiers are braver than the general.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Quam** is a conjunction, and is not inflected; it means *than*.  
2. The subject is included in the verb.  
3. The superlative is not always translated by *most*; it is sometimes best rendered by *very*. So the comparative may be translated in various ways; as, **audāciōr**, *bolder, rather bolder* (i.e. bolder than usual), *too bold*.

In how many ways are adjectives compared? Decline the comparative of **pōtēns**, **altus**. To what declension of adjectives do superlatives belong? What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? By what case is the comparative degree followed?

## LESSON XXXVII.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## GENITIVE AND DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## II. Comparison by Adverbs.

**145.** Adjectives ending in *-us* preceded by a vowel (except those in *-quus*) commonly form their comparative and superlative by means of the adverbs *māgis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*.

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>idōneus</i> , fit.	<i>māgis idōneus</i>	<i>māximē idōneus</i>
<i>dūbius</i> , doubtful.	<i>māgis dūbius</i>	<i>māximē dūbius</i>
<i>nōxius</i> , hurtful.	<i>māgis nōxius</i>	<i>māximē nōxius</i>

1. Adjectives in *-quus* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; as,

*antīquus*, ancient, *antīquior*, *antīquissimus*.

**146.** Dative with Adjectives.

## EXAMPLES.

- victōria Germānōrum pōpūlō Rōmānō periculōsa est*, the victory of the Germans is dangerous to the Roman people.
- pūlla erat mātri similis*, the girl was like her mother.
- castris idōneus locus est*, the place is suitable for a camp.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note the adjectives *periculōsa*, *similis*, and *idōneus*, and that each is construed with the dative. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**147. RULE XIV.**—The dative is used after many adjectives to denote the object to which the quality is directed.

1. The adjectives that take the dative are chiefly those signifying *useful*, *pleasant*, *friendly*, *fit*, *like*, *inclined*, *ready*,

*easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites; also those signifying *near*; many compounded with *con-*; and verbals in *-bilis*.

2. *Similis* and *dissimilis* take also the genitive, especially of persons, when denoting *likeness* or *unlikeness* in CHARACTER.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**148. RULE XV.**— Many adjectives are followed by the genitive to complete their meaning.

1. The adjectives governing the genitive are those denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fitness, mastery, participation, guilt*, and their opposites; and verbals in *-ae*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *avidus laudis, desirous of praise.*
2. *memor virtutis, mindful of virtue.*
3. *belli peritus, skilled in war.*

## VOCABULARY.

<i>cārus, -a, -um, dear.</i>	<i>Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians.</i>
<i>idōneus, -a, -um, suitable.</i>	<i>pēriculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous.</i>
<i>inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly,</i> <i>hostile.</i>	<i>amicus, -a, -um, friendly.</i>
	<i>Græcus, -a, -um, Greek.</i>

SYN. *Animus, the mind, the soul; mens, thought or intellectual faculty; ānima, the life, the vital principle.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Māgister discipūlis cārus est.*
2. *Lōcus māgis idōneus castris quam urbī fuit.*
3. *Principēs ferōcēs atrōcia bella āmant.*
4. *Fortissimū sunt Belgae.*
5. *Est grāvior fortūna Sēquānōrum<sup>1</sup> quam<sup>2</sup> reliquōrum.*
6. *Dux inimicus Dumnōrigi fuit.*
7. *Infelix es; miser sum.*
8. *Fortēs sumus.*
9. *Militēs ālacrēs fortēsque sunt.*

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Why genitive?
2. Supply *fortūna*.

How are adjectives compared by means of adverbs? What is an adverb? Compare *pleasant, beautiful*. Decline the comparative of *miser, atrox*.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

III. *Irregular and Defective Comparison.*

149. Adjectives in *-er* form their comparative regularly, but their superlative is formed by adding *-rimus* to the nominative.

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
ācer, <i>sharp.</i>	ācrior	āccrīmus
miser, <i>wretched.</i>	miserior	miserīmus
cēler, <i>swift.</i>	cēlrior	cēlerrīmus
pulcher, <i>beautiful.</i>	pulchrior	pulcherrīmus
niger, <i>black.</i>	nigrior	nigerrīmus

- Also *vētus*, *old* (gen. *vētēris*) has the super. *vōterrīmus*.
- The following six adjectives in *-ilis*, declined like *mītis*,<sup>1</sup> form their superlative by adding *-līmus* to the stem, after dropping the final vowel:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
facilis, <i>easy.</i>	facilior	facillīmus
difficilis, <i>difficult.</i>	difficilior	difficillīmus
similis, <i>similar.</i>	similior	simillīmus
dissimilis, <i>unlike.</i>	dissimilior	dissimillīmus
gracilis, <i>slender.</i>	gracilior	gracillīmus
humilis, <i>low.</i>	humilior	humillīmus

- Compound adjectives ending in *-dīcus*, *-ficius*, *-vōlus*, form their comparatives in *-entior*, and their superlatives in *-entissīmus* (as if from positives ending in *-ens*)<sup>1</sup>; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
māledīcus, <i>standerous.</i>	māledīcentior	māledīcentissīmus
bēnēficius, <i>beneficent.</i>	bēnēficiēntior	bēnēficiēntissīmus
bēnēvōlus, <i>benefolent.</i>	bēnēvōlentior	bēnēvōlentissīmus

NOTE. These comparatives and superlatives are formed as from the participles *dīcēns*, *saying*, *fāciēns*, *doing*, *vōlēns*, *wishing*.

4. The following adjectives, in common use, are compared irregularly :—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bōnus, <i>good</i> .	mēlior, <i>better</i> .	optimus, <i>best</i> .
mālus, <i>bad</i> .	pējor, <i>worse</i> .	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
māgnus, <i>great</i> .	mājor, <i>greater</i> .	māximus, <i>greatest</i> .
parvus, <i>small</i> .	mīnor, <i>less</i> .	mīnimus, <i>least</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> .	plūs (neut.), <i>more</i> .	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .
dīves, } <i>rich</i> .	dīvitior, } <i>richer</i> .	dīvitissimus, } <i>richest</i> .
dis, }	dītior, }	dītissimus, }

### 150. Defective Comparison.

1. Seven adjectives have no positive ; they are —

1. cītērior, cītīmus, *hither, hithermost*.
2. dētērior, dētērrīmus, *worse*.
3. intērior, intīmus, *inner, innermost*.
4. dīor, dīcissīmus, *swifter*.
5. prior, prīmus, *former, first*.
6. prōpior, prōximus, *nearer, next*.
7. ultērior, ultīmus, *further, farthest*.

2. The following are irregular in the superlative<sup>1</sup> :—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.	Meaning.
extērus	extērior	extrēmus and extīmus	<i>outward</i> .
īferus	īfērior	īfīmus and īmus	<i>lower</i> .
sūpērus	sūpērior	suprēmus and summus	<i>upper</i> .
postērus	postērior	postrēmus and postūmus	<i>next</i> .

3. The following adjectives are irregular :—

jūvēnis, <sup>1</sup> <i>young</i> .	{ jūnior	{ mīnīmus nātū
	{ mīnor nātū	
sēnex, <i>old</i> .	{ sēnior	{ māxīmus nātū
	{ major nātū	

### 151. Compare the following :—

- |                           |                             |                                |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cēler, <i>swift</i> .  | 4. mīser, <i>wretched</i> . | 8. lātus, <i>broad</i> .       |
| 2. audāx, <i>bold</i> .   | 5. āmāns, <i>loving</i> .   | 9. dīligēns, <i>diligent</i> . |
| 3. fortis, <i>brave</i> . | 6. sāpiēns, <i>wise</i> .   | 10. bōnus, <i>good</i> .       |
|                           | 7. altus, <i>high</i> .     |                                |

Obs. 1. The comparative may be translated in various ways; as, **audācior**, *bolder, rather bold, too bold*.

Obs. 2. The superlative **audācissimus** may mean *boldest* or *very bold*.

Obs. 3. The superlative with **quam** denotes the highest degree possible; as, **quam plūrimī**, *as many as possible*; **quam maximum**, *as large as possible*.

Obs. 4. **Per** in composition with adjectives has the force of *very*; as, **permāgnus**, *very great*.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>prīmus</b> , -a, -um, <i>first</i> .	<b>sūpērior</b> , <b>sūpērius</b> , <i>higher, upper</i> .
<b>sōl</b> , <b>sōlis</b> , M., <i>sun</i> .	<b>Hōrātius</b> , -ī, M., <i>Horace</i> .
<b>terra</b> , -ae, F., <i>earth</i> .	<b>Lābiēnus</b> , -ī, M., <i>Labienus</i> .
<b>lūna</b> , -ae, F., <i>moon</i> .	<b>Vergīlius</b> , -ī, M., <i>Vergil</i> .
<b>prōpior</b> , <b>prōpius</b> , <i>nearer</i> .	<b>Hōmērus</b> , -ī, M., <i>Homer</i> .
<b>cītērior</b> , <b>cītērius</b> , <i>hither</i> .	<b>scientia</b> , -ae, F., <i>knowledge, skill</i> .

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt.
2. Iter per provinciam est facilius.
3. Itinera erant difficilissima.
4. Sol maior est quam terra.
5. Luna minor est quam terra.
6. Reges cum proximis civitatibus pacem confirmant.
7. Oppidum est in citiōre Gallia.
8. Labienus summum montem<sup>2</sup> occupavit.
9. Horatius erat bonus poeta, Vergilius melior, Homerus optimus.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. These words are added for convenience of reference; they can be omitted for the present.

2. The *summit* of the mountain.

How do adjectives ending in *-er* form their comparatives? How may superlatives be translated? What adjectives form their superlatives like **facilis**? What is meant by comparison of adjectives? How many degrees of comparison are there? How is each formed? How declined?

## LESSON XXXIX.

USE OF ADVERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.  
PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE PASSIVE.

## EXAMPLE.

**mīles fortiter pūgnat**, *the soldier fights bravely.*

Obs. In the foregoing sentence, note that *the soldier fights* expresses a fact in a general way. We may add a word, and say *the soldier fights bravely*, we may add a word to *bravely*, and say *soldiers fight very bravely*. Here *very* modifies *bravely*; *very bravely* modifies the predicate. Such words as *very* and *bravely* are called ADVERBS (**ad**, *to*, and **verbum**, *word, or verb*). This use of adverbs is expressed in the following rule:—

## USE OF ADVERBS.

**152. RULE XVI.**—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

**153.** Rule of position:—

The adverb generally precedes the word it limits; but **fērē** usually stands between the adjective and the noun; as, **omnēs fērē hōmīnes**, *almost all men.*

*Voices of Verbs.*

**154.** Transitive verbs have two *voices*, the Active and the Passive.

1. The *active voice* shows that the subject is the actor.
2. The *passive voice* shows that the subject is acted upon.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **māgister laudat**, *the teacher praises.*
2. **discipūlus laudātur**, *the pupil is praised.*
3. **discipūlus laudātus est**, *the pupil has been praised.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples the form of the verb shows whether the subject is the actor, or the thing acted upon. These different forms of the verb are called *voice*. The passive form in English is compounded, and may be resolved into some form of the verb *to be*, and the *complement*, which is the perfect participle of a transitive verb.



155. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses, Indicative Mode, Passive Voice, are formed by adding the verbal endings to the present stem. They are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + or	āmor	<i>I am loved.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	āmāris, -re	<i>Thou art loved.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	āmātur	<i>He is loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	āmāmur	<i>We are loved.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	āmāminī	<i>You are loved.</i>
3	“ “ + ntur	āmāntur	<i>They are loved.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bar	āmābar	<i>I was being loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bāris, re	āmābāris, -re	<i>Thou wast being loved.</i>
3	“ “ + bātur	āmābātur	<i>He was being loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmur	āmābāmur	<i>We were being loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bāminī	āmābāminī	<i>You were being loved.</i>
3	“ “ + bantur	āmābantur	<i>They were being loved.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bor	āmābor	<i>I shall be loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bēris, re	āmābēris, -re	<i>Thou wilt be loved.</i>
3	“ “ + bītur	āmābītur	<i>He will be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bīmur	āmābīmur	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bīminī	āmābīminī	<i>You will be loved.</i>
3	“ “ + buntur	āmābuntur	<i>They will be loved.</i>

156. Analysis of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive:—

1. Notice that the passive voice of these tenses differs from the same tenses in the active voice only in the endings; as,

a. Pres. Act. = pres. st. + personal endings; as, **āmā + mus**, *we love*. Pres. Pass. = pres. st. + personal endings + passive sign; as, **āmā mu-r**, *we are loved*.

*b.* Imperf. Act. = pres. st. + tense sign (-ba-) + personal endings; as, **āmā-bā-mus**, *we were loving*. Imperf. Pass. = pres. st. + personal endings + passive sign; as, **āmā-bā-mu-r**, *we were loved*.

*c.* Future Act. = pres. st. + tense sign (-bi-) + personal endings; as, **āmā-bī-mus**, *we shall love*. Future Pass. = pres. st. + personal endings + passive sign; as, **āmā-bī-mu-r**, *we shall be loved*. The second person singular future has -bē- instead of -bī-; as, **āmā-bē-ris** or -re.

Obs. 1. The passive voice is a reflexive form, made by adding the reflexive stem -sē- (-srā-) to the active; the *s* changes to *r*, except in the second person singular; as,

*Sing.* 1 amo-s(e) = amor      *Plur.* 1 ama-mu(s)-s(e) = amā-mu-r  
 2 ama-si-s(e) = amā-ri-s      2 —  
 3 ama-tu-s(e) = amā-tu-r      3 ama-ntu-s(e) = amā-ntu-r

Obs. 2. **Amor** is for **āmā-or**, same as **āmo** is for **āmā-o**.

Obs. 3. The distinction in meaning between the tenses denoting INCOMPLETE action and those denoting COMPLETED action is often obscured in English on account of the want of special forms to express incomplete action in the passive; as, **bellum pārātur** means, not *the war is prepared*, but *the war is preparing, is being prepared*. The perfect **bellum pārātum est** means *war has been prepared*, and so *war is prepared* (or aorist, *war was prepared*). Notice the imperfect **bellum pārābātur**, *war was preparing, not war was prepared*.

## VOCABULARY.

**culpo**, **culpāre**, **culpāvī**, **culpātum**, *blame*.  
**ōnus**, **ōnēris**, *N., burden*.  
**porto**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *carry*.  
**ācrīter**, *adv., sharply, fiercely*.  
**grāvīter**, *adv., heavily, severely*.  
**cēlērīter**, *adv., quickly*.  
**audacter**, *adv., boldly*.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Landābītur.
2. Ōnus portātur.
3. Nōn vōcābēris.
4. Vōcābāris.
5. Vulnērābīmīnī.
6. Puērī culpantur.
7. Culpābāmur.
8. Mīlītēs audacter pūgnant.
9. Mīlītēs castra diligenter servant.
10. Caesar Dumnōrigem grāvīter accūsāvit.
11. Mīlītēs fortīter pūgnābant.
12. Germānī Helvētīōs facīle sūpērābunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We are blamed.
2. They are praised.
3. You were being praised.
4. They will be praised.
5. The girls are called.
6. The boy is calling.
7. The men fight bravely.
8. They will be carried.
9. We were being called.
10. They will be called.
11. He is (being) praised.
12. He was being praised.
13. They blame the Romans severely.
14. They are blamed severely.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is meant by *voice* in grammar? How many voices? Give the meaning of the present passive in Latin. What verbs only can be in the passive voice?

### LESSON XL.

#### ADVERBS.

#### FORMATION, CLASSIFICATION, AND COMPARISON.

##### 1. Formation of Adverbs.

##### EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
1. <i>cārus</i> , dear.	<i>cāro-</i>	<i>cārē</i> , <i>dearly</i> .
2. <i>dignus</i> , <i>worthy</i> .	<i>dīgno-</i>	<i>dīgnē</i> , <i>worthily</i> .
3. <i>pulcher</i> , <i>beautiful</i> .	<i>pulchro-</i>	<i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i> .
4. <i>miser</i> , <i>wretched</i> .	<i>misēro-</i>	<i>misērē</i> , <i>wretchedly</i> .

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the adjectives are all of the first and second declensions; that the adverbs are formed by changing *-o-*, the characteristic vowel of the stem, into *-ē-*. Hence the rule:—

157. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to *-ē-*.

## EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
1. fortis, brave.	forti-	fortiter, bravely.
2. grāvis, heavy.	grāvi-	grāviter, heavily.
3. ācer, eager.	ācri-	ācriter, eagerly.
4. fērōx, wild.	fērōc-	fērōciter, wildly.
5. sāpiēns, wise.	sāpient-	sāpienter, wisely.
6. prūdēns, prudent.	prudent-	prudenter, prudently.

Obs. Note (1) that the adjectives are all of the third declension; (2) that 1, 2, 3 add *-ter* to the stem; (3) that 4 assumes *-i-* before the suffix *-ter*; (4) that 5 and 6 end in *-ns*, gen. *-nt-is*; (5) that these adjectives drop *-t-* from the stem before adding *-ter*. Hence the rule:—

**158.** Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-ter* to the stem; but stems ending in *e*, *k*, or *g* assume *-i-* before the suffix *-ter*, and those in *-nt-* drop final *t* of the stem before adding *-ter*.

**159.** Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have adverbs in *-ter* as well as in *-ē*; as,

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
1. dūrus, severe.	dūro-	dūrē and dūrīter
2. firmus, firm.	firno-	firmē and firmīter
3. largus, bounteous.	largo-	largē and largīter
4. hūmānus, courteous.	hūmāno-	hūmānē and hūmānīter
5. miser, wretched.	misero-	misērē and misērīter

**160.** The neuter accusative of many adjectives is used as an adverb; neuter comparatives are especially so used.

## EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Accusative.	Adverb.
1. multus, much.	multum	multum
2. fācilis, easy.	fācile	fācile
3. rēcēns, late.	rēcēns	rēcēns
4. ācer, eager.	ācrius	ācrius
5. dulcis, sweet.	dulce	dulce
6. prīmus, first.	prīmum	prīmum

## II. Classification of Adverbs.

161. The adverbs enumerated in the foregoing examples denote, for the most part, the manner of the action, and are therefore called *adverbs of manner*. Adverbs may also denote the *time*, the *place*, the *degree*, or the *cause* of the action expressed by the verb.

## III. Comparison of Adverbs.

162. The comparative of adverbs that are regularly compared is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of adjectives, and consequently ends in *-ius*.

1. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing the final vowel of the stem to *-ē*.

### EXAMPLES.

Adjectives.	Adverbs.		
	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
cārus, <i>dear</i> .	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
miser, <i>wretched</i> .	{ misērē { (misērīter)	misērius	miserrimē
audāx, <i>bold</i> .	{ audācter { (audācīter)	audācius	audācissimē
lēvis, <i>light</i> .	lēvīter	lēvius	lēvissimē
ācer, <i>eager</i> .	ācīter	ācīrius	ācerimē
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i> .	prūdēter	prūdētius	prūdētissimē
felix, <i>happy</i> .	fēlicīter	fēlicīus	fēlicīssimē

2. If the adjectives are irregular in their comparison, the adverbs have the same irregularity.

### EXAMPLES.

Adjectives.	Adverbs.		
	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bōnus, <i>good</i> .	bēne	mēlius	optimē
mālus, <i>bad</i> .	māle	pēlius	pessimē
multus, <i>much</i> .	multum	plūs	plūrimum
māgnus, <i>great</i> .	—	māgis	māximē

3. A few adverbs not derived from adjectives are compared.

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
diū, <i>for a long time.</i> saepe, <i>often.</i>	diūtius saepius	diūtissimē saeπισsimē

4. Form from each of the following adjectives an adverb, and compare it:—

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. simīlis, -e, <i>like.</i>         | 7. aeger, -gra, -grum, <i>sick.</i>     |
| 2. fortis, -e, <i>brave.</i>         | 8. amāus, gen. -ntis, <i>loving.</i>    |
| 3. celer, -ēris, -ēre, <i>quick.</i> | 9. elegāus, gen. -ntis, <i>elegant.</i> |
| 4. grāvis, -e, <i>heavy.</i>         | 10. altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>  |
| 5. liber, -ēra, -erum, <i>free.</i>  | 11. cupidus, -a, -um, <i>greedy.</i>    |
| 6. amīcus, -a, -um, <i>friendly.</i> | 12. fērōx, gen. -ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>   |

163. Model for parsing adverbs:—

mīlitēs fortīter pūgnant, *the soldiers fight bravely: fortīter is an adverb of manner (161), derived from the adjective fortis (157); compared, fortīter, fortius, fortissime (157); of the positive degree, and modifies pūgnant, according to Rule XVI.: Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is an adverb? What is the usual position of an adverb in a sentence? (*Ans.* It stands immediately before the word it limits.) How are adverbs classified? How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension? How from adjectives of the third declension? How are adverbs compared? How are English adverbs formed? Form an adverb from *brave*; compare it. Write a sentence in English containing an adverb of place; of manner; of degree.

## LESSON XII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

164. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice are made up of the Perfect Participle in combination with the forms of *sum*.

EXAMPLE. — *amāre, to love.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PART. STEM.	NOM.
<i>amā-</i>	<i>amāvī-</i>	<i>amāto-</i>	<i>amātus, -a, -um</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

PRES. STEM.	PRES. INFIN.	PERFECT.
<i>amā-</i>	<i>amārī</i>	<i>amātus, -a, -um sum</i>

1. The Participial Stem is formed by adding *-to*, nom. *-tus* (often changed to *-so*, nom. *-sus*), to the present stem.

## EXAMPLES.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PART. STEM.	NOM.
<i>amo</i>	<i>amā-</i>	<i>amāvī-</i>	<i>amātō-</i>	<i>amātus</i>
<i>voco</i>	<i>vocā-</i>	<i>vocāvī-</i>	<i>vocātō-</i>	<i>vocātus</i>
<i>laudo</i>	<i>laudā-</i>	<i>laudāvī-</i>	<i>laudātō-</i>	<i>laudātus</i>

2. The Principal Parts of a verb are :—

- (1) The Present Indicative, } showing the *present stem* and the
- (2) The Present Infinitive, } *conjugation.*
- (3) The Perfect Indicative, showing the *perfect stem.*
- (4) The Neuter Nominative and Accusative of the Perfect Participle, showing the *participial stem.*

## EXAMPLES.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PERF. PART.
<i>amo</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amātum</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.
<i>amor</i>	<i>amārī</i>	<i>amātus, -a, -um sum</i>

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
Verb-stem —				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	+ tus sum	āmātus sum	<i>I have</i>	} <i>I was loved.</i>
2	+ tus es	āmātus es	<i>Thou hast</i>	
3	+ tus est	āmātus est	<i>He has</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	+ tī sūmus	āmātī sūmus	<i>We have</i>	} <i>We were loved.</i>
2	+ tī estis	āmātī estis	<i>You have</i>	
3	+ tī sunt	āmātī sunt	<i>They have</i>	
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-stem + tus eram	āmātus eram	<i>I had been loved.</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
2	“ + tus erās	āmātus erās	<i>Thou hadst been loved</i>	
3	“ + tus erat	āmātus erat	<i>He had been loved.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + tī erāmus	āmātī erāmus	<i>We had been loved.</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
2	“ + tī erātis	āmātī erātis	<i>You had been loved.</i>	
3	“ + tī erant	āmātī erant	<i>They had been loved.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-stem + tus ero	āmātus ero	<i>I shall have</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
2	“ + tus eris	āmātus eris	<i>Thou wilt have</i>	
3	“ + tus erit	āmātus erit	<i>He shall have</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + tī erimus	āmātī erimus	<i>We shall have</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
2	“ + tī eritis	āmātī eritis	<i>You will have</i>	
3	“ + tī erunt	āmātī erunt	<i>They will have</i>	

165. Analysis of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive :—

1. The perfect = partic. stem + -s together with **sum**.
2. The pluperfect = partic. stem + -s together with **eram**.
3. The future perf. = partic. stem + -s together with **ero**.



Obs. 1. The perfect participle has three endings for the three genders, and is declined like *bōnus*; as, *āmatus, -a, -um*. It must agree, like an adjective, in gender, number, and case, with the subject.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *puer āmātus est, the boy was loved.*
2. *virgo āmāta est, the virgin was loved.*
3. *nōmen āmātum est, the name was loved.*
4. *puē<sup>r</sup>ī āmātī sunt, the boys were loved.*
5. *vir, inēs āmātae sunt, the virgins were loved.*
6. *nōmīna āmāta sunt, the names were loved.*

Obs. 2. In the foregoing examples, note that the participle agrees with the subject like an adjective.

## VOCABULARY.

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PART. PASS.
<i>āmo, love.</i>	<i>āmāre</i>	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmātum</i>
<i>laudo, praise.</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>laudāvī</i>	<i>laudātum</i>
<i>porto, carry.</i>	<i>portāre</i>	<i>portāvī</i>	<i>portātum</i>
<i>vōco, call.</i>	<i>vōcāre</i>	<i>vōcāvī</i>	<i>vōcātum</i>
<i>ēnuntio, report.<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>ēnuntiāre</i>	<i>ēnuntiāvī</i>	<i>ēnuntiātum</i>
<i>occulto, conceal.</i>	<i>occultāre</i>	<i>occultāvī</i>	<i>occultātum</i>
<i>comporto, collect.</i>	<i>comportāre</i>	<i>comportāvī</i>	<i>comportātum</i>

SYN. *Infāns* (in, not, *fārī, to speak*), an *infant*; *puer, a boy*, from about seven to sixteen; *ādūlescēns* (*adōlesco, to grow*), a *youth*, from about sixteen to twenty-four; *jūvénis, a young man or woman*, from about twenty-four to forty-five.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. *Laudātī estis.*
2. *Onus portātum est.*
3. *Rēgēs culpātī sunt.*
4. *Vulnērātus sum.*
5. *Vulnērātī sumus.*
6. *Nostra consilia hostibus<sup>2</sup> ēnuntiāta sunt.*
7. *In tantā multitudīne ēquitum nostra fūga occultāta est.*
8. *Māgna cōpia frūmentī comportāta erat.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. You were called.
2. You were praised.
3. You have been praised.
4. You shall have been praised.
5. The corn has been collected.
6. An abundance of corn has been collected.
7. They shall have been praised.
8. We had been called.
9. They were loved.<sup>3</sup>
10. They were (being) loved.<sup>4</sup>
11. They were loving.<sup>5</sup>
12. The work was praised.
13. The girl has been called.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Written also **enunció**.
2. Dative case.
3. The aorist (perf.) passive.
4. Imperfect passive.
5. Imperfect active.

From what stem is the perfect passive formed? What are the principal parts of a verb? Mention the three stems. What verbs can have a passive voice? Can they take an object in the passive voice?

## LESSON XLII.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE ACTIVE.—ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

166. All verbs whose characteristic vowel before the ending *-re* in the Present Infinitive is *e*, belong to the Second Conjugation. Thus—

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INF.
mōneo	mōnē-	mōnē-re
hābeo	hābē-	hābē-re
terreo	terrē-	terrē-re
tāceo	tācē-	tācē-re

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Active are formed by adding the verbal endings to the present stem.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation; the "connective vowel," or the final vowel of the stem, is *e* instead of *a*, and is retained in the present tense.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + o	mōneo	<i>I advise.</i>
2	" " + s	mōnēs	<i>Thou advisest.</i>
3	" " + t	mōnet	<i>He advises.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	mōnēmus	<i>We advise.</i>
2	" " + tis	mōnētis	<i>You advise.</i>
3	" " + nt	mōnent	<i>They advise.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bam	mōnēbam	<i>I was advising.</i>
2	" " + bās	mōuēbās	<i>Thou wast advising.</i>
3	" " + bat	mōnēbat	<i>He was advising.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bāmus	mōnēbāmus	<i>We were advising.</i>
2	" " + bātis	mōnēbātis	<i>You were advising.</i>
3	" " + bant	mōnēbant	<i>They were advising.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bo	mōnēbo	<i>I shall or will advise.</i>
2	" " + bis	mōnēbis	<i>Thou wilt advise.</i>
3	" " + bit	mōnēbit	<i>He will advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bimus	mōnēbimus	<i>We shall or will advise.</i>
2	" " + bitis	mōnēbitis	<i>You will advise.</i>
3	" " + bunt	mōnēbunt	<i>They will advise.</i>

a. The verbal endings are the same as in the first conjugation. See 58. 1.

## 167. Ablative of Agent.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *vulnērātus est sāgittis, he was wounded with arrows.*
2. *vulnērātus est ā milite, he was wounded by a soldier.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, compare the two ablatives; note that the noun *sagittis*, which designates the *instrument* by which the action expressed by the verb is performed, is in the ablative, without a preposition, according to Rule IX. In the second sentence the ablative designates the *person*, or *agent*, by which the action expressed by the verb is performed, and it is accompanied by the preposition *ā* or *ab*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

**168. RULE XVII.**—The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>dōceo, teach.</i>	<i>dōcē-</i>	<i>dōcēre</i>	<i>dōcui</i>	<i>doctum</i>
<i>tīmeo, fear.</i>	<i>tīmē-</i>	<i>tīmēre</i>	<i>tīmuī</i>	—
<i>hābeo, have.</i>	<i>hābē-</i>	<i>hābēre</i>	<i>hābui</i>	<i>hābitum</i>
<i>dēleo, destroy.</i>	<i>dēlē-</i>	<i>dēlēre</i>	<i>dēlēvī</i>	<i>dēlētum</i>
<i>prōhibeo, restrain.</i>	<i>prōhibē-</i>	<i>prōhibēre</i>	<i>prōhibuī</i>	<i>prōhibitum</i>

SYN. *Dōceo, to teach; ēdōceo, to make one learn; per dōceo, to teach thoroughly; ērūdio (e and rūdis, rough), to instruct, lit. to bring from a rough condition; ēdūco, to educate, whether in a physical or moral sense.*

## EXERCISES.

25 Translate into English:—

1. *Dōcēmus pu* an. 2. *Dōcētis.* 3. *Multa castra hābē-*
4. *bimus.* 4. *Mōnet.* 5. *Tīmēbat.* 6. *Rēgīnae timent.*
7. *Puellae nōn timent.* 8. *Mōnēbit.* 9. *Hābēbant.* 10. *Timet.*
11. *Dōcēbunt.* 12. *Dōcēbimus.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. We fear, we were fearing, we shall fear.
2. Ye teach, they were teaching, they will teach.
3. The girl will fear.
4. I will teach, I was teaching.
5. Ye were teaching.
6. They call, they were calling, they will call.
7. Thou didst call.
8. You will not have fought.
9. Thou dost fear.
10. The master praises the pupil.
11. The pupil is praised

by the master. 12. The girl is crowned by (her) mother. 13. He was wounded by a spear. 14. He was wounded by a soldier. 15. Crassus is called by (his) friend. 16. The towns will be seized by the Belgians.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is the characteristic vowel of the second conjugation? In what does the present stem end? Analyze the imperfect; *i.e.*, mention the stem, the tense sign, the personal endings.

### LESSON XLIII.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

##### PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

**169.** The Perfect Stem of a regular verb of the Second Conjugation may be formed, —

1. By adding *er*<sup>1</sup> to the present stem. (This rule is applicable to but few verbs.)

2. By dropping *e* of the present stem and adding *er*. This is the more common way of forming the perfect stem of the second conjugation.

#### EXAMPLES.

Present.	Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Part. Stem.
dēleo, <i>destroy.</i>	dēlē-	dēlēvī-	dēlēto-
mōneo, <i>admonish.</i>	mōnē-	mōnūi-	mōnito-

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Participle.
dēleo mōneo	dēlēre mōnēre	dēlēvī mōnūi	dēlētūm mōnītūm

**170.** The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation; the characteristic vowel of the stem changes from *i* to *ē* in the third person plural of the perfect, to *i* in the first person plural, and to *ē* in the pluperfect and future perfect.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. st.	mōnuī	<i>I have advised.</i>	<i>I advised.</i>
2	" + stī	mōnuistī	<i>Thou hast advised.</i>	<i>Thou advisedst</i>
3	" + t	mōnuīt	<i>He has advised.</i>	<i>He advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" + mus	mōnuimus	<i>We have advised.</i>	<i>We advised.</i>
2	" + stis	mōnuistis	<i>You have advised.</i>	<i>You advised.</i>
3	" { + runt or re	monuērunt, or monuēre	<i>They have advised.</i>	<i>They advised.</i>
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	mōnuēram	<i>I had advised.</i>	
2	" " + rās	mōnuērās	<i>Thou hadst advised.</i>	
3	" " + rat	mōnuērat	<i>He had advised.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rāmus	mōnuērāmus	<i>We had advised.</i>	
2	" " + rātis	mōnuērātis	<i>You had advised.</i>	
3	" " + rant	mōnuērānt	<i>They had advised.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ro	mōnuēro	<i>I shall have advised.</i>	
2	" " + ris	mōnuēris	<i>Thou wilt have advised.</i>	
3	" " + rit	mōnuērit	<i>He will have advised.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rimus	mōnuērimus	<i>We shall have advised.</i>	
2	" " + ritis	mōnuēritis	<i>You will have advised.</i>	
3	" " + rint	mōnuērint	<i>They will have advised.</i>	

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
dēleo, <i>destroy.</i>	dēlē-	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum
compleo, <i>fill.</i>	complē-	complēre	complēvī	complētum
mōneo, <i>advise.</i>	mōnē-	mōnēre	mōnūī	mōnītum
tāceo, <i>be silent.</i>	tācē-	tācēre	tācuī	tācītum
dēbeo, <i>owe.</i>	dēbē-	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbītum
hābeo, <i>have.</i>	hābē-	hābēre	hābuī	hābitum
dōceo, <i>teach.</i>	dōcē-	dōcēre	dōcuī	doctum
tēneo, <i>hold.</i>	tēnē-	tēnēre	tēnuī	tentum
māneo, <i>remain.</i>	mān(ē-)	mānēre	mansī	mansum
augeo, <i>increase.</i>	aug(ē-)	augēre	auxī	auctum
jūbeo, <i>command.</i>	jūb(ē-)	jūbēre	jussī	jussum

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Dēlēvit, dēlēverunt, dēlēverint.
2. Dōcērās, dōcērīt.
3. Mōnuistis.
4. Hābuērīt, mōmērunt, dōcūrunt.
5. Dōcuistī puellam.
6. Rēgīna mōnuērīt.
7. Tēnuimus sagittas.
8. Rēgīna timet.
9. Puellae timērunt.
10. Mōnēbit, mōmērīt, mōnuērāt.
11. Dōcūrās, dōcūrīnt, dōcūbunt, dōcent.
12. Mansit, auxit, jussit.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We have destroyed, they had destroyed.
2. We have taught, he has taught.
3. They were teaching, he had taught.
4. They taught, they are silent, they were advising.
5. You fear, you were fearing, you will fear, you have feared, you had feared.
6. They command, they will command, they have commanded, they had commanded.
7. They have increased.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The *-vī* of the perfect stands for **fuī**, perfect of **sum**; as, **āmā-** (st. of **amo**) + **fuī** = perf. **āmāfuī** = **āmāuī** = **āmāvī**; so **dēlē-** (st. of **dēleo**) + **fuī** = **dēlēfuī** = **dēlēuī** = **dēlēvī**; **mōn(ē-)** + **fuī** = **monfuī** = **mōnuī** (the final vowel of the stem being dropped); also, **dōc(e-)** + **fuī** = **docfuī** = **dōcuī**. Sometimes the final vowel of the

stem is weakened to *i* and retained in the participial stem; as, *mōneo*, *mōnēre*, *mōnuī*, *mōnītum*.

2. Some verbs drop the characteristic vowel of the stem and add *-sī* to form the perfect; as, *ang(ē-) + sī = augsī = auxī*; *mān(ē-) + sī = mansī*; *jūb(ē-) + sī = jussī = jussī*; but *indulgeo*, *indulge*, *indulgēre*, *indulsī*, *indultum*, where the *y* as well as the characteristic vowel of the stem is dropped.

How many stems has a verb? How many uses has the perfect? How can you distinguish verbs of the second conjugation? How do verbs of this conjugation form their perfects?

## LESSON XLIV.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

171. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, the tense signs, and passive sign, are the same as those of the first conjugation.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + or	<i>mōneor</i>	<i>I am (being) advised.</i>
2	" " + ris or re	<i>mōnēris, -re</i>	<i>Thou art advised.</i>
3	" " + tur	<i>mōnētur</i>	<i>He is advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mur	<i>mōnēmur</i>	<i>We are advised.</i>
2	" " + minī	<i>mōnēminī</i>	<i>You are advised.</i>
3	" " + .tur	<i>mōnēntur</i>	<i>They are advised.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bar	<i>mōnēbar</i>	<i>I was being</i>
2	" " + bāris, re	<i>mōnēbāris, -re</i>	<i>Thou wast being</i>
3	" " + bātur	<i>mōnēbātur</i>	<i>He was being</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bāmur	<i>mōnēbāmur</i>	<i>We were being</i>
2	" " + bāminī	<i>mōnēbāminī</i>	<i>You were being</i>
3	" " + bantur	<i>mōnēbantur</i>	<i>They were being</i>

advised.

PARTICIPLE.

lēlētum  
omplētum  
mōnītum  
ācītum  
lēbītum  
hābītum  
doctum  
entum  
mansum  
ductum  
ussum

, dōcēnērīt.

5. Dō-  
s sīgittas.

Mōnēbit,  
dōcēbunt,

We have

g, he had

advising.

you have

they will

mandated.

n; as, *āmā-*

*deo dēlē-* (st.

*ē-) + fuī =*

(ped); also,

vowel of the

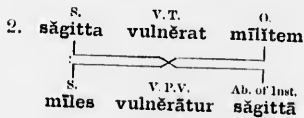
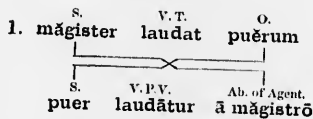


FUTURE.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bor	mōnēbor	<i>I shall be advised.</i>
2	" " + bēris, re	mōnēbēris, re	<i>Thou wilt be advised.</i>
3	" " + bitur	mōnēbitur	<i>He will be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bīmur	mōnēbīmur	<i>We shall be advised.</i>
2	" " + bīmīnī	mōnēbīmīnī	<i>You shall be advised.</i>
3	" " + buntur	mōnēbuntur	<i>They shall be advised.</i>

Ons. Formula for the conversion of sentences to the passive voice:—

**172.** The subject of the active voice becomes, in the passive voice, the Ablative of Agent (with a preposition), or Instrument (without a preposition). The object in the active voice becomes the subject in the passive.

#### EXAMPLES.



#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Dēlētur, timentur, timēbantur, timēbuntur.
2. Dōcētur, dōcēbātur, dōcēbītur.
3. Tēnēbantur, tēnēbat.
4. Hābēris, hābēbāris, hābēbēris.
5. Onēra grāvīa ā servīs timēbantur.
6. Summus mōns<sup>1</sup> ā Tītō Lābiēnō tēnēbātur.
7. Discīpūlī ā māgistrō dōcentur.
8. Mōnēbīmīnī, mōnēbātur, mōnēbātīs.
9. Augentur, jūbētur, jūbēbītur.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They are (being) taught, they were (being) taught, they will be taught. 2. The master teaches the pupils. 3. The pupils are taught by the master. 4. He is feared, he was feared, he will be feared. 5. We are advised, we were advised, we shall be advised. 6. The boys were being taught by the master. 7. The soldiers are wounded by the arrows.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

1. *The top of the mountain*; lit., *the highest mountain*.

Define voice in grammar. From what stem are the tenses of incomplete action formed? Give the rule for changing a sentence from the active to the passive voice.

LESSON XLV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

173. The Participial Stem of verbs of the Second Conjugation is formed by adding *-to* (or *-so*), nom. *-tus* (or *-sus*), to the verb-stem. Some verbs change final *e* of the present stem to short *i* in the participial stem; others drop the stem vowel altogether. Many verbs of this conjugation have no participial stem.

**EXAMPLES.**

Pres. Indicative.	Present Stem.	Perfect Stem.	Part. Stem.
dēleo, <i>destroy</i> .	dēlē-	dēlēvī-	dēlēto-
mōneo, <i>advise</i> .	mōnē-	mōnuī-	mōnito-
dōceo, <i>teach</i> .	dōcē-	dōcuī-	docto-
māneo, <i>remain</i> .	mānē-	mansī-	manso-
haereo, <i>stick</i> .	haerē-	haesi-	haeso-
sileo, <i>be silent</i> .	silē-	siluī-	—
timeo, <i>fear</i> .	timē-	timuī-	—

1. The tenses of the indicative mode, formed from the participial stem, are inflected as follows :—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The analysis of the tenses formed from the participial stem in the second conjugation is the same as in the first conjugation.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-stem —	mōnitus sum	<i>I have</i>	} <i>I was</i> } <i>Thou wast</i> } <i>He was</i> } <i>We were</i> } <i>You were</i> } <i>They were</i> } <i>advised.</i>
	+ tus es	mōnitus es	<i>Thou hast</i>	
	+ tus est	mōnitus est	<i>He has</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	+ tī sūmus	mōnītī sūmus	<i>We have</i>	} <i>We were</i> } <i>You were</i> } <i>They were</i> } <i>advised.</i>
	+ tī estis	mōnītī estis	<i>You have</i>	
	+ tī sunt	mōnītī sunt	<i>They have</i>	
PLUPERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	+ tus eram	mōnitus eram	<i>I had been advised.</i>	} <i>Thou hadst been advised.</i> } <i>He had been advised.</i> } <i>We had been advised.</i> } <i>You had been advised.</i> } <i>They had been advised.</i>
	+ tus erās	mōnitus erās	<i>Thou hadst been advised.</i>	
	+ tus erat	mōnitus erat	<i>He had been advised.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	+ tī erāmus	mōnītī erāmus	<i>We had been advised.</i>	} <i>You had been advised.</i> } <i>They had been advised.</i>
	+ tī erātis	mōnītī erātis	<i>You had been advised.</i>	
	+ tī erant	mōnītī erant	<i>They had been advised.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	+ tus ero	mōnitus ero	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>	} <i>Thou wilt have been advised.</i> } <i>He will have been advised.</i> } <i>We shall have been advised.</i> } <i>You will have been advised.</i> } <i>They will have been advised.</i>
	+ tus eris	mōnitus eris	<i>Thou wilt have been advised.</i>	
	+ tus erit	mōnitus erit	<i>He will have been advised.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	+ tī erimus	mōnītī erimus	<i>We shall have been advised.</i>	} <i>You will have been advised.</i> } <i>They will have been advised.</i>
	+ tī eritis	mōnītī eritis	<i>You will have been advised.</i>	
	+ tī erunt	mōnītī erunt	<i>They will have been advised.</i>	

## VOCABULARY.

fleo	flēre	flēvī	flētum, <sup>1</sup> weep.
plāceo	plācēre	plācuī	plācītum, <sup>2</sup> please.
nōceo	nōcēre	nōcuī	nōcītum, hurt.
contīneo	contīnēre	contīnuī	contentum, <sup>3</sup> hem in.
cēnseo	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsūm, <sup>3</sup> think.
haereo	haerēre	haesī	haesum, <sup>4</sup> stick.
rīdeo	rīdēre	rīsī	rīsūm, <sup>5</sup> laugh.

jūbeo	jūbēre	jussi	jussum, <sup>6</sup> <i>command.</i>
videō	vidēre	vidī	vīsum, <i>see.</i>
tīmeo	tīmēre	tīmuī	—, <i>fear.</i>
lāteo	lātēre	lātuī	—, <i>lie hid.</i>

Gārumna, -ae, M., the Garonne.

undīque, adv., on all sides. et, conj., and.

SYN. Jūdīco, judge; cēseō, give official opinion.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

- Mōnītī ērunt. 2. Doctus<sup>1</sup> erat. 3. Puērī doctī sunt.
- Servī mōnītī ērunt. 5. Puer mōnītus ērit. 6. Undīque locī nātūrā Helvétīī continentur. 7. Filius tuus et sōror mea ā māgistrō bōnō doctī ērunt. 8. Rōma, urbs nostra, ā Rōmūlō rēge aedificāta est. 9. Pulehra sōror ā fratre dōcēbitur. 10. Mīlītēs jussī sunt. 11. Avēs multae puērōrum sāgītīs vulnerātae sunt.

Translate into Latin:—

- They have been taught, they had been taught, they will have been taught.
- He has been advised, he had been advised, he will have been advised.
- The boys have been taught by the master.
- The soldiers have been wounded.
- The soldiers have been wounded with the arrows.
- The king has been wounded by the soldier.
- The mountain will be held by Caesar.
- The top of the mountain has been held by Caesar.
- The Germans are hemmed in on all sides.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

- Participle formed regularly.
- Characteristic vowel of the stem weakened to *i*.
- Characteristic vowel of the stem dropped.
- Characteristic vowel of the stem dropped; **haer-eo, haer-** is for **haes-**, *s* being changed to *r* between two vowels; the participle = **haestum = haessum = haesum**.
- Characteristic vowel of the stem dropped = **rid- + -t = rīdt = rīs = rīsum**. See 179. 2.
- jūb- + -t = jūbt = jutt = juss**.

## LESSON XLVI.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

174. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in *-us* masculine, and *-a* neuter. They are declined as follows:—

## PARADIGMS.

FEMININE.		
Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	mānus, <i>a hand.</i>	mānūs, <i>hands.</i>
GEN.	mānūs, <i>of a hand.</i>	mānum, <i>of hands.</i>
DAT.	mānū, -ū, <i>to or for a hand.</i>	mānibus, <i>to or for hands.</i>
ACC.	mānum, <i>hand.</i>	mānūs, <i>hands.</i>
VOC.	mānus, <i>O hand.</i>	manūs, <i>O hands.</i>
ABL.	mānū, <i>with, from, or by a hand.</i>	mānibus, <i>with, from, or by hands.</i>
NEUTER.		
NOM.	gēnū, <i>a knee.</i>	gēnua, <i>knees.</i>
GEN.	gēnūs, <i>of a knee.</i>	genuum, <i>of knees.</i>
DAT.	gēnū, <i>to or for a knee.</i>	gēnibus, <i>to or for knees.</i>
ACC.	gēnū, <i>knee.</i>	gēnua, <i>knees.</i>
VOC.	gēnū, <i>O knee.</i>	gēnua, <i>O knees.</i>
ABL.	gēnū, <i>with, from, or by a knee.</i>	gēnibus, <i>with, from, or by knees.</i>

Cases.		fructus, m., <i>fruit.</i>	cornu, n., <i>horn.</i>	dōmus, f., <i>house.</i>	Case- Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	fructus	cornū	dōmus	-us -ū
	GEN.	fructūs	cornūs	dōmūs, dōmī	-ūs
	DAT.	fructū, -ū	cornū	dōmūī (dōmō)	-uī -ū
	ACC.	fructum	cornū	dōmum	-um -ū
	VOC.	fructus	cornū	dōmus	-us -ū
	ABL.	fructū	cornū	dōmō (dōmū)	-ū -ū
Plural.	NOM.	fructūs	cornua	dōmūs	-ūs -ua
	GEN.	fructuum	cornuum	dōmuum, dōmōrum	-uum
	DAT.	fructibus	cornibus	dōmibus	-ibus (-ūbus)
	ACC.	fructūs	cornua	dōmūs, -ōs	-ūs -ua
	VOC.	fructūs	cornua	dōmūs	-ūs -ua
	ABL.	fructibus	cornibus	dōmibus	-ibus (-ūbus)

1. The stem of nouns of the fourth declension ends in *-u*, which is usually changed to *i* before *-bus*. Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative by adding *s*; neuters, which are very few, have for the nominative the simple stem lengthened to *ū*.

2. The dative and ablative plural of the following words ends in *-ibus*: **artus**, *joint*, **partus**, *child-birth*, **portus**, *harbor*, **tribus**, *tribe*, **vĕru**; and also of words of two syllables in *-cus*, as **lācus**.

3. A few nouns of the fourth declension are feminine; as, **dōmus**, *house*, **īdūs** (pl), *Ides*, **mānus**, *hand*, **ācus**, *needle*, and some others.

4. Carefully distinguish the fourth from the second declension:—

(1) A noun with nominative in *-us* and genitive in *-i* is of the second declension.

(2) A noun with nominative in *-us* and genitive in *-ūs* is of the fourth declension.

## VOCABULARY.

**exercitus**, -ūs, M., *army*.

**dōmus**, -ūs, F., *house*.

**lūsus**, -ūs, M., *playing, sport*.

**ēquitātus**, -ūs, M., *cavalry*.

**ācus**, -ūs, F., *a needle*.

**arcus**, -ūs, M., *a bow*.

**currus**, -ūs, M., *a chariot*.

**mānus**, -ūs, F., *a hand*.

**sĕnātus**, -ūs, M., *senate*.

**cōspectus**, -ūs, M., *sight, view*.

**sustīneo**, **sustīnĕre**, **sustīnui**,

**sustentum**, *sustain*.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Sĕnātus exercitum laudat. 2. Agricōla taurum cornibus tēnet. 3. Pāter dōmūs aedificat. 4. Currūs hostium ab omnibus militibus visī i runt. 5. Galba dōmī fuit. 6. In conspectū exercitūs. 7. In conspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vastantur. 8. Equitātus sustīnĕbat hostium impĕtum.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The locative form **dōmī** means *at home*; it has the same form as the genitive of the second declension.

How many declensions in Latin? How is each distinguished? Of what gender are most nouns of the fourth declension? Mention a feminine noun of this declension.

in *-us* mas-  
follows:—

at.

ds.  
or hands.

om, or by hands

s.  
r knees.

m, or by knees.

Case-  
Endings.

-us -ū

-ūs

-uī -ū

-um -ū

-us -ū

-ū -ū

-ūs -ua

-uum

bus (-ūbus)

-ūs -ua

-ūs -ua

bus (-ūbus)

LESSON XLVII.  
FIFTH DECLENSION.

175. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *-ēs*, and are feminine. They are declined as follows:—

PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>diēs, a day.</i>	<i>diēs, days.</i>
GEN.	<i>diēi (diē), of a day.</i>	<i>diērum, of days.</i>
DAT.	<i>diēi (diē), to or for a day.</i>	<i>diēbus, to or for days.</i>
ACC.	<i>diem, a day.</i>	<i>diēs, days.</i>
VOC.	<i>diēs, O day.</i>	<i>diēs, O days.</i>
ABL.	<i>diē, with, from, or by a day.</i>	<i>diēbus, with, from, or by days.</i>

Cases.	<i>rēs, F., thing.</i>	<i>fidēs, F., faith.</i>	<i>rēspūblīen, commonwealth.</i>	Case- Endings.	
Singular.	NOM.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>fidēs</i>	<i>rēspūblīca</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	GEN.	<i>rēi</i>	<i>fidēi</i>	<i>rēipūblīcae</i>	<i>-ēi, -ē</i>
	DAT.	<i>rēi</i>	<i>fidēi</i>	<i>rēipūblīcae</i>	<i>-ēi, -ē</i>
	ACC.	<i>rem</i>	<i>fidem</i>	<i>rēmpūblīcam</i>	<i>-em</i>
	VOC.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>fidēs</i>	<i>rēspūblīca</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	ABL.	<i>rē</i>	<i>fidē</i>	<i>rēpūblīcā</i>	<i>-ē</i>
Plural.	NOM.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>Wanting.</i>	<i>rēspūblīcae</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	GEN.	<i>rērum</i>	—	<i>rērūmpūblīcārum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
	DAT.	<i>rēbus</i>	—	<i>rēbuspūblīcīs</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
	ACC.	<i>rēs</i>	—	<i>rēspūblīcās</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	VOC.	<i>rēs</i>	—	<i>rēspūblīcae</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	ABL.	<i>rēt as</i>	—	<i>rēbuspūblīcīs</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

1. Only two nouns of the fifth declension are masculine: *diēs, a day*, *mērdiēs, midday*: though *diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when it means a *fixed time*.

2. Only two nouns of this declension are declined throughout the plural; they are *diēs* and *rēs*. In some words, only the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are used; others want the plural entirely.

3. The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *-e*, which appears in all the cases, but it is generally shortened in the ending *-ēt* when preceded by a consonant, and also in the ending *-em*.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>diēs, diēī, M. and F., day.</b>	<b>perniciēs, perniciēī, F., ruin.</b>
<b>fidēs, fidēī, F., faith, faithful-</b> <b>ness.</b>	<b>militāris, -e, military; rēs mili-</b> <b>tāris, military affairs.</b>
<b>rēs, rēī, F., thing, affair.</b>	<b>portus, -ūs, M., harbor.</b>
<b>spēs, spēī, F., hope, expectation.</b>	<b>ūsus, ūsūs, M., use, experience.</b>

**SYN.** **Exercitus** (*exerceo*, to exercise) is the drilled army; **ācies**, the army drawn up in battle array; and **agmen** (*āgo*, move), the army on the line of march.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Rem Rōmānīs nuntiant. 2. Spēs victōriac magna fuit.  
3. Sine spē. 4. Magnās spēs habēmus. 5. Rēs Helvētīūs  
ēnuntiāta est. 6. Cūm perniciē exercitūs. 7. Caesar  
Divitiācō<sup>1</sup> māximam fidem habēbat. 8. Hostēs portum  
tēnēbant. 9. Timor omnem exercitum occupāvit. 10. Itālia,  
patria nostra, omnībus fortībūs eāra est. 11. Magnam in-  
rē militārī ūsum habet.

Translate into Latin:—

1. With the army, with the armies. 2. The consul praises  
the army. 3. They have built houses. 4. The leaders of  
the army fight bravely. 5. There are many houses in the  
city. 6. With hope. 7. Hope delighted the army. 8. The  
consul will hold the harbor. 9. We praise the faithfulness  
of the soldier. 10. The army is brave. 11. The consul  
has large experience in military affairs. 12. Labienus was  
in<sup>2</sup> Caesar's army.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Lit., had confidence to Divitiacus; i.e., confidence in Divitiacus.

2. Use the preposition in.

What is the stem of **diēs**? When is the final vowel of the stem short? What nouns are complete in the plural?



## LESSON XLVIII.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

**176.** Verbs of the third conjugation are distinguished by having *e* short before *-re* in the present infinitive. The verb-stem, obtained by dropping this characteristic *ē*, ends in a consonant or in *u*.

## EXAMPLES.

Present.	Pres. Stem.	Verb-Stem.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. and Part.
rēgo, <i>rule</i> .	rēgē-	rēg-	rēgēre	rēxī, rectum
minuo, <i>lessen</i> .	minu-	minu-	minuere	minuī, minūtum

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Participle.
rēgo	rēgēre	rēxī	rectum
minuo	minuere	minuī	minūtum

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The characteristic vowel of the present stem changes to *i*, *u*, etc., in the inflection of the verb. The personal endings and tense signs are the same as in the first conjugation, except those of the future, where the characteristic vowel changes to *ā* or *ē* before the personal endings.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + o	rēgo	<i>I rule.</i>
2	“ “ + s	rēgis	<i>Thou rulest.</i>
3	“ “ + t	rēgit	<i>He rules.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mus	rēgimus	<i>We rule.</i>
2	“ “ + tis	rēgitis	<i>You rule.</i>
3	“ “ + nt	rēgunt	<i>They rule.</i>

IMPERFECT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bam	rēgēbam	<i>I was ruling.</i>
2	" " + bās	rēgēbās	<i>Thou wast ruling.</i>
3	" " + bat	rēgēbat	<i>He was ruling.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bāmus	rēgēbāmus	<i>We were ruling.</i>
2	" " + bātis	rēgēbātis	<i>You were ruling.</i>
3	" " + bant	rēgēbant	<i>They were ruling.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + m	rēgam	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
2	" " + s	rēgēs	<i>Thou wilt rule.</i>
3	" " + t	rēget	<i>He will rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	rēgēmus	<i>We shall or will rule.</i>
2	" " + tis	rēgētis	<i>You will rule.</i>
3	" " + nt	rēgent	<i>They will rule.</i>

Obs. In the formation of the tenses, note that the future of the first and second conjugations always has the tense sign *-bi-*; the *i* disappears before *o* (as, *amābiō* = *amābo*), and becomes *u* in the third person plural. The future of the third conjugation consists of the present stem (the characteristic vowel being lengthened) and the personal endings; *i* becomes *e* in the second and third persons singular, and in the plural.

## VOCABULARY.

scrībo	scrībēre	scrīpsī, write.
lēgo	lēgēre	lēgī, collect, read.
instruo	instruere	instruxī, erect, arrange.
contendo	contendēre	contendī, hasten.
dimitto	dimittere	dīmīsī, dismiss.
gēro	gērere	gessī, carry, carry on.
mitto	mittere	mīsī, send.
cingo	cingere	cingī, surround.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

- s. o. v. t. v. t. s. o.  
 1. Puer librum scribēbat. 2. Mittitis servōs. 3. Frāter  
 lēgēbat. 4. Hostēs urbem cingunt. 5. Discipulī littērās

scribent. 6. Caesar aeciem instruebant. 7. Puer dona mittet. 8. Caesar celeriter<sup>1</sup> concilium dimittit. 9. Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus<sup>2</sup> contendit. 10. Belgae cum Germanis continenter bellum gerunt. 11. Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We write, we were writing, we shall write. 2. He reads, he was reading, he will read. 3. We send, we were sending, we shall send. 4. The queen writes a book. 5. Friends will send books. 6. The boys were writing. 7. They had called a slave. 8. Caesar hastens into Gaul. 9. The Romans are carrying on war with the Gauls. 10. We read, they write. 11. We draw up the line of battle, we were drawing up the line of battle.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. For words not given in the special vocabularies, look in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

2. *By long marches.*

Define sentence. What are the essential parts of a sentence? Mention the personal endings of the present, of the imperfect, of the future indicative.

### LESSON XLIX.

#### THIRD CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

177. The Perfect Stem of verbs of the third conjugation is regularly formed by adding *-si* to the verb-stem.

#### EXAMPLES.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Verb-Stem.	Perfect Stem.
rēgo	rēg-ere	rēg-	rēg + sī = rēgsi (see 18) = rēxi
scribo	scrib-ere	scrib-	scrib + sī = scribsi (see 20) = scripsi

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings are the same as in the first and second conjugations. Note the change of the characteristic vowel of the stem to short *i*, to long *e*, and then to short *e*.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem	rēxī	<i>I have ruled.</i>	<i>I ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + stī	rēxīstī	<i>Thou hast ruled.</i>	<i>Thou didst rule.</i>
3	“ “ + t	rēxit	<i>He has ruled.</i>	<i>He ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mus	rēximus	<i>We have ruled.</i>	<i>We ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + stis	rēxistis	<i>You have ruled.</i>	<i>You ruled.</i>
3	“ “ { + runt } or re	rēxērunt or rēxere	<i>They have ruled.</i>	<i>They ruled.</i>
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	rēxeram	<i>I had ruled.</i>	
2	“ “ + rās	rēxerās	<i>Thou hadst ruled.</i>	
3	“ “ + rat	rēxerat	<i>He had ruled.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + rāmus	rēxerāmus	<i>We had ruled.</i>	
2	“ “ + rātis	rēxerātis	<i>You had ruled.</i>	
3	“ “ + rant	rēxerant	<i>They had ruled.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ro	rēxero	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>	
2	“ “ + ris	rēxeris	<i>Thou wilt have ruled.</i>	
3	“ “ + rit	rēxerit	<i>He will have ruled.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + rimus	rēxerimus	<i>We shall have ruled.</i>	
2	“ “ + ritis	rēxeritis	<i>You will have ruled.</i>	
3	“ “ + rint	rēxerint	<i>They will have ruled.</i>	

## 178. Formation of the Perfect Stem.

1. The perfect stem of the third conjugation is regularly formed by adding *-sē* to the verb-stem.

... dōna mittet.  
... sar in Itāliam  
... am Germānīs  
... cōs ad Caesā-

rite. 2. He  
end, we were  
ites a book.  
were writing.  
as into Gall.  
nls. 10. We  
of battle, we

es, look in the

entence? Men-  
t, of the future

INDICATIVE

l conjugation  
m.

fect Stem.

sī = rēgsi  
18) = rēxi  
+ sī = scribsi  
20) = scripsi

2. Some verbs have a reduplicated perfect; *i.e.*, the first consonant of the word is prefixed with a vowel, generally *ē*.

Obs. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication, except *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*, sometimes *curro*.

## EXAMPLE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>cādo</i> , <i>fall</i> .	<i>cādēre</i>	<i>cēcīdī</i>	<i>cāsum</i>

Obs. 2. The vowel of the stem is often weakened to *i*, and before *r* to *ē*; in the example above *ā* is weakened to *i*.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the reduplication has been lost.

## EXAMPLE.

*findo*, *split*. *findēre* *fidī* (which stands for *fīdī*).

3. The stem vowel is sometimes lengthened.

## EXAMPLES.

*āgo*, *do*, *āgēre* *ēgī*      *ēmo*, *buy*, *ēmēre* *ēmī*

4. The perfect stem has sometimes the same form as the present stem, with *i* added.

## EXAMPLES.

*ru-o*   *ru-ēre*   *ruī*      *vert-o*   *vert-ēre*   *vertī*

5. Sometimes the vowel of the stem is transposed and lengthened.

## EXAMPLE.

*cer-no*      *cer-nēre*      *crē-vī*      *crē-tum*

6. Stems of the third conjugation, like those of the third declension, are divided, according to their final consonant, into:—

- I. LABIAL STEMS, *p, b, m*: as, *carp-o*, *pluck*, *carp-sī*; *scrib-o*, *write*, *scrip-sī*; *prēm-o*, *pluck*, *pres-sī*.
- II. DENTAL STEMS, *t, d, s, n, (s)*: as, *mit-to*, *send*, *mī-sī*; *claud-o*, *clau-sī*; *cēd-o*, *ces-sī*.
- III. LINGUAL STEMS, *r, l*: as, *gēp-o*, *ges-sī*; *vel-lo*, *tear*, *vel-lī* (*vulsī*).
- IV. GUTTURAL STEMS, *c, qu, k, g, h*: as, *dīc-o*, *say*, *dix-I*; *coqu-o*, *cook*, *cox-I*; *ping-o*, *paint*, *pinx-I*; *trāh-o*, *draw*, *trāx-I*.
- V. U-STEMS: as, *mīnu-o*, *lessen*, *mīnu-I*.

## 179. Laws of Euphony:—

- 1.
- b*
- is changed to
- p*
- before
- s*
- .

## EXAMPLES.

*scribo*, write, perf. (*scripsi*) = *scripsi*.  
*nubo*, marry (of woman), perf. (*nupsi*) = *nupsi*.

- 2.
- t*
- and
- d*
- are dropped before
- s*
- , or become with
- s*
- ,
- ss*
- .

## EXAMPLES.

*mitto*, send, perf. (*mitti*) = *missi*.  
*claudio*, shut, " (*clausi*) = *clausi*.  
*laedo*, injure, " (*laedi*) = *laesi*.  
*cedo*, yield, " (*cedi*) = *cessi*.

- 3.
- c*
- ,
- g*
- ,
- qu*
- ,
- h*
- , with
- s*
- , become
- x*
- .

## EXAMPLES.

*dico*, say, perf. (*dici*) = *dixi*.  
*jungo*, join, " (*jungi*) = *junxi*.  
*coquo*, cook, " (*coqui*) = *coxi*.  
*traho*, draw, " (*trahi*) = *traxi*.

4. Verbs whose stems end in
- l*
- ,
- m*
- ,
- n*
- , or
- r*
- , and a few others, form their perfects in
- vi*
- ; those whose stems end in a vowel form their perfects in
- vi*
- (
- avi*
- ,
- evi*
- ,
- ivi*
- ).

## EXAMPLES.

<i>cōlo</i>	<i>cōlōre</i>	<i>cōlūi</i> , cultivate.
<i>ālō</i>	<i>ālōre</i>	<i>ālūi</i> , nourish.
<i>sēro</i>	<i>sēre</i>	<i>sēruī</i> , connect.
<i>frēmo</i>	<i>frēmōre</i>	<i>frēmūi</i> , rage.
<i>pōno</i>	<i>pōnōre</i>	<i>pōsuī</i> , place.
<i>pāscō</i> (v. st. <i>pā</i> )	<i>pāscōre</i>	<i>pāvī</i> , feed.
<i>cerno</i>	<i>cernōre</i>	<i>crēvī</i> (178. 5), decide.
<i>cūpio</i>	<i>cūpōre</i>	<i>cūpīvī</i> , desire.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>rēgo</i>	<i>regēre</i>	<i>rēxi</i> , rule.
<i>carpo</i>	<i>carpēre</i>	<i>carpsi</i> , pluck.
<i>dūco</i>	<i>dūcēre</i>	<i>dūxi</i> , lead.
<i>pingo</i>	<i>pingēre</i>	<i>pinxi</i> , paint.
<i>necto</i>	<i>nectēre</i>	<i>nēxi</i> , or <i>nēxui</i> , tie.
<i>nūbo</i>	<i>nūbēre</i>	<i>nupsi</i> , marry (said of a woman).
<i>ascendo</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>ascendēre</i>	<i>ascendi</i> , ascend.

## EXERCISES.

Form the perfect of the following verbs, and account for the euphonic changes : —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>dimitto</i> , <i>dismiss</i> .              | 8. <i>dīco</i> , <i>say, tell</i> .             |
| 2. <i>contendo</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>hasten</i> . | 9. <i>vinco</i> , <i>conquer</i> .              |
| 3. <i>cingo</i> , <i>surround</i> .               | 10. <i>dēligo</i> , <i>select</i> .             |
| 4. <i>dāco</i> , <i>lead</i> .                    | 11. <i>trāho</i> , <i>draw</i> .                |
| 5. <i>tēgo</i> , <i>cover</i> .                   | 12. <i>dēfendo</i> , <i>defend</i> .            |
| 6. <i>lūdo</i> , <i>play</i> .                    | 13. <i>claudio</i> , <i>shut</i> .              |
| 7. <i>tango</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>touch</i> .     | 14. <i>frango</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>break</i> . |

Translate into English : —

1. Rēgīna munitiōs nōn mīserat. 2. Puērī ēpistulās scripserunt. 3. Caesar āciem instrūxerat. 4. Impērātor urbem mūrīs<sup>4</sup> cinxit. 5. Belgae cūm Germānīs continenter bellum gesserunt. 6. Māgister filium et puellam<sup>5</sup> dōcuit. 7. Rēgīna et rēx ēpistulās scribent.<sup>6</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. The boys have written letters. 2. We have written, we had written, we shall have written. 3. He has conquered, he had conquered, he shall have conquered. 4. They were sent, they sent, they had sent, they shall have sent. 5. The boys and the girls wrote<sup>6</sup> letters. 6. The slaves have led the boys and girls.<sup>5</sup> 7. They have defended. 8. We are playing. 9. He hastened into Gaul.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Stems ending in *-nd* form the perfect by adding *-i*, not *-si*.
  2. *tango*: verb-stem *tag-*, present stem *tang-*, present *tango*, infinitive *tangere*, perfect *tēgī*.
  3. The verb-stem is *frag-*, the present stem *frang-*, perfect *frēgī*.
  4. Why ablative ?
  5. When the object consists of two or more nouns joined by *et*, *and*, both must be in the accusative.
  6. When the subject consists of more than one noun joined by *et*, *and*, the verb must be plural.
- How is the perfect stem of the third conjugation regularly formed ? How are stems of the third conjugation classified ?

## LESSON L.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.  
— ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

180. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive are inflected as follows: —

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings and tense signs are the same as in the first and second conjugations, except in the future, where the vowel changes to *a*, and then to *e*, as in the future active.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + r	rēgor	<i>I am (being) ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	rēgēris, -re	<i>Thou art ruled.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	rēgētur	<i>He is ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	rēgimur	<i>We are ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	rēgimīni	<i>You are ruled.</i>
3	“ “ + ntur	rēguntur	<i>They are ruled.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bar	rēgēbar	<i>I was (being) ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + bāris, re	rēgēbāris, -re	<i>Thou wast ruled.</i>
3	“ “ + bātur	rēgēbātur	<i>He was ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmur	rēgēbāmur	<i>We were ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + bāminī	rēgēbāminī	<i>You were ruled.</i>
3	“ “ + bantur	rēgēbantur	<i>They were ruled.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + r	rēgar	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	rēgēris, -re	<i>Thou wilt be ruled.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	rēgētur	<i>He will be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	rēgēmur	<i>We shall be ruled.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	rēgēminī	<i>You will be ruled.</i>
3	“ “ + ntur	regentur	<i>They will be ruled.</i>



1. Note the change in the present of short *e* to *i*, and in the third person plural to *n*. In the imperfect the characteristic is long *e*; in the future *a*, which changes to *ē*.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**181. RULE XVIII.**—The ablative is used to denote accompaniment, usually with the preposition *cum*.

1. Note that *with*, when it means *together with* or *in company with*, is translated by *cum* with the ablative.

EXAMPLES.

1. mitto servum cum puērō, *I send a slave WITH A BOY.*
2. nostrī ēquitēs cum funditōribus sāgittāriisque flūmen transgressi sunt, *our cavalry crossed the river WITH THE SLINGERS AND ARCHERS.*

2. Carefully distinguish this construction from the instrumental ablative, which shows *with what* or *by what* an action is done.

EXAMPLE.

puer vulnerātus est sāgittis, *the boy was wounded with (by) arrows.*

VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
cingo	cingere	cinxi	cinctum, surround.
frango	frangere	frēgī	fractum, break.
occido	occidere	occidī	occisum, kill.
divido	dividere	divisi	divisum, divide.
diligō	diligere	dilēxī	dilectum, love.
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlectum, select.
dēfendo	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfensum, defend.
vinco	vincere	vici	victum, conquer.
vivo	vivere	vixī	victum, live.
laedo	laedere	laesi	laesum, hurt.
flecto	flectere	flexī	flexum, bend.
mergo	mergere	mersī	mersum, dip.

Obs. Form the perfect of each verb, and account for the euphonic changes.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Delīgītūr. 2. Cingītūr. 3. Pner ab omnibus dīligō-  
bātūr. 4. Urbs mūrō<sup>1</sup> cingītūr. 5. Urbs ā<sup>2</sup> cīvibus dēfen-  
dītūr. 6. Omnēs vincuntūr. 7. Tēlis occīdēris. 8. A  
Caesāre dūcēbāmūr. 9. Nōn dūcēbāmīnī. 10. Bella gērē-  
bantūr. 11. Cum Germānīs pūgnant. 12. Cum dēcīma  
lēgīōne vēnit. 13. Titus cum ēquītibus mittītūr.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They are (being) selected. 2. We are conquered, we  
were conquered, we shall be conquered. 3. The city will be  
surrounded by a wall. 4. The soldiers will be conquered by  
the enemy. 5. The soldiers will be killed with the weapons.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Why ablative?  
2. Why is the preposition expressed?

What are the personal endings of the present passive voice? What  
are the future endings of this conjugation? What verbs have a passive  
voice? What is meant by voice in grammar?



## LESSON LI.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE  
PASSIVE.—TWO ACCUSATIVES WITH ONE VERB.

**182.** The Participial Stem of verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *-to-*, nom. *-tus* (or *-so-*, nom. *-sus*), to the verb-stem.

## EXAMPLE.

PRESENT.	VERB-STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PART. STEM.	NOM.
dīco, say.	dīc-	dīxi-	dīcto-	dīctus

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are inflected as follows : —

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, tense signs, and formation, are the same as in the first and second conjugations.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-stem —			
	+ tus sum	rectus sum	<i>I have</i>	} <i>I was ruled.</i>
	+ tus es	rectus es	<i>Thou hast</i>	
+ tus est	rectus est	<i>He has</i>		
<i>Plur.</i> 1	+ tī sūmus	rectī sūmus	<i>We have</i>	} <i>We were ruled.</i>
	+ tī estis	rectī estis	<i>You have</i>	
	+ tī sunt	rectī sunt	<i>They have</i>	
} <i>been ruled.</i>				
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-st. + tus ēram	rectus ēram	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	
2	“ + tus ērās	rectus ērās	<i>Thou hadst been ruled.</i>	
3	“ + tus ērat	rectus ērat	<i>He had been ruled.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + tī ērāmus	rectī ērāmus	<i>We had been ruled.</i>	
	“ + tī ērātis	rectī ērātis	<i>You had been ruled.</i>	
	“ + tī ērant	rectī ērant	<i>They had been ruled.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-st. + tus ēro	rectus ēro	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>	
2	“ + tus ēris	rectus ēris	<i>Thou wilt have been ruled.</i>	
3	“ + tus ērit	rectus ērit	<i>He will have been ruled.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + tī ērimus	rectī ērimus	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>	
	“ + tī ēritis	rectī ēritis	<i>You will have been ruled.</i>	
	“ + tī ērunt	rectī ērunt	<i>They will have been ruled.</i>	

183. Euphonic changes : —

1. *g, qu, h* become *c* before *t*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>rēgo</i> , rule, part. stem (regtus)	=	rectus, -a, -um
<i>cōquo</i> , cook, “ (coqtus)	=	coctus, -a, -um
<i>trāho</i> , draw, “ (trāhtus)	=	tractus, -a, -um



Learn the principal parts of the following verbs, and account for the euphonic changes:—

vivo	vivere	vixi	victum, live.
dūco	dūcere	dūxi	ductum, lead.
dīvido	dīvidere	dīvisi	dīvisum, divide.
lūdo	lūdere	lūsi	lūsum, play.
cāno	cānere	cēcini	—, sing.
lēgo	légere	légī	lectum, read.

### 184. Two Accusatives with one Verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesārem sententiam rōgāvit**, he asked *Cæsar* (his) opinion.
2. **Caesar Aeduōs frumentum flāgitāvī**, *Cæsar* demanded corn of the *Ædii*.
3. **Titus rēgem sermōnem cēlāvit**, *Titus* concealed the conversation from the king.
4. **Caesar sententiam ā cōnsule rōgātus est**, *Cæsar* was asked his opinion by the consul.
5. **pācem ab Rōmānis pētīt**, he seeks peace from the Romans.

Obs. Note that in Exs. 1, 2, and 3 the verbs of *asking, demanding, concealing*, are in the active voice, and are followed by two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*. In Ex. 4 the verb of *asking* is in the passive voice, and the accusative of the person in the active becomes the subject in the passive. In Ex. 5 the person after a verb of *asking* (*pētīt*) is put in the ablative with a preposition. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

#### TWO ACCUSATIVES. — PERSON AND THING.

**185. RULE XIX.** — Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing* take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing.

1. The accusative of the *thing* may remain with the passive voice of verbs of *teaching*, and also with *rōgo*.
2. **Pēto** and **postūlo** regularly take the accusative of the *thing* and the ablative of the *person* with **ā** or **ab**; **quaero**, the accusative of the *thing* and the ablative of the *person* with **ē**, **ex**, **ā**, **ab**, or **de**.

Syn. **Pēto**, to beg; **rōgo**, to ask, are general terms for either a request or a demand; **postūlo**, to demand as a right; **flāgitō**, to demand with earnestness; **posco**, to ask as a right, as a price, or salary

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Ducti erant, missus est, euncti sunt.
2. Victi sunt.
3. Pueri a magistro moniti erant.
4. Castra vallō cineta<sup>1</sup> sunt.
5. Exercitus Rōmānus ab Helvētis sub jūgum missus est.
6. Nuntii ad exercitum nostrum missi sunt.
7. Rēx et rēgīna omnibus<sup>2</sup> cārī<sup>3</sup> fuerunt.
8. Caesar omnia consilia Aednōs cēlat.
9. Cōsul Caesarem sententiam rogābat.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They have been led, they have been sent.
2. He has been sent, we have been sent, he had been sent.
3. You shall have been sent.
4. The city has been surrounded by a wall.
5. The Helvetians have been sent.
6. We have been conquered, we had been conquered, we shall have been conquered.
7. He was sent, he will be sent, he has been sent, he had been sent.
8. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.
9. They asked Titus his opinion.
10. Caesar concealed his plans from the Helvetians.
11. The Helvetians seek peace from Caesar.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Neuter plural.
2. Dative after cārī.
3. Masculine by preference.

## LESSON LII.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—  
ACCUSATIVE OF THE SAME PERSON.

**186.** The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs that have *i* long before *-re* in the present infinitive. The present stem is found by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive.

## EXAMPLE.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PRES. STEM.
audio, hear.	audīre	audī-

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses, Indicative Active, are formed by adding the verbal endings to the present stem.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings and the tense signs are the same as in the first and second conjugations, except in the future, where the characteristic vowel of the stem becomes *a* or *e*. The third person plural indicative is *audiunt*, not *audi-nt*.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + o	audio	<i>I hear.</i>
2	" " + s	audis	<i>Thou hearst.</i>
3	" " + t	audit	<i>He hears.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	audimus	<i>We hear.</i>
2	" " + tis	auditis	<i>You hear.</i>
3	" " + unt	audiunt	<i>They hear.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bam	audiēbam	<i>I was hearing.</i>
2	" " + bās	audiēbās	<i>Thou wast hearing.</i>
3	" " + bat	audiēbat	<i>He was hearing.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bamus	audiēbamus	<i>We were hearing.</i>
2	" " + bātis	audiēbātis	<i>You were hearing.</i>
3	" " + bant	audiēbant	<i>They were hearing.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + m	audiam	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
2	" " + s	audiēs	<i>Thou wilt hear.</i>
3	" " + t	audiet	<i>He will hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	audiēmus	<i>We shall or will hear.</i>
2	" " + tis	audiētis	<i>You will hear.</i>
3	" " + nt	audient	<i>They will hear.</i>

## 187. Two Accusatives of the Same Person.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesārem cōsūlem creāvērunt*, they elected *Caesar* consul.
2. *cōsūlēs creantur Caesar et Servilius*, *Caesar* and *Servilius* are elected consuls.
3. *Rōmūlus urbem Rōmam vōcāvit*, *Romulus* called the city *Rome*.
4. *urbs Rōma ā Rōmūlo vōcāta est*.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the verbs of *electing, calling, choosing, making, etc.*, are followed by two accusatives of the same person or thing; one accusative is the direct object of the verb, and the other is an essential part of the predicate, and is called the PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE. (In Exs. 2 and 4 *cōsūlēs* and *Rōma* are predicate nominatives after *creantur* and *vōcata est*.) The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## TWO ACCUSATIVES OF THE SAME PERSON OR THING.

**188. RULE XX.**—Verbs of *naming, calling, choosing, making, reckoning, regarding, esteeming, showing, and the like*, take two accusatives of the same person or thing.

## VOCABULARY.

Form the infinitives of the following verbs of the fourth conjugation:—

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>mūnio, fortify.</i> | 4. <i>pūnio, punish.</i> |
| 2. <i>vēnio, come.</i>    | 5. <i>dormio, sleep.</i> |
| 3. <i>ērdio, educate.</i> | 6. <i>finio, finish.</i> |

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Audimus, audiēmus.* 2. *Erūdit, ērdient.* 3. *Mūnitis, mūniēs.* 4. *Militēs impērātōrem audiunt.* 5. *Pūnimus puērūm.* 6. *Militēs castra mūniunt.* 7. *Puer dormiēbat.* 8. *Pūniēmus.* 9. *Caesar in Galliam citiōriorem vēnit.* 10. *Rōmāni suam<sup>1</sup> urbem Rōmam appellāvērunt.* 11. *Oppidum appellant Gēnāvam.* 12. *Caesar oppidum virtūte<sup>2</sup> suōrum militum expugnāvit.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. They hear, they were hearing, they will hear. 2. He fortifies the town. 3. They will punish the boys. 4. He sleeps, you sleep, they sleep. 5. The Romans call their city Rome. 6. The soldiers hear. 7. We come. 8. They punish the boy. 9. The soldiers are fortifying their<sup>3</sup> camp. 10. He will punish the boy. 11. The soldiers were fortifying their camp.



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. When **suus** refers to a noun in the plural, as is the case in this sentence, render it *their*; when it refers to a noun in the singular, render it *his, her, or its*.

2. *By means of, etc.* Why ablative?

3. *Their* can be omitted in translating.

What are the personal endings of the present? What is the present stem of **audio**? What is a predicate accusative? How many conjugations? How do you distinguish each? What is the present stem of each? How found?

## LESSON LIII.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE.—  
THE SUBJECTIVE AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

189. The Perfect Stem of a regular verb of the fourth conjugation is formed by adding *-ē* to the present stem.

## EXAMPLE.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PERFECT.
audio, hear.	audi-	audivē-	audivī

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, the tense signs, the formation, and the changes of the characteristic vowel of the stem are the same as in the first, second, and third conjugations.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
Sing. 1	Perf. stem	audivī	<i>I have heard.</i>	<i>I heard.</i>
	2 " + sti	audivistī	<i>Thou hast heard.</i>	<i>Thou didst hear.</i>
	3 " + t	audivit	<i>He has heard.</i>	<i>He heard.</i>
Plur. 1	" + mus	audivimus	<i>We have heard.</i>	<i>We heard.</i>
	2 " + stis	audivistis	<i>You have heard.</i>	<i>You heard.</i>
	3 " } + runt } or re	audiverunt or audivere	<i>They have heard.</i>	<i>They heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	audivēram	<i>I had heard.</i>
2	" " + rās	audivērās	<i>Thou hadst heard.</i>
3	" " + rat	audivērat	<i>He had heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rāmus	audivērāmus	<i>We had heard.</i>
2	" " + rātis	audivērātis	<i>You had heard.</i>
3	" " + rant	audivērāt	<i>They had heard.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ěro	audivěro	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
2	" " + ěris	audivěris	<i>Thou wilt have heard.</i>
3	" " + ěrit	audivěrit	<i>He will have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + ěrimus	audivěrimus	<i>We will have heard.</i>
2	" " + ěritis	audivěritis	<i>You will have heard.</i>
3	" " + ěrint	audivěrint	<i>They will have heard.</i>

ECT ACTIVE.—  
GENITIVE.

of the fourth  
present stem.

PERFECT.  
audivī

fect Indicative

and the changes  
as in the first,

ish.

Aorist.

*I heard.*  
*Thou didst hear.*  
*He heard.*  
*We heard.*  
*You heard.*  
*They heard.*

## 2. Synopsis of Rules for Forming the Perfect Stem:—

1. Most Vowel Stems (55.3) form the perfect stem by adding -vī (-vī) to the characteristic vowel of the present stem: as, **āmo, āmāvī; dēleo, dēlēvī; mōneo, mōnūvī; audio, audivī.**

2. Most Consonant Stems form the perfect stem by adding -vī to the verb-stem: as, **dūco, dūcī; tēgo, tēgī.**

3. Many Labial and Lingual Stems, and a few others, form the perfect stem by adding -vī to the verb-stem: as, **dōmo, dōmūvī; ālo, ālūvī; tōneo, tōnūvī.**

4. A few Consonant Stems form the perfect stem simply by adding -vī to the verb-stem (this is the case when the stem vowel is long by nature or by position): as, **accendo, accendī; verto, vertī; prē-hendo, prē-hendī.**

5. The Perfect Stem is sometimes formed by reduplication and by adding -vī to the verb-stem (the stem vowel *a* is generally weakened to *i*, but before *r* to *e*): as, **cādo, cēcīvī; tondeo, tōtondī; cāno, cēcīvī; pārio, pēpēvī.**

6. Some verbs lengthen the stem vowel and add -vī to form the perfect (that is, the reduplication disappears and the vowel is lengthened): as, **lēgo (lē-īgī = lē-īgī = lēgī); faciō (fē-ficī = fē-īcī = fēcī); cāpio, cēpī; āgo, ēgī.**

Ons. The *v* is often dropped and the syllable contracted; as, **āmā(v)erat = āmārat, audī(v)erat = audīerat.**

### 190. Subjective, Possessive, and Objective Genitives.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **oppidum Rēmōrum**, a town of (i.e., belonging to) the *Reni*.
2. **Divitiaci stūdiū**, the zeal of *Divitiacus* (i.e., the zeal that *Divitiacus* manifests).
3. **āmor glōriæ**, love of glory (i.e., a desire to obtain glory).
4. **tīmor hostiū crescit**, fear of the enemy (i.e., fear towards the enemy, not fear experienced by the enemy) increases.

**Obs.** In the first example, note that the genitive designates the *possessor*; it is called the *possessive genitive*. In Ex. 2 the genitive designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action or feeling; it is called the *subjective genitive*. In Exs. 3 and 4 the genitive designates the *object* towards which the action or feeling is directed; it is called the *objective genitive*. Hence the qualifying genitive may be—

1. A **POSSESSIVE GENITIVE**, denoting the *author* or the *possessor*; as, **Caesāris prōvincia**, *Caesar's province*.
2. A **SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE**, denoting the *subject* or *agent* of the action or feeling; as, **āmor Deī**, *the love of God* (i.e., the love which *He* feels).
3. A**N OBJECTIVE GENITIVE**, denoting the *object* of the action or feeling; as, **āmor Deī**, *love to* (i.e., towards) *God*.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Pūnīvit, pūnīverat, pūnīverit.
2. Audīveram, audīvero.
3. Milītēs castra mūnīverant.
4. Pūnīvimus pūerum.
5. Ērudīvī, ērudīvit, ērudīvistī, ērudīveram.
6. Pūerī librum tēnēs.
7. Lēgātus cōsilia Gallōrum cōmūtiat.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We have heard, we heard, we had heard, we shall have heard.
2. They have punished, they had punished, they will have punished.
3. He has slept.
4. We fortify, we have fortified, we had fortified, we shall have fortified.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Why genitive?

What is meant by the possessive genitive? Give the rule for the genitive after nouns. What is the objective genitive? How is the perfect stem of verbs of the fourth conjugation formed?

## LESSON LIV.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—  
DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

**191.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings and tense signs are the same as in the first and second conjugations, except in the future, when the characteristic vowel of the stem becomes *a* or *e*.]

PRESENT PASSIVE.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + or	audiōr	<i>I am (being) heard.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	audiōris, -re	<i>Thou art heard.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	audiōtur	<i>He is heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	audiōmur	<i>We are heard.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	audiōminī	<i>You are heard.</i>
3	“ “ + untur	audiōntur	<i>They are heard.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bar	audiēbar	<i>I was (being) heard.</i>
2	“ “ + bāris, re	audiēbāris, -re	<i>Thou wast heard.</i>
3	“ “ + bātur	audiēbātur	<i>He was heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmur	audiēbāmur	<i>We were heard.</i>
2	“ “ + bāminī	audiēbāminī	<i>You were heard.</i>
3	“ “ + bantur	audiēbantur	<i>They were heard.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + r	audiār	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	audiāris, -re	<i>Thou wilt be heard.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	audiātur	<i>He will be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	audiāmur	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	audiāminī	<i>You will be heard.</i>
3	“ “ + untur	audiāntur	<i>They will be heard.</i>

## 192. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *haec sententia puērō placet, illa displicet, this opinion pleases the boy, that displeases (him).*
2. *militis est dūci pārere, it is the duty of a soldier to obey the leader.*
3. *fortūna fāvet fortībus, fortune favors the brave.*

Obs. We have already learned that the dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used to express the person or thing to or for whom or which anything is done. In the sentence, *I give the book to the boy*, *boy* in Latin must be in the dative, as *do librum puērō*; but in the sentence *Caesar comes to the city*, *city* in Latin is not dative, — a preposition must be used, as *Caesar ad urbem vēnit*. In the foregoing examples, note that the verbs are intransitive; that they signify *to favor, to please, to obey*, etc.; that they are followed by the dative generally without the sign to or for. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

193. RULE XXI. — The dative of the indirect object may be used with most intransitive verbs signifying *to favor, please, trust, assist*, and their contraries; also, *to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon, be angry*.

1. Some verbs which, from their signification, might be included in the foregoing lists are transitive, and take the accusative; as, *jūvo, adiūvo, to help, laedo, to injure, dēlecto, to delight, offendo, to offend, and jūbeo, to command*.

2. Verbs compounded with *sātis, bene, male*, take the dative.

## EXAMPLE.

*illis sātisfacere, to satisfy them, lit. to do enough for them.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Mūniēbantur. pūnicis. pūniuntur. 2. Audītur, audiēbantur, audiētur. 3. Castra ā Lābiēnō<sup>1</sup> mūniēbantur.
4. Bellum ā Caesāre finiēbātur. 5. Militēs castra<sup>2</sup> mūniēbant. 6. Māli puērī ā mūgistrō pūniuntur. 7. Imprōbi<sup>3</sup> ā mūgistrātibus pūniuntur. 8. Caesar bellum finit. 9. Bellum

ā Caesāre finitur. 10. Pnērō impērat. 11. Prōbus<sup>3</sup> invīdet nēmīnī.<sup>4</sup> 12. Mālēdicimus mālīs.<sup>3</sup>

Translate into Latin:—

1. He will be heard, they will be heard, they were (being) heard, they are (being) heard. 2. The soldiers fortify the camp. 3. The camp is fortified by the soldiers. 4. The war is (being) finished, the war will be finished, the wars were (being) finished. 5. The boys are (being) punished, the boys will be punished, the boys were (being) punished by the master. 6. The soldiers obey the leader.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. See 172.
2. See 80. 2.
3. Used as a noun; see 83. 4.
4. The genitive and ablative of *nullus* are used instead of *nēmīnis* and *nēmīne*.

What is the passive voice? In what case is the agent after a verb in the passive voice? What are the principal parts of a verb in the passive voice?

## LESSON LV.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

194. The Participial Stem of the fourth conjugation is formed by adding *-to*, nom. *-tus* (or *-so*, nom. *-sus*), to the present stem.

## EXAMPLE.

PRES. IND.	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PARTIC. STEM
<b>audio, hear.</b>	<b>audī-</b>	<b>audīvi-</b>	<b>audīto-</b>

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	(NEUTER OF) PERF. PARTIC.
<b>audio</b>	<b>audīre</b>	<b>audīvi</b>	<b>audītum</b>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.
<b>audior</b>	<b>audīri</b>	<b>audītus, -a, -um sum</b>

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are all formed by adding to the perfect participle the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the verb *sum*.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, tense signs, the changes of the characteristic vowel of the stem, and the formation, are the same as in the other conjugations.]

PERFECT AND AORIST PASSIVE.				
Person	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
Sing. 1	Verb stem —			
	+ tus sum	auditus sum	<i>I have</i>	} <i>I was heard.</i> <i>Thou wast heard.</i> <i>He was heard.</i> <i>We were heard.</i> <i>You were heard.</i> <i>They were heard.</i>
	2	+ tus es	auditus es	
3	+ tus est	auditus est	<i>He has</i>	
Plur. 1	+ tī sumus	audītī sumus	<i>W' have</i>	
	2	+ tī estis	audītī estis	<i>You have</i>
	3	+ tī sunt	audītī sunt	<i>They have</i>
PLUPERFECT PASSIVE.				
Person	Formation.	Example.	English.	
Sing. 1	Verb stem —			
	+ tus eram	auditus eram	<i>I had been heard.</i>	
	2	+ tus erās	auditus erās	<i>Thou hadst been heard.</i>
3	+ tus erat	auditus erat	<i>He had been heard.</i>	
Plur. 1	+ tī erāmus	audītī erāmus	<i>W' had been heard.</i>	
	2	+ tī erātis	audītī erātis	<i>You had been heard.</i>
	3	+ tī erant	audītī erant	<i>They had been heard.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.				
Sing. 1	+ tus ero	auditus ero	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>	
	2	+ tus eris	auditus eris	<i>Thou wilt have been heard.</i>
	3	+ tus erit	auditus erit	<i>He will have been heard.</i>
Plur. 1	+ tī erimus	audītī erimus	<i>W' shall have been heard.</i>	
	2	+ tī eritis	audītī eritis	<i>You will have been heard.</i>
	3	+ tī erunt	audītī erunt	<i>They will have been heard.</i>

2. The Participial Stem of verbs of all four conjugations is generally formed by adding *-to* (euphonicaly *-so*), nom. *-tus* (or *-sus*), to the present stem.

**195. Accusative and Ablative of Time.****EXAMPLES.**

1. *prīmō annō occisus est, he was killed in the first year.*
2. *multōs annōs mānēbit, he will remain many years.*

Obs. In Ex. 1 note that *annō* answers the question *when? within what time?* In Ex. 2 *annōs* answers the question *how long?* This Latin idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.

**196. RULE XXII.—Time when, or within which, is put in the ablative; time how long, in the accusative.**

1. The use of the preposition *in* with the ablative, and *per* with the accusative, in order to express the time with greater precision, is common.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *in diēbus prōximīs dēcem, WITHIN the next ten days.*
2. *per annōs vīgintī certātum est, the war was waged FOR twenty years.*

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. *Erūdītī sunt.* 2. *Pūnītus ērat.* 3. *Audītī ērant.*
4. *Puer pūnītus est.* 5. *Puer ā māgistrō pūnītus ērat.*
6. *Bellum finītum ērit.* 7. *Castra ā Caesāre mūnīta erant.*
8. *Prōximā nocte castra mōvit.* 9. *Sōlis occāsū snās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra rēdixit.* 10. *Multās hōrās pūgnāvō-*
11. *Multōs annōs bellum gērbant.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. He has been heard, he had been heard, he shall have been heard.
2. They hear the boy.
3. The teacher punishes the boy.
4. The boy has been punished by the teacher.
5. The wars will have been finished.
6. Caesar fortifies the camp.
7. The camp has been fortified by Caesar.
8. On the next day he fortifies the camp.
9. The soldiers have fought many hours.
10. He has lived many years.

fect Indicative  
fect participle  
e verb *sum*.

the characteristic  
as in the other

English.

Aorist.

*I was heard.*  
*Thou wast heard.*  
*He was heard.*  
*We were heard.*  
*You were heard.*  
*They were heard.*

English.

*on heard.*  
*It had been heard.*  
*been heard.*  
*been heard.*  
*I had been heard.*  
*had been heard.*

*have been heard.*  
*have been heard.*  
*have been heard.*  
*have been heard.*  
*have been heard.*

r conjugations  
ly -so), nom.



## LESSON LVI.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN *-io*.

197. A few verbs of the third conjugation ending in *-io*, *-ior* (passive), are inflected in the tenses formed from the present stem like the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has *i* followed by a vowel.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.							
cāpio	cāpĕre	cēpī	captum	cāpior	cāpī	captus	sum
<i>Active.</i>		PRESENT.		<i>Passive.</i>			
Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
cāpio	cāpĭam	cāpior	cāpĭar	cāpior	cāpĭar	cāpior	cāpĭar
cāpis	cāpĭās	cāpĭs (re)	cāpĭāris (re)	cāpĭs (re)	cāpĭāris (re)	cāpĭs (re)	cāpĭāris (re)
cāpit	cāpĭat	cāpĭtur	cāpĭātur	cāpĭtur	cāpĭātur	cāpĭtur	cāpĭātur
cāpĭmus	cāpĭāmus	cāpĭmur	cāpĭāmur	cāpĭmur	cāpĭāmur	cāpĭmur	cāpĭāmur
cāpĭtis	cāpĭātis	cāpĭmĭni	cāpĭāmĭni	cāpĭmĭni	cāpĭāmĭni	cāpĭmĭni	cāpĭāmĭni
cāpĭunt	cāpĭant	cāpĭuntur	cāpĭantur	cāpĭuntur	cāpĭantur	cāpĭuntur	cāpĭantur
IMPERFECT.							
cāpĭebam	cāpĕrem	cāpĭēbar	cāpĕrer	cāpĭēbar	cāpĕrer	cāpĭēbar	cāpĕrer
FUTURE.							
cāpĭam	cāpĭēmus	cāpĭar	cāpĭēmur	cāpĭar	cāpĭēmur	cāpĭar	cāpĭēmur
cāpĭēs	cāpĭētis	cāpĭēris (re)	cāpĭēmĭni	cāpĭēris (re)	cāpĭēmĭni	cāpĭēris (re)	cāpĭēmĭni
cāpĭet	cāpĭent	cāpĭētur	cāpĭentur	cāpĭētur	cāpĭentur	cāpĭētur	cāpĭentur
PERF. cēpī	cēpĕrim	captus sum	captus sim	captus sum	captus sim	captus sum	captus sim
PLUR. cēpĕram	cēpĭssim	captus eram	captus essem	captus eram	captus essem	captus eram	captus essem
F. P. cēpĕro		captus ĕro		captus ĕro		captus ĕro	
IMP. cāpe	cāpĭte	cāpĕre	cāpĭmĭni	cāpĕre	cāpĭmĭni	cāpĕre	cāpĭmĭni
cāpĭto	cāpĭtōte	cāpĭtor	—	cāpĭtor	—	cāpĭtor	—
cāpĭto	cāpĭnto	cāpĭtor	cāpĭuntor	cāpĭtor	cāpĭuntor	cāpĭtor	cāpĭuntor
INF. cāpĕre	cēpĭsse	cāpĭ	captus esse	cāpĭ	captus esse	cāpĭ	captus esse
FUT. captūrus esse		captum ĭrĭ		captum ĭrĭ		captum ĭrĭ	
PART. cāpĭēns	captūrus	cāptus	cāpĭendus	cāptus	cāpĭendus	cāptus	cāpĭendus
GER. cāpĭendĭ, -dō, -dum		SUP. captum, captū		SUP. captum, captū		SUP. captum, captū	

## VOCABULARY.

cāpio	cūpēre	cūpīvi	cūpītum, <i>desire.</i>
fācio	fācēre	fāci	factum, <i>make, do.</i>
fōdio	fōdēre	fōdī	fossam, <i>dig.</i>
fūgio	fūgēre	fūgī	fūgītum, <i>flee.</i>
jācio	jācēre	jāci	jactum, <i>throw, hurl.</i>
pārio	pārēre	pēpēri	partum, <i>bring forth.</i>
quātio	quātōre	(no perf.)	quassum, <i>shake.</i>
rāpio	rāpēre	rāpui	raptum, <i>seize.</i>
sāpio	sāpēre	sāpīvi	—, <i>taste.</i>

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

- Fūgiunt, fūgiēbant, fūgient.
- Jācit, jāciēbat, jāciet.
- Cāpimur, cāpiēbāmur, cāpiēmur.
- Militēs arma cāpiunt.
- Arma ū militibus cāpiuntur.
- Vir fossam fōdit.
- Fossa ā virō fō-litur.
- Militēs lāpīdēs ac tēla cōniciēbant.
- Lāpīdēs ac tēla ā militibus coniecta erant.
- Fūgite, militēs, in urbem.

NOTE. The conjugation of the subjunctive should be omitted for the present. See p. 243 ff.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

- Written also *conjiēbant*.

When does a verb in *-io* keep the *i*? What is the verb-stem of *cāpio*? *Ans.* The verb-stem of *cāpio* is *cāp-*; the present stem is formed by adding *-i-* (= *jo = io*) to the verb-stem. Inflect the present of *cāpio*; of *jācio*. The compounds of *jācio* are written and pronounced as follows: (*ex + jācio*) = *ēicio*, pronounced as if written *ēyicio*; so also *abicio* (= *ab + jācio*) = *abyicio*, etc.

## LESSON LVII.

## USES OF THE DATIVE.

## DATIVE OF INTEREST.—DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

*Ans.* We have learned that the dative may be used with transitive or intransitive verbs; the datives with these verbs are essential to the completion of the sense, and are usually so closely connected with their verbs that they could not be omitted. The dative is

N *-io*.

ending in *-io*,  
formed from the  
ever the fourth

captus sum

ive.

Subjunctive.  
cāpiar  
cāpiātur (re)  
cāpiātur  
cāpiāmur  
cāpiāmini  
cāpiantur

cāpēre

cāpiēmur  
cāpiēmini  
cāpiēntur

captus sim  
captus essem

cāpiamini

cāpiuntur  
captus esse

cāpiendus

captū

often merely added to a sentence, which would make complete sense without it, for the purpose of designating the person or thing interested in the action of the verb, or affected by it. This use of the dative, called *dative of interest*, may be stated as follows:—

### 198. Dative of Interest.

1. The dative of *advantage* and *disadvantage*.
2. The dative of *possessor*.
3. The dative of *apparent agent* with perfect participles and gerundives (this dative designates the person interested in doing the action, and not *merely* the agent).
4. The dative of *reference* (this dative depends not on a single word, but is loosely connected with the whole predicate, and merely designates the *person or thing with reference* to whom or which the action is done).
5. The dative used where the English idiom would lead us to expect the *genitive*.
6. The dative of *purpose or end*, denoting the object or end for which something is or is done.

#### DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR END.

**199. RULE XXIII.**—The dative is used with *scire* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end, usually with another dative of the person or thing affected or interested.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *dōmus dōmīnis aedificāta est, nōn mīribus, a house is (has been) built for its owners, not for the mice.* (See 198. 1.)
2. *mīhī est amīcus, I have a friend, lit. there is a friend to me* (emphasizes the fact of possession; see 198. 2).
3. *vīrtūs nobīs colēnda est, we have virtue to cultivate.* (198. 3.)
4. *tēgimenta gāleīs mīlitēs faciēre iubet, he orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets. Gāleīs depends on tēgimenta faciēre rather than on faciēre alone.* (See 198. 4.)
5. *lēgātī Caesārī ad pedēs prōiciunt, the ambassadors threw themselves at Cæsar's feet, lit. to Cæsar at his feet.* (198. 5.)
6. *sānavit mīhī filium, he cured my son, out of regard to me; sānavit filium meum, he cured my son, not caring whose son.* (See 198. 5.)

7. *māgnō ūsū nostrīs fuit, of great service to our men.*  
(See 198. 6.)

*tertiam āciem nostrīs ab hostib; mīsit, he sent the third line  
as a relief to our men.* (See 198. 6.)

*Obs.* Note that the dative of purpose takes the place of the complement, *i.e.*, it is a predicate dative. The two datives (*purpose* with another dative) occur after only a few verbs, such as *esse* and verbs of *giving, coming, sending, leaving*, and a few others.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Nōn schōlae, sed vitāe discimus.* 2. *Virtūtēs hōmī-  
nibus decōri gloriāque sunt.* 3. *Caesar milītēs castrīs  
praesidiō relinquit.* 4. *Leōnēs praesidiō impēditentis  
erant.* 5. *Lēgātus certum auxiliō Caesarī miserat.* 6. *Caesar tertiam āciem castrīs subsidiō mīsit.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. Caesar sent the cavalry as an aid to the soldiers.  
2. He sent the third line for a protection to the baggage.  
3. Do not trust fortune. 4. He gave the book to (his)  
friend. 5. Caesar did not trust the Gauls. 6. The Gauls  
desire a revolution.

## LESSON LVIII.

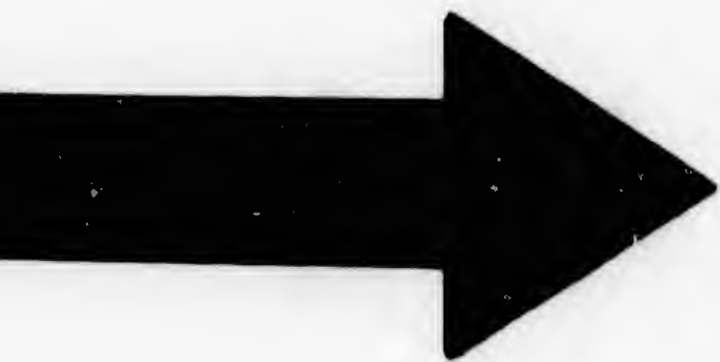
## PREPOSITIONS.

200. Prepositions show the Relation between a Noun or  
Pronoun and some other word.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>ad, to, towards, at</i> (opposite of<br>ab).  | 5. <i>circā, -um, -iter, around, about</i><br>( <i>circiter</i> is used chiefly with<br>numerals). |
| 2. <i>adversus, -um, against, towards.</i>  | 6. <i>eis, eītrā, on this side.</i>  |
| 3. <i>ante, before.</i>   | 7. <i>contrā, against.</i>   |
| 4. <i>āpud</i> (chiefly of persons), <i>near,</i><br><i>at, with, at the house of, in the</i><br><i>writings of, among.</i> | 8. <i>ergā, towards</i> (usually of<br>friendly relations).  |





# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street 14609 USA  
Rochester, New York  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9. <i>extrā</i> , outside, beyond.       | 19. <i>praeter</i> , past, besides.                   |
| 10. <i>infra</i> , below, under.         | 20. <i>prōpe</i> , near.                              |
| 11. <i>inter</i> , between, among.       | 21. <i>propter</i> , on account of.                   |
| 12. <i>intrā</i> , within.               | 22. <i>secundum</i> , following, after, according to. |
| 13. <i>juxtā</i> , next to.              | 23. <i>suprā</i> , above.                             |
| 14. <i>ob</i> , for, on account of.      | 24. <i>trāns</i> , across, on the other side.         |
| 15. <i>pēnes</i> , in the power of.      | 25. <i>ultrā</i> , beyond.                            |
| 16. <i>per</i> , through, by the aid of. | 26. <i>versus</i> , towards (placed after noun).      |
| 17. <i>pōne</i> , behind.                |   |
| 18. <i>post</i> , behind, after, since.  |   |

2. Ten prepositions are followed by the ablative:—

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>ā</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>abs</i> , from, after, by.         | 6. <i>ē</i> , <i>ex</i> , out of, from.                        |
| 2. <i>absque</i> , but, for, without (rare in classic authors). | 7. <i>prae</i> , before, in comparison with.                   |
| 3. <i>cōram</i> , in presence of.                               | 8. <i>prō</i> , before, for, instead of.                       |
| 4. <i>cum</i> , with.   | 9. <i>sine</i> , without.                                      |
| 5. <i>dē</i> , down from, from, concerning.                     | 10. <i>tēnus</i> , up to, as far as (sometimes with genitive). |

3. The following four prepositions are followed by the accusative when *motion to a place* is implied; by the ablative when *rest in a place* is implied:—

- in*, denoting *motion to a place*, INTO with accusative; *rest in a place*, IN with ablative.
- sub*, denoting *motion to a place*, UNDER with accusative; *rest in a place*, UNDER with ablative.
- super*, denoting *motion to a place*, ABOVE with accusative; *rest in a place*, ABOUT with ablative.
- supter* (*subter*), denoting *motion to a place*, UNDER with accusative; *rest in a place*, UNDER with ablative.

ONS. 1. *Tēnus* (with abl.), like *versus* (with acc.), is placed after its case; and *cum* is annexed to the ablative of the personal and relative pronouns.

ONS. 2. *Ā* and *ē* are used before consonants; *ab* and *ex* before vowels and consonants.

### 201. The Use of Prepositions.

We have learned (§1. N. 2) that a preposition with its object is a *prepositional phrase* (or *adjunct*). Such a phrase enables us to ex-



press an idea more distinctly: as, *Cæsar came there*; if we substitute *into Gaul* for *there*, the sentence reads *Cæsar came into Gaul*, expressing the thought with greater precision than with the adverb alone. The preposition with its object, *into Gaul*, or *in Galliam*, is a phrase modifying the verb.

The pupil should gradually commit the lists of prepositions to memory.

## 202. Dative with Verbs Compounded with a Preposition.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *dux suis militibus adërat*, the leader was assisting his soldiers.
2. *Caesar Galliae praefuit*, Cæsar ruled over Gaul.
3. *Caesar interfuit pugnæ*, Cæsar was present in the battle.

Obs. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions govern the dative, when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative. When the simple verb is transitive, the compound may take both the dative and the accusative: as, *jungere*, to join, takes the accusative; but *adjungere*, to join to, takes the dative also; when the verb is intransitive, it takes the dative only. Hence the following rule:—

### DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

**203. RULE XXIV.**—The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *pro*, *sub*, and *super*, and sometimes *circum*.

### VOCABULARY.

*Aquitânia*, F., *Aquitania*, a province in Southern Gaul.  
*Pyrænaei*, -*orum*, M. PL., the Pyrenæes.  
*pertineo*, *pertinere*, *pertinui*, stretch.  
*specto*, *spectare*, *spectavi*, *spectatum*, look at.  
*septentrionēs*, -*orum*, M., the north.  
*divido*, *dividere*, *divisi*, *divisum*, separate, divide.  
*dives*, -*itis*, rich.  
*incolō*, -*colere*, -*colui*,<sup>2</sup> —, inhabit, dwell.  
*contendo*, *contendere*, *conterai*, *contentum*, contend, hasten.  
*pervenio*, *pervenire*, *perveni*, *perventum*, arrive at.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Aquitania a Germana flumine<sup>3</sup> ad Pyrenaeos pertinet.  
 2. Apud Helvetios nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgétorix.  
 3. Gallos ab Aquitanis Germana flumen dividit. 4. Germani trans Rhenum incolunt. 5. Spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones Aquitania.<sup>4</sup> 6. Caesar hibernis Labienum praeposuit.<sup>5</sup> 7. Belgae ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni pertinent. 8. Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus<sup>6</sup> contendit. 9. Apud<sup>6</sup> Ciceronem legimus. 10. Milites omnes in oppidum irrumpunt.<sup>7</sup>

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Commit to memory the prepositions that always require the ablative.
2. No participial stem.
3. How is *flumine* parsed?
4. Subject of *spectat*.
5. Why ablative?
6. *Apud* is used with names of authors (instead of *in*, with the name of the work). Translate, *we read in Cicero*.
7. Most of the prepositions enumerated above are often used as prefixes in composition with verbs, and modify their meaning: as, *pōnere*, to place; *postpōnere*, to place after. A few prepositions are never used alone, but always occur in composition:—

*amb-*, round, about; as, *ambire*, to walk around.

*con-*, together; as, *conjugere*, to join together.

*di-*, *dis-*, asunder; as, *discedere*, to depart.

*in-*, with adjectives and verbs, means *not*, *un-*; as *indoctus*, unlearned.

*re-* or *z-* *re-*, back, again; as, *relicere*, to make again, refit.

*se-*, aside; as *seducere*, to lead astray.

*ve-*, *not* (see *es* to negative the positive idea in the word with which it is compounded, or intensifies it); *vegrandis*, not large.

When do *in* and *sub* require the accusative? How does the use of *a* differ from *ab*? When is *to* the sign of the dative? When must it be translated by *ad*?

## LESSON LIX.

## CLASSES OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**204.** Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses; they are divided into two general classes, COÖRDINATE and SUBORDINATE.

1. *Coördinate Conjunctions* connect words, phrases, or clauses of the same rank.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *lūna et stella fulgēbant*, the moon and the stars were shining.
2. *puēri stūdent et puellae lūdunt*, the boys study and the girls play.
3. *puēri puellaeque lūdunt*, the boys and the girls are playing.
4. *militēs atque imperātor*, the soldiers and the commander too.

I. *Coördinate Conjunctions.*

**205.** The Coördinate Conjunctions comprise—

1. Copulative Conjunctions, denoting *union*: as, **et**, and; **-que** (enclitic), and; **atque**, and; **ac**, and; **et . . . et**, both . . . and; **nec**, neque, and not; **neque . . . neque**, **nec . . . nec**, neither . . . nor.

## EXAMPLE.

*His father is dead, and his friends have deserted him.*

2. Disjunctive Conjunctions, denoting *separation*: as, **aut**, **vel**, or; **aut . . . aut**, **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or.

## EXAMPLE.

*Either his father is dead or his friends have deserted him.*

3. Adversative Conjunctions, denoting *opposition*: as, **sed**, **autem**, **vērūm**, **vērō**, but; **at**, **but**, on the contrary.

## EXAMPLE.

*His father has abandoned him, but his friends have not.*

4. Illative (inferential or conclusive) Conjunctions, denoting *inference*: as, **ergō**, **Igitur**, **Itaque**, therefore.

## EXAMPLE.

*His father has abandoned him, therefore his friends will.*

5. Causal Conjunctions, denoting *cause*: *a*, *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *et̄enim*, *for*.

**EXAMPLE.**

*His friends will abandon him, for his father has done so.*

## II. Subordinate Conjunctions.

Obs. A subordinate clause is so united to another clause (or clauses) as to be *dependent* on it; as, *the messenger departed when he was sent*. Here *the messenger departed* is the principal, or leading clause; *when he was sent* modifies *departed*, and is the subordinate clause. Dependent clauses perform the office of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, and hence are called *noun, adjective, or adverb clauses*; they are often named from the subordinate conjunctions by which they are introduced. (See 317.)

**206.** The Subordinate Conjunctions comprise —

1. Temporal, denoting *time*; as, *cum*, *when*.
2. Comparative, denoting *comparison*; as, *quam*, *v̄elut*, *as, just as*.
3. Conditional, denoting *condition*; as, *si*, *if*.
4. Concessive, denoting *concession*; as, *licet*, *although*.
5. Final, denoting *purpose* or *end*; as, *ut*, *nē*, *that, that not*.
6. Consecutive, denoting *consequence* or *result*; as, *quān*, *so that not*; *ut*, *so that*.
7. Causal, denoting *cause*; as, *quod*, *quia*, *quōniam*, *because*.
8. Interrogative, used in *asking questions*: as, *-ne* (enclitic), *nōnne*, *num*, *whether*; *an*, *or*; *annōn*, *or not*.

Obs. 1. Of the three words meaning *and* —

- a. *et* connects independent words and clauses, as in Exs. 1, 2.
- b. *-que* (enclitic) connects words or clauses that are to be considered together, or as a whole, as in Ex. 3.
- c. *atque* (*ad*, *in addition to*, and *que, and*), *and also*, indicates that the second word is more important than the first, as in Ex. 4.

Obs. 2. Most of the causal conjunctions are subordinate.

**207.** Model for Parsing a Conjunction: —

In Ex. 1 *et* is a coordinate conjunction, and connects the compound subject *lūna* and *stella*. Hence the following rule: —

**208. RULE XXV.** — Conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences.

EXERCISES.

Parse the conjunctions in the following sentences:—

1. Nēque pāter nēque filius vīrum laudat. 2. Hostēs Itāliam longē lātēque vastāverant. 3. Libēri erant nōn māgnī, sed bōnī pulchrīque. 4. Hōmīnēs sunt aut fēlicēs aut infēlicēs.

LESSON LX.

GENITIVES IN *-IUS*.

IMPERATIVE MODE, ACTIVE VOICE.

**209.** Nine Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have their genitive singular in *-ius*, and dative in *-ī*, in all genders. These adjectives are:—

<i>ālius</i> , other.	<i>tōtus</i> , whole.	<i>alter</i> , other (of two).
<i>nūllus</i> , none.	<i>ūllus</i> , any.	<i>neuter</i> , neither.
<i>sōlus</i> , alone.	<i>ūnus</i> , one.	<i>ūter</i> , which (of two).

1. The plural of these adjectives is declined like the plural of *bōnus*. The singular is thus declined:—

PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.					
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
GEN.	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūtrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
DAT.	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūtrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>
ACC.	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
VOC.	<i>ūne</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	—	—	—
ABL.	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>
NOM.	<i>ālius</i>	<i>ālia</i>	<i>āliud</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altēra</i>	<i>altērum</i>
GEN.	<i>ālius</i>	<i>ālius</i>	<i>ālius</i>	<i>altērius</i>	<i>altērius</i>	<i>altērius</i>
DAT.	<i>ālii</i>	<i>ālii</i>	<i>ālii</i>	<i>altēri</i>	<i>altēri</i>	<i>altēri</i>
ACC.	<i>ālium</i>	<i>āliam</i>	<i>āliud</i>	<i>altērum</i>	<i>altēram</i>	<i>altērum</i>
VOC.	—	—	—	—	—	—
ABL.	<i>āliō</i>	<i>āliā</i>	<i>āliō</i>	<i>altērō</i>	<i>altērā</i>	<i>altērō</i>

**210.** The Imperative Mode has two tenses, the Present and the Future.

1. The Present Imperative has only the second person.
2. The Future Imperative has the second and third persons.
3. The first person of the Imper. is supplied by the Subjunctive.
4. The Negative of the Imperative is *nē*.

**211.** The Present and Future Imperative Active of the Four Conjugations is inflected as follows:—

FIRST CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	āmā	<i>Love thou.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Phur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + te	āmāte	<i>Love ye.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + to	āmāto	<i>Thou shalt love.</i>
	3	" " + to	āmāto	<i>He shall love.</i>
	Phur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tōte	āmātōte	<i>Ye shall love.</i>
	3	" " + nto	āmanto	<i>They shall love.</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	mōnē	<i>Advise thou.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Phur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + te	monēte	<i>Advise ye.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + to	mōnēto	<i>Thou shalt advise.</i>
	3	" " + to	mōnēto	<i>He shall advise.</i>
	Phur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tōte	mōnētōte	<i>Ye shall advise.</i>
	3	" " + nto	mōnento	<i>They shall advise.</i>

es, the Present

person.  
third persons.  
the Subjunctive.

Active of the

English.
_____
Love thou.
_____
_____
Love ye.
_____
_____
Thou shalt love.
He shall love.
_____
Ye shall love.
They shall love.
_____
Advise thou.
_____
_____
Advise ye.
_____
_____
Thou shalt advise.
He shall advise.
_____
Ye shall advise.
They shall advise.

THIRD CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	rēge	Rule thou.
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + te	rēgite	Rule ye.
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + to	rēgito	Thou shalt rule.
	3	" " + to	rēgito	He shall rule.
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tōte	rēgītōte	Ye shall rule.
	3	" " + nto	rēgūnto	They shall rule.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	audī	Hear thou.
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + te	audīte	Hear ye.
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + to	audīto	Thou shalt hear.
	3	" " + to	audīto	He shall hear.
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tōte	audītōte	Ye shall hear.
	3	" " + nto	audiūnto	They shall hear.

Obs. 1. Note that the personal endings are the same for all four conjugations. The characteristic vowel of the stem is the same as in the infinitive active, *i. e.*, *ā, ē, ē, i* (but in the third conjugation the *ē* changes to *ɨ*, and in the future third person plural to *u*). Note the future third person plural of the fourth conjugation.

Obs. 2. Four verbs, **dicō, dūcō, scio, fēro**, with their compounds, drop the final vowel of the imperative; as, **dic, dūc, fac, fēr**. But compounds in **-ficio** retain the final *e*; as, **confice**.

Obs. 3. For the first person of the imperative, see p. 241; for the expression of a negative command (*i. e.*, a prohibition), see 278. 2.

*audire relate. scilicet.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Laudā, exercē, scribe, obēdī. 2. Laudāte, exercēte, scribīte, obēdīte. 3. Disce, puer. 4. Tācēte, puērī.<sup>1</sup> 5. Milītes in unum locum veniunt. 6. Milēs ex alterā parte urbis veniūt. 7. Spēs tōta Rōmānos dēsērit.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Praise thou, exercise thou, write thou, obey thou. 2. Praise ye, exercise ye, write ye, obey ye. 3. Call the boy. 4. Learn, boys.<sup>1</sup> 5. Call ye, punish ye, advise ye, rule ye. 6. The soldiers of both armies are brave. 7. They come to one place. 8. Which (of the two) does he praise?

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Case and rule.

How many modes? Define each. Does the use of the Latin imperative differ from the same mode in English? How many persons has the imperative? How is the first person supplied?

## LESSON LXI.

## NUMERALS.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.—ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

**212.** Numeral adjectives express *number*; they are divided into three principal classes:—

- CARDINALS**, which answer the question *how many*: as, **ūnus**, *one*; **trēs**, *three*.
- ORDINALS**, which express rank or order; they answer the question *which in order*, or *one of how many*: as, **primus**, *first*.
- DISTRIBUTIVES**, which answer the question *how many to each*, or *how many at a time*: as, **binī**, *two each*, or *two by two*; **bis bīna māla**, *twice two apples*.
- Numeral adverbs answer the question *how often*: as, **bis**, *twice*.



**213.** The Cardinal Numbers are indeclinable, except *unus, one, duo, two, trēs, three*, and the hundreds beginning with *dūcenti, two hundred*. The hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnus*; and the first three cardinals are declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnis	ūnis	ūnis
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
VOC.	ūne	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnis	ūnis	ūnis
	duo, two.			trēs, three.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter.	
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria	
VOC.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	

1. In the plural, *ūnus* often has the meaning of *same, only*. It is also used in its ordinary sense with a plural noun of a singular meaning; as, *ūna castra, one camp*.

2. *Mille* is either an Adjective or a Noun:—

a. As an Adjective it is indeclinable, and limits the noun; as,

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *mille hōmīnēs, a thousand men.*

2. *cum bis mille hōmīnibus, with two thousand men.*

b. As a noun it is indeclinable in the singular; in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre (110)*: *mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus*. It is followed by the genitive, unless a declined numeral comes between, as in Ex. 3; as,

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *millē hōmīnum, a thousand men (lit., of men).*

2. *tria mīlia hōmīnum, three thousand men (lit., of men).*

3. *tria mīlia trēcenti mīlitēs, three thousand three hundred soldiers.*

Obs. 1. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *et*, or by the smaller numeral first with *et*; as, *vīgintī ōnus*, *twenty-one*, or *ōnus et vīgintī*, *one and twenty*. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first; as, *centum et sexāgintā sex*, or *centum sexāgintā sex*, *one hundred and sixty-six*.

Obs. 2. The numerals 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39 have the smaller numeral first, with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction; as, *duōdēvīgintī*, *undēvīgintī*, *duōdētrīgintā*, etc.

3. Distributive numerals are sometimes used to show a plural signification in those nouns, the plural forms of which have otherwise a singular meaning; as, *bīna castra*, *two camps*; *bīnae aedēs*, *two houses*; *bīnae littērae*, *two letters*. *Duo castra* would mean *two forts*; *duae aedēs*, *two temples*; *duae littērae*, *two letters* (of the alphabet).

Obs. 3. The year is expressed by *annus* with the ordinal numerals; as, *annus mīllēsīmus octīngentēsīmus octōgēsīmus quīntus*, *the year 1885*.

Obs. 4. *Prior* is used instead of *prius* when only two things are spoken of; *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

## 214. Accusative of Time and Space.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs*, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years*.
2. *fossa pēdēs trēcentōs longa est, sex pēdēs alta*, *the ditch is three hundred FEET long, six FEET deep*.
3. *castra ab urbe mīlia passuum octo absunt*, *the camp is eight MILES distant from the city*.

Obs. Note that *annōs*, in Ex. 1, expresses duration of *time*; that *pēdēs* and *mīlia*, in Exs. 2 and 3, denote the extent of *space*, and are also in the accusative. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

### ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

## 215. RULE XXVI.—Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

1. Distance is sometimes expressed by the ablative. (See Ablative of Difference, 302.)

### EXAMPLE.

*mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesāris castrīs consēdit*, *he encamped at the distance of six miles from Cesar's camp*.

expressed either smaller numeral **s et vīginti**, one the larger number **sexāgintā sex**, have the smaller subtraction; as,

to show a plural which have other **campis**; **binā castra** would **litteras**, two letters with the ordinal **octogēsīmus** only two things

**annōs**, *Romulus* **is alta**, the ditch **ent**, the camp is **on of time**; that **at of space**, and **n the following**

**and extent** **blative**. (See

**nsēdit**, he en- **Caesar's camp**.

2. Duration of time may be expressed by **per** with the accusative, and sometimes, though rarely, by the ablative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **lūdi dēcem per diēs factī**, the games were celebrated THROUGH ten entire DAYS.
2. **pūgnātum est continenter hōrīs quinque**, they fought for five hours incessantly.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Amīcus meus habet duos filiōs et duās filiās**.
2. **Oppidum Rēmōrum ab castrīs octo milia passuum abērat**.
3. **Mōns dēcem milia trēcentōs pedēs altus est**.
4. **Erant itinēra duo**; unum per **Sēquānōs**; alterum per **prōvinciam nostram**.
5. **Milia passuum tria ab urbe castra pōsūt**.
6. **Quot hōrīs habet unus diēs**? **Quattuor et vīginti**.
7. **Milibus passuum sex ā Cēsāris castrīs cōnsēdit**.
8. **Dēcem annōs urbs oppūgnāta est**.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The boy has six books.
2. The men have ten apples.
3. Caesar will come with ten vessels.
4. Caesar leads out five legions from Italy.
5. The town is six miles distant.
6. The river is sixteen feet deep.
7. The river is twenty-two feet deep.
8. The mountain is four thousand feet high.
9. Three gifts, seven hostages, five kings, a thousand soldiers, eleven friends, ten towns.
10. The first friend, the second town, the third king, the ninth queen, the tenth enemy.
11. They fought five hours.
12. He lived sixty years.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The pupil should learn the declension of **unus**, **duo**, and **trēs**, and memorize the cardinals to one hundred, and the ordinals to twenty.
2. The adjectives **longus**, **lātus**, and **altus** usually accompany the accusative of space.

What is a cardinal number? Decline **unus**. Is **unūs** ever used in the plural? Mention the ordinal numbers from first to twentieth. Decline **duo**.

TABLE OF NUMERALS.<sup>1</sup>

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	I.	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i> .	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
2	II.	duo, -ae, -o, <i>two</i> .	sc̄cundus, <i>second</i> .
3	III.	trēs, tria, <i>three</i> .	tērtius, <i>third</i> .
4	IV.	quattuor, <i>four</i> .	quartus, <i>fourth</i> .
5	V.	quīnque, <i>etc.</i>	quīntus, <i>fifth, etc.</i>
6	VI.	sex	sextus
7	VII.	septem	septīmus
8	VIII.	octo	octāvus
9	IX.	nōvem	nōnus
10	X.	dēcem	dēcīmus
11	XI.	undēcim	undēcīmus
12	XII.	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus
13	XIII.	trēdēcim	tērtius dēcīmus
14	XIV.	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus
15	XV.	quīndēcim	quīntus dēcīmus
16	XVI.	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus
17	XVII.	septendēcim	septīmus dēcīmus
18	XVIII.	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19	XIX.	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus
20	XX.	vīgintī	vicēsīmus
21	XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī { or vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus prīmus
28	XXVIII.	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētricēsīmus
29	XXIX.	undētrīgintā	undētricēsīmus
30	XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
40	XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100	C.	centum	centēsīmus
101	CI.	centum ūnus { centum et ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus centēsīmus et prīmus
200	CC.	dūcentī, -ae, -a	dūcentēsīmus
300	CCC.	trēcentī, -ae, -a	trēcentēsīmus
400	CCCC.	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsīmus
500	D. or IĎ.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsīmus
600	DC.	sēcentī, -ae, -a	sēcentēsīmus
700	DCC.	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsīmus
800	DCCC.	octīngentī, -ae, -a	octīngentēsīmus
900	DCCCC.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsīmus
1000	M. or CIĎ.	mille	mīllēsīmus
2000	MM.	duo mīlia (mīllia)	bis mīllēsīmus
5000	IO.	quīnque mīlia	quīnquē mīllēsīmus
10,000	CCIO.	dēcem mīlia	dēcē mīllēsīmus
100,000	CCCIO.	centum mīlia	centē mīllēsīmus



## LESSON LXII.

## IMPERATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## THE PLACE TO WHICH.

**216.** The Imperative Passive of the Four Conjugations is inflected as follows:—

FIRST CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + re	amāre	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + minī	amāminī	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tor	amātor	<i>Thou shalt be loved.</i>
	3	“ “ + tor	amātor	<i>He shall be loved.</i>
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	_____	_____	_____
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	amantor	<i>They shall be loved.</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + re	mōnēre	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + minī	mōnēminī	<i>Be ye advised.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tor	mōnētor	<i>Thou shalt be advised.</i>
	3	“ “ + tor	mōnētor	<i>He shall be advised.</i>
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	_____	_____	_____
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	mōnentor	<i>They shall be advised.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	—	—	—
	2	Pres. stem + re	rēgēre	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
	3	—	—	—
	Plur. 1	—	—	—
	2	Pres. stem + minī	rēgimīnī	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
	3	—	—	—
Future.	Sing. 1	—	—	—
	2	Pres. stem + tor	rēgitor	<i>Thou shalt be ruled.</i>
	3	" " + tor	rēgitor	<i>He shall be ruled.</i>
	Plur. 1	—	—	—
	2	—	—	—
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	rēguntor	<i>They shall be ruled.</i>
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
Present.	Sing. 1	—	—	—
	2	Pres. stem + re	audire	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
	3	—	—	—
	Plur. 1	—	—	—
	2	Pres. stem + minī	audimīnī	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
	3	—	—	—
Future.	Sing. 1	—	—	—
	2	Pres. stem + tor	auditor	<i>Thou shalt be heard.</i>
	3	" " + tor	auditor	<i>He shall be heard.</i>
	Plur. 1	—	—	—
	2	—	—	—
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	audiuntor	<i>They shall be heard.</i>

ONS. Note that the characteristic vowel of the stem is variable in the third conjugation, weakened to *i* and then to *u*; the stem of the third person plural future of the fourth conjugation, is *audiu-*.

217. The Place to Which.

EXAMPLES.

1. in Galliam vēnit, he came into Gaul.
2. in Itāliam contendit, he hastens into Italy.
3. ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city.
4. Rōmam profectus est, he set out for Rome.
5. Cōrinthum pervēnit, he came to Corinth.
6. puer dōnum ibat, the boy was going home.
7. rūs ibo, I will go to the country.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that in 1, 2, 3, the names of the places to which the motion is directed are *not* the names of towns; in each case the preposition is expressed. In Exs. 4, 5, the nouns denoting the place to which the motion is directed are *names of towns*; the accusative is used without a preposition. Note, further, that *dōmum*, *dōmōs*, and *rūs*, like names of towns, have no preposition. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

THE NAME OF THE PLACE TO WHICH.

**218. RULE XXVII.**—The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, regularly requires the preposition *in* or *ad*.

1. But with names of towns and small islands, and with *dōmum*, *dōmōs*, and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted.

VOCABULARY.

*ēdūco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *educate*.

*strēnuē* (adv.), *briskly, vigorously*.

*Britannia*, -ae, F., *Britain*.

*attingo*, -tingere, -tigi, *tactum*, *touch, reach*.

*institūtum*, -ī, N. *custom*; PL. *institutions*.

*gēro*, *gērere*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *bear, carry on*.

*vergo*, *vergere*, —, —, *turn, lie toward*.

*persuādeo*, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm, *convince, persuade*.

*facile*, *facilius*, *facillime*, *easily*.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Puer, *bēne* *ēdūcāre*.
2. Puer, *strēnuē* *exercēre*.
3. Puer, *prōbē* *excōlēre*.
4. Puer, *diligenter* *ērūdirē*.
5. Puer, *bēne* *ēdūcātor*, *strēnuē* *exercētōr*, *prōbē* *excōlītōr*, *diligenter* *ērūdītōr*.
6. In *finēs* *Vōcōntiōrum* *diē* *septimō* *pervēnit*.
7. *Hōrā* *quartā* *Britanniam* *attingit*.
8. *Nocte* *ad* *Caesārem* *pervēnērunt*.
9. In *Galliā* *ultēriōre* *multōs* *annōs* *mānēbimus*.
10. *Proximō* *diē* *Caesar* *ē* *castris* *cōpiās* *s.uās* *ēdūxit*.
11. *Cōsul* *Athēnās* *prōfectus* *est*.
12. *Caesar* *Milētum* *prōpērāvīt*.
13. *Multi* *ex* *urbe* *rūs* *migrābant*.
14. *Sērō* *dōmum* *vēnistī*.

*late*



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

The quantity of long final syllables has hitherto been marked; the pupil should be taught to account for the quantity of all final syllables.

Define the imperative. How many tenses has the imperative? Are the personal endings the same for all four conjugations? After verbs of motion, how is the *place to which* expressed? With names of towns, how is the *place to which* expressed? What other words omit the preposition?

## LESSON LXIII.

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.—ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

**219.** Sentences may be classified, with respect to their meaning, as:—

1. Simple.
2. Complex.
3. Compound.

**220.** A Simple Sentence contains but one subject and one predicate, either of which may be compound.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Messengers come.*
2. *The swift messengers come quickly.*
3. *The boys and girls laugh and play.*

Obs. *Messenger* is the subject of the first sentence, and *come* is the predicate. In Ex. 2 *the* and *swift* modify *messengers*, and are called the Modifiers of the Subject. *The swift messengers* is the modified, or logical subject; *come quickly* is the modified, or logical predicate. The third sentence has a compound subject, *boys and girls*, connected by the coordinate copulative conjunction *and*, and a compound predicate.

**221.** A Complex Sentence is composed of one independent clause in combination with one or more dependent clauses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *The general, who is cautious, will succeed.*
2. *When the rain descended, the floods came.*

Obs. The first sentence contains two parts: *the general will succeed*, and *who is cautious*. Each part contains a subject and predicate, and is called a *clause*; hence the definition:—

**222.** A clause is a part of a sentence containing a subject and predicate.

Obs. The clause, *who is cautious*, really performs the office of an adjective, as we may use in place of it simply the word *cautious*, and say *the cautious general will succeed*. The adjective clause, *who is cautious*, performing the office of a single word, is called a DEPENDENT CLAUSE; the other clause, *the general will succeed*, not performing the office of a single word, is called an INDEPENDENT CLAUSE. The two clauses, connected by *who*, are so combined that one modifies the other; they form in combination a COMPLEX SENTENCE. In the second sentence, *the floods came* is the independent clause, modified by the clause *when the rain descended*, i.e. by a clause telling *when* the floods came; and as this clause performs the office of a single word, *an adverb*, the two clauses in combination form a Complex Sentence.

**223.** A Compound Sentence is composed of two or more independent clauses.

**EXAMPLE.**

*The rain descended, and the floods came.*

Obs. This sentence consists of two parts, *the rain descended* and *the floods came*, each of which is independent, and makes complete sense by itself. The sentence is COMPOUND, because it consists of two independent clauses.

**SIMPLE SENTENCES CLASSIFIED.**

**224.** Simple sentences may be Declarative, Interrogative, Imperative, or Exclamatory.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *Cæsar was stabbed.*
2. *Was Cæsar stabbed by Brutus?*
3. *Love justice, and hate evil.*
4. *What a cruel deed he has done!*

**Modifiers.**

**225.** The Subject or the Predicate may be modified by (1) *a word*, (2) *a phrase*, (3) *a clause*.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *militēs fortēs, brave soldiers.*
2. *oppida sine praesidiō, towns without garrisons.*
3. *rēx Albānōrum, the king of the Albans.*
4. *puer, quī lēgit, the boy, who reads.*

**226.** A Phrase is a group of words, without a subject or predicate, used in the sense of an adjective or an adverb.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *A large army came there.*
2. *An army of sixty thousand men came to Rome.*

Obs. In the first sentence, the adjective *large* modifies *army*, and the adverb *there* modifies *came*. If we wish to express the thought with greater distinctness, we should use the second sentence, in which the groups of words, *of sixty thousand men* and *to Rome*, have been substituted, the one for the adjective *large*, and the other for the adverb *there*. These groups of words we call PHRASES.

**227.** Directions for Analyzing Sentences :—

Tell (1) whether the sentence is *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*. If the sentence is Simple, tell (2) whether it is *declarative*, *interrogative*, *imperative*, or *exclamatory*; (3) mention the subject and its modifiers, (4) the predicate and its modifiers. If the sentence is Complex, analyze each clause like a simple sentence; name the connective, and tell whether the subordinate or dependent clause stands for an *adjective*, an *adverb*, or a *noun*, *i.e.*, whether it is an Adjective, Adverbial, or Noun Clause. If the sentence is Compound, analyze each clause as a simple sentence, name the connective, and the class of conjunctions to which it belongs.

**EXERCISES.**

Classify the following sentences; name the clauses; analyze each, and mention the modifiers :—

1. The bridge spans the river.
2. The great iron bridge spans the broad river.
3. The great iron bridge, built by a skilful engineer, spans the broad river.<sup>1</sup>
4. Great men are rare.
5. The man dies, but his memory lives.
6. How wonderful is the advent of spring!
7. Are there any accidents in the providence of God?
8. Thank you, sir.
9. Has the gentleman finished?
10. While Louis XIV. reigned, Europe was at war.
11. Great men lived during the Revolution.
12. Franklin, who was a great philosopher, was born in Boston.
13. Hamilton smote the rock of the national re-

sources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth. 14. There<sup>2</sup> is a pleasure in the pathless woods. 15. The soldiers were brave.<sup>3</sup>

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Expand this sentence into a compound sentence.
2. There is used as an introductory word, to fill out the sentence, and is, therefore, called an *expletive* (Lat. *explĕre*, to fill out).
3. Is this adjective *attributive* or *predicate*?

What is a sentence? Classify sentences. Write a simple sentence. Expand it to a complex, then to a compound sentence. Of what is a complex sentence composed? What is a clause? What is a dependent clause? (*Ans.* A dependent clause is one used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.) Mention the modifiers of the subject; of the predicate.

### LESSON LXIV.

#### PRONOUNS.

*Obs.* Charles went to Rome with his mother, and he came back without her. In this sentence we use three little words called *Pronouns*; they are *his*, *he*, and *her*. If we had not these words, we would be compelled to say: "Charles went to Rome with Charles's mother, and Charles came back without Charles's mother." The pronouns take the place of the nouns, and hence the definition:—

**228.** A Pronoun is a word used for a noun. Pronouns are divided into eight classes:—

1. Personal Pronouns: *ĕgo*, *I*; *nŏs*, *we*, etc.
2. Reflexive Pronouns: *suī*, *of himself*.
3. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, *my*, etc.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, *this*, etc.
5. Determinative Pronouns: *is*, *he*, *that*; *ipse*, *self*, etc.
6. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, *who*, and its compounds.
7. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, *who?* and its compounds.
8. Indefinite Pronouns: *alīquis*, *some one*, etc.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**229.** The Personal Pronouns are so called because they designate the person of the noun for which they stand. They are *ēgo, I, tū, thou*, and are declined as follows:—

## I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>ēgo, I.</i>	<i>nōs, we.</i>
GEN.	<i>meī, of me.</i>	<i>nōstrum and nōstrī, of us.</i>
DAT.	<i>mihī, to or for me.</i>	<i>nōbīs, to or for us.</i>
ACC.	<i>mē, me.</i>	<i>nōs, us.</i>
VOC.	—	—
ABL.	<i>mē, with, from, or by me.</i>	<i>nōbīs, with, from, or by us.</i>

## II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>tū, thou.</i>	<i>vōs, ye or you.</i>
GEN.	<i>tuī, of thee.</i>	<i>vestrum and vestrī, of you.</i>
DAT.	<i>tibi, to or for thee.</i>	<i>vōbīs, to or for you.</i>
ACC.	<i>tē, thee.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>
VOC.	<i>tū, O thou.</i>	<i>vōs, O ye or you.</i>
ABL.	<i>tē, with, from, or by thee.</i>	<i>vōbīs, with, from, or by you.</i>

Obs. The genitives *nōstrum, vestrum*, are used *partitively* (see 236); as, *unus nōstrum, one of us*. *Nōstrī* and *vestrī* are used as *objective genitives*; as, *mēmor es nōstrī, be mindful of us*.

1. *Ego* and *nōs* are Personal Pronouns of the first person, and *tū, vōs*, of the second. The personal pronouns of the third person, — *he, she, it, they*, — are wanting in Latin.

2. The pronouns of the first person may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē*, or both: as, *ēgōmēt, I myself; tūtē, tūtēmet, thou thyself; nōsmet, vōsmet, we ourselves, you yourselves*.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**230.** The Reflexive Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and do not, therefore, require a nominative case. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the same as the first and second personal pronouns; the reflexive of the third person is thus declined:—

## Singular and Plural.

NOM. (Wanting.)

GEN. **suī**, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

DAT. **sibi**, for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

ACC. **sē**, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

VOC. ———

ABL. **sē**, by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

1. The use of the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns can be understood from the following conjugation of **laudo**, with subject and object expressed:—

**ēgo mē laudo**, I praise myself; **nōs nōs laudāmus**, we praise ourselves; **tū tē laudās**, you praise yourself; **vōs vōs laudātis**, you praise yourselves; **is (ea) sē laudat**, he (she) praises himself (herself); **ii (eae) sē laudant**, they praise themselves; also, **Cicēro sē** (i.e. **Cicērōnem**) **laudat**, Cicero praises himself; **Cicēro eum** (i.e. **Caesārem**) **laudat**, Cicero praises him.

2. The reduplicated forms, **sēsē**, **tētē**, **mēmē**, for **sē**, **tē**, **mē**, occur.

3. **Cum**, when used with the ablative of the personal pronoun, is appended to it: as, **mēcum**, with me; **vōbiscum**, with you.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**231.** The Possessive Pronouns are formed from the personal pronouns, and denote *possession*. They are:—

**meus, mea, meum**, my or mine.

**tuis, tua, tuum**, thy or thine.

**suus, sua, suum**, his, hers, its, or their.

**nōster, nōstra, nōstrum**, our.

**vester, vestra, vestrum**, your.

Obs. 1. The vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**.

Obs. 2. Note that **sui** and **suum** refer to the leading subject of the sentence; but when no ambiguity can arise, **sui** sometimes refers to some other word than the leading subject.

**232.** Decline together: —

1. **meus frāter**, *my brother.*
2. **tuum cāput**, *thy head.*
3. **spēs omnis nostra**, *our only hope.*
4. **sua mānus dextra**, *his right hand.*

**233.** Examples Illustrating the Uses of the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns: —

1. **inter sē diffērunt**, *they differ (among themselves) from one another.*
2. **tū laudās mē, sed ēgo tē culpo**, *you praise me, but I blame you.*
3. **Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīrītūs sumpsērat**, *Ariovistus had taken such airs upon himself.*
4. **sī tū et Tullia vālētis, ēgo et Cicēro vālēmus**, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*
5. **inter nōs āmāmus**, *we love each other.*
6. **inter sē āmant**, *they love each other.*
7. **obsidēs inter sēsē dant**, *they give hostages to each other.*
8. **puella ēpistūlam mānū suā scrībit**, *the girl writes the letter with her own hand.*
9. **nōs ēquitāmus, ambūlātis vōs, or ēquitāmus nōs, vōs ambūlātis.**

Obs. The personal pronouns are implied in the endings of the Latin verb, and are not expressed in Latin unless they are emphatic (see 57. n. 1). Note that if there are two subjects connected by *and*, the verb is plural; if the subjects are of different persons, as in Ex. 4, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third. Note, also, that the first person is *the first in order*, not the last, as by courtesy in English. *His, her, its*, referring to the subject of the sentence, must be expressed by **suum, sua, suum**; when not referring to the subject, the genitive (**ējus**) of **is, ea, id**, is used.

## Rule for Position : —

1. The Personal Pronouns, when connected by conjunctions to other words, stand first. **Ego** always precedes (see Ex. 4).

2. Contrasted words are put as near together, or as far apart, as possible (see Ex. 9).

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Ego vōco, tū vōcās, āmīcus vōcat. 2. Tū es tristis. 3. Nōs sūmus pōtētēs, sēd vōs pōtētiōrēs estis. 4. In mē et in tē et in nōbis omnībus est ānīmus immortālis. 5. Ego et frāter ambulāmus. 6. Ego ā tē laudābor, sed tū ā mē pūniēris. 7. Mī frāter, audī. 8. Ego sum mīlus, sed tū es hōnus. 9. Caesar suōs mīlītēs in Galliam mittet, sed in prōvinciam nostrōs. 10. Caesar Divitiācum ad sē vōcat.

Translate into Latin : —

1. I call, thou callest, the friend calls. 2. I praise you, you praise me, we praise you. 3. He comes in company with you. 4. I give (to) you the book. 5. I am sad, but you are joyful. 6. I am a Roman, but you are a Gaul. 7. I am praised by you. 8. My brother and I are praising you. 9. You are reading, but I am writing. 10. They differ from one another.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Why are reflexive pronouns so called? Name the personal pronouns. How is the lack of a third personal pronoun supplied? Give the rule for the use of possessive pronouns. (*Ans.* Same as for adjectives: *Adjectives, adjective pronouns, etc., agree.* See Rule VIII.) How can you tell after a transitive verb whether **suōs mīlītēs** means *his, her, its, or their soldiers*? The reflexive **sē** is often written **sēsē**; **as, puer sēsē laudat, the boy praises himself.**



LESSON LXV.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. — PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

234. Demonstrative Pronouns are so called because they *point out* what object is meant. They are: —

1. **Hic**, *this, this near me.*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.		hūjus		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.		huic <sup>1</sup>			hīs	
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc <sup>2</sup>	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs	

2. **Iste**, *that, that near you.*

NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.		istius		istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.		istī			istīs	
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōa	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō		istīs	

3. **Ille**, *that, that near him.*

NOM.	illo	illa	illud	illī	illao	illa
GEN.		illius		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.		illī			illīs	
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō		illīs	

235. Decline together: —

1. **haec<sup>2</sup> diēs**, *this day.*
2. **ista tua sōror**, *that sister of thine.*
3. **haec lēgiō**, *this legion.*
4. **illud ōnus**, *that burden.*
5. **istud tempus**, *that time.*
6. **hōmo iste**, *that (worthless) man.*

Obs. 1. **Hic**, used for what is near the speaker, is called the *demonstrative of the first person*; **iste**, used of what is near the per-

son addressed, is called the *demonstrative of the second person*; *ille*, used of what is remote from both, is called the *demonstrative of the third person*.

Obs. 2. The demonstratives are often used in the oblique cases as personal pronouns (*him, her, it, them*) of the third person.

## EXAMPLE.

*eum et frātre[m] ejus video, I see him and his brother.*

## 236. Partitive Genitive.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *pars militum, part of the soldiers.*
2. *alter consulum, one of the (two) consuls.*
3. *unus militum, one of the soldiers.*
4. *nil vinī, (nothing of wine) no wine.*
5. *multum aestatis, a large part of the summer.*
6. *magna est corporis pars aperta, a great part of the body is exposed.*

Obs. In each of the foregoing examples, note that the genitive expresses the *whole*, and that the word which the genitive limits designates a *part*. This use of the genitive is called the *partitive genitive*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

**237. RULE XXVIII.**—Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive denoting the whole.

NOTE. Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, the ablative with *ex, out of, dē, from*, is regularly used with cardinals.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *unus ex militibus, one of the soldiers.*
2. *quinque ex militibus, five (of) soldiers.*
3. *unus dē multis, one of the many.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Illi<sup>3</sup> virum laudant. 2. Hōc<sup>4</sup> bellum est saevissimum.
3. Hujus discipuli diligentiam laudo. 4. Hic puer diligens est, ille inertis.
5. Horum omnium fortissimum sunt Belgae.
6. Laudabo illius<sup>5</sup> filium. 7. Pater filiam suam et filiam

Tulliac ad sē vocābat. 8. Hæc sententia mīhī placet, illa displicet. 9. Hī omnēs inter sē diffērunt. 10. Oppidum āberat mīlia passuum octo. 11. Māgna est corpōris pars āperta.

Translate into Latin :—

1. I will give you this book, and you give me that.
2. These men, those men. 3. These places, those places.
4. This mountain, that mountain. 5. This opinion, that opinion.
6. This soldier is brave, that one is cowardly.
7. These things<sup>6</sup> were announced to Cæsar. 8. A part of the army came. 9. The army marched six miles. 10. The wall is ten feet high. 11. Cicero was a very distinguished orator; we shall hear him with pleasure. 12. The man calls his own son to him.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Huic** is to be pronounced as a monosyllable.
2. The vocative of demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite pronouns is wanting.
3. Demonstrative pronouns may be used as personal or as adjective pronouns: as, **hī omnēs diffērunt**, *all these differ*; **ad eōs mercatōrēs sæpe commeant**, *traders often resort to them*; **ad hās suspiciōnēs**, *to these suspicions*. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.
4. Demonstrative pronouns usually precede the'r nouns.
5. For *his* or *her* not referring to the subject, **ējus** (see 231. obs. 2) should be used when not emphatic; **illius**, or **hūjus**, if the word is emphatic; **istius**, if very emphatic, or at all sarcastic, or referring to the second person.
6. The neuter plural of pronouns, as well as of adjectives, is often used as nouns, where we use in English the word *thing* or *things*; as, **hæc**, *these things, this*.

Is the nominative of the pronouns *he, she, it*, often expressed? When they must be expressed, what is used? *Ans.* Generally **hīc**, **is**, or **ille**; as, **hīc dixit**, *he (this man) speaks*. What is a pronoun? Mention the different classes. Define personal pronoun. What is meant by *partitive genitive*? Give the Latin for a *part of the soldiers*. Which is the *partitive genitive*? How is *all of the soldiers* expressed in Latin? *Ans.* **mīltēs omnēs**; all does not denote a *part*, but the *whole*.

## LESSON LXVI.

## DETERMINATIVE (DEMONSTRATIVE) PRONOUNS.

238. The Determinative Pronouns are *is, ea, id, this* (and *he, she*), *that*; its compound *idem, eadem, idem, the same*; and *ipse, ipsa, ipsum, he, self, very same*. They refer to some person or thing determined by the context:—

1. *Is, this, and he, she, it.*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī or īi	eae	ea
GEN.		ejus		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.		eī			eīs or iīs	
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō		eīs or iīs	

2. *Idem, the same.*

NOM.	idem	eādem	idem	eīdem or iīdem	eaedem	eādem
GEN.		eiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.		eīdem			eīdem or iīdem	
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		eīdem or iīdem	

3. *Ipse, self, he.*

NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
GEN.		ipsius		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.		ipsī			ipsīs	
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

Obs. 1. *Ipse* is often called an *intensive pronoun*; it should not be confounded with *sē*; as, *vir ipse sē laudat, the man himself praises himself*.

Obs. 2. **Idem** often means *also*; as, **Cicērō erat orator Idem-que philōsōphus**, Cicero was an orator, and also a philosopher (lit., *the same was a philosopher*).

Obs. 3. **Is**, *that*, is often used as a personal pronoun (*he, she, it, they, them*, etc.) of the same gender with the noun for which it stands: as, **Cicērō multōs librōs scripsit; eos** (i.e. **librōs**) **libenter lēgo**, Cicero has written many books; I read them (i.e. *the books*) with pleasure.

### 239. Decline together:—

1. **ipse hōmo**, the man himself.
2. **id oppidum**, that town.
3. **ipsa causa**, { the cause itself.  
the very same cause.
4. **hōc ipsum tempus**, this very time.
5. **idem princeps**, the same chief.
6. **idem bellum**, the same war.

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Is orābat pōpulum**. 2. **Ipse tū mē laudābas**. 3. **Ipse māgister mē laudābit**. 4. **Ipsī in cōrum finibus bellum gērunt**. 5. **Caesar eōdem itinēre ad eōs contendit**. 6. **Caesar Divitiācum ad sē vōcāvit**. 7. **Pāter filiam suam et filium ejus ad sē vōcat**.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Idem**, compounded of **is** and **-dem**, is declined like **is**, but it shortens **isdem** to **idem**, and **iddem** to **idem**, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *-dem*.

Why are demonstrative pronouns so called? (*Ans.* Because they point out the noun.) Mention the demonstrative of the first person. When must *his* or *her* be expressed by **ejus**? When by **suus**? What are determinative pronouns? Why so called? Mention them. **Ipse** is often called an *intensive pronoun*, because it makes the word to which it is added more emphatic.

### PRONOUNS.

**is, ea, id, this**  
**idem, Idem, the**  
**same. They**  
**by the con-**

al.	
	Neuter.
	ea
	eōrum
is	is
	ea
is	is

m	eādem
dem	eōrundem
	or isdem
n	eādem
or	isdem

ipsā
m ipsōrum
ipsā

it should not  
e man himself

## LESSON LXVII.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**240.** Relative Pronouns are so called because they relate to some preceding noun or pronoun, called the *antecedent*; they are **quī** and its compounds. **Quī** is declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.		cūjus		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.		cūi			quībus	
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō		quībus	

1. **Quicumque** (**quicumque**) and **quisquīs**, *whocver*, are called, from their signification, *general relatives*. **Quicumque** is declined like **quī**. The only forms of **quisquis** in use are **quisquis**, the neuter **quīquid**, and the ablative **quōquō**.

**241.** Agreement of Relative Pronouns:—

## EXAMPLES.

1. **puer quī māgistrum amat bōnus est**, *the boy who loves the master is good.*
2. **puer quem māgister amat bōnus est**, *the boy whom the master loves is good.*
3. **ēgo, quī tē laudāvī, rēx sum**, *I, who have praised you, am king.*

Obs. In Ex. 1, **quī** stands for **puer**, and connects the second statement or clause, *loves the master*, with the *boy is good*. The word **quī** is said to relate to **puer**; it is, therefore, called a **RELATIVE PRONOUN**; it also binds the two clauses together like a conjunction, and this is the real peculiarity of relatives, as all pronouns have antecedents. The word **puer**, which the clause **quī māgistrum amat** modifies, is called the **ANTECEDENT**. The sentence in which the *relative* stands is called the *relative clause*; the other, the *principal clause*.

NOTE (1) that **quī** is masculine gender, to agree with its antecedent, **puer**; (2) that it is singular number and third person, to

agree with *puer*, while *quī*, in Ex. 3, is first person, to agree with *ēgo*; note (3) also that the relatives, in Exs. 1 and 3, are in the nominative case; but in Ex. 2 the relative is in the accusative case, because it is the object of *amat*. Hence the following rule:—

## AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES.

**242. RULE XXIX.**—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

1. The relative at the beginning of a sentence is translated like a personal or demonstrative pronoun with a conjunction, determined by the construction.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *quī proelium committunt*, and they engage in battle.
2. *quae cum ita sunt*, and since these (things) are so,

2. The relative is often omitted in English; it is never omitted in Latin.

## EXAMPLE.

*liber quem mihi dēdisti*, the book (which) you gave me.

3. In English, *as* is often a relative pronoun, especially after *such* and *same*. It must then be rendered by *quī* after *idem*, and by *quālis* or *quantus* after *tālis*, *such*, *tantus*, *so great*.

**243. Position of the Relative:—**

The *relative* generally stands at the beginning of the relative sentence, after the antecedent, and as near to it as possible; but for the sake of emphasis the relative sentence is often placed first.

1. When the antecedent is *indefinite*, it is often omitted altogether; as, *quī tertiam partem incolunt Gallī appellantur*, (those) who inhabit the third part are called Gauls. (Cf. the English, "who steals my purse steals trash," i.e., any one who, etc.)

**244. Model for Parsing a Relative:—**

*puer, quī māgistrum amat, bonus est*: *quī* is a relative pronoun; decline *quī, quae, quod*, etc.; masculine gender, singular, to agree with its antecedent *puer*, and is in the nominative case,

because they  
um, called the  
unds. *Quī* is

Fem.		Neuter.	
quae	quae	quae	quae
quarum	quarum	quorum	quorum
quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus
quas	quas	quae	quae
quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus

over, are called,  
nque is declined  
re *quisquis*, the

boy who loves the

the boy whom the

ised you, am king.

meets the second  
good. The word  
led a RELATIVE  
r like a conjunctive  
as all pronouns  
ause *quī māgis*-  
The sentence in  
e; the other, the

ce with its ante-  
third person, to

the subject of *amat*; Rule XXIX. The three words, *qui māgistrum amat*, are called a *clause*; it is a relative clause, because introduced by a relative pronoun; it performs the office of an adjective, *i.e.*, it describes *puer*, and is therefore called an *adjective clause*. Since it is subjoined to the leading clause (*puer bonus est*), as modifying it, it is called a *subordinate clause*. A sentence consisting of two clauses, one of which is subordinate, is called a *complex sentence*. (See 221.)

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Puer, qui stūdet, discit.
2. Fēlix est is rēx, quem omnēs civēs āmant.
3. Allobrōgēs, quī trāns Rhōdānum vicōs possessionēsque hābēbant, ad Caesārem vēniunt.
4. Multi hōmīnēs aedificāvērunt dōmōs, in quibus nōn hābitāvērunt.
5. Caesar vōcat Casticū, cūjus<sup>1</sup> pāter rēgnum multōs annōs<sup>2</sup> obtinuerat.
6. Ab Oculō, quod est cētēriōris prōvinciae oppidū extrēmum.
7. Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The boy, whom you have blamed, is my brother.
2. The man has built a house, in which he has not lived.
3. He summons Casticus, whose father held the sovereignty in Gaul for many years.
4. The boy who studies will learn.
5. The Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, came into Gaul.
6. Caesar will hasten into the province with the three legions which he had levied in Gaul.
7. Caesar led from winter quarters the three legions which were wintering in Gaul.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Cūjus, whose.
2. Why accusative?

Give the rule for the use of relative pronouns. What is a pronoun? How many classes? What is a clause? A relative clause? What is the antecedent? Define sentence. To what is a relative equivalent? (Ans. A personal pronoun + a connective; as, *the boy who studies*, etc., = *the boy and he studies*.)



## LESSON LXVIII.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

**245.** The Interrogative Pronouns, **quis** and **quī**, with their compounds, are used in *asking questions*. They are declined as follows:—

1. **Quis**, *who, which, what?*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.		cūjus			quōrum	
DAT.		cūi			quibus	
ACC.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō		quibus	

2. **Quī**, *who, which, what?* is declined like the relative **quī**.

3. **Quis** is used both as a noun and as an adjective; **quid** is always used as a noun; **quī** and **quod** are used as adjectives.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **quid commisit**, *what has he done?* (Nonn.)
2. **quod facinus commisit**, *what deed has he done?* (Adj.)
3. **quis vocat**, *who calls?* (Nonn.)
4. **quī (or quis) hōmo vocat**, *what man calls?* (Adj.)

4. **Quis** and **quī** are often strengthened by the addition of **nam** in euphatic interrogation; as, **quisnam**, or **quidnam**, *who then? what then?*

5. When the question refers to *one of two*, **ūter**, **ūtra**, **ūtrum**, *which of two*, is used.

6. Recollect that the interrogative particles are **-ne**, used when asking for information simply; **nōne**, when the answer *yes* is expected; and **num**, when the answer *no* is expected. If an interrogative pronoun or adverb is used, then **-ne**, **nōne**, or **num** is not required. There is no single word in Latin equivalent to our *yes* and *no*, in answer to questions. The answer may be expressed

by repeating the verb with a negative adverb, if *no* is the answer; and with or without an adverb, if *yes* is the answer.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *vēnitne*, has he come? *vēnit*, or *vēnit vēro*, yes (he has come).
2. *mātrōnane puellam vōcat*, does the mother call the girl? *vōcat*, yes (she calls).
3. *nōne bōnus puer est*, is not the boy good?

7. **Ne** is annexed to the word to which it especially refers.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *tūne puērum dōcēs*, do you teach the boy?
2. *dōcēsne puērum*, do you TEACH the boy?
3. *puērumne dōcēs*, do you teach the BOY?

8. Questions in Latin, as in English, may be single or double. *Is the soldier brave?* is a single question. *Is the soldier brave or cowardly?* is a double question. In asking a double question in Latin, the first clause usually has *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second *an*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *utrum vir lē't an scrībit*, does the man read or write?
2. *utrum patriam amat, an nōn*, does he love his country or not?

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Quis mē vōcat?* 2. *Quis scrībit hās littērās?* 3. *Quod carmen lēgis?* 4. *Quis hunc librum dēdit?* 5. *Quae est mīlier quae vēnit?* 6. *Quis post cōsulum amīcus vester est?*
7. *Quisnam tē vōcāvit, Tullī?* 8. *Quī cōsul est Cicērōne p̄fidentior?*

Translate into Latin:—

1. Who is that man? 2. Who are those soldiers?
3. What soldiers are these? 4. Who has called us?
5. Which book have you? 6. Who gave you that book?
7. Who has come into the city? 8. Who was walking with you in the garden? 9. Which boy wounded you with a stone?

## LESSON LXIX.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**246.** Indefinite Pronouns are such as designate an object in an indefinite or a general manner. They are: —

1. **āliquis**, subst., **āliquī**, adj., *some one* (I do not know who), *some, any.*
2. **sīquis**, *if any one.*
3. **nēquis**, *lest any.*
4. **quisque**, *each or each one.*
5. **quisquam**, *any one* (where all are excluded).
6. **quispiam**, *some one.*
7. **ūnusquisque**, *each* (stronger than **quisque**).
8. **quīdam**, subst., *a, a certain* (I know who, though I may not wish to say): adj., *a certain, some*; plural, *some* (unemphatic); neuter, *something.*
9. **quīlibet**, } *any one you please* (where all are included).
10. **quīvis**, }
11. **quis**,<sup>1</sup> subst., and **quī**, adj., *any, some.*

1. **Quis** and **quī** are declined like the interrogatives **quis** and **quī**.
2. **Aliquis** is thus declined: —

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	āliquis	āliqua	{ āliquod āliquid	āliquī	āliquae	āliqua
GEN.		ālicūjus		āliquōrum	āliquārum	āliquōrum
DAT.		ālicenī			āliquībus	
ACC.	āliquem	āliquam	{ āliquod āliquid	āliquōs	āliquās	āliqua
ABL.	āliquō	āliquā	ān nō		āliquībus	

3. **Āliquis**, **āliqua**, **āliquid**, are used as nouns; and **āliquis**, **āliqua**, **āliquod**, as adjectives.

4. The following are declined like the Relative or Interrogative; the neuters in **quid** are used as nouns, and those in **quod** as

adjectives; the masculines and feminines are used either as nouns or adjectives:—

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, *a certain one.*  
 quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam, *some one.*  
 quivīs, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis, } *any one*  
 quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet or quidlibet, } (*you please*).  
 quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque, *every one.*  
 unusquisque, unaqueque, unumquodque, *each.*

## EXAMPLES.

1. quivīs hōmo, *any man.*
2. aliquis hōmo, *a man, any man* (it matters not who).
3. quīdam hōmo, *a certain man* (whose name I could mention, or whom I could identify, if I chose).
4. aliquem ad mē mittent, *they will send somebody to me.*
5. aliquod bonum, *some good thing.*
6. aliquid bonū (part. gen.), *something good.*

## 247. Decline together:—

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. pāter meus, <i>my father.</i>      | 6. tōtus ille diēs, <i>that whole day.</i>  |
| 2. is cōsul, <i>that consul.</i>      | 7. vir quīdam Rōmānus, <i>a certain Roman.</i>                                      |
| 3. idem vir, <i>the same man.</i>     | 8. iste alter, <i>that other fellow.</i>  |
| 4. eādem nāvis, <i>the same ship.</i> | 9. quis nauta, <i>what sailor?</i>  |
| 5. quivīs hōmo, <i>any man.</i>       | 10. Cicērō ipse, clāriissimū orātor, <i>Cicero himself, the most famous orator.</i> |

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Aliquōs<sup>2</sup> ad eum mīscrunt. 2. Narrāvit quīdam cōram mē istam fābūlam. 3. Narrābit aliquis cōram mē illam fābūlam. 4. Aliquem locum occūpāvit. 5. Cum aliquibus militūm<sup>3</sup> vēnit. 6. Quīdam ex militibus<sup>3</sup> decimae legiōnis vēniēbat. 7. Titus quendam Gallum ad Caesarem mīsit.

Translate into Latin:—

1. In company with those soldiers. 2. In company with these soldiers. 3. Some one praises the king. 4. A cer-

tain one is praising the king. 5. Who praises the king? 6. Some soldiers are brave. 7. A soldier came to Cæsar. 8. Some one will tell this story. 9. The generals will come in company with some of the chiefs. 10. Is the soldier brave? 11. Is the soldier brave or not? 12. Cæsar sent a Gaul to Cicero.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Used only after **sī, nē, nīsi, num**, and relatives; as, **sī quis, nē quis**; but of course **āliquis, quīdam**, etc., may be used after the same particles: as, **sī quis, if any; sī āliquis, if some.**

2. Is **āliquōs** used as a noun or adjective?

3. See **237.**

## LESSON LXX.

## USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

## SEPARATION, SOURCE, CAUSE, MATERIAL, AGENT.

Obs. We have learned that the ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions *from; with or by; at or in.* In expressing all these relations, the ablative performs the offices of three cases that in some languages were kept distinct. These uses of the ablative may be classified as follows:—

1. THE ABLATIVE PROPER, expressing the relation *from*, or WHENCE.

## EXAMPLE.

**vīrum culpā libērat, he frees the man from blame.**

2. THE INSTRUMENTAL, expressing the relation *with, by*, or WHEREWITH.

## EXAMPLE.

**hostium finēs ferrō et igni vastant, they lay waste the enemy's territory with sword and fire.**

3. THE LOCATIVE, expressing the relation *in, at*, or WHERE.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Rōmæ vivit, he lives at Rome.**

2. **castris sē tēnuit, he kept himself in camp.**

The general rule for the Ablative Proper may be stated as follows:—

ABLATIVE PROPER.

**248. RULE XXX.** — Separation, cause, source, and origin are denoted by the ablative with or without a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

**mē timōre libērās**, you free me from fear (separation).

Obs. The prepositions are omitted chiefly with verbs signifying to abstain, relieve, remove, exclude, deprive, cease, and want, and with adjectives of kindred meanings; but, if a person is specified, the preposition must be used; as, **tē ab illō imprōbō libērāvī**, I have rid you of that scoundrel.

1. Compounds with **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, denoting separation from a person or place, take the ablative when used figuratively; but, in a local and literal sense, they usually require a preposition with the ablative.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Iter ab Arāre Helvētīlī āvertērāt**, the Helvetians had turned their march from the Arar.

2. **Helvētīlī hōc cōnātū dēsistunt**, the Helvetians desist from this attempt.

2. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition with intransitive and passive verbs of emotion, and with adjectives that are passive in meaning.

EXAMPLE.

**Helvētīlī suā victōriā insōlenter glōriābantur**, the Helvetians boasted insolently because of their victory (cause).

Obs. 1. When the moving cause is a person, (1st) the preposition **ā** or **ab** is used with the ablative = ablative of agent; (2) the person through whom = **per** with acc.; (3d) the subjective cause is expressed by **abl.**, the objective cause by **per** or **propter** with acc.

Obs. 2. The ablatives **causā** and **grātia**, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a poss. pronoun in agreement.

Obs. 3. Expressions of trust and distrust (**fīdo**, **cōnfīdo**, **diffīdo**), and many adjectives and participles expressing emotion, and **frētus** and **contentus**, are used with the ablative.

3. Perfect Participles denoting parentage or birth, — **gēnītus**, **nātus**, **ortus**, etc., — generally take the ablative without a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

**Pisō amplissimō gēnēre nātus**, Piso, born of a very illustrious family.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

4. The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **māgister discipulōs laudat**, *the teacher praises the pupils.*
2. **discipulī ā māgistrō laudantur**, *the pupils are praised by the teacher.*

EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Ars utilitate laudatur.**
2. **Caedem ā vōbīs dēpello.**
3. **Hostēs proeliō excedēbant.**
4. **Urhem commēciū privāvit.**
5. **Itinēre exercitum nostrum prōhibent.**
6. **Discipulī ā māgistrō doceantur.**
7. **Omni Galliā interdicit Rōmānōs.**
8. **Proeliō abstīnēbat.**

LESSON LXXI.

READING LATIN AT SIGHT.

**249.** It may now be taken for granted that the pupil has become familiar with the inflectional endings, the general order of words in a Latin sentence (**111**), and the principal rules of syntax. He has, also, learned many words, mostly selected from the First Book of Caesar, and it is now time for him to try to unravel the difficulties of an ordinary Latin sentence.

1. In the first place, the pupil should pronounce the Latin carefully and slowly, noticing the endings of each word, in order to determine which words are nouns and which verbs, etc.

2. Then, if the first sentence is simple, find the **SUBJECT**, and determine its *number* and *meaning*. Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but is contained in the ending of the verb. It can be found by noticing the person and number of the verb, as it must be a pronoun of the person indicated by the verb.

3. Next find the **PREDICATE**, and translate it, noticing carefully its *voice*, *mode*, and *tense*.

4. Find and translate the modifiers of the subject; and, lastly, the modifiers of the predicate.

5. If the sentence is *complex*, translate, first, the *principal clause*, and then the subordinate clauses in the order of their importance. It is always easier for the pupil to translate the principal clause first than it is to pick out words here and there with the hope of being able finally of putting them together into a sentence. When the meaning of the principal clause has been obtained, then take the subordinate clauses.

6. Consult the dictionary or vocabularies only as a last resort. The pupil must, however, remember that only the nominative singular of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and the first person singular present indicative active of verbs, are given there; *i.e.*, the dictionary gives the meaning of words without reference to their grammatical relations. The *case, person, number, mode, tense, or voice*, must be determined by the grammar. It is, therefore, essential that the declension of nouns and the inflection of the regular verbs be thoroughly memorized, so that the pupil can distinguish by the endings the different parts of speech, and determine at once the force and relation of the words.

### Sight-Reading.

#### TABLE.

In	prātō	ērāt	trēs	bōvēs	in	māximā	concordiā.	Sed
	meadow			oxen	greatest		harmony	
dissidiō	inter	eōs	ortō,	singūli	ā	fēris	pētiti	et
discord			arising	one-by-one		wild-beasts	attack	tear
							lāniāti	sunt.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

The pupil can discover by the forms of the words that **bōvēs** is in the nominative plural, and is the subject of the verb **ērāt**; **prātō**, after the preposition, is in the ablative singular, and its nominative is **prātum**, for which form the pupil must look in the dictionary. **Concordiā** is also in the ablative, and is modified by the adjective **maximā**.

Note the mode, tense, and voice of **pētiti** and **lāniāti sunt**, and translate them.

What is the subject of the first sentence? The predicate? Has the subject any modifiers? Has the predicate? In what case is **trēs**? In what case is **singūli**?



## LESSON LXXII.

## INFINITIVE MODE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

Obs. In the sentence *I wish to see you*, the verb, *to see*, names the action in an indefinite way, without limiting it to any particular subject; and hence, a verb that expresses an action in this *unlimited manner* is said to be in the Infinitive Mode (Lat. *infinitus*, *without limit*). The infinitive expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed. The infinitive may be used, like a noun, as the subject or object of a verb, but it differs from a noun in several important particulars: (1) It may be modified by *adverbs*, but not by *adjectives*, as *I wish to see you immediately*; (2) it governs a noun or pronoun in the objective like a verb. In Latin, the infinitive has voice and tense like a verb, but, like a noun, admits of two cases: the nominative when it is the subject of a verb, and the accusative when it is the object of a verb. The infinitive is also used in Latin to represent the tenses of the indicative mode in Indirect Discourse. (For this use, see 347.) Hence the uses of the infinitive may be stated as follows:—

## 250. Uses of the Infinitive.

1. The infinitive is used as an indeclinable abstract noun in the nominative and accusative.
2. The infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse to represent the tenses of the indicative. (See 347.)

Obs. The infinitive has *voice* and *tense*, and takes adverbial modifiers like any verb; it governs the case of its verb.

251. In Latin there are Four Infinitives in each voice,—the Present, Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect. They are formed from the stems as follows:—

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Present infinitive = present stem + *re*.

Perfect infinitive = perfect stem + *isse*.

Future infinitive = future participle and *esse*.

Fut. perf. infin. = future participle and *fuisse*.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Present infinitive = present stem + **ri** for 1st, 2d, 4th conjugations.  
 " " = verb-stem + **i** for 3d conjugation.

Perfect infinitive = perfect passive participle and **esse**.

Future infinitive = supine and **iri** (the word **iri** is the present infinitive passive of **eo**, *I go*, and **amatum iri** has the idea of *going to be loved*).

Fut. perf. infin. = Perfect passive participle and **fore**.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVES. — ACTIVE.			
	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā-} \\ \text{mōnē-} \\ \text{rēgē-} \\ \text{audī-} \end{array} \right\} + \text{re}$	amāre	<i>to love.</i>
		mōnēre	<i>to advise.</i>
		rēgēre	<i>to rule.</i>
		audīre	<i>to hear.</i>
Perfect.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāvī-} \\ \text{mōnūī-} \\ \text{rēxī-} \\ \text{audīvī-} \end{array} \right\} + \text{sse}$	amāvisse	<i>to have loved.</i>
		mōnūisse	<i>to have advised.</i>
		rēxisse	<i>to have ruled.</i>
		audīvisse	<i>to have heard.</i>
Future.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā-} \\ \text{mōnī-} \\ \text{rec-} \\ \text{audī-} \end{array} \right\} + \text{tūrus esse}$	amātūrus esse	<i>to be about to love.</i>
		mōnitūrus esse	<i>to be about to advise.</i>
		rectūrus esse	<i>to be about to rule.</i>
		auditūrus esse	<i>to be about to hear.</i>
Fut. Perf.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā-} \\ \text{mōnī-} \\ \text{rēg-} \\ \text{audī-} \end{array} \right\} + \text{tūrus fuisse}$	amātūrus fuisse	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have been} \\ \text{about} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{to love.} \\ \text{to advise.} \\ \text{to rule.} \\ \text{to hear.} \end{array}$
		mōnitūrus fuisse	
		rectūrus fuisse	
		auditūrus fuisse	
INFINITIVES. — PASSIVE.			
	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā-} + \text{rī} \\ \text{mōnē-} + \text{rī} \\ \text{rēg-} + \text{ī} \\ \text{audī-} + \text{rī} \end{array} \right\}$	amāri	<i>to be loved.</i>
		mōnērī	<i>to be advised.</i>
		rēgī	<i>to be ruled.</i>
		audīrī	<i>to be heard.</i>
Perfect.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā-} \\ \text{mōnī-} \\ \text{rec-} \\ \text{audī-} \end{array} \right\} + \text{tus, -a, -um esse}$	amātus esse	<i>to have been loved.</i>
		mōnitus esse	<i>to have been advised.</i>
		rectus esse	<i>to have been ruled.</i>
		audītus esse	<i>to have been heard.</i>

INFINITIVES. — PASSIVE.						
	Formation.	Example.	English.			
Future.	amā- mōni- rec- audi- } + tum irī	amātum irī	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>			
		mōnitum irī	<i>to be about to be advised.</i>			
		rectum irī	<i>to be about to be ruled.</i>			
		auditum irī	<i>to be about to be heard.</i>			
Fut. Perf.	amā- mōni- rec- audi- } + tus fore	amātus fore	<i>to be about to</i> <table border="0" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td rowspan="2" style="font-size: 2em; padding: 0 5px;">}</td> <td><i>loved.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>advised.</i></td> </tr> </table>	}	<i>loved.</i>	<i>advised.</i>
		}			<i>loved.</i>	
<i>advised.</i>						
		mōnitus fore	<i>have been</i>			
		rectus fore	<i>ruled.</i>			
		auditus fore	<i>heard.</i>			

VOCABULARY.

vēto, -āre, vētūī, vētītum, *forbid.*  
 cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *undertake, attempt.*  
 confido, fidēre, fīsus sum, *trust, confide.*  
 rē-miniscor, -isci, no perf., dep., *recall to mind, recollect.*  
 disco, discēre, didici, no partic. stem, *learn.*  
 incommōdum, -ī, N., *loss, defeat.*  
 re-sciundo, sciundēre, scidi, scissum, *cut down.*  
 vitium, -iī, N., *fault, vice.*  
 consanguineus, -a, -um, *related by blood.*  
 vētus, -ēris, adj., *old*; vētērēs, -um, M. PL., *the ancients, ancestors.*  
 pristinus, -a, -um, *former, early, pristine.*

Sight-Reading.

CÆSAR'S DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

26 Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quarum unam in-  
of which  
 colunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua  
another third (those) who their own in language  
 Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Horum omnium fortis-  
in our (language) call of these  
 simi sunt Belgae; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans  
 Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.  
 Quam de causam Helvetium quoque reliquos Gallos virtute  
and for this also  
 praecedunt, quod fere cottidianis proeliis cum Germanis  
because almost daily  
 contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi  
(they) contend while their-own (they) themselves  
 in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is the subject of the leading clause? the predicate? The modifiers of the predicate? The subject of the subordinate clause? What kind of a clause is it? In what case is *Galli*? Why is *Germaniis* dative? How is *quā* translated? Define the word *infinitive*. Give the uses of the infinitive. How is the present infinitive formed? Form the present infinitive of *rēgo*, *vōco*, *timeo*, *mūnio*, *pūnio*. How is the perfect infinitive formed? How the future infinitive? With what does the participle, of which the future infinitive is composed, agree? Write all the active and passive infinitives of the following words: *dōno*, to give; *nōmino*, to name; *hābeo*, to have; *dēbeo*, to owe; *dūco*, to lead; *dīco*, to say; *finio*, to finish; *mūnio*, to fortify. Write a sentence in English with an infinitive as subject; as object.

## LESSON LXXIII.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE. — COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

## 252. Infinitive and Subject-Accusative.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the subject or object of a verb is a whole clause, beginning with the word *that*.

## EXAMPLES.

- | Subject.                            | Predicate.                        |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>That Cæsar conquered Gaul</i> | <i>is certain.</i>                |
| 2. <i>He says</i>                   | <i>that Cæsar conquered Gaul.</i> |

In the first sentence, *that Cæsar conquered Gaul* is the subject of the verb, and is called a *subject-clause*; in the second sentence, the same words become the object of the verb *say*, and are called an *object-clause*. Such clauses are expressed in Latin by the accusative with the infinitive.

## EXAMPLES.

- | Subject.   | Object.       |  |
|--|---------------|--|
| 1. <i>Caesārem</i> (acc.) <i>vīcisse</i> (inf.)  | <i>Gallōs</i> | } <i>certum est.</i><br>} <i>or dicit.</i> |
| 2. <i>pūtat mē scribēre</i> , <i>he thinks I am writing.</i>   |               |  |
| 3. <i>Dīvicō rēspōndit ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse</i> , <i>Divico replied that the Helvetians had been so educated.</i> |               |  |

4. **Caesar Dumnorigem designari sentiēbat**, *Caesar perceived that Dumnorix was meant.*  
 5. **dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri**, *he says that the hill is held by the enemy.*  
 6. **rūmor erat Cātīlinam servōs armāsse**, *there was a report that Catiline had armed the slaves.*

Obs. 2. Note the translation of the foregoing sentences. The subject-accusative is translated as if it were a nominative preceded by the word *that*. The infinitive is translated like any finite verb. Note, further, that **dicit** is a verb of *saying*; **pūtat**, a verb of *thinking*; **rēspōdit**, a verb of *telling*; and **sentiēbat**, a verb of *perceiving*. Hence the following rules:—

## SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE.

**253. RULE XXXI.**—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative.

## SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

**254. RULE XXXII.**—Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the accusative with the infinitive, where in English we use *that* with a finite verb.

1. Various Impersonal Phrases, such as **certum est**, *it is certain*, **nēcessē est**, *it is necessary*, **justum est**, *it is just*, etc., are followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

## INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

**255.** The Infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be used as the Subject of a Verb.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **dulce prō patriā mōri est**, *to die for one's country is sweet.*  
 2. **Caesārī nuntiātum est ēquitēs accēdere**, *it was announced to Caesar that the cavalry was approaching.*

Obs. The predicate adjective, agreeing with the infinitive, is neuter.

## COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

**256. RULE XXXIII.**—The infinitive without a subject-accusative is used with many verbs to complete their meaning.

predicate? The  
ordinate clause?  
? Why is Ger-  
e word *infinitive*.  
infinitive formed?  
**mūnio, pūnio.**  
future infinitive?  
infinitive is com-  
infinitives of the  
**hābeo**, *to have*;  
*finish*; **mūnio**,  
itive as subject;

## COMPLEMEN-

verb is a whole

e.  
n.

the subject of  
l sentence, the  
are called an  
the accusative

um est.  
lfcit.

esse, Dico



## EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar proficisci mātūrat**, *Caesar hastens to set out.*
2. **pārat bellum gērere**, *he prepares to wage war.*
3. **mīlites pūgnāre possunt**, *the soldiers are able to fight.*

Obs. The Complementary Infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning; it is generally either the direct object of a transitive verb, or an accusative of limitation, as in Ex. 3, *the soldiers are able as to fighting*. The verbs that the complementary infinitive is used after usually denote *ability, obligation, intention, or endeavor*; after verbs signifying *to abstain, to begin, to cease, to continue, to dare, to fear, to hesitate, to be woud*, and after the passive voice of verbs of *saying, believing, reckoning*.

Note the translation of the following sentences; parse each infinitive, and give the rule:—

1. **grātum est tēcum ambūlāre**, *it is pleasant to walk with you.*
2. **pārat bellum gērere**, *he prepares to wage war.*
3. **āqua frīgida est**, *water is cold.*
4. **sentio āquam frīgīdam esse**, *I perceive that water is cold.*
5. **audiō amicum aegrōtum esse**, *I hear that (my) friend is sick.*
6. **Caesar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit**, *Caesar determined to winter in Gaul.*
7. **mīlites urbem custōdīre dēbent**, *the soldiers ought to guard the city.*
8. **libēri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci nōn dēbent**, *their children ought not to be led into servitude.*
9. **cōstituerunt jumentōrum quam māximum nūmērum coēmere**, *they determined to buy up as great a number of beasts of burden as possible.*

## Sight-Reading.

## STORY OF HORATIUS.

28. Tullō rēgnante, bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exor-  
Tullus reigning nom. arise  
 tum est. Forte in duobus exercitiis erant trigeminī frātēs,  
by chance three born at one birth  
 nec actāte nec viribus dispārēs, apud Rōmānōs Horātii,  
neither nor unlike  
 apud Albānōs Cūriatū. Cum his agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā  
arrange  
 quis ue patriā dīmiceut ferrō. Arma igitur capiunt, et in  
fight accordingly they take

mēdīm inter duās āciēs prōcēdunt. Dātūr sīgnum, infes-  
 tisque armīs ternī jīvēnēs, māgnōrum exercītiūm animōs  
 hostile arms bearing, concurrunt.  
 gērentēs, rush together.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Define infinitive. How many infinitives in the active voice? How many in the passive voice? Give the stem of the present infinitive; of the perfect; give the endings of each. Do infinitives have personal endings? Of what forms is the future infinitive composed? Mention the uses of the infinitive. What is the complementary infinitive? Give the rule for the complementary infinitive. What case is the subject of the infinitive? After what verbs may the accusative and infinitive be used?

## LESSON LXXIV.

## PARTICIPLES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

## EXAMPLE.

*The river, flowing from the mountain, waters the plain.*

Obs. In the foregoing sentence, note that the word *flowing* is a form of the verb, but that it does not make a statement like a verb. It is used (1) as an adjective, describing *river* by assuming or implying an action; (2) it is used as a verb, by expressing the act of *flowing* as going on at the time *the river waters the plain*. *Flowing from the mountain* is a participial phrase, modifying *river*. This form of the verb is called a *participle* (Lat. *pars, part*, and *cāpēre, to take*), because it partakes of or shares the nature of an adjective and of a verb. The principal word of the phrase is *flowing*; its meaning is completed and made more distinct by the prepositional phrase *from the mountain*.—Hence the following definition:—

**257.** Participles in Latin, as in English, give the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

1. Participles are sometimes translated by the English participle or infinitive, and sometimes by a clause. (See 259.)

2. Like a verb, the Participle has different *voices* and *tense*; like an adjective, it has *declension* and *gender*; and like both, it has *two numbers*.

3. Transitive verbs have usually Four Participles: two in the active voice (present and future), as **āmāns, āmātūrus**; and two in the passive voice (perfect and the gerundive, or future), as **āmātus, āmandus**.

4. Intransitive verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

5. Participles govern the same cases as their verbs.

6. Participles agree with nouns like adjectives.

#### FORMATION OF PARTICIPLES.

[The present participle is formed by adding *-nt*, nom. *-ns*, to the present stem; the future, by adding *-tūro*, nom. *-tūrus*, to the modified present stem, or verb-stem; the perfect, by adding *-to*, nom. *-tus* (*-so*, nom. *-sus*), to the verb-stem; the gerundive, by adding *-ndo*, nom. *-ndus*, to the present stem.]

PARTICIPLES. — ACTIVE VOICE.			
Tense.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Pres. stem + ns	āmāns	<i>loving.</i> <i>advising.</i> <i>ruling.</i> <i>hearing.</i>
		mōnēns	
rēgēns			
audiēns			
Future.	Verb-st. + turus	āmātūrus	<i>about to love.</i>
		mōnitūrus	<i>about to advise.</i>
		rectūrus	<i>about to rule.</i>
		auditūrus	<i>about to hear.</i>
PARTICIPLES. — PASSIVE VOICE.			
Perfect.	Verb-stem + tus	āmātus	<i>having been loved.</i> <i>having been advised.</i> <i>having been ruled.</i> <i>having been heard.</i>
		mōnitus <sup>1</sup>	
		rectus	
		auditus	
Gerundive, or Future.	Pres. stem + ndus	āmandus	<i>to be loved.</i> <i>deserving to be loved.</i> <i>to be advised.</i> <i>to be ruled.</i> <i>to be heard.</i>
		mōnendus	
		rēgendus	
		audiendus	





## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**259.** In Latin there is no Perfect Participle in the active voice. Its place is often supplied (1) by the Ablative Absolute (*i.e.*, the noun and the participle are both in the ablative, a construction similar to our independent case), or (2) by a Clause with a Conjunction.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *urbe captā* (abl. abs.) *cīvēs fūgērunt*, *the city having been taken, or being taken, or after the city had been taken, the citizens fled.*
2. *urbe ā Caesāre captā, cīvēs fūgērunt*, *when the city had been taken by Cæsar, the citizens fled.*

Obs. Note that when the noun and participle are both in the ablative, and used independently of the rest of the sentence, the construction is called *ablative absolute*, *i.e.* *absolute meaning, freed from dependence*. (A word is said to *depend* on another when its case, gender, number, mode, tense, or person is determined by that word.) In English, the Independent Case is used in the same way with Participles; as,

## EXAMPLES.

1. Noun + participle; as, *the city having been taken, the citizens fled.*
2. Noun + *being* + adjective; as, *the soldiers being brave, the enemy was conquered.*
3. Noun + *being* + noun; as, *he came to Rome, Cæsar being consul.*

Note (1) that the noun in the Ablative Absolute denotes a different person or thing from that denoted by any other word in the sentence. Note (2) that the words in the Ablative Absolute express the *time, cause, concession, means, condition, or some attendant circumstance* of the action expressed by the leading clause, and are generally best translated (*a*) by a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause; (*b*) by a noun with a preposition; or (*c*) by an active participle. Note (3) that, as the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective (without the participle), may be in the Ablative Absolute. Note (4) that words like *ā Caesāre*, modifying the Ablative Absolute, stand between the noun and the participle. Hence the following rule:—

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**260. RULE XXXV.**—A noun (or a pronoun) and

a participle may be put in the ablative, called absolute, to express the *time, cause, concession, means, condition, or some attendant circumstance* of an action.

EXAMPLES.

1. parte stātis reliquā (adj.), when but a part of the summer was left.
2. militēs, pīlis missis, hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt, the soldiers, by throwing their heavy javelins, broke through the enemy's phalanx. (Means.)

Obs. Note (1) the translation of the participles; (2) that they represent the time as *present, past, or future* (in this construction the pres. act. and perf. pass. participles are generally used; the fut. participles in *-rus* and *-lus* are rare), relatively to that of the principal verb; (3) that the perf. pass. participle is generally best translated by the perf. act. participle, or by a clause.

261. Directions for Parsing a Participle.

Give the principal parts of the verb; the stems from which each participle is formed; name the participles; mention the time denoted by the participle; decline; rule.

Sight-Reading.

STORY OF HORATIUS (continued).

28
 Ut primō concursū incēpūere arma, horror ingēus spec-  
as at first onset resound nom. spectators  
 tantēs perstrinxit. Stātīm duo Rōmānī ālius sūper ālium  
seize upon  
 expīrantēs cēciderunt; trēs Albānī vulnērātī sunt. Rō-  
expire of so ready fall  
 mānōs jam spēs dēsērēbat. Unum Hōrātium trēs Cūriātī  
forsake  
 cīremstētērant. Is, quamvīs intēger, quia tribus impār  
surround although unhurt because unequal  
 ērat, fugam simūlāvīt. Jam āliquantum spātī ex cō locō  
flight pretend some distance  
 ūbi pūgnātum est, aufūgērat, cum rēspiciēns vidēt unum  
(they) fought flee looking back  
 Cūriātium haud prōcul āb sē esse. Hōrātius in eum māgnō  
not far against him  
 impētū rēdit; hōc interfectō, altērum deinde, priusquam  
returns killed  
 tertius posset consēquī, interfēcīt.  
was able to come up
400

e in the active  
the Ablative  
e both in the  
ndent case),

ity having been  
been taken, the

he city had been

both in the ab-  
tence, the con-  
ing, freed from  
when its case,  
ined by that  
the same way

en, the citizens

rave, the enemy

ar being consul.

ute denotes a  
other word in  
ative Absolute  
some attendant  
clause, and are  
concessive, or  
; or (c) by an  
as no present  
(without the  
(4) that words  
stand between  
le:—

noun) and

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Sōle oriēte,<sup>1</sup> fugim<sup>us</sup> tēnēbrae. 2. Bellum Gallicum, Caesare impēratōre, gestum est. 3. Puer, mē invitō, abiit. 4. Cīvēs cum hostibus urbem oppugnāntibus acriter dimicābant. 5. Hostēs, victōriam adepti, in castra se rēcēperunt. 6. Militēs, pilis coniectis, phalāngem hostium perfrēgerunt. 7. Caesar, urbe captā,<sup>2</sup> discessit. 8. Exercitus rēdiit, belli cāsum de intēgrō tentāturus. 9. Quis est, quī mē nunquam vidērit lēgentem? 10. Hostēs annem transgressi castra mūniverunt. 11. Ex amissis cīvibus dolor fuit. 12. Caesar cum solā decimā lēgiōne profecturus est. 13. Sōlem oriētem<sup>3</sup> eum māximā voluptāte spectāmus.

Translate into Latin: —

1. *When this was known*, Caesar departed. 2. *When this reply had been given*, the men departed. 3. Caesar, *when he went to Gaul*, took three legions. 4. Caesar, *after he had subdued Gaul*,<sup>4</sup> set out for Rome. 5. He assists others *without robbing himself*.<sup>5</sup> 6. *Under Caesar as commander*, the soldiers fought bravely. 7. Many things go on *without your perceiving it*.<sup>6</sup> 8. *After I had spoken*, you went away. 9. *Because their leader was killed*, the soldiers fled. 10. The soldiers, *by throwing their weapons*, repulsed the line of the enemy. 11. I come *to assist you*. 12. *When the leader ordered*, the soldiers assailed the town. 13. This happened one hundred years before the *founding of the city*. 14. Did you hear me *when I said that*? 15. I saw my friend sitting in the garden yesterday. 16. Caesar *is going to set out from the camp with five legions*. 17. Caesar lost his father *when he was*<sup>7</sup> sixteen years (old).

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *When the sun rises*, temporal clause.  
2. Remember that there is no perfect active participle; its place is supplied by the ablative absolute, or by a clause with **cum**; as, *urbe captā — cum urbem cēpisset*.

3. The present indicative follows the third conjugation. See 176.

4. Observe that the ablative absolute can be used only when the subject of the subordinate clause is different from that of the principal clause (except in such phrases as *sē invitō*, *against his will*, used in indirect discourse, and a few others not to be imitated.

5. Lit. *not robbing himself*; *sē nōn epōliāns*.

6. Lit. *you not perceiving it*, *tē nōn sentiente*.

7. Use *āgēns*, present participle.

Note that verbs of the second conjugation often weaken the characteristic vowel of the stem to *i*; as, *mōnī-tus*. Sometimes this vowel disappears; as, *dōceo*, *doc-tus*.

How many participles may a transitive verb have? What is a participle? Give the meaning of the word. Show how the participle is used as a verb, and as an adjective. What time do participles denote? How are they generally best translated? What is the meaning of *absolute*? Of *ablative absolute*? Have we a similar construction in English? Explain the English construction. Give the rule for the ablative absolute in Latin. When is one word said to *depend* on another? What active participle is found in English, but not in Latin? (*Ans.* The perfect; as, *having loved*.) Give the stem and ending of the present participle of *āmo*.

## LESSON LXXV.

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

#### EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

262. The Gerund is a verbal noun of the Second Declension, used only in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative singular. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *āmandī causā*, for the sake of loving.
2. *ūtīlis bībendō*, useful for drinking.
3. *ad agrum ārandum*, for ploughing the field.
4. *dōcendō discimus*, we learn by teaching.

1. The Nominative of the Gerund is supplied by the Present Infinitive.

#### EXAMPLE.

*scribēre est ūtile*, writing (to write) is useful.

2. The Gerund and Gerundive are formed by adding *-ndī* and *-ndus*, respectively, to the present stem.

## PARADIGM.

GERUND.		
Formation.	Example.	English.
Pres. stem + <i>ndī</i>	āmandī	of loving.
	mōnendī	of advising.
	rēgendī	of ruling.
	audiendī <sup>1</sup>	of hearing.
GERUNDIVE.		
Pres. stem + <i>ndus</i>	āmandus	{ to be loved, deserving to be loved.
	mōnendus	to be advised.
	rēgendus	to be ruled.
	audiendus	to be heard.

## 3. Declension of the Gerund.

Cases.	Example.	English.
NOM.	āmāre	to love.
GEN.	āmandī	of loving.
DAT.	āmandō	to or for loving.
Acc.	{ āmāre, or with a pre- } { position āmandum }	loving.
ABL.	āmandō	with, from, or by loving.

## EXAMPLES.

NOM. scribēre est ūtile, (to write) writing is useful.

GEN. ars scribendī est ūtilis, the art of writing is useful.

DAT. charta scribendō est ūtilis, paper is useful for writing.

Acc. { scribēre disco, I learn to write; or,  
inter scribendum disco, I learn during writing.

ABL. scribendō discimus, we learn by writing.

Obs. Note that the accusative case of the gerund is found only after prepositions, and cannot be used as the direct object of a transitive verb.

4. The Gerund governs the same case as its verb.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **jūs vōcandī sēnātum**, the authority (of convening) to convene the senate.
2. **consīlium urbem cāpiendī**, the design of taking the city.

Obs. In the foregoing sentences the gerund is used in each, with its object in the accusative; but instead of using the gerund with its object in the accusative, we generally use the gerundive in agreement with the noun, which then takes the case of the gerund; as,

## EXAMPLES.

1. **jūs sēnātūs vōcandī**, the authority of convening the senate.
2. **consīlium urbis cāpiendae**, the design of taking the city.

5. Equivalent Gerundive Forms :—

NOM. **urbem cāpēre** (infm.), to take a city.

GEN. **urbem cāpiendī**, or using the Gerundive = **urbis cāpiendae**, of taking a city.

DAT. **urbem cāpiendō**, or using the Gerundive = **urbī cāpiendae**, to or for taking a city.

ACC. **urbem cāpēre** (infm.); Acc. after a preposition = (**ad**) **urbem cāpiendum**, or using the Gerundive = **ad urbem cāpiendam**, taking a city.

ABL. **urbem cāpiendō**, or using the Gerundive = **urbe cāpiendā**, with, from, by taking a city.

The idiom is expressed in the following rule :—

## GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

**263. RULE XXXVI.**— Instead of the gerund with its object in the accusative, the gerundive is generally used, the noun taking the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with the noun in gender and number.

Obs. 1. The rule requires the following changes :—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed to the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case. This construction is called the *gerundive construction*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *āgrīcōla hōmīnēs mīsit ad agrum ārandum* (gerundive), *the farmer sent men (for plowing) to plow the field.*
2. *ad eās rēs cōnficiendās* (gerundive) *Orgētōrix dēligitur*, *Orgetorix is chosen (for executing) to execute these plans = ad eās rēs cōnficiendum* (gerund), etc.
3. *ars puērōs ēdūcandī difficilis est*, *the art of training boys is difficult.*

Obs. 2. In the dative, and in the *ablative with a preposition*, the gerund with a direct object is rarely used. Generally after prepositions the gerundive construction should be used; as, *ad cāpiendam urbem*, not *ad cāpiendum urbem*, *for taking the city.*

Obs. 3. The gerundive construction can be used only after verbs that take the accusative, so also after *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor*, which in early Latin were followed by the accusative. If the verb is intransitive, or governs any other case than the accusative, the gerundive is used impersonally with *est* in the nominative singular neuter.

## EXAMPLE.

1. *vālētūdīnī parcendum est*, *the health must be spared* (lit., *it must be spared to the health*).

Obs. 4. The gerundive construction cannot be used when the object is a neuter pronoun or an adjective, as it would be impossible to distinguish the gender.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *stūdium āgendī ālīquid*, *desire of doing something.*
2. *cūpīditās plūra hābendī*, *greed for having more.*

## 264. Gerund and Gerundive Constructions.

1. The *genitive* of the gerund and gerundive is used after nouns and adjectives as an objective genitive.

a. The genitive of the gerund and gerundive is common with *cāusā*, *for the sake of*, to express *purpose*.

2. The *dative* of the gerund and gerundive is used after adjectives (rarely after nouns) that are followed by the dative of nouns.

3. The *accusative* of the gerund and gerundive is used after the preposition *ad*, to denote *purpose*, and sometimes after *inter*, *circa*, *ob*; also after verbs signifying *to give*, *to deliver*, *to agree for*, *to have*, *to receive*, *to undertake*, *to demand*.



4. The *ablative* of the gerund and gerundive is used to express *means*, or *cause* (rarely of *manner*), and after the prepositions **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, **in** (rarely after **cum** and **prō**).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **spēs urbis dēlendae**, the hope of destroying the city; or, **audiendī cūpīdus**, desirous of hearing.
2. **āqua ūtilis est bibendō**, water is useful for drinking. (See 263. Obs. 2.)
3. **ad discendum prōpensī sūmus**, we are inclined to learn; or, **Caesar pontem in Arārī faciendum cūrat**, Caesar (takes care to have) has a bridge built over the Avar.
4. **mens discendō ālitur**, the mind is nourished by learning. (See 263. Obs. 2.)

## VOCABULARY.

**im-pello**, -pellere, -pūlī, -pulsum, *drive against, impede.*  
**cresco**, crescēre, crēvi, crētum, *grow, increase.*  
**au-fūgio**, fūgere, fūgī, fūgitum, *flee away.*  
**pōtior**, -īrī, -ītus, *take possession of.*  
**āliquantus**, -a, -um, *some.*  
**pāreo**, pārere, pārui, pārītum, *obey.*  
**dē-līgo**, -līgere, -lēgī, -lectum, *choose out.*  
**crēmo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *burn.*  
**vincūlum**, -ī, *n., bond, fetter.*

## EXERCISES.

Convert the following into the gerundive construction:—

1. Ars puērōs edūcandī difficīlis est.
2. Dat ōpēram agrōs eolendō.
3. Nīs vōeandī sēnātum.
4. Gallī lēgionēs opprimendī cōnsilium cēperunt.
5. Cūpīdo urbem condendī eum cēpit.
6. Agrīcola hōmīnēs misit agrum arandī causā.
7. Ad eās rēs cōficiendūm Orgētōrix delīgītur.
8. Mercātōrēs ea important quae ad effēmīnandūm ānimōs pertainēt.

Translate into English:—

1. In ambūlandō mēcum cogīto.
2. Nātandī ars ūtilis est.
3. Ars civitātem gūbermandī difficīlīma est.
4. In

librīs tuīs lēgendīs hōs trēs diēs cum multā vōluptātē exēgi.  
 5. Ars civitātis gūbermandae est difficillīma. 6. Prōficiscendū<sup>2</sup> mīhi erat illō ipsō diē. 7. Hostēs in spem vēnerant pōtiendōrum casurōrum. 8. Caesar lōquendī finem fācit. 9. Asīnus idōneus est ōnēra portandō. 10. Asīnus idōneus est ōnēribus portandīs. 11. Cātilīna bellum suscēpit rei publicae dēlendae causā. 12. Ager colendus est.

### Sight-Reading.

STORY OF HORATIUS (*continued*).

Jam singulī sūpērērant, sed nec spē nec vīribus pārēs.  
one on each side survive  
 Altērius erat intactum ferō corpus, et gōmīnātā victōriā  
untouched double  
 36 ferōx animus. Alter fessum vulnere fessum cursū trāhēbat  
weary running drag  
 corpus. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus exsultāns Albā-  
exult  
 num māle sustinentem arma conficit, jācentemque spōliat.  
holding up kill lying prostrate strip

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The stem of **audio** is here *audie*.
2. The gerundive used impersonally.

What is a gerund? How is the gerund declined? What is used as the nominative of the gerund? How is the gerund formed? Is the gerund ever used in the plural? What is generally used instead of the gerund with its object?

Note that the gerundive has three uses: (1) The predicate use with the verb **sum**, to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (286); as, **urbs dēlenda est**, *the city must be destroyed*, see 288. (2) The impersonal use (263, Obs. 3) in the neuter gender, with the verb **est**, with the same force as above; as, **pūgnāndum est mīhi**, *I must fight* (lit., *fighting must be done by me*). (3) The gerundive use, which is always active in meaning, being equivalent to the gerund (see 263). With transitive verbs the personal construction is regularly used; as, **ēpistūla mīhi est scrībenda**, *I must write a letter* (lit., *a letter must be written by me*).

## LESSON LXXVI.

## INFLECTION AND SYNTAX OF SUPINES.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

265. The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the accusative and ablative. The supine in *-um*, sometimes called the Former Supine, is used only after verbs of *motion* to express *purpose*, like the English infinitive; the supine in *-ū*, sometimes called the Latter Supine, is used after adjectives, and rarely after verbs, as the *ablative of specification*.

1. The Supine has the same form as the neuter of the perfect participle; the Former Supine is formed by adding *-tum* (or *-sum*) to the present stem of the 1st, 2d, and 4th, and to the verb-stem of the 3d conjugations (the final letter of which is generally modified before *t*, and in the second conjugation *i* is inserted before *t*); the Latter Supine is formed by adding *-ū* (or *-sū*).

## PARADIGM.

FORMER SUPINE.		
Formation.	Example.	English.
Verb-stem + tum	āmātum	to love.
	mōnitum	to advise.
	rectum	to rule.
	audītum	to hear.
LATTER SUPINE.		
Verb-stem + tu	āmātū	to love, or to be loved.
	mōnitū	to advise, or to be advised.
	rectū	to rule, or to be ruled.
	audītū	to hear, or to be heard.

## 2. Uses of the Supine.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *lēgātos mittunt rōgātum auxiliū, they send ambassadors to ask for aid.*
2. *vēnērunt pācem pētītum, they came to ask for peace.*
3. *id faciē factū est, this is easy to do, or to be done.*

Obs. Note, in the first two of the foregoing examples, that the supines **rōgātum** and **pētītum** are construed with **mittunt** and **vēnērunt**, both verbs of *motion*; these supines express the *purpose* of the motion. In Ex. 3 the supine is used with the adjective **fācile**, and answers the question *in what respect?* (298.) Note, further, that **rōgātum** and **pētītum** are each followed by the accusative, the same case that the verbs **rōgo** and **pēto** require. The idioms are expressed in the following rules:—

## FORMER SUPINE.

**266. RULE XXXVII.**—The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion.

1. The supine in **-um** governs the same case as its verb.

## LATTER SUPINE.

**267. RULE XXXVIII.**—The supine in **-ū** is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy or difficult, worthy or unworthy, honorable or base*, and the nouns **fās**, **uēfās**, and **ōpus**.

1. The supine in **-ū** takes no object.

Obs. 1. The future infinitive passive **āmātum irī** is made up of the present infinitive passive of **eo**, *I go*, and the supine in **-um** of **āmo**, and is, literally translated, *it is being gone (by somebody) to love*; so that the apparent (or logical) subject is really the grammatical object.

Obs. 2. The supine in **-um** is not very common; only about two hundred and fifty verbs, chiefly of the first and third conjugations, have a supine; the supine in **-ū** is still less common. Hence the propriety of calling the third stem the *participial stem*, as Vaniquek and other noted grammarians have done.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

- 34
1. **Lēgātū tōtius fērē Galliae ad Caesārem grātūlātum convēnērunt.**
  2. **Orātōr dignus est audītū.**
  3. **Divitiācens Rōmam ad sēnātum vēnit auxiliū postūlātum.**
  4. **Id fācile dictū est.**
  5. **Aednī lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt rōgātum**

examples, that the  
with **mittunt** and  
express the *purpose*  
with the adjective  
? (298.) Note,  
followed by the  
and **pēto** require.

in **-um** is used  
purpose of the

its verb.

in **-ū** is used  
ifying *condem-*  
or *unworthy*,  
*is, nefās*, and

**frī** is made up of  
supine in **-um** of  
(by somebody) to  
really the graun-

; only about two  
third conjugations,  
mon. Hence the  
stem, as Vanček

rem grātūlātum  
3. Divitiācus  
m. 4. Id faciēle  
mittunt rōgātum

auxilium.<sup>1</sup> 6. Fās est dictū; nēfās est dictū. 7. Exelūsī  
eōs, quōs tū ad mē sūlūtātum mīsērās. 8. In urbem migrāvī  
hābitātum. 9. Ariōvistus dīxit omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad  
sē oppugnandum vēnisse.

*Sight-Reading.*

STORY OF HORATIUS (concluded).

Rōmānī ōvantēs ac grātūlantēs Hōrātium accipiunt, et do-  
mum dēducunt. Prīnceps ibat Hōrātius, trium frātrum spōlia  
prae sē gērēns. Cū obvīa fuit sōror, quae dēspōnsa fuerat  
mī ex Cūriātīs, visōque sūper ūmērōs frātris pālūdāmentō  
spousī, quod ipsa cōnfēcērat, flēre et crīnēs solvēre coepit.  
Mōvit fērōcis iūvenīs ānīmum complōrātiō sōroris in tantō  
gandiō publicō; strictō itāque glādiō transfigit puellam,  
sīmūl eam verbīs inērēpāns: "Abi hīne cum immātūrō āmōre  
ad sponsū tuum, oblīta frātrum, oblīta patriae." Sic eat  
quaecūmque Rōmāna lūgēbit hostem.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Accusative after **rōgātum**.

What is a gerund? What is the gerundive? How many cases has the gerund used in the plural? When is the gerundive used instead of the gerund? Remember that the gerundive construction is preferred to the gerund construction, unless the use of the former would cause ambiguity. In connection with the prepositions, the gerundive construction is always used. What is a supine? How many supines has a Latin verb? From what stem are they formed? After what verbs may supines be used? After what other words may the supine be used? Give the rules for the use of the supine.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## LOCATIVE.

## PLACE WHITHER? WHENCE? WHERE?

**268.** The name of the place *whither*, *whence*, and *where*, regularly requires a preposition.

1. The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, regularly requires **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **in Galliam**, into Gaul.
2. **in urbem**, into the city.
3. **ad urbem**, towards (the vicinity of) the city.
4. **ad Rōmam**, towards (the vicinity of) Rome.

Obs. Note that **AT**, meaning *near*, not *in*, is, with all names of places, to be translated by **ad** or **apud**, with the accusative.

2. The name of the place *whence*, or *from which*, regularly requires **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, or **ex**, with the ablative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **ab urbe**, away from the city.
2. **ex Africā**, from (out of) Africa.
3. **ex oppidō**, from the town.
4. **ā Rōmā**, from about (the vicinity of) Rome.

3. The name of the place *where*, or *in which*, regularly requires **in** with the ablative.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>in Galliā</b> , in Gaul.      | 3. <b>in Africā</b> , in Africa.    |
| 2. <b>in portū</b> , in the harbor. | 4. <b>in castris</b> , in the camp. |

*Names of Places.*

**269. RULE XXXIX.**—Relations of place are expressed by a noun with a preposition; but with names of towns and small islands, and also with *dōmus*, *rūs*, and a few other words, the preposition is omitted, and

## PLACE TO WHICH.

1. The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, is put in the Accusative.

## PLACE FROM WHICH.

2. The name of the place *whence*, or *from which*, is put in the Ablative.

## PLACE IN WHICH.

3. The name of the place *where*, or *in which*, takes the Locative.

**270.** The Locative has the same form as the Dative in the first and third declensions; in the second declension it has the same form as the Genitive. In the plural of all three declensions, Dative, Locative, and Ablative are alike.

## EXAMPLES.

		LOCATIVE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1st Decl.	<b>Rōma</b> , <i>Rome</i> ;	<b>Rōmae</b> , <i>at Rome</i> .
2d "	<b>Brundīsiūm</b> , <i>Brundisium</i> ;	<b>Brundīsiī</b> , <i>at Brundisium</i> .
3d "	<b>Karthāgo</b> , <i>Carthage</i> ;	<b>Karthāgīni</b> , <i>at Carthage</i> .
<i>Plur.</i> 1st "	<b>Athēnae</b> , <i>Athens</i> ;	<b>Athēniis</b> , <i>at Athens</i> .
2d "	<b>Delphī</b> , <i>Delphi</i> ;	<b>Delphīs</b> , <i>at Delphi</i> .
3d "	<b>Cūrēs</b> , <i>Cures</i> ;	<b>Cūrībus</b> , <i>at Cures</i> .

1. A similar construction is used with the words: —

<b>dōmum</b> , <i>home</i> ;	<b>dōmō</b> , <i>from home</i> ;	<b>dōmī</b> , <i>at home</i> .
<b>rūs</b> , <i>into the country</i> ;	<b>rūre</b> , <i>from the</i>	<b>rūrī</b> (e), <i>in the country</i> .
<b>dōmōs</b> , <i>home</i> .	<i>country</i> ;	<b>mīlītiaē</b> , <i>in military service</i> .
	<b>terrā</b> , <i>by land</i> .	<b>bellī</b> , <i>abroad</i> .
	<b>mārī</b> , <i>by sea</i> .	<b>hūmī</b> , <i>on the ground</i> .

2. That is —

a. **Dōmus** in both numbers, and **rūs** in the singular, are put after verbs of *motion* in the accusative, like names of towns, without a preposition; but if a genitive or possessive pronoun limits **dōmum**, the preposition **in** or **ad** may be used, as **in dōmum meam**, *to my house*.

b. The ablatives **dōmō**, **hūmō**, **rūre**, are used like the names of towns, to denote the place *from which*.

c. The ablatives **lōcō**, **lōcīs**, **parte**, **partībus**, **dextrā**, *on the right*, **laevā**, **sinistrā**, *on the left hand*, **terrā**, *on land*, and **mārī**, *on sea*, especially when they are modified by adjectives, are often used like names of towns, without a preposition.

d. The forms **dōmī** (gen. **dōmūs**), *at home*, **bellī** (used with **dōmī**), *abroad*, **mīlītiaē**, *in military service*, **hūmī**, *on the ground*, being locatives, take no preposition.

## Examples Illustrating the Uses of the Locative : —

1. in Galliam contendit, *he hastens into Gaul.*
2. ab urbe vēnit, *he came from the city.*
3. erat in Galliā lēgio ūna, *one legion was in Gaul.*
4. Rōmam vēnit, *he came to Rome.*
5. dōmum vēnit, *he came home.*
6. Rōmā vēnit, *he came from Rome.*
7. dōmō dūxerat, *he had brought from home.*
8. Rōmae vixit, *he lived at Rome.*
9. Cōrinthī puērōs dōcēbat, *he taught boys at Corinth.*
10. nihil dōmī gestum est, *nothing has been done at home.*
11. dōmī mīlītiaēque, māri atque terrā, *at home and abroad, on land and on sea.*

Obs. 1. In the foregoing examples note that 1, 2, and 3 illustrate the general rule; in Exs. 4, 6, and 8, the words denoting the *place to which*, the *place from which*, and the *place at which*, are names of towns, and the preposition is therefore omitted. In Exs. 5 and 7 dōmum and dōmō are in the accusative and ablative without a preposition. In Ex. 11 the locative forms dōmī and mīlītiaē are used without a preposition, and also māri and terrā. Note that in the first and third declensions the locative is the same as the dative; in the second declension it takes the form of the genitive. In the plural of all three declensions, dative locative, and ablative are alike.

## Supplementary Examples : —

1. in Gallōrum finibus, *in the territory of the Gauls.*
2. ā Galliā contendit, *he hastens away from Gaul.*
3. Rōmam prōfectus est, *he set out for Rome.*
4. Rōmā prōfectus est, *he set out from Rome.*
5. Rōmae vixit, *he lived at Rome.*
6. Athēnis vixit, *he lived at Athens.*
7. dōmī vixit, *he lived at home.*
8. Karthāgīnī (e) vixit, *he lived at Carthage.*
9. Athēnis fūgiunt, *they flee from Athens.*
10. Brundisii vixit, *he lived at Brundisium.*
11. dōmum vēnit, *he came home.*
12. dōmō prōfectus, *having set out from home.*
13. miles hūmī jācēbat, *the soldier was lying on the ground.*
14. bellī dōmīque, *in war and in peace.*
15. dōmī mīlītiaēque, *at home and abroad.*
16. terrā mārique (seldom māri et terrā), *by land and sea.*



ative: —

Gaul.

in Gaul.

e.

ys at Corinth.

a done at home.

t home and abroad,

2, and 3 illustrate  
towards the place  
denoting the place  
which, are names ofIn Exs. 5 and 7  
the ablative without a  
preposition and *militiæ* are  
of *terræ*. Note that  
the same as the  
of the genitive.  
the ablative and ablative

the Gauls.

in Gaul.

ome.

que.

ge.

e.

g on the ground.

by land and sea.

Obs. 2. Note that when we wish to express simply motion towards a place, or that one is *near*, or in the *vicinity* of a place, prepositions must be used, even with names of towns and small islands, because it would be impossible to tell whether *Rōmam ivit* meant *he went to Rome*, or *towards Rome*; or *Rōmā vēnit*, *he came from Rome*, or *from the vicinity of Rome*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Rōmam profectus est*, *he went to Rome*;  
*ad Rōmam profectus est*, *he set out towards Rome*.
2. *Gēnāvam pervēnit*, *he came to Geneva*;  
*ad Gēnāvam pervēnit*, *he arrived in the neighborhood of Geneva*.
3. *Cāpuā vēnit*, *he came from Capua*;  
*ā Cāpuā vēnit*, *he came from about Capua*.

271. The *way* or *road* by which is put in the ablative without a preposition.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Aurēliā viā profectus est*, *he set out by the Aurelian way*.
2. *exercitum vadō transducit*, *he leads his army across by a ford*.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>hiems</i> , - <i>emis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>winter</i> .	<i>at-tingo</i> , - <i>tingere</i> , - <i>tingi</i> , - <i>tactum</i> , <i>touch</i> .
<i>inītus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> , (part. of <i>ineo</i> ), <i>having begun</i> .	<i>strēpitus</i> , - <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>noise</i> .
<i>Athēnæ</i> , - <i>arum</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>Athens</i> .	<i>ab-do</i> , - <i>dere</i> , - <i>didī</i> , - <i>dītum</i> , <i>hide, conceal</i> .
<i>dē-fēndo</i> , - <i>dēre</i> , - <i>dī</i> , - <i>sum</i> , <i>ward</i> <i>off, defend</i> .	<i>cōn-cido</i> , - <i>cidere</i> , - <i>cidī</i> , - <i>cisum</i> , <i>cut to pieces, kill</i> .
<i>im-pēdio</i> , - <i>ire</i> , - <i>ivī</i> or - <i>ii</i> , - <i>itum</i> , <i>cutangle, impede</i> .	<i>per-solvo</i> , - <i>solvere</i> , - <i>solvi</i> , <i>pay, render</i> .
<i>cālāmītās</i> , - <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>loss, calamity</i> .	<i>rēpentīnus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> , <i>sudden</i> , <i>unlooked for</i> .
<i>con-sēquor</i> , - <i>qui</i> , - <i>cūsus sum</i> , <i>dep., follow after</i> .	<i>jāceo</i> , - <i>ere</i> , - <i>ui</i> , - <i>itum</i> , <i>lie</i> .

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. *Consul in Itāliam profectus est*.
2. *Cicērō profectus est Athēnās*, in nrhem<sup>1</sup> *cēlēberrimam*.
3. *Cōsul Rōmā Athēnās profectus est*.
4. *Caesar Rōmam profectus est*.
5. *Puer vēniēbat dōmum*.
6. *Puer profectus est rūs*.
7. *Cas-*

trīs sē tēnit. 8. Vir multōs annōs dōmī vīxit. 9. Miles hūmī jācēbat. 10. Attīcus, Cīcērōnis amīcus, multōs annōs Athēnīs vīxit. 11. Karthāgīnī rēgēs creābantur. 12. Māgnās rēs Pompējus dōmī militīaeque, terrā mārīque gessit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar came to the camp. 2. Caesar came into Gaul. 3. Caesar came from Gaul. 4. The consul lived at Rome. 5. The consul came from Rome to Athens. 6. Caesar came into Italy. 7. The boy set out for home. 8. In the summer my friends and I shall depart from Rome. 9. I shall set out for Miletus, they will set out for Athens. 10. In the first watch, the soldiers departed from the camp with a great tumult. 11. Caesar set out for Rome. 12. Caesar set out from Rome. 13. Caesar wished to be first at Rome. 14. I will depart into the country at the beginning of summer. 15. My friend lived many years at Athens. 16. Your friend lived many years at my house. 17. Many apples lay on the ground.

Supplementary Exercises :—

1. I will dwell at Athens, but you at Rome. 2. Many great generals were born at Rome. 3. He died at Corinth. 4. The soldiers lie on the ground in summer. 5. Caesar, (when he was) made quaestor, hastened from Italy to Spain. 6. He came into Italy. 7. They were with me both in peace and in war. 8. He returned from the city to the country. 9. I have lived at Athens, at Rome, and at Carthage. 10. When the speech had been delivered, Caesar departed. 11. He came to Rome in the consulship of Cicero. 12. In Caesar's consulship, the Germans crossed the Rhine.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. If **urbs** or **oppidum** is added in apposition, the preposition **in** must be used.

How is the *place to which* expressed? The *place from which*? The *place at which*, or *where*? With names of towns, how is the *place to which*, the *place from which*, and the *place at which* expressed? With

nouns of the first declension, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Rōma, Athēnae, Thēbae**. With nouns of the third declension, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Cūrēs, Gādēs, Karthāgo**. With nouns of the second declension, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Argī** (pl.), **Delphī** (pl.), **Cōrinthus**. With all plural nouns, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Athenae, Argī, Thebae, Cūrēs, Delphī**. Write the Latin for *at home, on the ground, at Athens, at Rome, at Cures, at Corinth, at Carthage*. Is the preposition ever expressed with names of towns? When, and for what purpose? Write in Latin: *he went to Rome; he went towards, or near, Rome; he came from Rome; he came from (the neighborhood of) Rome*.

---

## LESSON LXXVIII.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*.—DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

Case. 1. The verb asserts action or being. The Modes of the verb are used to denote the *manner* in which the action or being is asserted. The Indicative Mode asserts the action or being as a *fact*; as, *I write*. Here *writing* is asserted as an actual fact. The Imperative Mode asserts the action not as an actual or possible fact, but as a *command*; as, *James, write the letter*. *Writing* is not asserted as a fact, but *James* is ordered to make it a fact. The Subjunctive Mode is used to express the action or being not as a fact, but as merely *conceived, or thought of*; as, *if I should write*. Here *writing* is asserted not as an actual fact, but only as *thought of, or conceived* in the mind, without regard to its becoming an actual fact. So with *I may write*; *writing* is not asserted as an actual fact, but only as a *possible or doubtful* fact. As the assertions of fact are made more often in principal sentences, it is obvious that the indicative chiefly is used in such clauses; but the subjunctive is used, even in independent clauses, to express an action doubtfully or indirectly, or to represent it as *possible, not as real*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *sint beātī, may they be happy.*
2. *amēmus patriam, let us love our country.*
3. *quid faciām, what am I to do?*

Obs. 2. The subjunctive in Ex. 1 expresses a *wish*, representing the action as *desired*; the indicative would assert as a fact that *they*

are happy. Ex. 2 expresses a command *indirectly*, i.e. commanding an act in which the first or third person is to be the actor; the imperative is used to express a *direct* command. The question in Ex. 3 implies *doubt*, or *uncertainty*, and hence the subjunctive is used. The indicative is used in asking questions that do not imply doubt.

Obs. 3. The pupil should note that *may, can, must, might, could, would, should*, when denoting *emphasis* or *contrast*, or meaning *permission* or *duty*, are not the signs of the subjunctive, but require separate verbs; as, *the soldiers can fight*, meaning *the soldiers are able to fight* = **mīlitēs pūgnāre possunt**. *May* and *might* are usually rendered by the proper tenses of **licet**; *can* and *could*, by **possum**; *must* and *should*, by **oportet, necesse est**, or the gerundive.

Obs. 4. The translations of the subjunctive mode given below in connection with the conjugation of the verb are the most common meanings when used in *independent sentences*. The meanings in *dependent sentences* will be illustrated in the exercises further on.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	
Singular.	Plural.
1. sim, <i>I may be.</i>	simus, <i>we may be.</i>
2. sis, <i>thou mayst be.</i>	sitis, <i>you may be.</i>
3. sit, <i>he may be.</i>	sint, <i>they may be.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
1. essem, <i>I should be.</i>	essēmus, <i>we should be.</i>
2. essēs, <i>thou wouldst be.</i>	essētis, <i>you would be.</i>
3. esset, <i>he would be.</i>	essent, <i>they would be.</i>
PERFECT.	
1. fuērim, <i>I may have been.</i>	fuērīmus, <i>we may have been.</i>
2. fuēris, <i>thou mayst have been.</i>	fuērītis, <i>you may have been.</i>
3. fuērit, <i>he may have been.</i>	fuērītis, <i>they may have been.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
1. fuissē, <i>I should have been.</i>	fuissēmus, <i>we should have been.</i>
2. fuissēs, <i>thou wouldst have been.</i>	fuissētis, <i>you would have been.</i>
3. fuisset, <i>he would have been.</i>	fuissent, <i>they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.	
PRES. 2. <b>es</b> , <i>be thou.</i>	<b>este</b> , <i>be ye.</i>
FUT. 2. <b>esto</b> , <i>thou shalt be.</i>	<b>estôte</b> , <i>ye shall be.</i>
3. <b>esto</b> , <i>he shall be.</i>	<b>sunto</b> , <i>they shall be.</i>
INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. <b>esse</b> , <i>to be.</i>	
PERF. <b>fuisse</b> , <i>to have been.</i>	
FUT. <b>fütürus esse</b> , or <b>före</b> , <i>to be about to be.</i>	<b>fütürus</b> , -a, -um, <i>about to be.</i>

Obs. 5. The subjunctive is sometimes translated by the English Indicative; sometimes by the Potential, with the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, *would*, *should*; sometimes by the Subjunctive; sometimes by the Infinitive; and it is often used for the Imperative, especially in prohibitions.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **cum sim**, *since I am.*
2. **sim**, *may I be.*
3. **sī essem**, *if I were.*
4. **nē fuēris**, *be thou not.*
5. **adsum ut videam**, *I am here to see (that I may see).*
6. **sīmus**, *let us be, may we be.*
7. **sī fuērit**, *if he should have been.*

Obs. 6. The Present Imperative has no first or third person. If it is required, in an imperative sentence, to use the first or third person, the subjunctive is to be used; as,

Singular.	Plural.
1. <b>sim</b> , <i>let me be.</i>	<b>sīmus</b> , <i>let us be.</i>
2. <b>es</b> , <i>be thou.</i>	<b>este</b> , <i>be ye.</i>
3. <b>sit</b> , <i>let him (her, it) be.</i>	<b>sint</b> , <i>let them be.</i>

272. Instead of the regular forms of the Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Future Infinitive of **sum**, the following are frequently used:—

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Singular.	Plural.
<b>förem = essem</b>	—
<b>förēs = essēs</b>	—
<b>föret = esset</b>	<b>förent = essent</b>
FUTURE INFINITIVE.	
<b>före = fütürus esse</b>	

**273. Dative of Possessor.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **est mihī liber**, *I have a book* (among other things); or,
2. **liber est meus**, *the book is mine* (and no one else's); or,
3. **habeo librum**, *I have, I hold, I keep, a book.*

Obs. From the foregoing examples the pupil will notice that *possession* may be expressed in three different ways; the dative emphasizes the fact of possession (*possessor*), and is the usual way of expressing simple possession. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.**

**274. RULE XI.**—The dative of the possessor is used with the verb *sum*.

**VOCABULARY.**

**obses, -idis**, M. & F., *hostage.*

**creo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *make, choose, elect.*

**persuādeo, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm**, *convince, persuade.*

**dīvido, -vidēre, -vīsī, -vīsūm**, *separate, divide.*

**Allōbrōgēs, -um**, M., *the Allobroges.*

**testis, -is**, M. & F., *witness.*

**contineo, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, *hold in, bound.*

**āger, agrī**, M., *field.*

**lācus, -ūs**, M., *lake.*

**Aeduus, -ī**, M., *an Aeduan.*

**influo, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxūm**, *flow into.*

**EXERCISES.**

Tell the Mode, Tense, Number, and Person of the following; parse each word:—

1. Este, est, sunt.
2. Ero, sītis, esset.
3. Erāmus, sūmus, esset.
4. Fuērit, fuissēmus, sint.
5. Fuit, es, sim.
6. Fuēre, fuērāmus, essent.
7. Esse, fuisse, sumto.
8. Fōrent, fuērit, fōrem.
9. Essēs, estis, essētis.
10. Multī mihī sunt librī.
11. Sex nobīs filiī sunt.
12. Caesārī erāt multae lēgiōnēs et fidēlēs amīcī.

## LESSON LXXIX.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

275. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active are formed from the present stem; the Perfect and Pluperfect from the perfect stem, by adding the verbal endings.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.—ACTIVE.

PRESENT.	
Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>āmem, may I love.</i>	<i>āmēmus, let us love.</i>
2. <i>āmēs, love thou.</i>	<i>āmētis, love ye.</i>
3. <i>āmet, let him love.</i>	<i>āment, let them love.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
1. <i>āmārem, I should love.</i>	<i>āmārēmus, we should love.</i>
2. <i>āmārēs, thou wouldst love.</i>	<i>āmārētis, you would love.</i>
3. <i>āmāret, he would love.</i>	<i>āmārent, they would love.</i>
PERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāvērīm, I may have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvērīmus, we may have loved.</i>
2. <i>āmāvērīs, thou mayst have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvērītis, you may have loved.</i>
3. <i>āmāvērīt, he may have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvērīnt, they may have loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāvīssēm, I should have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvīssēmus, we should have loved.</i>
2. <i>āmāvīssēs, thou wouldst have l'd.</i>	<i>āmāvīssētis, you would have loved.</i>
3. <i>āmāvīssēt, he would have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvīssēt, they would have loved.</i>

1. The Analysis of the Tenses of the Subjunctive in the Active Voice is as follows:—

PRES. SUBJ.: Pres. st. **āmā-** (*ā* changed to *ē*) + personal endings.

IMPF. SUBJ.: “ **āmā-** + tense sign **-re-** + “ “

PERF. SUBJ.: “ **āmāvī-** + tense sign **-ri-** + “ “

PLUF. SUBJ.: “ **āmāvī-** + tense sign **-sse-** + “ “

*Mistake!*

## 2. Translation of the Subjunctive :—

1. *amet*, *let him love.*
2. *amēmus*, *let us love.*
3. *cum vēnisset*, *when he had come, or having come.*
4. *sī Caesar pūgnet*, *if Caesar (should) fight.*
5. *sī Caesar esset dux*, *if Caesar were leader.*
6. *amāvērit*, *suppose he (has) loved.*
7. *cum amāvērit*, *since he loved.*
8. *civēs meī sint beatī*, *may my fellow-citizens be happy.*
9. *nē<sup>1</sup> audiat*, *let him not hear.*

## VOCABULARY.

*trans-grēdiōr*, *-grēdī*, *-gressus sum*, *dep., cross.*

*extrā*, *prep. and adv., outside of, beyond.*

*incrēdībilis*, *-e*, *incredible.*

*jungo*, *jungere*, *junxī*, *junctum*, *join, unite.*

*sāgittārius*, *-iī*, *M., archer.*

*excelsus*, *-a, -um*, *high.*

*cōnsanguīneus*, *-a, -um*, *related by blood, kindred.*

*in-fluo*, *-fluere*, *-fluxī*, *-fluxum*, *flow into, empty.*

*impēditus*, *-a, -um*, *part., hindered.*

## EXERCISES.

Tell the mode, tense, number, and person of the following :

1. *Amāret*, *amēmus*, *amet*. 2. *Amāvissem*, *amāvērīnt*, *amārent*.
3. *Landāret*, *landāvīssent*, *landāvērīt*. 4. *Vōcet*, *vōeārent*, *vōcāvīssent*.
5. *Vulnērēs*, *vulnērēt*, *vulnērēt*.
6. *Exspectēmus*, *expectārēmus*, *expectāvīssēmus*. 7. *Rōgem*, *rōgāvērīm*, *rōgāvīssēm*.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Nē* may be an adverb, as *nē amet*, *let him not love*; *nē* may be a conjunction, as *nē commeātū prōhibērētur, castrīs idoneum locum dēlēgit*, *he chose a suitable place for a camp, that he might not be cut off from supplies (i.e. lest he should be cut off, etc.)*; *ne* is an interrogative particle (always an enclitic), as *audēvitne*, *does he hear?*

How many tenses has the subjunctive? How is the imperfect formed?



## LESSON LXXX.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

276. The inflection of the Subjunctive Active of the four conjugations is as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRESENT.			
1. āmem	mōneam	rēgam	audiam
2. āmēs	mōneās	rēgās	audiās
3. āmet	mōneat	rēgat	audiat
1. āmēmus	mōneāmus	rēgāmus	audiāmus
2. āmētis	mōneātis	rēgātis	audiātis
3. āment	mōneant	rēgant	audiant
IMPERFECT.			
1. āmārem	mōnērem	rēgērem	audīrem
2. āmārēs	mōnērēs	rēgērēs	audīrēs
3. āmāret	mōnēret	rēgēret	audīret
1. āmā.ē.nus	mōnērēmus	rēgērēmus	audīrēmus
2. āmārētis	mōnērētis	rēgērētis	audīrētis
3. āmārent	mōnērent	rēgērent	audīrent
PERFECT.			
1. āmāvērīm	mōnuērīm	rēxērīm	audīvērīm
2. āmāvērīs	mōnuērīs	rēxērīs	audīvērīs
3. āmāvērīt	mōnuērīt	rēxērīt	audīvērīt
1. āmāvērīmus	mōnuērīmus	rēxērīmus	audīvērīmus
2. āmāvērītis	mōnuērītis	rēxērītis	audīvērītis
3. āmāvērīnt	mōnuērīnt	rēxērīnt	audīvērīnt
PLUPERFECT.			
1. āmāvissem	mōnuissem	rēxissem	audivissem
2. āmāvisseēs	mōnuisseēs	rēxisseēs	audivisseēs
3. āmāvisset	mōnuisset	rēxisset	audivisset
1. āmāvisseēmus	mōnuisseēmus	rēxisseēmus	audivisseēmus
2. āmāvisseētis	mōnuisseētis	rēxisseētis	audivisseētis
3. āmāvisissent	mōnuissent	rēxisissent	audivissent

## VOCABULARY.

rātis, -is, F., *raft*.stātuo, stātuere, stātuī, stātūtum, *place at*.stātūra, -ae, F., *size, statue*.nihil (indecl. neut. noun), *nothing*.lēnitās, -ātis, F., *softness, smoothness*.impēdiō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *hinder*.funditor, -ōris, M., *slinger*.linter, -tris, F., *boat*.calvus, -a, -um, *bald*.

## EXERCISES.

Tell the mode, tense, number, and person of the following :

1. Mōneat, mōnerēmus, mōnerent. 2. Mōnerim, mōnissēm. mōnuissent. 3. Hābeam, hābeant, hāberent. 4. Dēlēt, dēlēverim, dēlēvissem. 5. Dōceat, dōcēt, dōcuerit. 6. Rēgat, rēgeret, rēxerit. 7. Rēgāmus, rēgerēmus, rēxērīmus. 8. Mittāmus, mittērent, misissent. 9. Contendās, contendērēs, contendērīs. 10. Dūcant, dūcerent, dūxerint, dūxissent. 11. Vincat, vicrit, vicisset. 12. Audiat, audiret, audivērit. 13. Audivisset, audirēmus, audiant. 14. Mūniās, mūnrēs, mūnivēris. 15. Vēniātis, vēnrētis, vēneritis.

## LESSON LXXXI.

## VERBS. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.

277. The inflection of the Subjunctive Passive of the four conjugations is as follows :—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRESENT.			
1. āmer	mōnear	rēgar	audiar
2. āmeris, or -re	mōnearis, or -re	rēgāris, or -re	audiāris, or -re
3. āmētur	mōnearur	rēgātur	audiātur
1. āmēmur	mōnearmūr	rēgāmūr	audiāmūr
2. āmēmīnī	mōnearmīnī	rēgāmīnī	audiāmīnī
3. āmentur	mōnearantur	rēgantur	audiantur

*softness, smoothness.*  
-ivī or -ī, -itum,

*M., slinger.*  
*hout.*  
*ball.*

of the following :

Mōnuērīn, mōnu-  
ābērent. 4. Dē-  
lōcēret, dōcērit.  
rēgērēms, rēxē-

9. Contendās,  
cērent, dūxērīnt,  
t. 12. Audiāt,  
rēmms, audiant.  
cūlātis, vēnērētis,

IVE.

passive of the four

e	audiar audiāris, or -re audiātur audiāmur audiāminī audiāntur
---	--

IMPERFECT.			
1. āmārer	mōnērer	rēgērer	audīrer
2. āmārēris, or -re	mōnērēris, or -re	rēgērēris, -re	audīrēris, or -re
3. āmārētūr	mōnērētūr	rēgērētūr	audīrētūr
1. āmārēmūr	mōnērēmūr	rēgērēmūr	audīrēmūr
2. āmārēmīnī	mōnērēmīnī	rēgērēmīnī	audīrēmīnī
3. āmārētūr	mōnērētūr	rēgērētūr	audīrētūr
PERFECT.			
1. āmātus sim	mōnītus sim	rectus sim	audītus sim
2. āmātus sis	mōnītus sis	rectus sis	audītus sis
3. āmātus sit	mōnītus sit	rectus sit	audītus sit
1. āmātī simus	mōnītī sīmus	rectī sīmus	audītī sīmus
2. āmātī sitis	mōnītī sitis	rectī sitis	audītī sitis
3. āmātī sint	mōnītī sint	rectī sint	audītī sint
PLUSPERFECT.			
1. āmātus essem	mōnītus essem	rectus essem	audītus essem
2. āmātus essēs	mōnītus essēs	rectus essēs	audītus essēs
3. āmātus esset	mōnītus esset	rectus esset	audītus esset
1. āmātī essēmus	mōnītī essēmus	rectī essēmus	audītī essēmus
2. āmātī essētis	mōnītī essētis	rectī essētis	audītī essētis
3. āmātī essent	mōnītī essent	rectī essent	audītī essent

EXERCISES.

Tell the mode, tense, number, and person of the following :

1. Amētūr, ānārentūr, āmātus sit, āmātus esset. 2. Amē-  
mūr, āmārēmūr, āmātī sīmus, āmātī essēmus. 3. Lauder,  
laudārer, laudātus sim, laudātus essem. 4. Edūcēris, edūcā-  
rēris, edūcātus sis, edūcātus essēs. 5. Vōcēmūr, vōcārēmūr,  
vōcātī sīmus, vōcātī essēmus. 6. Mōncāmūr, mōncārēmūr,  
mōnītī sīmus, mōnītī essēmus. 7. Dōcear, dōcērer, doctus  
sim. 8. Hābeantūr, hābērentūr, hābītus sit. 9. Rēgātūr,  
rēgērētūr, rectus sit, rectus esset. 10. Mittāmūr, mittērēmūr,  
missus sit. 11. Vincar, vincantūr, vincērentūr. 12. Dicātūr,  
dicī sīmus. 13. Audiātūr, audīrētūr, audītus sit. 14. Mū-  
niāmīnī, mūnīrentūr, mūnītī sīmus. 15. Pūniātūr, pūnīrētūr,  
pūnītī essent.

## LESSON LXXXII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

## IMPERATIVE.

**278.** The Latin Subjunctive has two principal uses:—

I. It is used in INDEPENDENT SENTENCES to express—

1. A Wish (*Optative Subjunctive*); negative is **nē**.
2. An Exhortation or a Mild Command, chiefly in Prohibitions (*Horatory Subjunctive*), negative is **nē**.
3. A Question of Doubt or of Deliberation (*Dubitative or Deliberative Subjunctive*); negative is **nē**.
4. An Action as Possible, not as Real (*Potential Subjunctive*); negative is **nōn**.
5. A Concession (*Concessive Subjunctive*); negative is **nē**.

II. It is used in DEPENDENT CLAUSES to express—

1. Condition (*Conditional Clause*, see **325**).
2. Comparison (*Comparative Clause*, see **329**).
3. Concession (*Concessive Clause*, see **331**).
4. Purpose (*Final Clause*, see **321**).
5. Result (*Consecutive Clause*, see **322**).
6. Characteristic (*Relative Clause*, see **323**).
7. Cause (*Causal Clause*, see **330**).
8. Time (*Temporal Clause*, see **331**).
9. Indirect Question (*Interrogative Clause*, see **342**).

a. The Subjunctive is also used in relative clauses (see **355**), in intermediate clauses (see **359**), and in subordinate clauses in Indirect Discourse (see **346**).

## EXAMPLES.

1. (**ūtfīnam**) **mīltēs fortīōrēs fuissent**, *would that the soldiers had been braver.*
2. **pūgnēmus**, *let us fight.*
3. **pūgnet**, *let him fight.*
4. **nē pūgnēmus**, *let us not fight.*
5. **quid faciērem**, *what was I to do?*
6. **ēgo censeam**, *I am inclined to think, or I should think.*
7. **sit clārus Scīpiō**, *granted that Scipio be renowned.*

**ONS.** Ex. 1 expresses a *wish*, and the verb is therefore in the Optative Subjunctive; **utinam**, *would that, O that*, frequently precedes the optative subjunctive; the negative particle is **nē**. Note, further, that the present and perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the imperfect and pluperfect, that the wish is not fulfilled, — the imperfect representing an unfulfilled wish in present time, the pluperfect in past time. Exs. 2 and 3 express a mild *command*, commanding an act in which the first or third person is the actor; the verbs are in the Hortatory Subjunctive; the negative particle is **nē**, not **nōn**. Ex. 4 expresses a Prohibition. Ex. 5 asks a *deliberative or doubtful* question; the verb is in the Dubitative or Deliberative Subjunctive. Ex. 6 makes a *cautious, polite, or modest* statement, and the verb is in the Potential Subjunctive. Ex. 7 expresses a *concession*, and the Concessive Subjunctive is used.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Scribāmus.
2. Nē scribāmus.
3. Laudēmus nōmen Deī.
4. Māl<sup>1</sup> scēernant sē ā hōīs.<sup>1</sup>
5. Utinam pāter vēniat.
6. Amēmus.
7. Vēniāmus in urbem.
8. Sint beātī.<sup>2</sup>
9. Utinam māgister discipulōs laudet.
10. Utinam māgister discipulōs laudāret.
11. Utinam in litōre māris ambulārem.
12. Utinam māgister discipulōs laudāvisset.

Translate into Latin: —

1. Let us love our country.
2. Let us praise our friends.
3. May you be happy.
4. Do not write the letter.
5. Would that he were present.
6. May the pupil study.
7. May the teacher praise the pupils.
8. Would that the teacher praised the pupils.
9. Would that the teacher had praised the pupils.
10. Let him walk with his friends.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. See 83. 4.

2. Note that (1) when the *wish* is for something *future*, the present subjunctive is used, but the perfect may be used; (2) when it is for something *present*, the imperfect subjunctive is used; (3) when it is for something *past*, the pluperfect subjunctive is used. As the *present* and *past* cannot be changed, the *wish* expressed by these tenses is unfulfilled.

Mention the chief uses of the subjunctive. Give the uses of the subjunctive in independent clauses. What negative is used with the subjunctive? What with the imperative? How many persons has the imperative? How is a *future*, a *present*, and a *past wish* expressed?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

Subjunctive in Independent Sentences	1. <i>Optative</i> . . . . .	Wishes.	
	2. <i>Hortatory</i> . . . . .	Exhortations. Commands. Prohibitions.	
	3. <i>Dubitative, or Deliberative</i> . . . . .	Questions of — Doubt. Deliberation. Indignation. Impossibility.	
	4. <i>Potential</i> . . . . .	Cautions, Polite, or Modest	} statements.
	5. <i>Concessive</i> . . . . .	Concession.	

## LESSON LXXXIII.

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—  
ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

**279.** Many verbs are used only in the Passive Voice, but with an Active meaning. These are called DEPONENT (*laying aside*), because they lay aside the *active form* and the *passive meaning*.

1. They occur in all four conjugations, and the conjugation to which they belong is determined by the characteristic vowel of the present infinitive. They are inflected like the passive of other verbs, and have also the gerund, participles, and supines of the active voice.

2. Deponents of the First Conjugation are inflected as follows :

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
1. mīror	mīrārī	mīrātus sum, <i>admire</i> .
2. hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum, <i>exhort</i> .
3. glōrior	glōrārī	glōriātus sum, <i>boast</i> .
4. vāgor	vāgārī	vāgātus sum, <i>wander about</i> .

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Indicative.	PRESENT.	Subjunctive.
<i>mīror, I admire.</i>	<i>mīrer, may I be admired.</i>	
<i>mīrāris, -re, thou admirest.</i>	<i>mīrēris, -re, be thou admired.</i>	
<i>mīrātur, he admires.</i>	<i>mīrētur, let him be admired.</i>	
<i>mīrāmur, we admire.</i>	<i>mīrēmur, let us be admired.</i>	
<i>mīrāminī, you admire.</i>	<i>mīrēminī, be ye admired.</i>	
<i>mīrantur, they admire.</i>	<i>mīrentur, let them be admired.</i>	
IMPERFECT.		
<i>mīrābar, I admired.</i>	<i>mīrārer, I should admire</i>	
<i>mīrābāris, -re, thou wouldst admire.</i>	<i>mīrārēris, -re, thou wouldst admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābātur, he admired.</i>	<i>mīrārētur, he would admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābāmur, we admired.</i>	<i>mīrārēmur, we would admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābāminī, you admired.</i>	<i>mīrārēminī, you would admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābantur, they admired.</i>	<i>mīrārentur, they would admire.</i>	
FUTURE.		
<i>mīrābor, I shall admire.</i>		
<i>mīrābēris, -re, thou wilt admire.</i>		
<i>mīrābitur, he will admire.</i>		
<i>mīrābīmur, we shall admire.</i>		
<i>mīrābīminī, you will admire.</i>		
<i>mīrābuntur, they will admire.</i>		
PERFECT.		
<i>mīrātus sum, I have admired.</i>	<i>mīrātus sim, I may have</i>	} <i>Been admired.</i>
<i>mīrātus es, thou hast admired.</i>	<i>mīrātus sis, thou mayst have</i>	
<i>mīrātus est, he has admired.</i>	<i>mīrātus sit, he may have</i>	
<i>mīrātī sūmus, we have admired.</i>	<i>mīrātī simus, we may have</i>	
<i>mīrātī estis, you have admired.</i>	<i>mīrātī sitis, you may have</i>	
<i>mīrātī sunt, they have admired.</i>	<i>mīrātī sint, they may have</i>	
PLUPERFECT.		
<i>mīrātus eram, I had admired.</i>	<i>mīrātus essem, I should</i>	} <i>have admired.</i>
<i>mīrātus erās, thou hadst admired.</i>	<i>mīrātus essēs, thou wouldst</i>	
<i>mīrātus erat, he had admired.</i>	<i>mīrātus esset, he would</i>	
<i>mīrātī erāmus, we had admired.</i>	<i>mīrātī essemus, we should</i>	
<i>mīrātī erātis, you had admired.</i>	<i>mīrātī essētis, you would</i>	
<i>mīrātī erant, they had admired.</i>	<i>mīrātī essent, they would</i>	

ches.  
 ortsations.  
 nimals.  
 libitions.  
 estions of —  
 onbl.  
 Deliberation.  
 indignation.  
 impossibility.

ations,  
 ite, or } statements.  
 dlest }  
 cession.

CONJUGATION. —  
 TS.

Passive Voice, but  
 called DEPONENT  
 e active form and

the conjugation to  
 eristic vowel of the  
 e passive of other  
 and supines of the

infl. ed as follows :

erf. Ind.
sum, admire.
a sum, exhort.
s sum, boast.
sum, wander about.

FUTURE PERFECT.	
mīrātus ero, <i>I shall have admired.</i>	
mīrātus eris, <i>thou wilt have admired.</i>	
mīrātus erit, <i>he will have admired.</i>	
mīrāti ērimus, <i>we shall have admired.</i>	
mīrāti eritis, <i>you will have admired.</i>	
mīrāti erunt, <i>they will have admired.</i>	
Imperative.	
SINGULAR	PLURAL.
PRES. 2. mīrāre, <i>admire thou.</i>	mīrāmini, <i>admire ye.</i>
FUT. 2. mīrātor, <i>thou shalt admire.</i>	mīrantor, <i>they shall admire.</i>
3. mīrātor, <i>he shall admire.</i>	
Infinitive.	
PRES. mīrārī, <i>to admire.</i>	
PERF. mīrātus esse, <i>to have admired.</i>	
FUT. mīrātūrus esse, <i>to be about to admire.</i>	
F. P. mīrātus fore, <i>to have been about to admire.</i>	
Participles.	
PRES. mīrāns, <i>admiring.</i>	FUT. mīrātūrus, <i>about to admire.</i>
PERF. mīrātus, <i>having admired.</i>	GER. mīrandus, <i>to be admired.</i>
Gerund.	
GEN. mīrandī, <i>of admiring.</i>	ACC. mīrandum, <i>admiring.</i>
DAT. mīrandō, <i>to, for admiring.</i>	ABL. mīrandō, <i>with, from, by admiring.</i>
Supine.	
FORMER. mīrātum, <i>to admire.</i>	LATTER. mīrātū, <i>to admire, to be admired.</i>

a. Note that Deponent Verbs have *four* participles, — the two active and the two passive. They are the only Latin verbs that have a perf. partic. with an active meaning; as, *hortātus*, *having exhorted*.

b. The Gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs (263. Obs. 1), or in intransitive verbs used impersonally; hence only the gerundives of transitive deponent verbs, or the impersonal forms of intransitive deponent verbs, can be used; as,

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *hortandus*, *fit to be, or must be exhorted.*
2. *pugnandum est mīhi*, *I must fight* (lit., *fighting must be done by me*).
3. *mōriendum est nobīs*, *we must die.*



c. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs may have a passive meaning; as,

EXAMPLE.

1. *ādeptus*, *having obtained*, or *having been obtained*.

280. Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

1. *plūrimīs maritīmīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur*, *we enjoy and use very many maritime productions.*
2. *Caesar oppidō pōtitur*, *Caesar obtains possession of the town.*
3. *lacte vescuntur*, *they live on milk.*
4. *fungitur officiō*, *he performs his duty.*

Obs. Note the translation of the deponent verbs in each of the foregoing sentences; note that each is construed with the ablative, as if it were an accusative. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

281. RULE XLI.—*Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative.

LESSON LXXXIV.

DEPONENT VERBS.

282. A Synopsis of Deponent Verbs of the Four Conjugations is as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
1. <i>mīror</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i> , <i>admire</i> .
2. <i>vēreor</i>	<i>vērērī</i>	<i>vērītus sum</i> , <i>fear</i> .
3. <i>sēquor</i>	<i>sēquī</i>	<i>sēcūtus sum</i> , <i>follow</i> .
4. <i>pōtior</i>	<i>pōtīrī</i>	<i>pōtītus sum</i> , <i>possess</i> .

## PARADIGMS.

Indicative.				
PRES.	mīror mīrāris, <i>or-re</i> mīrātūr mīrāmūr mīrāminī mīrauntūr	vēreor vērēris, <i>or-re</i> vērētūr vērēmūr vērēmīnī vērentūr	sēquor sēquēris, <i>or-re</i> sēquitūr sēquimūr sēquimīnī sēquuntūr	pōtior pōtirīs, <i>or-re</i> pōtitūr pōtimūr pōtimīnī pōtiuntūr
IMP.	mīrābar	vērēbar	sēquēbar	pōtiēbar
FET.	uīrābor	vērēbor	sēquar	pōtiar
PERF.	mīrātūs sum	vērītūs sum	sēcūtūs sum	pōtitūs sum
PLUP.	mīrātūs ēram	vērītūs ēram	sēcūtūs ēram	pōtitūs ēram
F. P.	mīrātūs ēro	vērītūs ēro	sēcūtūs ēro	pōtitūs ēro
Subjunctive.				
PRES.	mīrer	vērēar	sēquar	pōtiar
IMP.	mīrārer	vērērer	sēquērer	pōtirer
PERF.	mīrātūs sim	vērītūs sim	sēcūtūs sim	pōtitūs sim
PLUP.	uīrātūs essem	vērītūs essem	sēcūtūs essem	pōtitūs essem
Imperative.				
PRES.	mīrāre	vērēre	sēquere	pōtire
FET.	mīrātor	vērētor	sēquitōr	pōtītor
Infinitive.				
PRES.	mīrārī	vērērī	sēquī	pōtirī
PERF.	mīrātūs (-a, -um) esse	vērītūs (-a, -um) esse	sēcūtūs (-a, -um) esse	pōtitūs (-a, -um) esse
FET.	mīrātūrus (-a, -um) esse	vērītūrus (-a, -um) esse	sēcūtūrus (-a, -um) esse	pōtītūrus (-a, -um) esse
F. P.	mīrātūs (-a, -um) fore	vērītūs (-a, -um) fore	sēcūtūs (-a, -um) fore	pōtitūs (-a, -um) fore
Participles.				
PRES.	uīrāns	vērēns	sēquēns	pōtiēns
FET.	mīrātūrus (-a, -um)	vērītūrus (-a, -um)	sēcūtūrus (-a, -um)	pōtītūrus (-a, -um)
PERF.	mīrātūs (-a, -um)	vērītūs (-a, -um)	sēcūtūs (-a, -um)	pōtitūs (-a, -um)
GER.	mīrandus (-a, -um)	vērēndus (-a, -um)	sēquēndus (-a, -um)	pōtiēndus (-a, -um)

Gerund.				
GEN.	mirandī	vērendī	sēquendī	pōtiendī
DAT.	mirandō	vērendō	sēquendō	pōtiendō
ACC.	mirandum	vērendum	sēquendum	pōtiendum
ABL.	mirandō	vērendō	sēquendō	pōtiendō
Supines.				
FORMER	mirātum	vērītum	sēcūtum	pōtītum
LATTER	miratū	vērītū	sēcūtū	pōtītū

Obs. 1. The future infinitive is to be given in the active form (the passive being rare); thus of *sēquor* it is *sēcūtūrus esse*, not *sēcūtum iri*.

Obs. 2. The gerund and gerundive of the 3d and 4th conjugations, instead of *-endi, -endus*, may, especially after *i*, end in *-undi* and *-undus*; as, *pōtiundus, faciundū*.

## SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

**283.** Four verbs, having no perfect stems, take the form of the passive in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses only. They form the tenses derived from the present stem regularly. Such verbs, being half active and half passive in form, are called *semi-deponents*, or *neuter passives*. They are:—

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Passive.
<i>audeo</i>	<i>audēre</i>	<i>ausus sum, dare.</i>
<i>gaudeo</i>	<i>gaudēre</i>	<i>gāvīsus sum, rejoice.</i>
<i>sōleo</i>	<i>sōlēre</i>	<i>sōlītus sum, am accustomed.</i>
<i>fīdo</i>	<i>fīdēre</i>	<i>fīsus sum, trust.</i>

SYN. *Prōficiscor*, to set out on a journey; *iter faciēre*, to travel, either at home or abroad; *peregrīnārī*, to travel abroad.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Caesar suōs militēs cōhortātus est.
2. Omnēs admirantur splendōrem virtūtis.
3. Militēs agrōs pōpūlābantur.
4. Mī fili, vērēre pārentēs.
5. Intuēmur praeclāra virtūtis exempla.
6. Virtūtis viam sēquimur.
7. Amīcus mōrītur.

8. Hostēs urbem aggrēdiuntur. 9. Puer, nē mentītus sīs.  
 10. Māgnōs hōmīnēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortūnā. 11. Prae-  
 ceptor gaudēbat. 12. Cīvēs māximē gāvīsī smūt. 13. Rēmūs  
 Nūmitōris grēgēs infestāre solītus est.

Translate into Latin: —

1. We admire, we fear, we approach,<sup>1</sup> we measure. 2. You admire, you fear, you approach, you measure. 3. We admire, we were admiring, we have admired, we had admired.
4. We rejoice, they rejoice. 5. We have rejoiced, they have rejoiced. 6. We dare, we dared, we have dared.
7. We trust, we trusted, we have trusted, we will trust.
8. The garden of the king is adorned.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Use the proper tense of **aggrēdiōr**. Define deponent verbs. Why are these verbs so called? Of what conjugation are they? How many participles may a deponent verb have? What deponents have four participles? How many stems has a deponent verb? What active forms have deponent verbs?

### LESSON LXXXV.

#### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

**284.** The Periphrastic<sup>1</sup> Conjugations are formed by combining the tenses of **esse** with the future active participle and with the gerundive.

##### 1. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

**285.** The Active Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the tenses of **esse** with the future active participle, denotes an *intended* or *future* action.

*Obs.* The subjunctive has no future tense; its place may be supplied, whenever it is necessary to distinguish accurately *future* from *present* time in subordinate clauses, by the periphrastic subjunctive, which may be called the *future subjunctive*.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.
PRES.	āmātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love.</i> āmātūrus es, <i>thou art about to love.</i> āmātūrus est, <i>he is about to love.</i> āmātūrī sūmus, <i>we are about to love.</i> āmātūrī estis, <i>you are about to love.</i> āmātūrī sunt, <i>they are about to love.</i>	āmātūrus sim āmātūrus sis āmātūrus sit āmātūrī simus āmātūrī sitis āmātūrī sint āmātūrus essem
IMP.	āmātūrus ēram, <sup>2</sup> <i>I was about to love, etc.</i>	
FUT.	āmātūrus ēro, <sup>3</sup> <i>I shall be about to love, etc.</i>	
PERF.	āmātūrus fui, <i>I have been about to love, etc.</i>	āmātūrus fuērim
PLUP.	āmātūrus fuēram, <i>I had been about to love.</i>	āmātūrus fuissem
F. P.	āmātūrus fuēro (not used).	
Infinitive.		
PRES.	āmātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	āmātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love.</i>	

II. Passive<sup>4</sup> Periphrastic Conjugation.

286. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the tenses of *esse* with the gerundive, denotes *necessity or duty*.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.
PRES.	āmāndus sum, <i>I am to be loved.</i> āmāndus es, <i>thou art to be loved.</i> āmāndus est, <i>he is to be loved.</i> āmāndī sūmus, <i>we are to be loved.</i> āmāndī estis, <i>you are to be loved.</i> āmāndī sunt, <i>they are to be loved.</i>	āmāndus sim āmāndus sis āmāndus sit āmāndī simus āmāndī sitis āmāndī sint āmāndus essem
IMP.	āmāndus ēram, <i>I was to be loved.</i>	
FUT.	āmāndus ēro, <sup>3</sup> <i>I shall be (worthy) to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	āmāndus fui, <i>I have been, or was to be loved.</i>	āmāndus fuērim
PLUP.	āmāndus fuēram, <i>I had been to be loved.</i>	āmāndus fuissem
F. P.	āmāndus fuēro	
Infinitive.		
PRES.	āmāndus esse, <i>to be fit to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	āmāndus fuisse, <i>to have been fit to be loved.</i>	

**287. Dative of the Agent.****EXAMPLES.**

1. *diligentia colenda est nobis*, we must cultivate a habit of carefulness (lit., (a habit of) carefulness is to us to be cultivated).
2. *Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda*, Caesar had to do everything at one time (lit., everything was to Caesar to be done at one time).
3. *omnibus moriendum est*, all must die (lit., (the necessity of) dying is to all).
4. *Caesari in Galliam maturandum*, Caesar had to hasten into Gaul (lit., (the necessity of) hastening into Gaul was to Caesar).

Obs. In Exs. 1 and 2 note that with the gerundive the person upon whom the obligation rests of doing the action is expressed by the dative; this dative expresses not merely the doer of the action, but the *person interested* in doing it, and is, therefore, to be classified under the Dative of Interest (see 193. 3). Note that the verbs in Exs. 1 and 2 are transitive,<sup>3</sup> and the periphrastic forms have a subject with which they agree in *gender, number, and case*; in Exs. 3 and 4 the verbs are intransitive, the periphrastic forms have no subject, but are of the third person singular, neuter gender. The verb is here used impersonally, but the agent is in the dative. The idiom may be stated as follows:—

**DATIVE OF AGENT.**

**288. RULE XLII.**—The dative of the agent is used with the gerundive, and also often with the perfect passive, to denote the person interested in doing the action.

1. The dative of agent is often used after perfect participles.
2. The *agent* with passive verbs is usually denoted by the ablative with *a* or *ab*.

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. *Patria amanda est.*
2. *Amandus est ille puer.*
3. *Hic liber tibi legendus est.*
4. *Caesar castra moturus est.*
5. *Caesar enim sola decima legione profecturus erat.*
6. *Mihi scribendum est.*
7. *Obsides tibi daturus sum.*
8. *Frumentum Aednis<sup>6</sup> dandum est.*
9. *Epistula tibi scribenda est.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. The town must be stormed by the soldiers.
2. Caesar must hasten into Gaul.
3. They must write the letter.
4. You will have to fortify the town.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The word *periphrastic* is derived from two Greek words, and means *round-about speaking* = the English word *circumlocution* (*circum*, around, and *lōquor*, I speak).
2. The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly.
3. The subjunctive has no future tense. (See 285. Obs.)
4. The passive periphrastic conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. With intransitive verbs used in the passive, the impersonal (263. Obs. 1) form is used, and the agent is in the dative; as, **civibus subv̄eniendum est**, we must help the citizens.
5. Whenever the verb itself takes the dative, the agent is usually expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**; as, **civibus ā vōbīs cōnsulendum**, the interest of the citizens must be consulted by all.
6. In what two ways may this dative be translated?

### LESSON LXXXVI.

#### TABLE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

289. We have learned that there are three stems on which all the tenses of the verb are formed :—

1. The PRESENT STEM, found by dropping *-re* of the Present Infinitive Active, on which are formed the tenses expressing incomplete action; viz.,

- a. The PRESENT, IMPERFECT, and FUTURE INDICATIVE, active and passive.
- b. The PRESENT and IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, active and passive.
- c. The IMPERATIVE, active and passive.
- d. The PRESENT INFINITIVE, active and passive.
- e. The PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.
- f. The GERUND and the GERUNDIVE.

entrate a habit of  
ess is to us to be

nda, Caesar had to  
was to Caesar to be

, (the necessity of)

r had to hasten into  
into Gaul was to

ndive the person  
ou is expressed by  
toer of the action,  
fore, to be classi-  
ote that the verbs  
stic forms have a  
nd case; in Exs.  
ic forms have no  
ter gender. The  
is in the dative.

agent is used  
h the perfect  
in doing the

et participles.  
sted by the abla-

pner. 3. Hic  
mōtūrus est.  
ērat. 6. Mīhī  
. 8. Frūmen-  
rībenda est.

## PRESENT STEM.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Tense, Mode, and Person.		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	
Present.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	âma-o <sup>1</sup>	mône-o	rég-ê-o <sup>1</sup>	audi-o
		2	âma-s	mônê-s	rég-ê-s	audi-s
		3	âma-t	mônêt	rég-ê-t	audi-t
	Plur.	1	âma-mus	mônê-mus	rég-ê-mus	audi-mus
		2	âma-tis	mônê-tis	rég-ê-tis	audi-tis
		3	âma-nt <sup>2</sup>	mônê-nt	rég-ê-nt	audi-nt
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	âmê-m	mônê-m	rég-ê-m	audi-m
		2	âmê-s	mônê-s	rég-ê-s	audi-s
		3	âmê-t	mônê-t	rég-ê-t	audi-t
	Plur.	1	âmê-mus	mônêa-mus	rég-ê-mus	audi-mus
2		âmê-tis	mônêa-tis	rég-ê-tis	audi-tis	
3		âmê-nt	mônêa-nt	rég-ê-nt	audi-nt	
IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> 2	âma	mônê	rég-e	audi	
	Plur. 2	âma-te	mônê-te	rég-ê-te	audi-te	
INFINITIVE		âma-re	mônê-re	rég-ê-re	audi-re	
PARTICIPLE		âma-us	mônê-us	rég-ê-us	audi-us	
GEREND.	<i>Gen.</i>	âma-ndi	mônê-ndi	rég-e-ndi	audi-ndi	
	<i>Dat.</i>	âma-ndô	mônê-ndô	rég-e-ndô	audi-ndô	
	<i>Acc.</i>	âma-ndum	mônê-ndum	rég-e-ndum	audi-ndum	
	<i>Abl.</i>	âma-ndô	mônê-ndô	rég-e-ndô	audi-ndô	
Imperfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	âmâ-ba-m	mônê-ba-m	rég-ê-ba-m	audi-ba-m
		2	âmâ-bâ-s	mônê-bâ-s	rég-ê-bâ-s	audi-bâ-s
		3	âmâ-ba-t	mônê-ba-t	rég-ê-ba-t	audi-ba-t
	Plur.	1	âmâ-bâ-mus	mônê-bâ-mus	rég-ê-bâ-mus	audi-bâ-mus
		2	âmâ-bâ-tis	mônê-bâ-tis	rég-ê-bâ-tis	audi-bâ-tis
		3	âmâ-ba-nt	mônê-ba-nt	rég-ê-ba-nt	audi-ba-nt
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	âmâ-re-m	mônê-re-m	rég-ê-re-m	audi-re-m
		2	âmâ-rê-s	mônê-rê-s	rég-ê-rê-s	audi-rê-s
		3	âmâ-re-t	mônê-re-t	rég-ê-re-t	audi-re-t
	Plur.	1	âmâ-rê-mus	mônê-rê-mus	rég-ê-rê-mus	audi-rê-mus
2		âmâ-rê-tis	mônê-rê-tis	rég-ê-rê-tis	audi-rê-tis	
3		âmâ-re-nt	mônê-re-nt	rég-ê-re-nt	audi-re-nt	
Future.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	âmâ-bo	mônê-bo	rég-ê-m	audi-m
		2	âmâ-bi-s	mônê-bi-s	rég-ê-s	audi-s
		3	âmâ-bi-t	mônê-bi-t	rég-ê-t	audi-t
	Plur.	1	âmâ-bi-mus	mônê-bi-mus	rég-ê-mus	audi-mus
		2	âmâ-bi-tis	mônê-bi-tis	rég-ê-tis	audi-tis
		3	âmâ-bi-nt	mônê-bi-nt	rég-ê-nt	audi-nt
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> 2	âmâ-to	mônê-to	rég-ê-to	audi-to
		3	âmâ-to	mônê-to	rég-ê-to	audi-to
		Plur. 2	âmâ-tôte	mônê-tôte	rég-ê-tôte	audi-tôte
	Plur. 3	1	âmâ-nto	mônê-nto	rég-ê-nto	audi-nto
2		âmâ-nto	mônê-nto	rég-ê-nto	audi-nto	



2. The PERFECT STEM (found by adding to the present stem *-vi* for the 1st and 4th conjugations; *-vi*, or generally *-vi*, for the 2d; and *-si* to the verb-stem of the 3d), on which are formed the tenses in the active voice that express completed action; viz.,

- a. The PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, and FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.
- b. The PERFECT and PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.
- c. The PERFECT INFINITIVE.

## PERFECT STEM.

Tense, Mode, and Person.		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Perfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>amāvī</i>	<i>mōmī</i>	<i>rēxī</i>	<i>audīvī</i>
		2 <i>amāvī-stī</i>	<i>mōmī-stī</i>	<i>rēxī-stī</i>	<i>audīvī-stī</i>
		3 <i>amāvī-t</i>	<i>mōmī-t</i>	<i>rēxī-t</i>	<i>audīvī-t</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>amāvī-mus</i>	<i>mōmī-mus</i>	<i>rēxī-mus</i>	<i>audīvī-mus</i>
		2 <i>amāvī-stis</i>	<i>mōmī-stis</i>	<i>rēxī-stis</i>	<i>audīvī-stis</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-runt, re</i>	<i>mōmē-runt, re</i>	<i>rēxē-runt, re</i>	<i>audīvē-runt, re</i>
Pluperfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>amāvē-rī-m</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-m</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-m</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-m</i>
		2 <i>amāvē-rī-s</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-s</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-s</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-s</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-rī-t</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-t</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-t</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-t</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>amāvē-rī-mus</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-mus</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-mus</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-mus</i>
		2 <i>amāvē-rī-tis</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-tis</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-tis</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-tis</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-rī-nt</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-nt</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-nt</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-nt</i>
INFINITIVE		<i>amāvī-ssē</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē</i>
Future Perfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>amāvē-rā-m</i>	<i>mōmē-rā-m</i>	<i>rēxē-rā-m</i>	<i>audīvē-rā-m</i>
		2 <i>amāvē-rā-s</i>	<i>mōmē-rā-s</i>	<i>rēxē-rā-s</i>	<i>audīvē-rā-s</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-rā-t</i>	<i>mōmē-rā-t</i>	<i>rēxē-rā-t</i>	<i>audīvē-rā-t</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>amāvē-rā-mus</i>	<i>mōmē-rā-mus</i>	<i>rēxē-rā-mus</i>	<i>audīvē-rā-mus</i>
		2 <i>amāvē-rā-tis</i>	<i>mōmē-rā-tis</i>	<i>rēxē-rā-tis</i>	<i>audīvē-rā-tis</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-rā-nt</i>	<i>mōmē-rā-nt</i>	<i>rēxē-rā-nt</i>	<i>audīvē-rā-nt</i>
Future Perfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>amāvī-ssē-m</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē-m</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē-m</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē-m</i>
		2 <i>amāvī-ssē-s</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē-s</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē-s</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē-s</i>
		3 <i>amāvī-ssē-t</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē-t</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē-t</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē-t</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>amāvī-ssē-mus</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē-mus</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē-mus</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē-mus</i>
		2 <i>amāvī-ssē-tis</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē-tis</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē-tis</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē-tis</i>
		3 <i>amāvī-ssē-nt</i>	<i>mōmī-ssē-nt</i>	<i>rēxī-ssē-nt</i>	<i>audīvī-ssē-nt</i>
Future Perfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>amāvē-rō</i>	<i>mōmē-rō</i>	<i>rēxē-rō</i>	<i>audīvē-rō</i>
		2 <i>amāvē-rī-s</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-s</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-s</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-s</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-rī-t</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-t</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-t</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-t</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>amāvē-rī-mus</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-mus</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-mus</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-mus</i>
		2 <i>amāvē-rī-tis</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-tis</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-tis</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-tis</i>
		3 <i>amāvē-rī-nt</i>	<i>mōmē-rī-nt</i>	<i>rēxē-rī-nt</i>	<i>audīvē-rī-nt</i>

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

*Recapitulation.*

Give the meaning, stem, formation, principal parts, euphonic changes, mode, tense, number, and person of each of the following:—

1. audit	dūxērīmus <sup>3</sup>	lēgēbat <sup>6</sup>
2. ērūdiēbat	mīsērunt	pūnīvērunt
3. amāmus	ērūdīvērunt	pangunt
4. dōcēmus	tīmulimus	pētent
5. rēgit	frēgīstī	persuāsērat
6. vōcēmus	clausēris	dōcēbunt
7. vulnērat	rēxērāmus	laudā(vē)ro
8. amā	scrīpsēram	ērūdī(v)erit
9. timent	lēgērant	dūcēbat
10. mōnēbunt	dōcūrunt	exercēbis
11. culpābant	scrībe	ērūdī(v)stī
12. crēdunt	dōnāvērunt	discit
13. mittunt	dēmū	hābitāvērunt
14. frangītis	dōlulimus	vōcat
15. terrētis	mōvērīt	scrīpsēro
16. laudābit	audīvīstis	dēdit
17. clausīmus	lēgīstī	tēnuērat <sup>4</sup>
18. narrant	dōcūstis <sup>4</sup>	narrāte

## Supplementary Exercises:—

1. Laudā, exercē, scrībe, obēdī. 2. Laudēmus, exercēmus, scrībāmus, obēdiāmus. 3. Utinam pāter fābūlam nōvam narret! 4. Fīdem servēmus. 5. Tācēte, puērī. 6. Laudāte, exercēte, scrībāte, obēdīte. 7. Cōpiās mājōrēs hābērēmus. 8. Utinam pāter vēniat! 9. Nē pūgnēmus. 10. Dīcit Cēsārem oppīdum expūgnāvīsse. 11. Dīcit Cēsārem oppīdum expūgnāre. 12. Caesar in Galliā hiēmāre constitīit. 13. Littērās scrībāmus.

Translate into Latin:—

1. He praises. 2. We teach. 3. They write. 4. He hears. 5. They were teaching. 6. He will write. 7. They will hear. 8. We do not ask. 9. They are reading.

## VOICE.

Principal parts,  
and person of

ābat  
fēverunt  
gunt  
ent  
suāsērat  
ēbunt  
ā(vē)ro  
dī(v)ērit  
ēbat  
rcēbis  
dī(vi)stī  
it  
tāvērunt  
at  
pāero  
it  
lērat  
āte

dēmns, exer-  
āter fābūlam  
fēcte, pūfī.  
ōpiās mājōrēs  
ē pūgnēmns.  
1. Dicit Cae-  
allā hiēmāre

rite. 4. He  
te. 7. They  
are reading.

10. Praise the boy. 11. Do not blame the boy. 12. Let us hear.<sup>o</sup> 13. May we hear? 14. We have praised. 15. They had taught. 16. They wrote. 17. He has heard. 18. We have sent. 19. Thou wilt have heard. 20. He has taught. 21. I have called. 22. I had read. 23. I shall have written. 24. I had heard. 25. They had sent. 26. They were teaching. 27. You did not fear. 28. Thou wert praising. 29. I will hear. 30. Ye write. 31. I shall have called. 32. Ye have punished. 33. Do not punish. 34. Do not write. 35. Praise ye the boys. 36. I gave. 37. I have given. 38. We have instructed. 39. Write the letter.

## Supplementary Exercises:—

1. May you write the letter. 2. He determines to remain<sup>r</sup> in the city. 3. He says that Caesar is storming the town. 4. Let us instruct the boys. 5. Would that my friend had written the letter! 6. Would that my father had told the story! 7. He determines to write. 8. May the teacher praise the scholars. 9. Praise ye, teach ye, write ye, punish ye. 10. Would that the teacher had not punished the scholar!

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The first person singular is **āmo** for **āma-o**; **rēgo** for **rēge-o**.

2. The translation is,—

PRÆS. *I love, am loving, do love, etc.* PERF. *I have loved, etc.*

IMP. *I was loving, did love, etc.* AOR. *I loved, etc.*

FUT. *I shall or will love, etc.* PLIV. *I had loved, etc.*

FUT. PERF. *I shall or will have loved.*

3. Account for the *x* in the perfect.

4. A few verbs of the second conjugation form their participial stem without a connecting vowel; as, **dōceo**, **doctum**.

5. Verbs of the third conjugation with a short stem-syllable take their perfect stem by adding *-i* to the verb-stem, and lengthening the stem-syllable (*i* is changed to *ē*); as, **āgo**, **ēgī**.

6. Review the rules for the subjunctive in independent clauses.

7. Review the rules for the uses of the infinitive.

## PRESENT STEM.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Tense, Mode, and Person.		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	
Present.	INDICATIVE.	Sing. 1	am̄-er <sup>1</sup>	mōne-ōr	rēg-ōr	audi-ōr
		2	am̄-ī-s, -re	mōne-ris, -re	rēg-ī-ris, -re	audi-ris, -re
		3	am̄-ī-tur	mōne-tur	rēg-ī-tur	audi-tur
	Plur.	1	am̄-ī-mur	mōne-mur	rēg-ī-mur	audi-mur
		2	am̄-ī-mini	mōne-mini	rēg-ī-mini	audi-mini
		3	am̄-ī-ntur	mōne-ntur	rēg-ī-ntur	audi-ntur
IMPERATIVE.	Sing. 1	am̄-e-r	mōne-ā-r	rēg-ā-r	audi-ā-r	
	2	am̄-e-ris, -re	mōne-ris, -re	rēg-ā-ris, -re	audi-ris, -re	
	3	am̄-e-tur	mōne-tur	rēg-ā-tur	audi-tur	
Plur.	1	am̄-e-mur	mōne-mur	rēg-ā-mur	audi-mur	
	2	am̄-e-mini	mōne-mini	rēg-ā-mini	audi-mini	
	3	am̄-e-ntur	mōne-ntur	rēg-ā-ntur	audi-ntur	
IMPERATIVE.	Sing. 2	am̄-i-re	mōne-re	rēg-ē-re	audi-re	
	Plur. 3	am̄-a-mini	mōne-mini	rēg-ī-mini	audi-mini	
Imperfect.	INDICATIVE.	Sing. 1	am̄-ā-lā-r	mōne-bā-r	rēg-ī-bā-r	audi-bā-r
		2	am̄-ā-lā-ris, -re	mōne-bā-ris, -re	rēg-ī-bā-ris, -re	audi-bā-ris, -re
		3	am̄-ā-lā-tur	mōne-bā-tur	rēg-ī-bā-tur	audi-bā-tur
	Plur.	1	am̄-ā-lā-mur	mōne-bā-mur	rēg-ī-bā-mur	audi-bā-mur
		2	am̄-ā-lā-mini	mōne-bā-mini	rēg-ī-bā-mini	audi-bā-mini
		3	am̄-ā-lā-ntur	mōne-bā-ntur	rēg-ī-bā-ntur	audi-bā-ntur
SUBJUNCTIVE.	Sing. 1	am̄-a-re-r	mōn- re-r	rēg-ē-re-r	audi-re-r	
	2	am̄-a-rē-ris, -re	mōn- re-ris, -re	rēg-ē-ris, -re	audi-rē-ris, -re	
	3	am̄-a-rē-tur	mōn- re-tur	rēg-ē-tur	audi-rē-tur	
Plur.	1	am̄-a-rē-mur	mōn- re-mur	rēg-ē-tur	audi-rē-mur	
	2	am̄-a-rē-mini	mōn- re-mini	rēg-ē-rē-mini	audi-rē-mini	
	3	am̄-a-rē-ntur	mōn- re-ntur	rēg-ē-re-ntur	audi-rē-ntur	
Future.	INDICATIVE.	Sing. 1	am̄-i-hō-r	mōn-i-hō-r	rēg-ō-r	audi-r
		2	am̄-i-hē-ris, -re	mōn-i-hē-ris, -re	rēg-ō-ris, -re	audi-ris, -re
		3	am̄-i-hē-tur	mōn-i-hē-tur	rēg-ō-tur	audi-tur
	Plur.	1	am̄-i-hē-mur	mōn-i-hē-mur	rēg-ō-mur	audi-mur
		2	am̄-i-hē-mini	mōn-i-hē-mini	rēg-ō-mini	audi-mini
		3	am̄-i-hē-ntur	mōn-i-hē-ntur	rēg-ō-ntur	audi-ntur
IMPERATIVE.	Sing. 2	am̄-i-tor	mōn-e-tor	rēg-i-tor	audi-tor	
	3	am̄-i-tor	mōn-e-tor	rēg-i-tor	audi-tor	
	Plur. 3	am̄-a-ntor	mōn-e-ntor	rēg-i-ntor	audi-ntor	
INFINITIVE, GERUNDIVE.		am̄-i-ri am̄-a-ndus, -da, -dum	mōn-i-ri mōn-e-ndus, -da, -dum	rēg-i-ri rēg-e-ndus, -da, -dum	audi-ri audi-ndus -da, -dum	

3. The PARTICIPIAL STEM (found by adding *-tum* to the present or to the verb-stem), on which are formed—

a. The PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE, which, with the proper parts of the auxiliary verb *sum*, forms in the passive voice all those tenses which in the active are derived from the perfect stem.

b. The FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE, which, with *esse* and *fuisse*, forms the future and the future perfect infinitive active.

c. The SUPINES in *-um* and in *-a*, the former of which, with *fr̄*, forms the future infinitive passive.

Tense,  
and PSUBJUNCTIVE.  
INDICATIVE.Perfect.  
SUBJUNCTIVE.

PA

INDI

Imperfect.  
SUBJUNCTIVE.  
INDICATIVE.Fut. Perf.  
INDICATIVE.

F. INF.

F. PL. IN

F. INF.  
F. P. IN

F. PART.

F. SUP.  
L. SUP.

## PARTICIPIAL STEM.

		Tense, Mode, and Person.	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Perfect.	SUBJUNCTIVE-INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-tu-s 2 sum	mōnī-tu-s 2 sum	rec-tu-s sum	audi-tu-s sum
		2	-ta es	-ta es	-tu-s es	-tu-s es
		3	-tu-m est	-tu-m est	-tu-m est	-tu-m est
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	-ti sumus	-ti sumus	-ti sumus	-ti sumus
		2	-tæ estis	-tæ estis	-tæ estis	-tæ estis
		3	-ta sunt	-ta sunt	-ta sunt	-ta sunt
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-tu-s sim	mōnī-tu-s sim	rec-tu-s sim	audi-tu-s sim
		2	-ta sis	-ta sis	-tu-s sis	-tu-s sis
		3	-tu-m sit	-tu-m sit	-tu-m sit	-tu-m sit
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	-ti simus	-ti simus	-ti simus	-ti simus
2		-tæ sitis	-tæ sitis	-tæ sitis	-tæ sitis	
3		-ta sint	-ta sint	-ta sint	-ta sint	
PARTICIPLE.		āmā-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m; pl. -ti, -tæ, -ta	mōnī-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m; pl. -ti, -tæ, -ta	rec-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m; pl. -ti, -tæ, -ta	audi-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m; pl. -ti, -tæ, -ta	
INFINITIVE.		āmā-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m, -ti, -tæ, -ta esse	mōnī-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m, -ti, -tæ, -ta esse	rec-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m, -ti, -tæ, -ta esse	audi-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m, -ti, -tæ, -ta esse	
Pluperfect.	SUBJUNCTIVE-INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-tu-s 3ram	mōnī-tu-s 3ram	rec-tu-s 3ram	audi-tu-s 3ram
		2	-ta 3ris	-ta 3ris	-tu-s 3ris	-tu-s 3ris
		3	-tu-m 3rat	-tu-m 3rat	-tu-m 3rat	-tu-m 3rat
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	-ti 3ramus	-ti 3ramus	-ti 3ramus	-ti 3ramus
		2	-tæ 3ritis	-tæ 3ritis	-tæ 3ritis	-tæ 3ritis
		3	-ta 3rant	-ta 3rant	-ta 3rant	-ta 3rant
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-tu-s 3essem	mōnī-tu-s 3essem	rec-tu-s 3essem	audi-tu-s 3essem
		2	-ta 3essēs	-ta 3essēs	-tu-s 3essēs	-tu-s 3essēs
		3	-tu-m 3esset	-tu-m 3esset	-tu-m 3esset	-tu-m 3esset
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	-ti 3essēmus	-ti 3essēmus	-ti 3essēmus	-ti 3essēmus
2		-tæ 3essētis	-tæ 3essētis	-tæ 3essētis	-tæ 3essētis	
3		-ta 3essent	-ta 3essent	-ta 3essent	-ta 3essent	
Fut. Perf. INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-tu-s 3ro	mōnī-tu-s 3ro	rec-tu-s 3ro	audi-tu-s 3ro	
	2	-ta 3eris	-ta 3eris	-tu-s 3eris	-tu-s 3eris	
	3	-tu-m 3erit	-tu-m 3erit	-tu-m 3erit	-tu-m 3erit	
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	-ti 3erimus	-ti 3erimus	-ti 3erimus	-ti 3erimus	
2	-tæ 3eritis	-tæ 3eritis	-tæ 3eritis	-tæ 3eritis		
3	-ta 3erunt	-ta 3erunt	-ta 3erunt	-ta 3erunt		
F. INF. ACT.		āmā-tūru-s, -ra, -rum esse	mōnī-tūru-s, -ra, -rum esse	rec-tūru-s, -ra, -rum esse	audi-tūru-s, -ra, -rum esse	
F. P. INF. ACT.		āmā-tūru-s, -ra, -rum fuisse	mōnī-tūru-s, -ra, -rum fuisse	rec-tūru-s, -ra, -rum fuisse	audi-tūru-s, -ra, -rum fuisse	
F. INF. PASS.		āmā-tu-m 3iri	mōnī-tu-m 3iri	rec-tu-m 3iri	audi-tu-m 3iri	
F. P. INF. PASS.		āmā-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m 3iōre	mōnī-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m 3iōre	rec-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m 3iōre	audi-tu-s, -ta, -tu-m 3iōre	
F. PART. ACT.		āmā-tūru-s, -ra, -ru-m	mōnī-tūru-s, -ra, -ru-m	rec-tūru-s, -ra, -ru-m	audi-tūru-s, -ra, -ru-m	
F. SUPINES.		āmā-tu-m	mōnī-tu-m	rec-tu-m	audi-tu-m	
I. SUPINES.		āmā-tū	mōnī-tū	rec-tū	audi-tū	

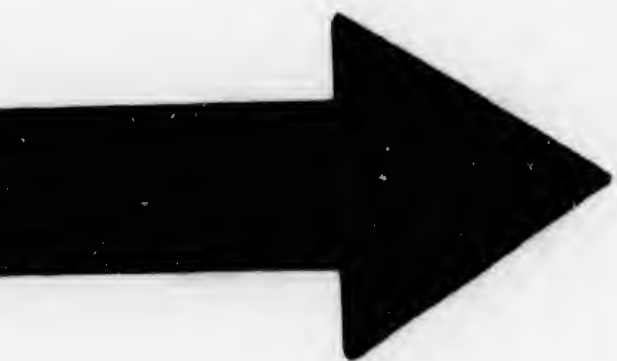
to the present

with the proper  
voice all those  
fect stem.

with *esse* and  
nitive active.

which, with *irē*,





# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



5.0

5.6

6.3

7.1

8.0

9.0

10

11.2

12.5

14

16

18

20

22.5

25

28

32

36

40

45

50

56

63

71

80



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street 14609 USA  
Rochester, New York  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax



## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

*Recapitulation.*

Give the meaning, stem, formation, principal parts, euphonic changes, mode, tense, number, and person of each of the following :—

1. narrātur	āmātī sūmus	vidēmīnī
2. dōcentur <sup>3</sup>	doctī sunt	vincēbāris
3. légēbantur <sup>4</sup>	audītus est	mānēbunt
4. audiēbar	missa est	aedificātis
5. mōnēris	ērūdītī sunt	pārātī ērāmus
6. vōcābēris	lectus est	ērūdītur
7. pūniuntur	vōcātus es	pūnītae sunt
8. dūcēris <sup>5</sup>	mūnītum est	ēdūcātor
9. vincar	pūnītī ērāmus	oppūgnāta est
10. narrantur	laudātus erat	ēdūcātī fuērant
11. mōvēmur	laudātae sunt	culpābāris
12. dōcēre puērōs	puērī exercītī sunt	laudētur
13. audītor	puella ornāta est	vīsī ērant
14. āmēmur	mōnītī ērant	cingētur

## Supplementary Exercises :—

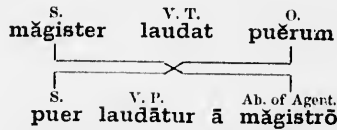
1. Discipūlus ā māgistrō laudātur. 2. Puer, bēne edūcātor. 3. Lābōrā. 4. Dicit puer sē laudātum esse. 5. Dēbēmus laudārī. 6. Milītēs jussī sunt pūgnāre. 7. Discipūlī ā māgistrō dōcentur. 8. Crēdo eum illōs puērōs laudātūrum esse. 9. Bōnī discipūlī stūdent exercērī in littērārum stūdiīs.

## Translate into Latin :—

1. He was told. 2. They are telling. 3. I was (being) taught. 4. We are taught. 5. He is heard. 6. They will be taught. 7. We shall be sent. 8. He was conquered. 9. They were seen. 10. I was being called. 11. Thou wilt have been blamed. 12. He is being praised. 13. Thou wilt have been praised. 14. They have been sent. 15. They have been called. 16. They will have been heard. 17. She has been taught. 18. He has been heard. 19. Ye have been

praised. 20. She has been heard. 21. The boy had been taught. 22. Call ye. 23. Hear ye. 24. We are led. 25. They are exercised. 26. We have been exercised. 27. We had been instructed. 28. They have been punished. 29. It has been finished. 30. He is sent. 31. The town has been stormed. 32. It is being read.

Remember the formula for converting a sentence into the passive form:—



Obs. If the ablative expresses not the Agent or Doer of the action, but only the *cause, means, or instrument*, no preposition is used. Change the following to the passive form; translate into Latin:—

1. The master praises the boys.
2. The general punishes the soldiers.
3. The father is calling the boy.
4. The arrow wounds the soldier.
5. The teacher praises the boys and the girls.
6. The man writes the letter.
7. The soldiers storm the town.

Supplementary Exercises:—

1. The soldiers are praised by their commander.
2. The war has been finished.
3. The soldier was killed by a javelin.
4. Let those boys be praised.
5. Let the letter be written.
6. I think these soldiers will finish the war.
7. They desire to depart.
8. The men are commanded to fight.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The translation is—

PRES. <i>I am being loved, or I am loved, etc.</i>	PERF. <i>I have been loved, etc.</i>
IMP. <i>I was being loved, etc.</i>	AOR. <i>I was loved, etc.</i>
FUT. <i>I shall or will be loved, etc.</i>	PLUP. <i>I had been loved, etc.</i>
	F. P. <i>I shall or will have been loved, etc.</i>

2. The form is inflected as follows:—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
Sing.	āmātus	āmāta	āmātum sum, es, etc.
Plur.	āmātī	āmātae	āmāta sūmus, estis, etc.

3. See above, note 4.

4. Notice that **rĕg + tus = rec-tus.**

5. Verb-stem = **dŭc- + tum = ductum.**

How do you distinguish the conjugations? Give the present stem of the first conjugation. What is meant by the *principal parts* of a verb? What are the principal parts in the passive voice? How is the perfect of each conjugation formed? What verbs take two accusatives of the same person or thing? Give the tense-sign of the imperfect indicative active. How is the participial stem of each conjugation formed? What is the tense-sign of the present? (*Ans.* It has none.) What is the tense-sign of the future perfect? (*Ans.* **amāvĕ-ri-mus.**) Has the indicative any special sign to mark the mode? (*Ans.* No.) What are the personal endings of the present? These endings were originally personal pronouns, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. Remember that the verbal endings contain —

1. The tense-sign; as *-ba-* in **āmā-ba-m.**
2. The mode-vowel; as *-ā-* in **rĕg-ā-s.**
3. The personal ending; as *-s* in **rĕg-ā-s.**

Are the future participle active and supines formed from this stem? (*Ans.* Strictly they are not; the future participle active is an adjective form to nouns in *-tor, -sor*: as, **lec-tor**, fut. part. **lec-tŭrus**; the supine is a noun of the fourth declension in *-tu* or *-su*, nom. *-tum* or *-sum*; but as the form is the same as the participial stem, and as the suffixes begin with *t*, these forms are usually referred to this stem.)



## LESSON LXXXVII.

### GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

#### EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

#### 290. Genitive of Quality.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. **vir mǎximī consiliī**, a man of very great sagacity.
2. **fossa quindĕcim pĕdum**, a ditch of fifteen feet.
3. **vir est excellentis ingĕniī**, he is a man of excellent disposition.
4. **Caesar Dumnōrigem mǎgnī ānimī et mǎgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōvērat**, Caesar knew that Dumnorix was (a man) of great courage and influence among the Gauls.

## 291. Ablative of Quality.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **summā virtūte ādūlescēns**, a youth of the greatest valor.
2. **Cātilīna ingēniō mālō fuit**, Catiline was a man of a bad disposition.
3. **Caesar fuisse trādītur excelsā stātūrā**, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the nouns added for description (as **consiliī, pēdum, ingēniī, ānīmī, auctōritātis**) are all in the genitive case, and that, in every instance, the genitive is accompanied by an adjective (as **māximī, quindēcim, excellentis, māgnī, māgnae**). This genitive cannot be used without an accompanying adjective: as, a man of talent is **hōmo ingēniōsus** (not **hōmo ingēniī**); but, a man of great talent is **hōmo māgnī ingēniī**. Note, further, that in every instance the relation expressed is between two nouns; thus, a ditch of fifteen feet is **fossa quindēcim pēdum**, but when **lātus** is added, we must say **fossa quindēcim pēdēs lāta**, a ditch fifteen feet deep. (Note that **ānīmī** and **auctōritātis**, in Ex. 4, stand in the predicate after the intransitive verb **esse** understood.) A genitive added in this way to a noun for further description is called a DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE, or a GENITIVE OF QUALITY, or OF CHARACTERISTIC; if it stands in the predicate after an intransitive verb, it is called a PREDICATE GENITIVE OF QUALITY, etc. Note that in Exs. 1, 2, 3, under 291, the nouns **virtūte, ingēniō, and stātūrā** are added to express quality, or for further description, and that these nouns are in the ablative. Distinguish the attributive (**virtūte**) and the predicate use (**ingēniō, stātūrā**). The idioms are expressed in the following rule:—

## GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

292. RULE XLIII.—A noun denoting quality, quantity, or description, and having an adjective joined with it, may be put in the genitive or in the ablative.

Obs. The use of the ablative is more common, but the two cases are often used indifferently, and sometimes both are found in the same sentence.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Germānī vīrī corpōrum ingentī māgnitūdīne fuērunt.**
2. **Cātilīna fuit māgnā vī et ānīmī et corpōris.**
3. **Bibraete est oppidum apud Aeduōs māximae auctōritātis.**
4. **Caesar, vir summī ingēniī (or summō ingēniō), prūdentiam cum elōquentiā junxit.**

*Sight-Reading.*

## CÆSAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN.

Erat<sup>1</sup> ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter  
 for because  
 magnitudinē, nisi in altō, constitui<sup>2</sup> nōn pōtērant; militi-  
 size deep (water) station could  
 bus<sup>3</sup> autem — ignōtīs locīs, impēditīs manibus, māgnō et grāvī  
 unknown encumber  
 armorum onēre oppressis — simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum  
 weight load both  
 et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnan-  
 and wave stand-firm  
 dum; cum illi<sup>5</sup> aut ex aridō, aut paulum in āquam prōgressi,  
 while dry (land) a-little advance  
 omnibus membrīs<sup>4</sup> expēditī, nōtissimis locīs, audacter tela  
 limbs free well-known dart  
 cōnicērent, et equos insuēfactōs incitarent.  
 hurl train push-on

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Subject? Position? Eng. = *there was*.
2. Rule for this infinitive?
3. The construction is, **militibus dēsiliendum erat**, *the soldiers had to leap*. Rule for **militibus** being in the dative?
4. Explain these ablatives.
5. To whom does **illi** refer?

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

293. Irregular Verbs deviate from the common inflection in some of the parts formed from the *present stem*. The tenses formed from the perfect and participial stems are inflected alike in all verbs. The forms called irregular are, for the most part, either syncopated or ancient forms.

1. The most common Irregular Verbs are:—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>sum</b> , <i>I am</i> .            | 5. <b>fēro</b> , <i>I bear</i> .              |
| 2. <b>vōlo</b> , <i>I wish</i> .         | 6. <b>eo</b> , <i>I go</i> .                  |
| 3. <b>mālo</b> , <i>I prefer</i> .       | 7. <b>fīo</b> , <i>I am made, or become</i> . |
| 4. <b>nōlo</b> , <i>I am unwilling</i> . | 8. <b>ēdo</b> , <i>I eat</i> .                |
|  | 9. <b>queo</b> , <i>I am able</i> .           |

2. **Pos-sum**, *I am able, I can*, a compound of the adjective **pōtis** (**pōte**), *able*, and **sum**, is inflected as follows:—

	<b>PRINCIPAL PARTS.</b>		
PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. INF.	PARTICIPLE.
<b>pos-sum</b>	<b>pos-se</b>	<b>pōt-uī</b>	_____

**PARADIGM.**

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	pos-sum	pos-sim	pōt-uī	pōt-uērim
2	pōt-es	pos-sis	pōt-uīe'	pōt-uēris
3	pōt-est	pos-sit	pōt-uit	pōt-uērit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	pos-sūmus	pos-sīmus	pōt-uīmus	pōt-uērimus
2	pōt-estis	pos-sītis	pōt-uīstis	pōt-uēritis
3	pos-sunt	pos-sint	pōt-uērunt, -re	pōt-uērint
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	pōt-eram	pos-sem	pōt-ueram	pōt-uissem
2	pōt-erās	pos-sēs	pōt-uērās	pōt-uissēs
3	pōt-erat	pos-set	pōt-uērat	pōt-uisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1	pōt-erāmus	pos-sēmus	pōt-uērāmus	pōt-uissēmus
2	pōt-erātis	pos-sētis	pōt-uērātis	pōt-uissētis
3	pōt-erant	pos-sent	pōt-uērant	pōt-uissent
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	pōt-ero		pōt-uero	
2	pōt-eris		pōt-uēris	
3	pōt-erit		pōt-uērit	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	pōt-erimus		pōt-uērimus	
2	pōt-eritis		pōt-uēritis	
3	pōt-erunt		pōt-uērunt	
	Infinitive.		Participle.	
	PRES. pos-se	PERF. pōt-uisse	PRES. pōt-ēns	

Obs. In forming the compound **possum**, note that **pōtis** drops *is*, and that *t* becomes *s* before *s*; as, (**pōt-sum**) = **possum**. In the perfect, *f* of **fuī**, etc., is dropped after *t*. The infinitive **posse**, subjunctive **possem**, are shortened forms of **pōtesse** and **pōtessem**. **Possum** has no *imperative*, no *future participle*, no *gerund*, and no *supine*; **pōtēns** is used only as an adjective. The omitted forms are wanting.

... nāvēs propter  
... tērānt; mīlītī-  
... māgnō et grāvī  
... dēsiliendū  
... erat pūgnan-  
... uam prōgressī,  
... audacter tēla

... rat, the soldiers  
... refer?

... non inflection  
... stem. The  
... stems are  
... regular are,  
... forms.

... or become.

3. **Prō-sum**, *I help, I profit*, is inflected like **sum**, but retains its original *d* (**prōd-**) before a vowel, and loses it before a consonant; as,

		PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
		PRES. IND. prō-sum	PRES. INF. prōd-esse	PERF. IND. prō-fui	PARTICIPLE.
Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.		
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
<i>Sing.</i>	1	prō-sum	prō-sim	prō-fuī	prō-fuērīm
	2	prōd-es	prō-sīs	prō-fuistī	prō-fuēris
	3	prōd-est	prō-sit	prō-fuit	prō-fuērit
<i>Plur.</i>	1	prō-sūmus	prō-sīmus	prō-fuimus	prō-fuērīmus
	2	prōd-estis	prō-sītis	prō-fuistis	prō-fuēritis
	3	prōd-sunt	prō-sint	prō-fuerunt, -re	prō-fuērint
		IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i>	1	prōd-eram	prōd-essem	prō-fueram	prō-fuissem
	2	prōd-erās	prōd-essēs	prō-fuērās	prō-fuissēs
	3	prōd-erat	prōd-esset	prō-fuērat	prō-fuisset
<i>Plur.</i>	1	prōd-erāmus	prōd-essēmus	prō-fuērāmus	prō-fuissēmus
	2	prōd-erātis	prōd-essētis	prō-fuērātis	prō-fuissetis
	3	prōd-erant	prōd-essent	prō-fuērant	prō-fuissent
		FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i>	1	prōd-ero		prō-fuero	
	2	prōd-eris		prō-fuēris	
	3	prōd-erit		prō-fuērit	
<i>Plur.</i>	1	prōd-erimus		prō-fuērīmus	
	2	prōd-eritis		prō-fuēritis	
	3	prōd-erunt		prō-fuērint	
<b>Imperative.</b>					
PRES.		prōd-es, prōd-este	FUT. prōd-esto, prōd-esto, prō-sunto		
<b>Infinitive.</b>					
PRES.		prōd-esse	PERF. prō-fuisse		<b>Participle.</b>
		FUT. prō-fitūrus			

4. Like **sum** are conjugated **ab-sum**, **ad-sum**, **dē-sum**, **in-sum**, **inter-sum**, **ob-sum**, **prae-sum**, **sub-sum** (no perfect), **super-sum**.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar pōtest iter dāre** (256), *Caesar is able to give, or can give, a passage.*

, but retains its  
re a consonant;

PARTICIPLE.

ECT.  
Subjunctive.

prō-fuērim  
prō-fuēris  
prō-fuērit  
prō-fuērīmus  
prō-fuērītis  
prō-fuērīnt

ECT.

prō-fuissem  
prō-fuissēs  
prō-fuisset  
prō-fuissēmus  
prō-fuissētis  
prō-fuissent

ECT.

o, prō-sunto

ple.

ūtūrus

sum, in-sum,  
super-sum.

o give, or can

2. **Caesar pōtērat iter dāre**, *Caesar was able to give, or could give, a passage.*
3. **Caesar pōtērit iter dāre**, *Caesar will be able to give a passage.*
4. **Caesar pōtuit iter dāre**, *Caesar has been able to give, or could have given, a passage.*

SYN. **Possum**, *I am able*, because I have sufficient power; **queo**, *I am able*, because circumstances allow.

EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following forms:—

1. Pōtest, pōtērat, pōtērit.
2. Possūmus, pōtērāmus, pōtērīmus.
3. Ego possum lēgēre, tu pōtes scrībēre.
4. Caesar oppīdum expūgnāre pōtest.
5. Amīcīs<sup>1</sup> prōdesse possūmus.
6. Caesar pōtest iter Helvētiīs dāre.
7. Divitiācus plūrīmum<sup>2</sup> in rēliqūā Galliā pōtērat.
8. Caesar urbī praeērat.
9. Multī<sup>3</sup> sūpersūmus.
10. Caesar ēquītēs praemittit.<sup>4</sup>

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **202.**
2. **plūrīmum posse**, *to be very powerful*; see Vocabulary.
3. **multī** modifies **nōs** (*we*), the omitted subject of **supersūmus**. Translate, *many of us survive*; *of us* is appositive. See **202**.

If the simple verb is transitive, the compound is transitive, and is followed by the accusative. What is an irregular verb? Mention the most common irregular verbs. Of what is **possum** compounded? Give its composition; account for the euphonic changes.

LESSON LXXXIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

**294.** The Irregular Verbs **vōlo**, and its compounds, **nōlo** and **mālo**, are inflected as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Participle.
1. vōlo	velle	vōluī	—, <i>wish.</i>
2. nōlo	nōlle	nōluī	—, <i>be unwilling.</i>
3. mālo	mālle	māluī	—, <i>prefer.</i>



PRESENT.					
Ind.	Subj.	Ind.	Subj.	Ind.	Subj.
volo	velim	nolo	nolim	maulo	malim
vis	velis	nonvis	nolis	mauis	mauis
vult	velit	nonvult	nollet	mauvult	malit
volumus	velimus	nolumus	nolimus	maulumus	malimus
vultis	velitis	nonvultis	nolitis	mauvultis	malitis
volumt	velint	nolumt	nolint	maulumt	malint
IMPERFECT.					
volebam	vellem	nolebam	nollem	malebam	mallem
volebas	velles	nolebas	nolles	malebas	malles
volebat	vellet	nolebat	nollet	malebat	mallet
volebamus	vellemus	nolebamus	nollemus	malebamus	mallemus
volebatis	velletis	nolebatis	nolletis	malebatis	malletis
volebant	vellent	nolebant	nolent	malebant	malient
FUTURE.					
volum, volēs, vōlet, volēmus, etc.		nolum, nolēs, nōlet, nolēmus, etc.		malam, malēs, mālet, malēmus, etc.	
PERFECT.					
voluī	voluērī	noluī	noluērī	maluī	maluērī
voluistī	voluēris	noluistī	noluēris	maluistī	maluēris
volut	voluērit	nolut	noluērit	maluit	maluērit
volumus	voluērīmus	nolumus	noluērīmus	maluimus	maluērīmus
vulistis	voluēritis	vulistis	noluēritis	maluistis	maluēritis
vulnerunt, or -re	voluērīnt	vulnerunt, or -re	noluērīnt	maluerunt, or -re	maluērīnt
PLUPERFECT.					
voleeram	voleissem	noleeram	noleissem	maleeram	maleissem
voleeras	voleissēs	noleeras	noleissēs	maleeras	maleissēs
voleerat	voleisset	noleerat	noleisset	maleerat	maleisset
voleeramus	voleissemus	voleeramus	noleissemus	maleeramus	maleissemus
voleeratis	voleissetis	voleeratis	noleissetis	maleeratis	maleissetis
voleerant	voleissent	voleerant	noleissent	maleerant	maleissent
FUTURE PERFECT.					
voleero		noleero		maleero	
voleeris		noleeris		maleeris	
voleerit		noleerit		maleerit	
voleerimus		noleerimus		maleerimus	
voleeritis		noleeritis		maleeritis	
voleerint		noleerint		maleerint	
Imperative.					
PRES. nolī, nolite		FUT. nolito, nolito, nolitote, nolunto			
Infinitive.					
PRES. velle nolle malle		PERF. voluisse noluisse maluuisse			
Participles.					
PRES. volēns, willing. nolēns, unwilling.					

Obs. **Nōlo** is a compound of **nē** (*vōn*), *not*, and **vōlo**; **mālo**, of **māgis**, *more*, and **vōlo**, weakened in pronunciation to **mā-lo**. Notice that **nōlo** alone has an imperative. The omitted forms are wanting.

**Syn.** **Aveo**, *long for*; **dēsīdēro**, *desire* what one has had, but now feels the loss of (hence, *regret*); **vōlo**, *wish*; **opto**, *choose*; **cūpio**, *desire* (general term); **gestio**, *desire*, and manifest it by gestures; **cūpio**, *desire, long for* anything.

EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following forms:—

1. Vōlūmus, vōlēbāmus, vōlēmus, vēlūmus.
2. Ego vōlo lēgēre, tū vīs scribēre, frāter vult pingēre.
3. Nōlūmus, nōlēbāmus, nōlēmus, nōlūmus.
4. Puer vult audire.
5. Dum-nōrix quam<sup>1</sup> plūrīmās cīvītātēs hābere vōlēbat.
6. Nōlī<sup>2</sup> scribēre.
7. Mālūmus, mālēbāmus, mālēmus, mālūmus.
8. Mōns, quem ā Lābiēnō<sup>3</sup> occūpārī vōluit, ab hostibus tēnētur.
9. Caesar ab Helvētiīs discēdere nōlēbat.

Translate into Latin:—

1. You are wishing, you were wishing, you will be wishing.
2. They are unwilling, they were unwilling, they will be unwilling.
3. You prefer, you preferred, you will prefer, you have preferred.
4. I have wished, I had wished.
5. You wish to know.
6. We had been unwilling.
7. Do you prefer to read or to write?

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Quam** strengthens **plūrīmās** = *as many as possible*.
2. Prohibitions are often expressed by **nōlī** with the infinitive; translate *do not write*. **Nōlī** is softer than **nē scribe**.
3. Agent after a verb in the passive voice.

What is meant by an irregular verb? In what tenses are they irregular? Give the compounds of **vōlo**. The stem of **vōlo** is *vōl-*, the root-vowel *o* being changed to *ē* or *ū*. The form **vīs** stands for **vōl-is**, **vel-is**, **vil-is** (= **vīs**). **Velle** is for **vel-se**, so **vellem** for **vel-sem**.

	Subj. mālim mālis mālit mālimus mālitis mālint
	māllēm māllēs māllēt māllēmūs māllētīs māllēt
	māllēs, mālet, etc.
	māluērim māluēris māluērit māluērimūs māluēritīs māluērint
	māluissēm māluissēs māluisset māluissēmūs māluissētīs māluissent
	nōlūnto
	māluisse

## LESSON XC.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

## ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

295. The irregular verb *fēro* is inflected as follows:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
<b>fēro</b>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>tūli</b>	<b>lātum</b>

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fēro	fēram	tūli	tūlerim
2	fers	fērās	tūlisti	tūleris
3	fert	fērat	tūlit	tūlerit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērimus	fērāmus	tūlimus	tūlerimus
2	fertis	fērātis	tūlistis	tūleritis
3	fērunt	fērant	tūlerunt, -re	tūlerint
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fērēbam	ferrem	tūlēram	tūlissem
2	fērēbās	ferrēs	tūlērās	tūlissēs
3	fērēbat	ferret	tūlērat	tūlisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērēbāmus	ferrēmus	tūlērāmus	tūlissēmus
2	fērēbātis	ferrētis	tūlērātis	tūlissētis
3	fērēbant	ferrent	tūlērant	tūlissent
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fēram		tūlēro	
2	fērēs		tūlēris	
3	fēret		tūlērit	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērēmus		tūlērimus	
2	fērētis		tūlēritis	
3	fērent		tūlērint	
<b>Imperative.</b>				
PRES. fer, ferte		FUT. ferto, ferto, fertōte, fērunto		
<b>Infinitive.</b>				
PRES. ferre		PERF. tūlisse	FUT. lātūrus esse	
<b>Participles.</b>				
PRES. fērēns		FUT. lātūrus, -a, -um	SUPINES: lātum, lātū	
GERUND: fērēndī, etc.				

PASSIVE VOICE.

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing. 1	fēror	fērar	lātus sum	lātus sim
	2 ferris, -re	fērāris	lātus es	lātus sis
	3 fertur	fērātur	lātus est	lātus sit
Plur. 1	fērimur	fērāmur	lāti sumus	lāti simus
	2 fērimini	fērāmini	lāti estis	lāti sitis
	3 fēruntur	fērantur	lāti sunt	lāti sint
IMPERFECT.				
Sing. 1	fērēbar	ferrer	lātus eram	lātus essem
	2 fērēbāris	ferrēris	lātus erās	lātus esset
	3 fērēbātur	ferrētur	lātus erat	lātus esset
Plur. 1	fērēbāmur	ferrēmur	lāti erāmus	lāti essemus
	2 fērēbāmini	ferrēmini	lāti erātis	lāti essētis
	3 fērēbantur	ferrentur	lāti erant	lāti essent
FUTURE.				
Sing. 1	fērar		lātus ero	
	2 fērēris		lātus eris	
	3 fērētur		lātus erit	
Plur. 1	fērēmur		lāti erimus	
	2 fērēmini		lāti eritis	
	3 fērentur		lāti erunt	
Imperative.				
PRES. ferre, fērimini		FUT. fertor, fertor, fēruntor		
Infinitive.				
PRES. ferri		PERF. lātus, -a, -um, esse or fuisse		FUT. lātum iri
FUT. PERF. lātus fore				
Participles.				
PERF. lātus, -a, -um		GER. fērendus, -a, -um		

Obs. 1. In the Present and Imperfect Tenses of *fēro* the only irregularity is the omission of *e* and *i* in some of the terminations; thus, *fer-s* = *fer-is*, *fer-t* = *fer-it*, *fer-rem* = *fēr-rem*, *fer-re* = *fēr-ere*, etc. The forms of *fēro* are derived from three independent stems, seen in *fēro*, *tūli*, *lātum*.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way:—

af-fēro (ad, fēro)	af-ferre	at-tūli	al-lātum, <i>bring to.</i>
au-fēro (ab, fēro)	au-ferre	ab-stūli	ab-lātum, <i>carry away.</i>
ef-fēro (ex, fēro)	ef-ferre	ex-tūli	ē-lātum, <i>carry out.</i>
in-fēro (in, fēro)	in-ferre	in-tūli	il-lātum, <i>carry into.</i>
of-fēro (ob, fēro)	of-ferre	ob-tūli	ob-lātum, <i>present.</i>
prō-fēro (prō, fēro)	prō-ferre	prō-tūli	prō-lātum, <i>carry forward.</i>
rē-fēro (re, fēro)	rē-ferre	ret-tūli	rē-lātum, <i>bring back.</i>

**296. Ablative of Specification.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **rēx nōmīne fuit**, *he was king in name.*
2. **claudus altērō pēde**, *lame in one foot.*
3. **Helvētīī rēlīq̄s Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt**, *the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls in valor.*
4. **oppīda sua omnia, nūmērō ad duōdēcim incendunt**, *they burn all their towns, about twelve in number.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, **nōmīne**, **pēde**, **virtūte**, and **nūmērō**, show in *what respect* or *particular* the statement is true, *i.e.*, *the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls in respect to valor.* The principle is expressed in the following rule:—

**ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.**

**297. RULE XLIV.—A noun, adjective, or verb may be followed by the ablative to denote in what respect its signification is taken.**

**EXERCISES.**

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following verbs:—

1. Fērīmus, fērēbāmus, fērāmus, fērēmus.
2. Quid fers, mī<sup>1</sup> amīce?
3. Ferte vīvō auxiliūm.
4. Pōpūlus Rōmānus diū injūriās tūlit.
5. Helvētīūs bellum inferre vōlūmus.
6. Fērīmur, fērēbāmur, fērēmur, fērāmur.
7. Auxiliūm milītibus ā dūce fertur.
8. Hī omnēs linguā, instītūtīs, lēgibus inter sē diffērunt.
9. Fer mīhī auxiliūm.
10. Oppīdum Rēmōrum nōmīne Bibrax<sup>2</sup> longē āberat.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We bear, we were bearing, we will bear.
2. They bear, they will bear.
3. He has borne, he had borne, they had borne.
4. We are borne, we were borne, we shall be borne.
5. He is borne, he was borne.
6. He has been borne, he had been borne.
7. Bear aid, they will bear aid, he has borne aid.
8. They differ in language and laws.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

1. **231.** Obs. 1.

2. **Bibrax**, gen. **-actis**, f. (French modern name *Bière*).

LESSON XCI.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

298. The Irregular Verbs *eo*, *I go*, and *ēdo*, *I eat*, are inflected as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>ēo</i>	<i>īre</i>	<i>īvī or -īi</i>	<i>ītum</i>

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>ēo</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>īvī or -īi</i>	<i>īverim or -iērim</i>
2	<i>īs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>īvistī, etc.</i>	<i>īveris, etc.</i>
3	<i>it</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>īvit, etc.</i>	<i>īverit, etc.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>īmus</i>	<i>eāmus</i>	<i>īvimus, etc.</i>	<i>īverimus, etc.</i>
2	<i>ītis</i>	<i>eātis</i>	<i>īvistis, etc.</i>	<i>īveritis, etc.</i>
3	<i>eunt</i>	<i>eant</i>	<i>īverunt, -re</i>	<i>īverint, etc.</i>
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>ībam</i>	<i>īrem</i>	{ <i>īverāam</i> <i>or -iēram</i>	{ <i>īvissem, -iissem</i> <i>or issem</i>
2	<i>ībās</i>	<i>īrēs</i>		
3	<i>ībat</i>	<i>īret</i>	<i>īverat, etc.</i>	<i>īvisset, etc.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>ībāmus</i>	<i>rēmus</i>	<i>īverāamus, etc.</i>	<i>īvissemus, etc.</i>
2	<i>ībātis</i>	<i>irētis</i>	<i>īverātis, etc.</i>	<i>īvissetis, etc.</i>
3	<i>ībant</i>	<i>īrent</i>	<i>īverant, etc.</i>	<i>īvisissent, etc.</i>
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>ībo, ībis, ibit</i>		<i>īverō or -lēro, īveris, etc.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>ībimus, etc.</i>		<i>īverimus, etc.</i>	
<b>Imperative.</b>				
PRES. <i>ī, ite</i>		FUT. <i>īto, itō, itōte, eunto</i>		
<b>Infinitive.</b>				
PRES. <i>īre</i>		PERF. <i>īvisse, -iisse or -isse</i>		FUT. <i>itūrus, -a, -um, esse</i>
<b>Participles.</b>				
PRES. <i>īens</i> (Gen. <i>euntis</i> )			FUT. <i>itūrus, -a, -um</i>	
GERUNDIVE: <i>eundus, -a, -um</i>			GERUND: <i>eundī, etc.</i> SUP. <i>ītum</i>	

Obs. 1. *Eo* is of the fourth conjugation, with variations; the stem is *i* (lengthened to *ī*, except in the future participle and in the supines), which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*; as, *eo*, *eunt*, *eam*, etc.

Obs. 2. *Eo* and its intransitive compounds are used in the passive only impersonally: IND. *itur*, *ibātur*, *ibitur*, *itum est*, etc.; SUBJ. *eātur*, *irētur*, *itum sit*, etc.; but the transitive compounds are used regularly in the passive; *iri* occurs as an auxiliary in the future infinitive passive. (See 251.)

Obs. 3. The compounds of *eo* usually take *-i*, rarely *-iē* in the perfect tenses; as, *ādeo, I approach*, makes *ādīi, ādiēram, ādissem*, etc.

Obs. 4. The compounds of *eo* which have a transitive meaning are conjugated throughout in the passive: as, *ādeo, I approach*; PASS. *ādeor, ādiris, āditur, ādimur, ādimini, ādeuntur*, etc.

Obs. 5. *Ambio, I go about*, retains the *i* throughout, and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation. Hence we find *ambiēbam*, but occasionally *ambibam*, the gerund *ambiendī*, etc. The perfect participle is *ambītus*, though the verbal substantive is *ambītus*.

299. *Edo, I eat.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.      PRES. INF.      PERF. IND.      PARTICIPLE.  
*ēdo*      *ēdere* or *esse*      *ēdi*      *ēsus*

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>ēdo</i>	<i>ēdam</i> or <i>ēdim</i>	<i>ēdi</i>	<i>ēderim</i>
2	<i>ēdis</i> or <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēdās</i> or <i>ēdis</i>	<i>ēdistī</i>	<i>ēderis</i>
3	<i>ēdit</i> or <i>ēst</i>	<i>ēdat</i> or <i>ēdit</i>	<i>ēdit</i>	<i>ēderit</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>ēdimus</i>	<i>ēdāmus</i> or <i>ēdimus</i>	<i>ēdimus</i>	<i>ēderimus</i>
2	<i>ēditis</i> or <i>ēstis</i>	<i>ēdātis</i> or <i>ēditis</i>	<i>ēdistis</i>	<i>ēderitis</i>
3	<i>ēdunt</i>	<i>ēdant</i> or <i>ēdint</i>	<i>ēderunt, -re</i>	<i>ēderint</i>
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>ēdebam</i>	<i>ēderem</i> or <i>ēssem</i>	<i>ēderam</i>	<i>ēdissem</i>
2	<i>ēdebās</i>	<i>ēderēs</i> or <i>ēsēs</i>	<i>ēderās</i>	<i>ēdisēs</i>
3	<i>ēdebat</i>	<i>ēderet</i> or <i>ēsset</i>	<i>ēderat</i>	<i>ēdisset</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>ēdebāmus</i>	<i>ēderēmus</i> or <i>ēssemus</i>	<i>ēderāmus</i>	<i>ēdissemus</i>
2	<i>ēdebātis</i>	<i>ēderētis</i> or <i>ēssetis</i>	<i>ēderātis</i>	<i>ēdissetis</i>
3	<i>ēdebant</i>	<i>ēderent</i> or <i>ēsset</i>	<i>ēderant</i>	<i>ēdisset</i>
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>ēdam, ēdēs, ēdet</i>		<i>ēdero, ēderis, ēderit,</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>ēdēmus, etc.</i>		<i>ēderimus, etc.</i>	
	Imperative.			
	PRES. <i>ēde</i> or <i>ēs, ēdite</i> or <i>ēste</i>			
	FUT. <i>ēdīto</i> or <i>ēsto, ēdīto</i> or <i>ēsto, ēdītote</i> or <i>ēstōte, ēdunto</i>			
	Infinitive.			
	PRES. <i>ēdere</i> or <i>esse</i>	PERF. <i>ēdisse</i>	FUT. <i>ēsūrus, -a, -um esse</i>	
	Participles.			
	PRES. <i>ēdēs</i>		FUT. <i>ēsūrus, -a, -um</i>	
	SUPINES: <i>ēsus, ēsū</i>		GERUND: Gen. <i>ēdendī, etc.</i>	

Obs. 1. *Edo* is of the third conjugation, with variations; *ē* or *ī* before *s* or *t* is dropped, and the *d* of the stem changed to *s*; also the original *s* takes the place of the *r*; as, *ēdē-re* = *es-se*, not *es-re*.

Obs. 2. The passive voice is regular; only *ēstur* is generally used instead of *ēditur*, and *essētur* instead of *ēderētur*. The perfect participle is *ēsus*.

300. The Ablative of Difference.

EXAMPLES.

1. *sōl multīs partībus mājor est quam terra*, the sun is very much (lit., by many parts) larger than the earth.
2. *altēre iter multō expēditius ērat*, the other route was much more passable (more passable by much).
3. *hīc lōcus aequō spātiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesāris ābērat*, this place was (distant by an equal space) the same distance from the camp of Ariovistus and (from that) of Cæsar.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the ablatives **partībus**, **multō**, **spātiō**, express the measure of difference. These words follow the comparatives, **mājor** and **expēditius**; the ablative **spātiō** denotes *extent of space*, which is usually put in the accusative (see 215), but may be in the ablative, as it is in this case, denoting the *degree of difference* (lit., was absent by an equal distance). Hence the following rule:—

ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

**301. RULE XLV.**—The ablative is used, with comparatives and words implying comparison, to denote the measure of difference.

Obs. The ablative of *difference* includes the ablative of *distance*. (See 215. 1.)

EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following verbs:—

1. Imus, ibāmus, ibīmus, eāmus.
2. Ego ābeo, tū ex itīnere rēdis.
3. It, eunt, ibit.
4. Ivit, ivērat, ite, itis, ivērāmus.
5. I, quō tē fāta vōcant.
6. I, lietor, dēligā puērūm ad pālūm.
7. Caesar multō grāvius quērītūr.
8. Unō diē longiōrem mensem faciunt.
9. Hibernia dīmīdiō mīnor (est) quam Britānnia.
10. Multō mājor ālaerītās exercitūi injecta est.
11. Ite, milītēs.
12. Edīmus, edāmus, edunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They go, they were going, they will go.
2. He was going, he will go, he goes.
3. We go, we were going, we will go.
4. Go thou, I go, I have gone, I had gone.
5. The sun is much larger than the earth.
6. The tower was ten feet higher than the wall.
7. My country is much dearer to me than life.
8. They make the year one day longer.

ly *-i* in the perfect, *-adissem*, etc. The prefix *ad-* has a prepositional meaning *approach*; *Pass.*

at, and is conjugated like *esse*. Hence we find *ambitū*, etc. The prefix *ambi-* is *ambitus*.

PARTICIPLE.  
-ēsūm

PERFECT.  
e. Subjunctive.

ēdērim  
ēdēris  
ēdērit  
ēdērimus  
ēdēritis  
ēdērint

PERFECT.

ēdissem  
ēdisēs  
ēdisset  
ēdissemus  
ēdissetis  
ēdisissent

E PERFECT.

ēdis, ēdērit,  
etc.

e, ēdunto

s, -a, -um ēsse

endi, etc.

variations; *ē* or *ī* is changed to *s*; also the prefix *es-*.

The prefix *es-* is generally used in the perfect participle.



## LESSON XCII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

## ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF PRICE. — EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

**302.** The Irregular Verb *fīo*, *I became or am made*, is inflected as follows:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
fīo	fīērī	factus sum

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fīo	fīam	factus sum	factus sim
2	fīs	fīās	factus es	factus sis
3	fīt or fit	fiat	factus est	factus sit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	[fīmus]	fīāmus	factī sūmus	factī simus
2	[fītis]	fīātis	factī estis	factī sitis
3	fīunt	fīant	factī sunt	factī sint
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fīēbam	fīērem	factus ēram	factus essem
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fīēbāmus	fīērēmus	factī erāmus	factī essemus
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fīam, fīēs, etc.		factus ēro, ēris, etc.	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fīēmus		factī erimus	
<b>Imperative.</b>				
PRES. fī, fīte				
<b>Infinitive.</b>				
PRES. fīērī		PERF. factus, -a, -um, esse		FUT. factum īrī
<b>Participles.</b>				
PERF. factus, -a, -um			GER. faciendus, -a, -um	

**Obs. 1.** *Fīo* (which stands for *fa-i-o*) is used as the passive of *fācio*, which has no passive forms (except *fāciendus* and *factus*); on the other hand, *factus sum*, *I have become*, has the meaning of the perfect of *fīo*; *fīērī* is not really a passive form, but an old infinitive active, *fīereī*.

**Obs. 2.** The *i* in *fīo* is always long, except in *fit* and when not followed by *r* (in present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive).

**Obs. 3.** Most compounds of *fācio* with prepositions change *a* to *i* (present stem), and are inflected regularly; the passive ends in *-fīor*; other compounds retain *a* and have *fīo* in the passive.

**Obs. 4.** *Queo*, *I am able*, is conjugated like *eo*, but as it is an unusual verb, it is here omitted; it has a compound, *nēqueo*, *I am unable*.

**303. Genitive and Ablative of Price.**

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *dōmum duōbus tālentīs ēmit*, he bought a house for two talents.
2. *vīgintī tālentīs ūnam ōrātiōnem vendīdit*, he sold a single speech for twenty talents.
3. *pāce bellum mūtāvit*, he exchanged war for peace.
4. *ēmit hortōs tantī*, he purchased the gardens at so great a price.
5. *virtūs māximī aestimātur*, virtue is valued very highly.

Obs. Note that *ēmit*, a verb of *buying*, *vendīdit*, a verb of *selling*, *mūtāvit*, a verb of *exchanging*, are each followed by the ablatives *tālentīs*, *pāce*, denoting the *price*, and fixing it at a *definite sum*; the ablative is used because the *price* is the means by which a thing is *bought, sold, or exchanged*. In Exs. 4 and 5, after the same verbs, *ēmit* and *aestimātur*, the *price*; is expressed by *tantī* and *māximī*, both being in the genitive, and both designating the price *indefinitely*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**ABLATIVE OF PRICE.**

**304. RULE XLVI. — Price is expressed by the ablative when it is a definite sum.**

1. If the price is *indefinitely* expressed, the genitive is used; in this way the genitives of certain adjectives of Quantity, as *tantī, quantī, plūris, mīnōris, māgnī, parvī, etc.*, are used.

**EXERCISES.**

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of each of the following verbs:—

1. *Fīunt, fīebant, fīent, fīāmus.*
2. *Fīmus, fīebāmus, fīēmus.*
3. *Factus est, factī sunt.*
4. *Fī, fīāmus, fīant.*
5. *Fīt, fītis, fīēt.*
6. *Amīcus fīcērī sāpiēns<sup>1</sup> pōtest.*
7. *Duo vīrī consūlēs<sup>2</sup> factī ērunt.*
8. *Caesar eum hīs quinque lēgiōnibus īre<sup>3</sup> contēndit.*
9. *Nēmō fit cāsū bōnus.*
10. *Fiat<sup>4</sup> lūx, et lūx facta est.*
11. *Dumnōrix omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō prētiō rēdēnit.*
12. *Vendo meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam cētērī, fortasse etiā mīnōris.*
13. *Nulla pestis hūmānō gēnērī plūris stētīt quam īra.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. He becomes, they become, they will become.
2. They became, he will become, we have become.
3. Become thou,

l).  
EXERCISE FOR  
r am made, is

ND.  
sum

ECT.  
Subjunctive.

factus sim  
factus sis  
factus sit  
factī simus  
factī sitis  
factī sint

RFECT.

factus essem  
factī essēmus

PERFECT.

s, etc.

UT. factum īrī

us, -a, -um

passive of *fācio*,  
(factus); on the  
ing of the perfect  
infinitive active,

and when not fol-  
luctive).

ons change *a* to *i*  
ve ends in *-ficio*;

nt as it is an un-  
quo, *I am unable*.

he can become good. 4. The soldier sells his country for gold. 5. The soldier values money highly. 6. He sold his corn at a less price. 7. Caesar became consul.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Predicate adjective? 2. Rule for **consulēs**? 3. Rule?  
4. Why subjunctive?

How may *price* be expressed? When is the ablative used? When the genitive?

*Sight-Reading.*CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN (*continued*).

Quod ūbi Caesar ānimadvertit, nāvēs<sup>1</sup> longās (quārum  
and this when (acc.)  
et spēciēs erat barbārīs<sup>2</sup> inūsītātiōr, et mōtus ad ūsum ex-  
appearance unusual motion service  
pēditior) paulum rēmōvērī ab ōnērārīs nāvibus, et rēmīs<sup>3</sup>  
remove of burden oar  
incītārī, et ad lāt' āpertum hostium cōnstītūī,<sup>1</sup> atque inde  
push-on side open thence  
fundīs, sāgittīs, tormentīs hostēs submōvērī<sup>1</sup> jussit. Atque,  
sling engine (acc.) driven order  
nōstrīs mīlītibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem  
delay chiefly depth  
māris, (is) quī dēcimae lēgiōnis āquīlam fērēbat, contestātus  
tenth appeal-to  
deōs ut ea rēs lēgiōnī fēliciter ēvēnīret: "Dēsīlite," inquit,  
happily turn-out  
"mīlītēs, nīsi vultis' āquīlam hostibus prōdēre. Ego certē  
abandon at-least  
meum reipublicae atque impērātōrī officium praestitēro."  
duty fulfil  
Hōc cum māgnā vōce dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit, atque in  
hostēs āquīlam ferre coepit. Tum nōstrī, cōhortātī inter sē,  
exhort  
nē tantum dēdēcus admittērētur, ūnīversī ex nāvī dēsīlū-  
shame permit all-at-once  
runt. Hōs itēm ex prōximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent,  
also nearest caught-sight-of  
subsēcūtī hostibus<sup>2</sup> apprōpinquārunť.  
follow-close approach

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The construction is **jussit nāvēs rēmōvērī**, etc.  
2. Why dative? 3. Why ablative? 4. See **vōlo**.  
The subjunctives can be omitted until the review,

## LESSON XCIII.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.—INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

**305.** Defective Verbs want some of their parts. The following are the most common Defective Verbs that do not use the tenses formed from the present stem:—

1. **coepī**, *I begin.* 2. **mēmīnī**, *I remember.* 3. **ōdī**, *I hate.*

Obs. There is a large number of verbs that are more or less defective; those enumerated here are the most defective of those that are commonly used.

1. **Odī**, **coepī** (for the present of which **incipio** is used), and **mēmīnī** are only used in the Perfect Tenses, and hence are sometimes called *preteritive* (or *past*) verbs.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Tense.	Indicative.			
PERF.	coepī	mēmīnī	ōdī	nōvī
PLUP.	coepēram	mēmīnēram	ōdēram	nōvēram
F. P.	coepēro	mēmīnēro	ōdēro	nōvēro
Subjunctive.				
PERF.	coepērim	mēmīnērim	ōdērim	nōvērim
PLUP.	coepissem	mēmīnissem	ōdissem	nōvissem
Imperative.				
FUT.	( <i>Wanting</i> )	memento, mementōte	(See <i>ting</i> )	
Infinitive.				
PERF.	coepisse	mēmīnisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
FUT.	coepturus esse	—	ōsurus esse	—
Participles.				
PERF.	coeptus	—	—sus	—
FUT.	coepturus	PRES. mēmīnēns	ōsurus	—

Obs. 1. Instead of **coepī** and its tenses, the passive **coeptus sum**, etc., is used before an infinitive passive; as, **urbs aedificāri coepta est**, *the city began to be built.*

Obs. 2. **Nōvī** is properly the perfect of **nosco**, *I learn to know*.

Obs. 3. **Mēmīnī**, **ōdī**, and **nōvī** have in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect the meaning of the present, imperfect, and future respectively.

2. The following have only the tenses formed from the present stem, and these are in many cases incomplete:—

1. **āio**, *I say*.                      3. **fārī**, *to speak*.                      5. **salve**, *hail*.  
2. **inquam**, *I say*.                      4. **quaeso**, *I ask, beg*.                      6. **queo**, *I can*.

a. **Aio**, *I say* (for **āg-io**, cf. **ad-āg-ium**), has only the following forms:—

Person.	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	āio	—	āiēbam	—
2	āis	āiās	āiēbās	—
3	āit	āiat	āiēbat	—
<i>Plur.</i> 1	—	—	āiēbāmus	—
2	—	—	āiēbātis	—
3	āiunt	āiant	āiēbant	—
PRES. PART. āiēns				

Obs. *i* between two vowels (= *j*) is pronounced like *y*; *āi-* is not a diphthong.

b. **Inquam**, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

Indicative.			
PRES.	inquam	IMP.	inquiēbam
	inquis		inquiēbās
	inquit		inquiēbat
	inquīmus		inquiēbāmus
	inquitis		inquiēbātis
	inquiunt		inquiēbant
FUT.	—	PERF.	—
	inquiēs		inquīstī
	inquiet		inquit
Imperative.			
	PRES. inque	FUT. (2 Pers.)	inquitō

Obs. **Inquam**, **inquit**, like the English *say I*, *says he*, are always used parenthetically, themselves and subjects following between commas after a word or words of the quotation. It is used, except in poetry, only in direct quotations. (See 342.)

c. **Fārī**, to speak, a deponent, is used only in the following forms, unless compounded with a preposition:—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Participles.	
PRES. <b>fātur</b>	—	PRES. ( <b>fāns</b> ) <b>fantis</b> , etc. (without a nominative).	
FUT. <b>fābor, fābitur</b>	—	PERF. <b>fātus, -a, -um</b>	
PERF. <b>fātus sum</b> , etc.	<b>fātus sim</b> , etc.	GER. <b>fandus, -a, -um</b>	
PLUP. <b>fātus eram</b>	<b>fātus essem</b>		
Imperative.	Infinitive.	Supine.	Gerund.
PRES. ( <i>Sing.</i> ) <b>fāre</b>	<b>fārī</b>	<b>fātū</b>	<b>fandī</b> , etc.

## INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

Obs. The instrumental ablative is used to express a variety of relations, the most important of which may be stated as follows:—

## ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT.

**306.** The *means* and *instrument* are denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

## EXAMPLES.

- cornibus tauri sē tūtantur**, *bulls defend themselves with their horns.*
- frumentum flumine Arari nāvibus subvexerat**, *he had conveyed corn in ships up the river Arar.*

1. The ablative of means without a preposition is used with **utor, fruor**, etc. (see 280); as, **plūrimis rebus utimur**, *we use*, i.e. *we serve ourselves by means of many things.*

2. **Pōtior**, in the sense of *becoming master of*, takes the genitive; as, **tōtius Galliae pōtīri**, *to become master of all Gaul.*

## ABLATIVE OF MEASURE.

**307.** The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the standard by which anything is measured or judged.

## EXAMPLE.

**māgnōs hōmīnēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortunā**, *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

Obs. 1. The ablative of measure is used with the comparative instead of **quam** with the nominative or accusative. (See 143.)

Obs. 2. The measure of difference is denoted by the ablative. (See 301.) This ablative is common with the ablative of pronouns (**eō . . . quō**) and of adjectives of quantity (**tantō, quantō, multō, paulō**, etc.) and with verbs implying comparison (as, **antēcello, excello, sūp̄ero**, etc.).

Obs. 3. Distance may be denoted by the ablative. (See 301.)

Obs. 4. Price, when a definite sum, is denoted by the ablative. (See 304.) Here belongs the ablative with **dīgnus, indīgnus**. For ablative of specification, see 297.

Obs. 5. Here belongs the ablative, with the adverbs **ante** and **post**, to denote *how long before or after* a thing happens; as, **paucīs ante diēbus**, or **paucīs diēbus ante**, *a few days before*; **paucīs post diēbus**, or **paucīs diēbus post**, *a few days after*. The accusative can be used; as, **ante paucōs annōs**, *a few years before*.

#### ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL.

**308.** The material of which anything is made is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ex** or **dē**, but **cōnstāre**, *to consist*, sometimes omits the preposition.

#### EXAMPLE.

**ānīmō cōnstāmus et corpōre**, *we consist of soul and body*.

Obs. 1. The ablative of material is used with words of plenty and want, especially with verbs signifying *filling, abounding, supplying, furnishing*, and the like.

Obs. 2. **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative of the thing needed, and the dative of the person who needs (wants).

#### EXAMPLE.

**dūce nōbīs ōpus est**, *there is need to us of a leader*.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the thing needed is the subject and **ōpus** the predicate; hence we may say either **dūce nōbīs ōpus est**, *there is need to us of a leader*, or **dūx nōbīs est**, *a leader is a need to us*.

Obs. 4. The adjective **praeditus** is followed by the ablative.

#### EXAMPLE.

**virtūte praeditus**, *endowed with virtue*.

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

**309.** The Ablative of Manner generally takes the preposition *cum*, unless it has a modifying adjective or genitive (when *cum* may be omitted).

Obs. But *cum* is never used with the following ablatives: *mōdō*, *rātiōne*, *mōre*, *gēnēre*, *ritō*, etc.; also, *hāc mente*, *hōc cōnsiliō*, *eā lēge*, *meo pēriculō*, *jūre*, *injūria*, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum cūrā scribit*, *he writes with care.*
2. *cum* (or without *cum*) *māgnā cūrā scribit*, *he writes with great care.*
3. *māgnō flētū auxiliū ā Caesāre pētunt*, *with a flood of tears they seek aid from Caesar.*
4. *intelligēbat māgnō cum pēriculō prōvinciae futūrum (esse)*, *he perceived that it would be attended with the great danger to the province.*
5. *Caesar omnibus cōpiis prōficiscitur*, *Caesar departs with all his forces.*

## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**310.** The Ablative of Accompaniment takes the preposition *cum*, except in a few military and other phrases.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum dēcimā lēgiōne vēnit*, *he came with the tenth legion.*
  2. *subsēquēbātur omnibus cōpiis*, *he followed close with all his forces.*
1. If *WITH* signifies *in company with*, *in conflict with*, *cum* must be used; but relations cross, and whenever manner or accompaniment can be regarded as *means*, the preposition is omitted.

**311.** Ablative of Quality or Characteristic. (See 292.)

Obs. Note the close connection between these three uses of the ablative of manner: the first, *he writes with care*, *care* being an attendant circumstance; the second, *he comes with the tenth legion*, the ablative designating that with which he is attended; the third, *an attendant quality*. (See 292.)



**312.** The Uses of the Ablative may be tabulated as follows :—

1. ABLATIVE PROPER	{	a. The Place from which.
		b. Separation.
		c. Cause (including Source, Origin, frētus, contentus, fido, cōfīdo, diffīdo, and Agency with ā or ab after passive verbs).
2. INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE	{	a. Means, Instrument, Deponents, ūtor, etc.
		b. Measure, Measure of Difference, Price, dignus, indignus.
		c. Comparison.
		d. Specification.
		e. Material, Plenty, and Want, opus, ūsus, praeditus.
		f. Manner, Accompaniment (with eum), Quality.
3. LOCATIVE . . . . .	{	a. Place where.
		b. Time and Circumstance.
		c. Ablative Absolute.

SYN. **Dīco**, say or speak formally; **lōquor** (lōquī), speak or talk (opposed to **tāceo**, keep silent); **for** (fārī), talk, use articulate speech; **āio**, assent, say yes, expresses the assertion of the speaker (opposed to **nēgo**); **inquam**, **inquit**, say I, says he, used to introduce the very words of the speaker, and always comes after one or more words of the quotation (305. 2. Obs.).

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English :—

1. Ait, aisu' āio. 2. Inquit, fatur. 3. Oculīs vidēmus, auribus audimus. 4. Vir lapide interfectus est. 5. Sōlus pōtītus est impēriō Rōmūlus. 6. Vir dūmīcat ferrō. 7. Vir poenā dignus est. 8. "Omnia pēriērunt." inquit Caesar, "cōsūlīte, mīlītēs, vestrae sālūtī." 9. Eādē condiciōne dēditiōnis ūsus est. 10. Germānī virī corpōrum ingentī māgnitūdīne fuērunt.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Learn the synopsis of **coepī**, **mēmīnī**, **ōdī**. What is a *defective verb*? Which defective verbs have in the perfect and pluperfect the meaning of the present and imperfect? How are the uses of the ablative classified? Give the chief uses of the *ablative proper*; of the *instrumental ablative*; of the *locative ablative*,

LESSON XCIV.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — GENITIVE WITH VERB.

**313.** Verbs used only in the third person singular, and not admitting a definite person or thing as the subject, are called *impersonal*.<sup>1</sup>

1. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated like other verbs, but are used, for the most part, in the indicative and subjunctive, and in the present and the perfect infinitives, with traces of participles and gerunds. *Impersonal* is only the name of a use more or less fixed, not of a list of verbs. **Dēcet** (314. 2), etc., are not true impersonals; their subject is an infinitive, or a sentence used as a noun. In the passive voice the idea of the subject must generally be found in the verb itself; as, **militēs pūgnant**, *the soldiers fight*, becomes **ā militibus pūgnātur**, *it is fought* (i.e. *fighting is done*) *by the soldiers*.

Obs. The essence of an impersonal verb is that it has no *analytic* subject, — no subject expressed or understood outside of the verb itself, — whether *person* or *thing*. The classification is purely *formal*, not *logical*. **Fātur, fāma est, fērunť, pōpulus fert**, all mean the same; only **fātur** is impersonal.

2. The synopsis of Impersonal Verbs of the four conjugations may be given as follows: —

- |                         |   |  |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| <b>PRINCIPAL PARTS.</b> | } | 1. <b>constat, constāre, constitit</b> , <i>it is evident.</i> |
|                         |   | 2. <b>licet, licēre, licuit</b> , <i>it is permitted.</i>      |
|                         |   | 3. <b>accidit, accidēre, accidit</b> , <i>it happens.</i>      |
|                         |   | 4. <b>ēvenit, ēvenire, ēvenit</b> , <i>it results.</i>         |

constat	licet	accidit	ēvenit
constābat	licēbat	accidēbat	ēveniebāt
constābit	licēbit	accidet	ēveniet
constitit	licuit	accidit	ēvenit
constitērat	licuērat	accidērat	ēvenērat
constitērit	licuērit	accidērit	ēvenērit
constet	liceat	accidat	ēveniat
constāret	liceret	accidēret	ēveniret
constitērit	licuērit	accidērit	ēvenērit
constitisset	licuisset	accidisset	ēvenisset
constāre	licēre	accidēre	ēvenire
constitisse	licuisse	accidisse	ēvenisse
constātūrum esse	licītūrum esse	—	ēventūrum esse

**314.** The Impersonal uses of verbs may be classified as follows :—

1. Verbs relating to the *weather*: as, **fulgurat**, *it lightens*; **grandinat**, *it hails*; **lūcescit**, *it grows light*; **tōnat**, *it thunders*; **illūcescit**, *it becomes light*.

Obs. Sometimes these verbs are used personally, the name of the deity or some other agent, generally expressing a cognate idea, being expressed as the subject; as, **Juppiter pluit**, *Jupiter rains*; **diēs illūcescit**, *day dawns*.

2. Verbs relating to the *feelings*. The person who feels is put in the accusative; as, **mē misēret**, *it grieves me* (i.e. *I grieve*). The following verbs of the second conjugation belong to this class :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
dēcet	dēcēre	dēcuit	— <i>it becomes.</i>
dēdēcet	dēdēcēre	dēdēcuit	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
libet	libēre	libuit and libitum est	<i>it pleases.</i>
licet	licēre	licuit and licitum est	<i>it is lawful.</i>
liquet	liquēre	—	<i>it is clear.</i>
misēret or } misērētur }	misērēre	misērītum est	<i>it excites pity.</i>
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	<i>it behoves.</i>
piget	pigēre	piguit and pigitum est	<i>it vexes.</i>
placet	placēre	placuit and placitum est	<i>it pleases.</i>
paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	<i>it causes sorrow.</i>
pudet	pudēre	puditum and puditum est	<i>it shames.</i>
taedet	taedēre	(per-)taesum	<i>it wearies.</i>

EXAMPLE.

Latin idiom :—

*Becomes a young man to be modest, or*

*To be modest becomes a young man,*

English idiom :—

*It becomes a young man to be modest,*

ACTIVE.

dēcet vērēcundum esse  
adūlescentem.

Obs. 1. As the English idiom requires a subject, the pronoun *it* is placed before the impersonal verb in translating.

Obs. 2. These verbs are not used in the imperative; the subjunctive is used in its place; as, **pūdeat tē**, *shame thyself*. Some of these verbs have a passive voice, as **misēreor**, *I pity (am moved)*

by pity), and occasionally other parts:— (1) Participles: **dēcēns**, becoming; **libēns**, willing; **licēns**, free; **licitus**, allowed. (2) Gerundives: **poenitendus**, to be repented of; **pūdendus**, shameful. (3) Gerunds: **pīgendum**, **poenitendī**, -ō, -um; **pūdendī**, ō, -um.

ONS. 3. All of these verbs (except **mīsēret**, **oportet**, **taedet**) can have a neuter pronoun as subject, and are then personal: as, **hōc pūdet mē**, this shames me; **haec libent**, these things please. **Libet** and **licet** can have an adjective used as noun as subject, as **nōn omnia licent**, not every thing pleases; and **dēcet** and **dēdēcet** can have any word as subject, as **virtūs vōs dēcet**, virtue becomes you. See 315. 3 (1).

3. Some personal verbs seem, in certain senses, to be used impersonally; but they are not truly so, because the real subject is generally an infinitive or a clause. Such verbs are:—

	PERSONAL.	IMPERSONAL.
<b>accidit</b> . . . . .	he, she (it) falls upon.	it happens (ill).
<b>appāret</b> . . . . .	" appears.	it appears.
<b>attinet</b> . . . . .	" lays hold of.	it belongs to.
<b>condūcit</b> . . . . .	" leads together.	it is useful.
<b>contingit</b> . . . . .	" touches.	it befalls (well).
<b>convēnit</b> . . . . .	" comes together.	it is agreed upon.
<b>expēdit</b> . . . . .	" extricates.	it is expedient.
<b>fallit</b> . . . . .	" deceives	} it escapes.
<b>fūgit</b> . . . . .	" flies	
<b>praetērit</b> . . . . .	" goes past	
<b>intērest</b> . . . . .	" is present at.	it concerns.
<b>jūvat</b> . . . . .	" helps.	it delights.
<b>pātet</b> . . . . .	" is open.	it is plain.
<b>plācet</b> . . . . .	" pleases.	it seems good.
etc.	etc.	etc.

EXAMPLES.

1. ut **Tībēris inter eōs et pons intēresset**, so that the Tiber and bridge might be between them (personal use).
2. **intērest omnium rectē faciēre**, it concerns all to do right (impersonal use).

4. *Intransitive verbs, when used in the passive (the participle is neuter):* as, **curritur**, there is running, or they run; **mīhi crēditur**, it is credited to me, I am believed; **nōn hostibus parcitur**, there is no quarter given to the enemy, or the enemy is not spared; **mīhī invīdētur**, there is envy to me, i.e. I am envied; **hostibus rēsistunt**, they

*resist the enemy* (used personally); **hīs sententiīs rēsistitur**, *resistance is offered to these opinions* (used impers.). When the Agent is mentioned, it is put in the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**: as, (Act.) **Helvētīi fortīter pūgnāvērunt**, *the Helvetians fought bravely*; (Impers.) **āb Helvētīīs fortīter pūgnātum est**, *it was fought bravely by the Helvetians, i.e. the Helvetians fought bravely*; (Act.) **illī pūgnant**, or (Impers.) **pūgnātur ab illīs**, *they fight*.

5. The *passive* of the periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; the participle is then always neuter (see 287. Obs.): as, **mīhī scrībendum est**, *I must write* (lit., *the necessity of writing is to me*); **illī scrībendum est**, *he must write*.

Obs. 1. The persons are expressed in the following way in the present indicative, and similarly in the other tenses: —

**pūdet mē**, *it shames me, or I am ashamed.*

**pūdet tē**, *it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.*

**pūdet eum**, *it shames him, or he is ashamed.*

**pūdet nōs**, *it shames us, or we are ashamed.*

**pūdet vōs**, *it shames you, or you are ashamed.*

**pūdet eōs**, *it shames them, or they are ashamed.*

Obs. 2. The impersonal verbs **libet**, *it pleases*, **licet**, *it is lawful*, and **expēdit**, *it is expedient*, are used with the dative; as, **licet mīhi ire**, *it is lawful for me to go, or I may go*.

### 315. Genitive with Verbs.

#### VERBS OF MEMORY.

1. Verbs of *reminding, remembering, and forgetting*, — **rēcordor** (rarely), **mēmīnī**, **rēmīnīscor**, and **oblīviscor**, — are followed by the genitive (sometimes by the accusative).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **mēmīnī vīvōrum**, *I am mindful of the living.*

2. **rēmīnīscī virtūtīs**, *to remember virtue.*

#### GENITIVE OF CRIME.

2. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting* take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **praetor reum crīmīnis absolvit**, *the praetor acquitted the prisoner of the crime.*

2. **arguit mē furtī**, *he accuses me of theft.*

VERBS OF FEELING.

3. The genitive is used with the following:—

(1) **Misereor, misērēscō, I pity.** (Cf. 314. 2.)

EXAMPLE.

**misērēscō infēlicium, I pity the unfortunate.**

(2) With the impersonals **rēfert** and **intērest**, *it concerns, it interests.* (See 314. 3.)

EXAMPLE.

**intērest omnium rectē faciēre, it is to the interest of all to act rightly.**

a. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun, the forms **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, and vestrā**, are used.

EXAMPLE.

**meā nihil rēfert, it does not concern me.**

(3) The impersonal verbs **misēret, paenitet, pīget, pūdet, and taedet**, take the genitive of the object with the accusative of the person who experiences the feeling. (See 314. 2.)

EXAMPLES.

1. **eōrum nōs misēret, we pity them.**

2. **mē taedet vitae, I am weary of life.**

GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.

4. **Sum**, and verbs of *valuing*, are used with the genitive of a few adjectives (304. 1) to express the *price* or value *indefinitely*. (*Definite price* is expressed by the ablative. See 304.)

EXAMPLE.

**āger nunc plūris est quam tunc fuit, the field is of more value now than it was then.**

VOCABULARY.

**rē-cordor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., remember, recollect.**

**mēmīnī, -isse, def., I remember.** (See 320. Obs. 2)

**rēmīniscor, -iscī (no perf.), dep., recollect, remember.**

**oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītus sum, dep., forget.**

**misēreor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep., pity.**

**misērēscō, -scēre (no perf., no partic.), feel pity.**

**rēfert, it concerns.**

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Mihī ire licuit.
2. Pūgnandum est prō patriā.
3. Rēmīniscere pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.
4. Anīmus mēmīnit practērītōrum.
5. Frātris meī mē mīseret.
6. Contrōversiārum et dissensiōnum oblīviscīmī.
7. Vir reus est crīmīnis.
8. Tē fortūnae tuae paenitet.
9. Rōmānī eum cāpītis damnāvērunt.
10. Illud meā māgnī intērest.
11. Absolvunt tē jūdicēs injūriārum.
12. Plācuit Caesārī,<sup>2</sup> ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mittēret.
13. Eum ad mortem dūcī oportuit.
14. Is ad mortem dūcendus fuit.

Translate into Latin:—

1. I may go.
2. I must fight.
3. The soldiers must fight.
4. We may go.
5. We must depart.
6. I am ashamed of my fault.
7. They accuse him of treachery.
8. A true friend never forgets a friend.
9. Caesar acquitted the soldier of the crime.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Learn the definition and translation of impersonal verbs; how classified; and the synopsis under 313. 3.

2. *It pleased Caesar*, i.e. *Caesar determined*; the clause beginning with **ut** is the subject of **plācuit**.

What is an impersonal verb? Translate **pūgnātur**, **pūgnandum est**, **mē pīget**. What case is used with **licet**? With **oportet**? How is *may*, *can*, expressed in Latin? How is *must*, *might*? In what two ways can *must* be expressed? (See Exs. 13 and 14.) What verbs govern the genitive or accusative? What the genitive alone?

## LESSON XCV.

## CLASSIFICATION OF DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

316. OBS. 1. The pupil has now learned the construction of simple sentences. The rules and principles that have been applied to these sentences are applicable to all independent clauses; it is only in *dependent*, or *subordinate*, clauses that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain an accurate knowledge of the

various kinds of dependent clauses, for this will aid him very much in determining the *tense* and *mood* to be used. We have learned that a complex sentence must contain one or more subordinate clauses. The subordination is expressed by some connecting word, which is always some form of the relative or some word that has acquired the use of the relative. This word may be a pronoun, a conjunction, or a conjunctive adverb.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *The sea*, WHEN it had spent its fury, became calm.
2. *The boy*, WHO reads, learns.
3. He came, THAT he might see the city.
4. He demanded THAT *Cæsar* should not make war upon the *Aduans*.
5. He says THAT the mountain is held by the enemy.
6. IF he conquers, he will rejoice.
7. His friends will abandon him, BECAUSE his father has done so.
8. So great is the power of honesty, THAT we love it even in an enemy.
9. I inquired WHAT he was doing.
10. Life is short, THOUGH it extend beyond a thousand years.

Obs. 2. In Ex. 1 of the foregoing sentences, note that the clause *when it had spent its fury*, expresses time, and is combined with the leading clause, *the sea became calm*, by means of the subordinate temporal conjunction *when*; the clause is, therefore, called a TEMPORAL CLAUSE (see 206. 1). If we combine the two clauses by means of a coördinate conjunction (205), the sentence becomes compound; as, *the sea spent its fury*, AND then it became calm. In Ex. 2, the subordinate clause is introduced by the relative *who* (241. Obs.), and is called a RELATIVE CLAUSE. In Ex. 3, the subordinate clause is introduced by the subordinate final conjunction *that* (206. 5); the clause is, therefore, called a FINAL CLAUSE. The clause in Ex. 5, introduced by *that*, is an INFINITIVE CLAUSE (341. 1). Ex. 6, *if he conquers* is a CONDITIONAL CLAUSE; and in Ex. 7, *because his father had done so* is a CAUSAL CLAUSE. A clause introduced by a consecutive conjunction is called a CONSECUTIVE CLAUSE, as Ex. 8; one introduced by a concessive conjunction, as in Ex. 10, is called a CONCESSIVE CLAUSE.

The relative clause performs the office of an adjective, because *who reads* modifies *boy* = *the reading boy*; it is called an ADJECTIVE CLAUSE. The temporal clause in Ex. 1 performs the office of an adverb, and is, therefore, called an ADVERB CLAUSE; in Exs. 4, 5, and 9, the clauses *that Cæsar should not make war upon the Aduans*, *that the mountain is held by the enemy*, and *what he was doing*, are objects of the transitive verb *demande*d, of *inquire*d, and of *says*, i.e. each performs the office of a noun or substantive, and is, therefore, called a NOUN, or SUBSTANTIVE, CLAUSE. Hence, clauses may be classified as:—



## I. COÖRDINATE, see 205.

II. SUBORDINATE	}	1. <i>Final.</i>	} Named from their meaning, as shown by some introductory word; the same word may introduce clauses of different kinds, according to circumstances.
		2. <i>Consecutive.</i>	
		3. <i>Conditional.</i>	
		4. <i>Comparative.</i>	
		5. <i>Concessive.</i>	
		6. <i>Causal.</i>	
		7. <i>Temporal.</i>	
		8. <i>Interrogative.</i>	
		9. <i>Infinitive.</i>	
		10. <i>Relative.</i>	
		1. <i>Substantive.</i>	} Named from the part of speech whose office they perform.
		2. <i>Adjective.</i>	
		3. <i>Adverb.</i>	

Obs. 3. Noun Clauses include: (1) Infinitive clauses, 342. 1; (2) some final and (3) consecutive clauses, 342. 2 and 3; (4) clauses introduced by **quod**, which give prominence to the *fact stated*, or present it as a *ground or reason*, 342. 4; (5) and dependent interrogative clauses, 342. 5. Adjective Clauses are connected to the clauses on which they depend by means of relative pronouns. Adverbial Clauses are connected to the clauses on which they depend by means of *conditional, comparative, concessive, final, consecutive, causal, or temporal conjunctions*. The pupil should note that sometimes a clause connected by a final or consecutive conjunction becomes virtually the object of the verb on which it depends, and is then classed as a Noun Clause. (See 342. 2 and 3.)

## EXERCISES.

Classify the following sentences: —

1. The bridge, which spans the river, was built by a skillful engineer.
2. When the war closed, Washington retired to Mount Vernon.
3. If you would be happy, you must be active.
4. When the battle was concluded, the commander began to count his loss.
5. He takes exercise, that he may recover his health.
6. The ground is dry, although it has rained.
7. The sun causes (that all things should bloom, *i.e.*) all things to bloom.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a clause? Mention the various classes of subordinate clauses. What is an adjective clause? Substantive clause? Expand the complex sentences in the foregoing lesson into compound sentences. How many kinds of adverbial clauses? Write an adjective clause.

## LESSON XCVI.

## TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## 317. Primary and Secondary Tenses.

Obs. We have learned that tense denotes the *time* of the action; and as time admits of a threefold division, into *present*, *past*, and *future*, there must be at least three tenses to represent an action in present, past, or future time. But in each of these tenses an action may be represented as *incomplete* or as *completed*, and from these two divisions arise six tenses of the Latin verb; viz. :—

1. The Present, denoting *incomplete* action in the present.
2. The Future, denoting *incomplete* action in the future.
3. The Imperfect, denoting *incomplete* action in the past.
4. The Perfect, denoting *completed* action in the present.
5. The Fut. Perf., denoting *completed* action in the future.
6. The Pluperfect, denoting *completed* action in the past.

Each of these tenses also represents the action either as in progress (still unfinished) or at the close of its progress (*i.e.* as now finished). An action may further be represented as being simply brought to pass, without reference to its being continuous or momentary, complete or incomplete. This distinction gives rise to the *indefinite* or *auristic* stage of action, which has no separate tense form. It is expressed by the *present tense* for the present, by the *future* for the future, and by the *aurist* (perfect definite) for the past. The following table will show these temporal relations :—

Time.	Action represented as	Examples.	Common Names.
Present	Incomplete.	<i>I am writing.</i>	Present. Perfect. Present.
	Completed.	<i>I have written.</i>	
	Indefinite.	<i>I write.</i>	
Past	Incomplete.	<i>I was writing.</i>	Imperfect. Pluperfect. Aorist.
	Completed.	<i>I had written.</i>	
	Indefinite.	<i>I wrote.</i>	
Future	Incomplete.	<i>I shall be writing.</i>	Future. Fut. Perf. Future.
	Completed.	<i>I shall have written.</i>	
	Indefinite.	<i>I shall write.</i>	

The rules hitherto given will always enable the pupil to determine what tenses of the subjunctive should be used in independent

clauses. In dependent clauses, the tense of the subjunctive is always dated at the same time as the tense of the leading verb. In order to determine what tense of the subjunctive should *follow* (in the dependent clause) the leading verb, special rules are necessary, called the rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES. For this purpose the tenses of the indicative mode are divided into *two classes*, according as they represent actions as *present* or *future*, or as *past*. The former are called PRIMARY, and the latter SECONDARY, or HISTORICAL, TENSES. The tenses of each class can be seen from the following table:—

## 1. PRIMARY.

PRESENT.	FUTURES.	PERFECT.
āmat, <i>he loves.</i>	āmābit, <i>he will love.</i> āmāvērit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	āmāvit, <i>he has loved.</i>

## 2. SECONDARY.

IMPERFECT.	AORIST.	PLUPERFECT.
āmābat, <i>he was loving.</i>	āmāvit, <i>he loved.</i>	āmāvērat, <i>he had loved</i>

## 318. Sequence of Tenses.

## EXAMPLES.

**Primary.**— Present and Future Time in Dependent Clauses.

## 1. PRESENT—

scio quid āgās, *I know what you are doing.*  
 scio quid ēgēris, *I know what you have done.*  
 scio quid actūrus sīs, *I know what you are going,*

## 2. PERFECT—

cōgnōvī quid āgās, *I have learned what you are doing.*  
 cōgnōvī quid ēgēris, *I have learned what you have done*  
 cōgnōvī quid actūrus sīs, *I have learned what you are going to do.*

## 3. FUTURE—

audiam quid āgās, *I shall hear what you are doing.*  
 audiam quid ēgēris, *I shall hear what you have done.*  
 audiam quid actūrus sīs, *I shall hear what you are going to do.*

## 4. FUTURE PERFECT—

cōgnōvēro quid āgās, *I shall have learned what you are doing.*  
 cōgnōvēro quid ēgēris, *I shall have learned what you have done.*  
 cōgnōvēro quid actūrus sīs, *I shall have learned what you will do.*

## Secondary, or Historical. — Past Time in Dependent Clauses.

## 5. IMPERFECT —

sciēbam quid āgērēs, *I knew what you were doing.*sciēbam quid ēgissēs, *I knew what you had done.*sciēbam quid actūrus essēs, *I knew what you were going to do.*

## 6. AORIST —

cōgnōvī quid āgērēs, *I learned what you were doing.*cōgnōvī quid ēgissēs, *I learned what you had done.*cōgnōvī quid actūrus essēs, *I learned what you were going to do.*

## 7. PLUPERFECT —

cōgnōvēram quid āgērēs, *I had learned what you were doing.*cōgnōvēram quid ēgissēs, *I had learned what you had done.*cōgnōvēram quid actūrus essēs, *I had learned what you were going to do.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note (1) that each verb in the leading, or principal, clauses, of Exs. 1, 2, 3, 4, is in a *primary* tense — present, perfect, future perfect; (2) that each verb in the *dependent*, or subordinate, clauses of the same examples, is likewise in a primary tense, but in the *present* subjunctive when the action is *continued* or *incomplete* (i.e. relatively present or future) with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*, and in the *perfect* subjunctive when the action is *completed* (i.e. relatively past) with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. Note, further, that each verb in the *leading*, or *principal*, clauses, of Exs. 5, 6, 7, is in a *secondary*, or an *historical*, tense, — imperfect, aorist, pluperfect, — and also that each verb in the *dependent*, or *subordinate*, clauses is likewise in a *secondary*, or an *historical*, tense: in the *imperfect* subjunctive when the action is *continued* or *incomplete* with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*, and in the *pluperfect* subjunctive when the action is *completed* with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. The pupil should note that, after a future or future perfect tense, the simple future is represented in the dependent, or subordinate clause, by the *present* subjunctive, and the future perfect by the *perfect* subjunctive; and also that, in such cases, the dependent subjunctive may be *present* or *past*, with reference either to the time of speaking or to the time of the main action: as, in **audiam quid āgās**, the doing may be going on either at the time of speaking or at the time of hearing, i.e. *I shall hear THEN what you are doing NOW*, or *what you are doing THEN* (i.e. *when I hear*). Finally, the pupil should note that, whenever the future in the dependent clause is subsequent to the future of the leading verb, the present or imperfect of the active periphrastic subjunctive is used. Hence, the pupil will observe that the subjunctives in the *dependent* clauses adapt their verbs to the tenses of the verbs in the *leading* clauses;

*i.e.* a primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the subordinate clause, and that a secondary, or an historical, tense in the leading clause is followed by a secondary, or an historical, tense in the subordinate clause. The rule is called the SEQUENCE OF TENSES, and is, in general, the same in Latin as in English. For those dependent sentences that require the subjunctive, the rule may be stated as follows:—

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**319. RULE XLVII.** — A primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; and a secondary tense is followed by a secondary.

Obs. The rules for the Sequence of Tenses are not applicable to indicative clauses (*i.e.* to clauses that have their verbs in the indicative), to conditional sentences (regardless of mode), nor to consecutive clauses. For these, special rules are necessary (see **322. Obs.**; **325**).

**320.** The Sequence of Tenses may be represented as follows:—

<i>Primary Tenses:</i> Present, Perfect (Definite), Future, Future Perfect,	} are followed by	{ The <i>Present Subjunctive</i> , for incomplete action. { The <i>Perfect Subjunctive</i> , for completed action.
<i>Secondary Tenses:</i> Imperfect, Aorist (Perfect), Pluperfect,	} are followed by	{ The <i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i> , for incomplete action. { The <i>Pluperfect Subjunctive</i> , for completed action.

Obs. In the following examples, note that the tense of the subjunctive is always dated at the same time as the tense of the leading verb; *i.e.* the tense of the Latin subjunctive is the same as the tense of the indicative or potential in the English sentence. The commonest tenses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are the present and imperfect, the latter being used in such dependent clauses for the English aorist as well as for the real imperfect.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *vēnio ut videam*, I come to (in order that I may) see.
2. *vēnī ut vidērem*, I came to (in order that I might) see.
3. *Ita mendāx erat, ut nēmō eī crēderet*, he was such a liar, that no one believed him.

In Exs. 1 and 2, the *seeing* is dated as present or past, according as the *coming* is present or past; and, as *may see* and *might see* are present and imperfect (or past) potential, respectively, so we use the corresponding tenses of the Latin subjunctive. In Ex. 3, *crēderet* is used for *believed*, which is an aorist; *crēderet* would also be used for a true imperfect (*was believing*). After primary tenses, the perfect subjunctive is used to represent all past tenses of the indicative or potential, except that unreal conditions (326. 3) must always have their own form, regardless of the Sequence of Tenses (319).

a. The Perfect (Definite) is properly a primary tense; but as its action is commenced in past time, it is often regarded as a secondary tense, and is followed in the dependent clause by a secondary tense.

b. The Present is often used in lively narration for the Aorist, or Historical, Perfect. We say in English, *Cicero discusses the immortality of the soul*, *discusses* being the historical present. It is used whenever the writer wishes to picture vividly some past event as present. It is then really a past tense, and is usually followed by a past tense in the subordinate clause; though often it is followed by a primary tense, with past meaning like itself.

## EXAMPLE.

*Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt, quī dīcērent, the Helvetians (send) sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say (= who should say).*

c. The Subjunctive has no future or future perfect tense; these tenses are, in general, represented in dependent clauses, after a primary tense, by the *present* or the *perfect* respectively (circumstances determining whether the present subjunctive is equivalent to the present or future, etc.; cf. Exs. in 318); and after a secondary tense, by the *imperfect* or the *pluperfect*. But whenever the action in the subordinate clause is to be represented as subsequent to the future of the leading verb, the periphrastic form is used, composed of the tenses of *esse* in combination with the future active participle. (See 285. Obs.)

## EXAMPLES.

1. *rēspōndet sī id sit factum, sē nōcītūrum nēmīnī, he replies that, if this should be done, he will harm no one.*

2. **lōquēbantur, ētiam cum vellet Caesar, sēsē nōn esse pūgnātūrōs**, *they were saying that they would not fight, even when Caesar should wish it.*
3. **interrōgo tē, quid actūrus sīs**, *I am asking you what you will do, or are going to do.*

Obs. 1. Instead of the periphrastic form, **fūtūrum sit** (or **esset**) **ut** may be used; and these words *must be used* when the verb has no participial stem, and therefore no periphrastic form (and also for the future perfect active, which is wanting in the periphrastic conjunction); as, **nōn dūbīto quū scriptūrus sīs = nōn dūbīto quū fūtūrum sit, ut scribās**, *I do not doubt that you will write.*

Obs. 2. The future perfect represents both the perfect definite and the aorist, transferred to the future; as, **fēcēro**, *I shall have done it, or I shall do it.* The future perfect is used with a much greater exactness in Latin than in English; as, **ut sēmentem fēcēris, ita mētēs**, *as you shall have sown, so will you reap.* The English idiom often uses the present, or the simple future, for the future perfect: *as you sow, or as you shall sow, instead of as you shall have sown.*

Obs. 3. In applying the rules for the sequence of tenses, consider (1) whether the leading verb is primary or secondary; (2) remember that the tense of the Latin subjunctive is the same as the tense of the indicative or potential in the English sentence (*may, can, will, and shall* being present; *might, could, would, and should, past*).

#### EXERCISES.

Apply the rules for sequence of tenses to the following examples:—

1. **scripsit ut nōs mōnēret**, *he wrote to warn us, or that he might warn us.*
2. **scripsit ut nōs mōneat**, *he has written to warn us, or that he may warn us.*
3. **quae causa esset quaesiiit**, *he asked what the cause was.*
4. **vēnit ūt videat**, *he has come to see, in order to see, or that he may see.*
5. **vēnit ut vidēret**, *he came to see, or that he might see.*
6. **dux impērat ut milītēs stātiōnēs suās servent**, *the leader commands the soldiers to keep their stations, or that the soldiers should keep their stations.*
7. **cūrat ut puērī corpus exercean**, *he takes care that he may exercise the boy's body (i.e. to exercise the boy's body).*

8. **Hannibal m̄agnum exercitum in Italiā d̄uxit ut cum R̄omānīs p̄ugnāret, Hannibal led a large army into Italy to (that he might) fight with the Romans.**
9. **n̄ōn d̄ūbīto quī Caesar hostēs s̄up̄erāv̄erit, I do not doubt that Caesar has overcome the enemy.**
10. **n̄ōn d̄ūbītābam quī Caesar hostēs s̄up̄erāv̄isset, I did not doubt that Caesar had overcome the enemy.**
11. **consid̄erābimus quid faciāt, we shall consider what he is doing.**
12. **consid̄erābimus quid f̄ec̄erit, we shall consider what he has done.**
13. **consid̄erābimus quid factūrus s̄it, we shall consider what he is going to do (or will do).**

Supplementary Exercises :—

1. **N̄ōn d̄ūbītābam quī Caesar hostēs s̄up̄erāv̄isset.**  
 2. **N̄ēmō d̄ūbītābat quī mil̄itēs fortissim̄e p̄ugnāv̄issent.**  
 3. **N̄ēmō d̄ūbītāt quī pūerum semper b̄ene ēd̄ucāv̄erim.**  
 4. **P̄āter c̄urat ut ēgo b̄ene ēd̄ucer, strenūe exercear, pr̄ob̄e exc̄olar, dil̄igenter ēr̄udiar.** 5. **M̄āgister c̄urābat ut disc̄ip̄ulus b̄ene ēd̄ucār̄etur, strenūe exerc̄er̄etur, pr̄ob̄e exc̄ol̄er̄etur, dil̄igenter ēr̄ud̄ir̄etur.** 6. **N̄ōn est d̄ūbium quī disc̄ip̄ulus ā m̄e b̄ene m̄ōnitus s̄it.** 7. **N̄ōn est d̄ūbium quī urbs ā mil̄itibus exp̄ugnāta s̄it.** 8. **Interr̄ogo t̄e quid actūrus s̄is.** 9. **Interr̄ogāv̄ero t̄e quid actūrus s̄is.** 10. **Interr̄ogābam t̄e quid actūrus essēs.** 11. **N̄ōn d̄ūbītāvī quī scriptūrus essēs, or n̄ōn d̄ūbītāvī quī f̄utūrum esset ut scrib̄er̄ēs.**

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

How many tenses has the indicative mode? How many has the subjunctive? What are primary tenses? Secondary tenses? How do the forms of the perfect subjunctive differ from those of the future perfect indicative? Has the subjunctive future tenses? How is this lack of future tenses supplied in dependent clauses? What is the rule for the tense in a dependent clause containing a subjunctive? Is the rule for sequence of tenses applicable to indicative clauses?



## LESSON XCVII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## I. FINAL CLAUSES.

Obs. Final Clauses are those that tell the *purpose* of an action. They are introduced by the Final Conjunctions **ut**, *that, in order that*; **nē** (or **ut nē**), *that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest*; **quō** (= **ut eō**, *that thereby*), *whereby, in order that*, when there is a comparative in the final clause; the Relative Pronoun **quī** (= **ut is**, *that he*), *in order that he*; and the Relative Adverbs, **ūbi**, **unde**, etc. = **ut ibi**, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

**321. RULE XLVIII.**—Final Clauses take their verbs in the present or imperfect subjunctive, according as the leading verb is in a primary or secondary tense.

Obs. 1. The leading verb may be in any tense, but the present or imperfect subjunctive is usually used in the final clause. The relative pronoun is used in final clauses chiefly after verbs of *sending, coming, giving, choosing*, etc., when the antecedent is indefinite.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **vēnērunt ut pācem pētērent**, *they came to seek peace.*
2. **pūgnāmus nē servī sīmus**, *we fight that we may not be slaves.*
3. **Caesar castella commūnit, quō facilius Helvētiōs prōhibēre possit**, *Cæsar erects forts that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.*
4. **mīlītēs missī sunt quī (= ut iī) urbem expūgnārent** *soldiers were sent (that they might assault), or to assault the city.*
5. **lōcum ūbi cōnsīdēret dēlēgit**, *he selected a place where he might encamp (that he might there, etc.).*

Obs. 2. The ablative **quō** (= **ut eō**) is used in clauses denoting *purpose*, especially with comparatives.

Obs. 3. These final clauses may be translated by *to*; sometimes by *that . . . may, that . . . might*, etc.

**Object Clauses.**

1. After verbs of *admonishing* and *allowing*, *bidding* and *forbidding*, *beseeking* and *compelling*, *resolving* and *striving*, *willing* and *wishing*, Final Clauses become *object clauses*, *i.e.* they are the objects of the verbs on which they depend. With many of these verbs the simple infinitive, or the infinitive with subject-accusative, is often used (see 254. and 342. (2)), instead of *ut* with the subjunctive.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *tē rōgo ut eum jūvēs*, *I ask you to (that you may) aid him.*
2. *contendit ut vincat*, *he strives to (that he may) conquer.*
3. *sēnātus censuērat, ūtī (= ut) Aeduōs dēfendēret*, *the senate had decreed that he should defend the Aeduans.*

OBS. This form of final clauses is usually rendered by *to* (never by *in order to*); sometimes by *that*, with *may* or *might*, etc. These verbs have the sequence of ordinary final clauses.

**Verbs of Fearing.**

2. After verbs of *fearing*, *nē*, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; *ut* (*nē nōn*) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared; *nē nōn* is used regularly after a negative for both.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *tīmeo ut lābōrēs sustīneās*, *I fear that you will not endure the labors (I wish that you may).*
2. *tīmēbam nē ēvēnīrent ea*, *I feared that these things would happen (I wished that they would not).*
3. *nōn vēreor nē nōn rēdeat*, *I do not fear that he will not return.*
4. *vēreor ut rēdeat*, *I fear he may not return.*

OBS. Note that *nē* is translated by *that*; and *ut*, or *nē nōn*, by *that not*. Verbs of *fearing* take the present (representing the present and future indicative) or perfect (representing the perfect or future perfect indicative) subjunctive after a primary tense, the imperfect or pluperfect (representing the present, future, perfect, and future perfect indicative) after a secondary tense.

*Verbs of Hindering.*

3. After verbs of *hindering*, *quōmīnus* is often used instead of *nē*. The Sequence of Tenses is the same as that in Pure Final Clauses (see 321).

## EXAMPLE.

*nīhil Gaiō obstat quōmīnus ad tē scribat, nothing prevents Gaius from writing to you.*

Obs. 1. *Purpose* is not expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive, as it often is in English; thus, *they came to see, i.e.* for the purpose of seeing, must be rendered by *vēnērunt ut vidērent*, or some one of the following forms:—

1. *vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent* (final clause with *ut*).
2. *vēnērunt quī urbem vidērent* (final relative clause).
3. *vēnērunt ad videndum urbem* (gerund with *ad*, rare).
4. *vēnērunt ad videndam urbem* (gerundive with *ad*).
5. *vēnērunt urbem videndī causā* (gerund with *causā*).
6. *vēnērunt urbis videndae causā* (gerundive with *causā*).
7. *vēnērunt urbem visūrī* (future participle).
8. *vēnērunt urbem visum* (supine).

Obs. 2. For Final Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Laudās mē, ut ā mē invicem laudēris.*
2. *Laudābat mē, ut ā mē invicem laudārētur.*
3. *Contendit Caesar māximīs itinēribus in finēs Nerviorum, ut consilia eōrum cōgnosceret.*
4. *Caesar milītēs cōhortatus est, quō mortem fortius obīrent.*
5. *Equitātum, quī sustinēret hostium impētum, nūsit.*
6. *Postulāvit nē Aeduīs bellum inferret.*
7. *Caesar milītēs cōhortatus est, ut fortiter castra dēfendērent.*
8. *Tūceo nē hostis vēniat.*
9. *Tūceo ut pāter vēniat.*
10. *Nōn tūceo nē āmīcus nōn vēniat.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. I praise you in order that I may be praised by you.
2. The soldiers came to seek<sup>1</sup> peace.
3. He sent legates to seek for peace.
4. We come to see you.
5. We came to see you.
6. Caesar encouraged his soldiers in order that<sup>2</sup>

they might meet death more bravely. 7. Cæsar has encouraged his soldiers in order that they may meet death more bravely. 8. Cæsar demanded that the enemy should not make war upon the Æduans. 9. I fear that my friend will not come. 10. I fear lest my friend is not coming. 11. I wish you to answer me.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The English infinitive expressing a purpose (equivalent to *that, in order that*) is to be translated by **ut** with the subjunctive.

2. See 321. Obs. 2.

What is a final clause? When do final clauses become object clauses after verbs of *doubting*? Give the rule for the sequence of tenses in final and complementary final clauses. What is an object clause?

2. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. Consecutive Clauses are those that tell the *consequence*, or *result*, of an action. They are introduced by the consecutive conjunctions **ut, so that; ut . . . nōn, so that . . . not**; (after negatives) **quīn (= quī and nē, how and not), whereby not, but that; quōminus (= ut eō minus), that thereby the less**; and the relative pronoun **quī (= ut is), that, so that**.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

**322. RULE XLIX.** — Consecutive clauses take their verbs in the subjunctive, but the tense (unless it denotes time contemporaneous with that of the principal verb) is independent of the general rule for sequence of tenses, the present, the perfect, or the aorist being often used after past tenses, to give emphasis to the *result* of the action.

Obs. This peculiarity of consecutive clauses arises from the fact that the result of a past action may itself be present, and may be therefore expressed by a present tense. Hence, when the result belongs to present time, (a) the present tense is used, even after a past tense in the principal clause; as, **Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vexāvit, ut ea rēstitūi in antiquum statum nullō mōdō possit**, *Verres so hurried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it* (the present describes a state of things existing at the present time) *etc.* When the action is represented as *completed*, (b) the perfect is used; but when the action is contemporaneous

with that of the principal verb (see Ex. 1, p. 313), then (c) the imperfect is used according to the regular rule for sequence of tenses. The former construction gives emphasis to the *result* of the action; the regular construction gives more prominence to the principal clause. After **accidit**, **contigit**, and other verbs of happening, the imperfect is always used, these verbs giving sufficient emphasis to the *result*; as, **eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna**, *on same night it happened that there was a full moon.*

### 323. Consecutive Clauses are used after —

1. Demonstratives like **tālis**, **tantus**, *such*; **sīc**, **ita**, *so*; **tam**, **ādeo**, *to such a degree*, etc.; and expressions implying characteristic and degree.

2. Verbs and expressions of *hindering* and *resisting*, *delaying* and *omitting*, and the like; also of *doubt* and *uncertainty*. These verbs are followed by **quīn** with the subjunctive, but only after a negative, or a question implying a negative.

(1) For **nē** and **quōmīnus**, with the subjunctive after verbs of *hindering*, etc., see 321. 3.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Germānī rētinērī nōn pōtērant quīn in hostēs tēla cōnīcērent**, *the Germans could not be restrained from hurling darts against the enemy.*
2. **fācēre nōn possum quīn cōttīdiē littērās ad tē mittam**, *I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending you a letter every day.*

Obs. 1. The sequence of tenses after verbs of *hindering*, and the like, is the same as in final clauses; after verbs of *doubt* and *uncertainty*, the same as in interrogative clauses (346).

Obs. 2. After Negative Indefinite expressions (as **nēmō**, **nūllus**, **nīhil**, **quis**), **quīn** is equivalent to **quī nōn**, **quae nōn**, etc.; **quīn** is often used in the sense of **ut nōn**, and after negative expressions of *doubt* and *uncertainty*, in the sense of **ut**. After negative verbs of *hindering* and *refusing*, **quīn** may be used in the sense of **quōmīnus** (see below).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **ādest nēmō quīn vīdeat**, *there is no one present who does not see.*
2. **nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur**, *no one is so brave as not to be disturbed.*
3. **nōn dūbitārī dēbet quīn fuērint poētae**, *it ought not to be doubted that there were poets.*
4. **nēque rēcūsāre quīn armīs contendat**, *and that they do not refuse to contend in arms.*

(2) **Quōmīnus** is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, refusing, and the like* (instead of **nē**). It may generally be rendered by *from* with the present participle.

## EXAMPLE.

**turba impēdīvit quōmīnus vidērem**, *the crowd hindered me from seeing.*

Obs. If verbs of *hindering, etc.*, are negated by **nōn**, or some equivalent word, **quīn** is generally used instead of **quōmīnus**.

## EXAMPLE.

**turba nōn impēdīvit quīn vidērem**, *the crowd did not hinder me from seeing.*

3. Verbs of *effecting*, the negative being **nōn** or **nē**, and the Sequence of Tenses the same as in Final Clauses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant**, *the sun causes all things to flourish.*
2. **fortūna vestra facit, ut irae meae tempērem**, *your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger.*

4. As subject of many Impersonal Verbs and phrases, such as *it happens, it follows, it remains, etc.*

## EXAMPLE.

**accīdit ut esset lūna plēna**, *it happened that the moon was full.*

5. Consecutive Clauses become, after many Impersonal Verbs and expressions, after verbs of *effecting, doubting, hindering, and the like*, Substantive Clauses, and are the real subject or object of the verb, or the explanatory appositive to a noun (see 342. 3).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **fit ut quisque dēlectētur**, *it happens that every one is delighted (subject).*
2. **sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant**, *the sun causes all things to flourish (object).*
3. **ōportēbat damnātum poenam sēquī ut ignī crēmārētui** *it was necessary that the punishment of being burnt should follow (him condemned) his condemnation (appositive).*

Obs. For the Accusative with the Infinitive, or **quod** with the Indicative after Impersonal Verbs, see 342. 1 and 4.

*Relative Clauses of Result.*

**324.** Relative Clauses of Result are used to define or to characterize an *indefinite* or *general antecedent*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **sēcūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent**, storms (of such severity) followed, which (that they) kept our men in camp.
2. **nēmō est quī nōn cūpiat**, there is no one but (who does not) desires.
3. **sunt quī pūtent**, there are some who think.

Obs. Relative clauses of result are used to characterize the antecedent, especially when it is otherwise undefined, as in the foregoing examples, and are, therefore, called *relative clauses of characteristic*. The relative clause, **quae . . . continērent** (Ex. 1), describes the severity of the storms by saying that they kept the men in the camp, *i.e.* by mentioning a *characteristic* of it; in Ex. 2 the relative clause follows a general negative **nēmō**, and in Ex. 3 it follows an indefinite antecedent.

1. Relative Clauses of Result occur also after —
  - a. **ūnus** and **sōlus**.
  - b. **dīgnus**, **indīgnus**, **idōneus**, and **aptus**.
  - c. Comparatives with **quam**, to express *disproportion*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **sōlī centum ērant quī creārī possent**, there were only one hundred who could be appointed.
2. **fābūlae dīgnae sunt, quae lēgantur**, the fables are worthy to be read.
3. **mājus gaudium fuit, quam quod ūniversum hōmīnēs cāpērent**, the joy was greater than (what) men could take in all at once.

Obs. The Indicative may be used after affirmative sentences in the statement of *definite facts* with a definite antecedent; but if a general characteristic is denoted, the subjunctive must be used.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **multī sunt quī ērīpiunt**, many are they who snatch away.
2. **multī sunt quī ērīpīant**, there are many to snatch away.
3. **sunt quī (= the indefinite pronoun quīdam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dīcēre**, some dare not say what they think.

The following table shows the indefinite pronoun or adverb to be used in Negative Final or Consecutive Clauses. In English we may say either *that no one*, or *lest any one*, etc.; but in Latin always *lest any one*, etc.

	Negative Purpose.	Negative Result.
<i>That . . . not</i>	nē	ut nōn
<i>That . . . no, that . . . not any</i>	nē ullus	ut nullus
<i>That no one</i>	nē quis	ut nēmō
<i>That . . . never</i>	nē unquam	ut nunquam
<i>That nothing</i>	nē quid	ut nihil

For Consecutive Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Tantus sibi tō timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret.
2. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugnemus.
3. Nōn dubito quin verum dixeris.
4. Nēmō erat qui euperet me e civitate expellere.
5. Nēmō fuit omnium militum qui vulneraretur.
6. Vir probus dignus est qui ab omnibus diligatur.
7. Rufum Caesar idoneum iudicaverat quem mitteret.
8. Tanta vis prohibitis est ut eam vel in hoste diligamus.
9. Milites retinere nōn possum quin longius procurrant.
10. Quid te impedivit quominus venire.

Translate into Latin:—

1. So great a storm arose that it drove the vessels back.
2. I hindered him from going home.
3. There was no one who did not rejoice.
4. There were some who thought Caesar was in the city.
5. I do not doubt that you speak the truth.
6. What prevents us from seeing the games?
7. The fear of the soldiers was so great that he did not lead them from the camp.
8. He deserves to be heard.
9. He was a suitable person to send (= to be sent).



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Mention a clause of result in English. How does it differ from one of purpose? After what conjunctions are consecutive clauses used? When is **quōmīnus** used? What is a relative clause of characteristic? Give an example of one. What is the antecedent? After what verbs and expressions are consecutive clauses used? When do consecutive clauses become substantive clauses?

## 3. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

## EXAMPLE.

Condition (Protasis). — Conclusion (Apodosis).

*If he has money, he gives it.*

Obs. The foregoing sentence contains a condition, *if he has money*, and is, therefore, called a **CONDITIONAL SENTENCE**. The sentence is **Complex**, because it consists of two clauses, — a principal, or leading clause, *he gives it*, called the conclusion, and a subordinate, or dependent clause, *if he has money*, containing the condition. The clause containing the condition is called the **PROTASIS**, and that containing the conclusion, the **APODOSIS**. The apodosis is regularly introduced by the conditional conjunction *if*, — in Latin **sī**, or a compound of **sī**: as, **nisi**, *unless* (used instead of **sī nōn** after negatives); **etiāmsī**, **etsī**, *although*; **sīn**, *but if* (see Conditional and Concessive Conjunctions, **331**). An indefinite relative may introduce a conditional clause (see **328**). Hence the following definition: —

## PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

**325.** In Conditional Sentences, the clause containing the condition is called the **protāsis**, and that containing the conclusion the **apodōsis**.

*Classification of Conditional Sentences.*

## SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

Present or Past	}	1. <i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>
Indicative		2. <i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>

## FUTURE CONDITIONS.

Fut. Ind. or Pres.	}	1. <i>If he has (or shall have) money, he will give it.</i>
or Perf. Subj.		2. <i>If he had (or should have) money, he would give it.</i>

## UNREAL PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

Imperf. or Prp. Subj.	{	1. <i>If he had money (he has not), he would give it (now, present time).</i>
		2. <i>If he had had money (he had not), he would have given it (then, at some past time).</i>

Obs. One of the most obvious classifications of conditional sentences is that of (1) *present*, (2) *past*, and (3) *future* conditions, the distinction being based on the time to which the condition refers. The pupil, however, should note that in Ex. 1 of the third set, the imperfect denotes *present* time. We may, on the other hand, classify conditional sentences as to their meaning, *i.e.* as to what is implied with regard to the fulfilment of the condition. In the first two examples, no opinion is expressed or implied as to the *truth* of the supposition, *i.e.* as to his *having money*; but what is stated as a fact is this: granted the supposition, *i.e.* that he has money, and the conclusion must follow, *i.e.* he gives it. In Latin any present or past tense of the indicative may be used either in the condition or conclusion. If a past tense is used in this form of conditional sentences, the pupil must take care not to confound such sentences with those in the third set. Observe the distinction between *if he had money, he gave it*, and *if he had money (he has not), he would give it (now)*. The next two examples transfer the condition to the future, and the question as to the fulfilment of the condition is, of course, at present undecided; hence the uncertainty of such conditions being fulfilled is greater than in present conditions. Such conditions may be stated in two ways: the first form, *if he shall have money*, is used to state a supposed future case in a *distinct* and *ivid* manner; the second form, *if he should have money*, is used to state a supposed future case in a less *distinct* and *ivid* manner. We may say *if he should have money*, or *if he should have had money*, the first being used for continued action, and the second (*i.e.* the perfect) for completed action, *i.e.* completed at the time denoted by the verb in the apodosis, although both forms are usually rendered in English by the present. The third set of examples, *if he had money, he would give it*, and *if he had had money, he would have given it*, transfer the conditions to past time, and hence the time for the happening of the conditions has already passed, *i.e.* they state the supposed case in such a manner that we perceive the condition is unfulfilled, *i.e.* he does not have money, and does not give it. In the first example the imperfect, a *past tense*, is used to state the unfulfilment or unreality of the condition in *present time*. In both sentences the supposed case is represented as *unreal*, or *contrary to fact*, and the conclusion states what would have been the result if the condition had been fulfilled. In Latin, the subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion, — in the first the imperfect, and in the second the pluperfect. The imperfect refers

to *present time*, and the pluperfect to *past time*. Hence the following classification of conditional sentences:—

SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

1. Simple Present and Past Conditions, nothing implied as to their fulfilment. Assume as a fact the supposition, and the conclusion must follow: **Any present or past tense of the indicative in both clauses.**

EXAMPLES.

- a. PRESENT: *sī pĕcūniam hābet, dat, if he has money, he gives it.*  
 b. PAST: *sī pĕcūniam hābēbat, dābat, if he had money, he gave it.*

FUTURE CONDITIONS.

2. Future Conditions may be stated in two ways: (1) More *distinct* and *vivid*, the future indicative being used in both clauses; (2) less *distinct* and *vivid* (i.e. less probable), the subjunctive being used in both clauses. The present subjunctive is used for continued action, the perfect subjunctive for completed action.

EXAMPLES.

- a. *sī pĕcūniam hābēbit, dābit, if he has (i.e. shall have) money, he will give it.*  
 b. *sī pĕcūniam hābeat, det, if he should have money, he would give it.*  
 c. *sī pĕcūniam habuĕrit, dēdĕrit, if he should have had money, he would have given it. (This form is rare.)*

UNREAL PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

3. Unreal Present and Past Conditions, unfulfilled in present or past time: **Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.**

EXAMPLES.

- a. PRESENT: *sī pĕcūniam hābĕret, dāret, if he had money (he has not), he would give it (now, present time).*  
 b. PAST: *sī pĕcūniam hābuisset, dēdisset, if he had had money (he had not), he would have given it (then, at some past time).*

Obs. The pupil should note that the rules for Sequence of Tenses are not applicable to Conditional Sentences (see 319. Obs.). For conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse, see 355.

## MODE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**326. RULE L.—Conditional Sentences with *sī, nīst, nī, sin*, take—**

## SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

1. Any present or past tense of the indicative in both clauses when nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *sī ādest, bēne est*, if he is here, it is well.
2. *sī ādērat, bēne ērat*, if he was here, it was well.
3. *sī vālet, laetor*, if he is well, I rejoice.
4. *sī vālēbat, laetābar*, if he was well, I was rejoicing.

Obs. As stated in the rule, the mode of the conclusion (apodosis) is, as a rule, in the indicative; but it may be also in the imperative or subjunctive, according as a *command, wish, or modest assertion* (278. 2) is to be expressed.

## Example.

*sī dormīs, expergiscēre*, if you are sleeping, awake.

## FUTURE CONDITIONS.

2. The future indicative in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a *distinct and vivid* manner; the present or perfect subjunctive in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a less *distinct and vivid* manner.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *sī id crēdēs, errābis*, if you shall believe that you will go wrong.
2. *sī adsit, bēne sit*, if he should (hereafter) be here, it would be well.
3. *sī adfuērit, bēne sit*, if you should have been here, it would be well.
4. *sī id crēdīdēris* (rare), *errāvēris*, if you believe (= should have believed) that, you would go (= have gone) wrong.

Obs. 1. If the action of the condition is regarded as completed before that of the conclusion begins, the future perfect indicative is used instead of the future, or the perfect subjunctive instead of the present subjunctive.

## Examples.

1. *sī mīlītēs hortātus ērit, fortīter pūgnābunt*, if he shall have encouraged the soldiers, they will fight bravely.

2. *sī mīlītēs hortātus sit, fortiter pūgent, if he should have encouraged the soldiers, they would fight bravely.*

UNREAL PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

3. **The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses, to represent the supposed case as *unreal*, or *contrary to fact*. The imperfect denotes *present time*, and the pluperfect *past*.**

EXAMPLES.

1. *sī ādesset, bēne esset, if he were (now) here (he is not), it would be well.*
2. *sī adfuisset, bēne fuisset, if he had (then) been here (he was not), it would have been well.*
3. *sī vālēret, laetārer, if he were (now) well, I would rejoice.*
4. *sī vāluisset, laetātus essem, if he had (then) been well, I would have rejoiced.*

*Conditional Clauses after Dum, Mōdo, and Dummōdo.*

**327.** Conditional Clauses introduced by *dum*, *mōdo*, and *dummōdo* (negative *dum nē*, *mōdo nē*, *dummōdo nē*), *if only, provided that*, take the present or imperfect subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

1. *dummōdo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit, provided that the city wall is between us.*
2. *dum rēs māneant, verba fingant, if only the facts remain, they may make up words.*

Obs. 1. The Apodosis — except in a few involved forms of conditional sentences — regularly corresponds in mode with the Apodosis (see foregoing examples). But see 326. Obs.

Obs. 2. Frequently the present subjunctive of a *future* condition becomes imperfect by sequence of tenses. For conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse, see 355.

1. Verbs in the conclusion of unreal conditions are sometimes in the imperfect or pluperfect indicative (the indicative is regularly used after verbs denoting *duty, necessity, propriety, ability*, and the like); also, the historical perfect

of other verbs when accompanied by **paene** or **prōpe**, and the periphrastic forms in **-rus** and **-dus**. In these cases the conditional *idea* is sufficiently expressed in the meaning of the words, and the regular conditional form is, therefore, neglected.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **dēlērī exercitus pōtuit, sī persēcūtī victōrēs essent**, *the army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.*
2. **sī Rōmāe prīvātus esset hoc tempōre, tāmen is ērat dēligendus**, *if he were at this time a private citizen of Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.*
3. **pons iter paene hostibus dēdit, nī ūnus vīr fuisset**, *the bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have furnished it) had there not been one man.*

## DISGUISED OR OMITTED CONDITIONS.

**328.** A condition is sometimes introduced by an Indefinite Relative, or by a Participial, Imperative, or Interrogative Clause (instead of a regular protasis); or it may be contained in a single word or phrase, or otherwise implied in the context.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **quī sēcum lōquī pōtērit, sermōnem altērīus nōn rēquīret**, *if any one (let he who) shall be able to converse with himself, he will not need the conversation of another.*
2. **ēpistulā acceptā, prōfectus essem**. *if I had received a letter, I should have set out.*
3. **nulla prōfectō ālia gens tantā mole clādīs nōn obrūta esset**, *surely no other nation would have failed to be crushed by such a weight of disaster (i.e. if such a weight of disaster had come upon it; condition implied in tantā mōle).*

Obs. For Conditional Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see **355**.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Sī hoc faciāt, bēne est.** 2. **Sī hoc faciāt, bēne sit.**
3. **Sī hoc fēcisset, bēne fuisset.** 4. **Sī hoc faciēret, bēne esset.** 5. **Sī tū mē laudābis, ēgo tē laudābo.** 6. **Sī quid hābet. dat.** 7. **Sī Helvétii Allobrogibus sātisfaciant, cum iis pacem faciām.** 8. **Sī quid hābēisset, dēdisset.**

Translate into Latin : —

1. If I do this, it is well. 2. If I should do this, it would be well. 3. If I had done this, it would have been well. 4. If he says this, he is mistaken. 5. If he speaks the truth, he will be praised. 6. If he had had money, he would have given it. 7. If he had spoken the truth, he would have been praised. 8. If you were here, you would think differently. 9. If this were so, I should be glad.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a conditional sentence? Of how many parts does it consist? What name is given to each part? How may conditional sentences be classified? Is a conditional sentence complex or compound? What tenses does the subjunctive lack? How is this lack sometimes supplied? Is the *conclusion* a principal or a dependent clause? What time does each tense denote?

#### 4. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. Comparative Clauses are those that illustrate or explain the leading statement, by furnishing a standard of measure. The leading clause often has some correlative word like *ita, sic, so*, etc. Comparative clauses are introduced by comparative conjunctions; as,

<i>quam, than, as.</i>	} <i>as, so as.</i>	<i>tanquam,</i>	} <i>as if.</i>
<i>ut, utī,</i>		<i>quāsi,</i>	
<i>sicut or sicūti,</i>		<i>ut sī,</i>	
<i>quemadmōdum,</i>		<i>vēlut sī,</i>	
<i>vēlut, just as.</i>		<i>āc sī,</i>	

#### MODE IN COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

**329. RULE LI.** — Comparative Clauses introduced by *ut, utī, sicut, quēadmōdum*, etc., followed by the demonstrative particles *ita, sic* (so), etc., regularly take the indicative unless the subjunctive is required, as in indirect discourse (348) or as in conditional sentences (326).

#### EXAMPLE.

*ut sēmentem fēcēris, ita mētēs, as you shall have sown, so shall you reap.*

**330. RULE LII. — Comparative Clauses introduced by *ac si, ut si, quamsi, quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, veltut, veltut si*, are, in fact, conditional clauses, of which the conclusion is omitted or implied, and therefore take the subjunctive like other conditional sentences; but the tense is determined by the regular rules for the sequence of tenses (319).**

## EXAMPLES.

1. *mē adspicītis, quāsi monstrum sim, you gaze at me as (you would gaze) if I were a monster.*
2. *Sēquānī absentis Ariovistī crūdēlītātem veltut sī cōram ādesset, horrēbant, the Sequani kept shuddering at the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus as (they would have shuddered) if he were (had been) present.*

Obs. Ordinary comparative clauses which merely illustrate a preceding statement take the indicative, unless the subjunctive is used as in independent sentences. But comparative clauses that express a condition, with the apodosis omitted, take the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses rather than the ordinary use of conditional sentences. The English translation would lead us to expect only the imperfect and pluperfect, as it makes the comparison an unreal one (326. 3). But the tense of the subjunctive is generally controlled by the tense in the leading clause (319), although occasionally the sequence is not observed, but the rule for conditional sentences prevails. In the first example the present subjunctive is used in the comparative clause, though the unreality of the comparison is implied, because the leading verb is in the present tense; hence,

1. The tenses follow the rules for the sequence of tenses, rather than the ordinary use of conditional sentences. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

Obs. For Comparative Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

## 5. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. Concessive Clauses are those which *concede* or *admit* something opposed to the main statement, and are generally introduced in English by *though* or *although*. The concessive conjunctions take the subjunctive or indicative according to the following:—

l do this, it  
d have been  
If he speaks  
d money, he  
he truth, he  
, you would  
be glad.

ts does it con-  
ay conditional  
mplex or com-  
w is this lack  
r a dependent

ate or explain  
measure. The  
ta, sic, so, etc.  
conjunctions;

} as if.

introduced  
wed by the  
, regularly  
is required,  
conditional

e sown, so shall



- a. *quamquam*, *although*, generally takes the indicative.  
 b. *quamvis* (*quam* and *vis*, as *much as you please*), *quantumvis*, *ut*, *nē*, and *cum*, *although*, and the relative *quī* (= *cum*, *is*, *ēgo*, etc.), all take the subjunctive when used concessively.  
 c. *licet*, *although*, is properly a verb, and takes a substantive clause with the subjunctive.  
 d. *etsī*, *tāmeti*, *ētiam*, or *sī*, take the indicative or subjunctive, like conditional clauses with *sī*. That is, —

## MODE IN CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

**331. RULE LIII.** — **Concessive Clauses**, introduced by *sī* and its compounds, take the indicative to represent the concession as a *fact*; the subjunctive to represent it as *merely possible*, or as *contrary to the fact*.

1. The indicative, however, is the more common construction with these particles.
2. Concessive *cum* has a special construction (340).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *quamquam intelligunt, tamen nunquam dicunt*, *although they understand, yet they never speak*.
2. *quamvis fortēs sint*, *although they are brave*.
3. *ut desint virēs*, *although the strength fails*.
4. *nē sit summum malum dolor*, *although pain may not be the greatest evil*.
5. *culpatur, quī innocēns sit*, *he is blamed, although he is innocent*.
6. *Caesar, etsī nondum hostium consilium cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur*, etc., *although Caesar knew not yet the plans of the enemy, yet he suspected, etc.*

Obs. For Concessive Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. *Quamvis molestus dolor sit, malum non est.*
2. *Ut desint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās.*
3. *Licet<sup>1</sup> mē hortetur, non pugnabo.*
4. *Patres metus cepit, velut si jam ad portas hostis esset.<sup>2</sup>*
5. *Multī omnia recta negligunt,*

dummōdo pōtentiam consequantur. 6. Cum ea<sup>3</sup> ita sint, tāmen, sī obsīdēs ab iīs sībī dentur, cum iīs pācem faciāt. 7. Adēro ēgo, licet ābsit āmīeus. 8. Caesar, etsī prōpe exacta jam aestās ērat, tāmen eō<sup>4</sup> exercītum abdūxit. 9. Sicūti dīxī faciām. 10. Pāter meus septīmā hōrā rēdībit, sicut pollicītus est. 11. Sēquānī absentis Ariovistī crudelitātem vēlut sī cōram adesset, horrēbant.

Translate into Latin: —

1. Although the summer was passed, Cæsar led his army into Gaul. 2. I was present, although you were absent. 3. We will do this, although we know that we shall be punished. 4. Fear seized the citizens, as if the enemy were already in the city. 5. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer. 6. I shall do as I have promised. 7. You look at me as if I were a monster.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Lit., *that he may encourage me is allowed.* 2. See 330.

3. When the demonstrative is used substantively, remember that some noun is to be supplied in English: as, *man, men, soldiers*, if masculine; *thing or things*, if neuter. 4. *Thither.*

What are comparative clauses? How introduced? What are concessive conjunctions? Name them. Which take the indicative? Is a clause connected by a concessive conjunction adjective or adverbial?

#### 6. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

Obs. Causal Clauses are those that state the *cause* or *reason* of the fact mentioned in the leading clause. They are introduced by the causal conjunctions **quod**, **quia**, *because*, **quōniam**, **quandō**, *since*, **cum** (**quum**), *as, since*, and the relative pronoun **quī**, *as he*.

**332. RULE LIV.** — Causal Clauses introduced by **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, and **quandō**, take the indicative when the reason assigned is stated as a fact, and indorsed by the speaker or writer.

#### EXAMPLE.

laudo tē, quia tū mē laudās, *I praise you because you praise me.*

Obs. The statement of the reason which is *not the real one* is introduced by **nōn quōd**, **nōn quod**, **nōn quia**, with the verb most commonly in the subjunctive.

Example.

**nōn quod dōleant**, *not because they grieve.*

1. Causal Clauses introduced by **cum** or the relative **quī** regularly take the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

1. **cum vīta mētūs plēna sit**, *since life is full of fear.*
2. **quae cum ita sint**, *and since these things are so.*
3. **O fortunāte adūlescēns, quī tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris**, *O fortunate youth, since you (lit. who) have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.*

2. Causal Clauses introduced by **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, take the subjunctive (in Indirect Discourse, 348) to state the reason as the *assertion* or *opinion* of some one else.

EXAMPLE.

**Sōcrātēs accūsātus est quod corrupēret jūventūtem**, *Socrates was arraigned because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.*

QUOD WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

3. **Quod** is used after verbs of *joy* and *sorrow*, *praise* and *blame*, *thanks* and *complaint*, *satisfaction* and *anger*, to give the ground of the emotion, and is followed by the subjunctive or indicative, according to 332 or 332. 2; but see 342. 4.

EXAMPLES.

- XI. **jūvat mē quod vīgēt studia**, *I am delighted because studies are flourishing* (indicative).
2. **gaudet mīles quod vīcērit hostem**, *the soldier rejoices because he has conquered the enemy* (subjunctive).

Obs. 1. For Causal Clauses as the *subject*, *object*, or *appositive*, see 342. 4; for the Infinitive after Verbs of Emotion, see 342. (3).

Obs. 2. For Causal Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Laudābat mē, quod filium meum culpārem.**
2. **Quōniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discēdite.**
3. **Caesar ab**

X Aeduīs frūmentum flāgītābat, quod militēs māgnā inōpiā urgērentur. 4. Omnēs cīvēs gaudent, quod dūcēs militum cūpiditātēs coercuerunt. 5. Succenseo tibi, quia lūrum amīcitiāe antepōsuisti. 6. Aeduī lēgātōs miserunt questum quod Hārūdēs agrōs eōrum populārentur. 7. Quōniam rēs ita sē hābet, in urbem redeāmus.<sup>1</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. You have praised me because I have praised you.
2. The citizens rejoiced because Cæsar restrained the soldiers.
3. I am angry with you, because you have preferred gain to friendship.
4. He complained because he was not assisted by them.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

##### 1. See 278.

What is a causal clause? Mention the causal conjunctions. When do clauses introduced by these conjunctions take the indicative? When the subjunctive? How is **cum** translated when it denotes cause? What is the construction after verbs of emotion?

#### 7. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

Obs. Temporal Clauses are such as denote the time of an action by mentioning something else which was (1) *antecedent to*, (2) *contemporaneous with*, or (3) *subsequent to it*. The temporal conjunctions are :—

1. ANTECEDENT: **postquam** (**posteaquam**), *after that, after; ut, as; ubi, when* (lit. *where*); **sīmulac** or **sīmul ac** (or before a vowel **sīmul atque**), **sīmul**, *as soon as; ut primum, cum primum, the first moment that; cum (quum), historical, when, after.*
2. CONTEMPORANEOUS: **dum, donec**, *while, as long as, until; quoad, quamdiū, as long as; cum (quum), when.*
3. SUBSEQUENT: **antequam, priusquam, before.**

Obs. The subjunctive is used in temporal clauses only in indirect discourse, or to express *cause, doubt, purpose, desire, etc.*, as will be explained hereafter.

I. *Antecedent Action.*

**333.** Temporal Clauses, introduced by *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi primum*, *simum ac*, etc., take the indicative (commonly the aorist indicative or historical present).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *postquam id animadvertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, after Caesar had observed this, he withdrew his forces to the nearest hill.*
2. *ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt, when they thought they were ready, they burnt their towns.*
3. *nostrī, simul in arido constitērunt, in hostēs impetum fecērunt, our men, as soon as they got footing on dry (ground), made an attack on the enemy.*
4. *militēs, postquam victōriam adepti sunt, nihil reliquū victis fecere, the soldiers, after they had gained a victory, left nothing to the vanquished.*
5. *postquam vidit, etc., castra posuit, he pitched his camp, after he saw it, etc.*
6. *ubi certiores facti sunt, when they were informed.*

Obs. After the *antecedent* conjunctions, the *aorist* (Lat. perfect) is frequently rendered in English by the pluperfect (see Exs.).

II. *Contemporaneous Action.*

**334.** RULE LV. — *Dum, donec, quoad, while, as long as*, take the indicative (any tense).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *hoc feci, dum licuit, I did this as long as I was allowed.*
2. *intermisi, quoad non licuit, I stopped it as long as I was not allowed.*

**335.** RULE LVI. — *Dum, donec, quoad, until*, take the indicative in the statement of a *fact*, the subjunctive when *purpose* is expressed (*i.e.* if the accomplishment of the purpose is the limit of the action).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est, Milo was in the senate on that day, until it adjourned.*

2. **dōnec rēdiit, sīlentium fuit**, until he returned, there was silence.
3. **dum nāvēs eō convēnīrent, exspectāvit**, he waited until the ships should come up, i.e. for the ships to come up.
4. **exspectās dum dīcat**, you are waiting till he speaks (in order that he may speak).
5. **impētum hostium sustinuit, quoad cētērī pontem interrumpērent**, he withstood the onset of the enemy, until the rest could break down the bridge (in order that they might, etc.).
6. **dum Cæsar mōrātur, ad eum lēgātī vērunt**, while Cæsar was delaying, envoys came to him.

Obs. **Dum** in the sense of *while, in the time that*, usually takes the present indicative in narration (see Exs. 6 and 7), though the action is past (334. Ex. 1); but when it denotes *purpose*, it takes the subjunctive. In the later prose writers **dum, while**, is construed with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive like **cum** Historical. The principle is that of Partial Indirect Discourse (see 364).

### III. Subsequent Action.

**336. RULE LVII.** — *Antēquam* and *priusquam*, before, are used with any tense of the indicative, except the imperfect, pluperfect, and future, to express the mere priority of one event to another.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **priusquam lūcet, adsunt**, they are present before it is light.
2. **filiōs convōcāvit antēquam mortuus est**, he called together his sons before he died.
3. **priusquam dē cētērīs rēbus respondeo, dē amīcitiā pauca dīcam**, before I reply to the rest, I will say a few words about friendship.

**337. RULE LVIII.** — *Antēquam* and *priusquam* are used with the subjunctive to express (1) the *intentional* priority of one action to another (i.e. when the action is *purposed* or *desired* by the subject of the leading verb), (2) or when its non-occurrence is expressed or implied.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *nōn prius dūcēs dīmīttunt* (320. b.), *quam sit concessum*,  
*they did not dismiss the leaders till it was granted.*
2. *priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīvitīacum ad sē vōcārī jūbet* (320. b.), *before he took (should take) action, he ordered Dīvitīacus to be summoned to him.*  
*nec prius sunt vīsī quam castrīs apprōpinquārent*, and  
*they were not seen until they were nearing the camp.*

1. *Antēquam* and *priusquam* often have, in historical narration, the same construction as *cum* Historical (see 339).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *priusquam vīsus est Caesar, quam fāma perferrētur*,  
*Caesar appeared before any tidings were brought.*
2. *dūcentīs annīs ante quam urbem cāpērent, in Itāliam Gallī dēscendērunt*, *the Gauls came down into Italy two hundred years before they took the city.*

2. The subjunctive is used after *antēquam* and *priusquam* (generally a *present* or *future* stands in the leading clause) when the action is represented as *possible* (Potential Subjunctive, 278. 1. 4), or when the statement of a general truth is made.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *antē vidēmus fulgūrātiōnem quam sōnum audiāmus*, *we see the flash of lightning before hearing (i.e. before we can hear) the sound (potential).*
2. *collem, priusquam sentiātur, commūnit*, *he fortifies the hill before it was (could be) perceived.*
3. *tempestās mīnātur, antēquam surgat*, *the tempest threatens before it rises (general truth).*

3. The subjunctive with an indefinite second person as the subject (*you = one, any one*) is especially common.

## EXAMPLE.

*priusquam incīpiās, consultō ōpus est*, *before you (i.e. any one) begin, there is need of deliberation.* (See 303. Obs. 2.)

Obs. *Antēquam* and *priusquam* are often written as separate words; the translation is often *before* with the present participle.

## IV. Constructions of Cum.

## CUM TEMPORAL.

**338. RULE LIX.** — *Cum* Temporal (= *when*), introducing a clause that defines the mere time of an action, may be used with all the tenses of the indicative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, altērius factiōnis principēs ērant Aeduī, *when Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædui were at the head of one party.*
2. cum verba faciunt, mājōrēs suōs extollunt, *when they speak, they extol their ancestors.*

## CUM INVERSUM.

1. When the clauses are inverted, so that the temporal clause expresses the main statement and becomes substantially the leading clause, the indicative must be used.

## EXAMPLES.

1. hōc facere noctū appārābant, cum matrēsfamilīae repente prōcurrērunt, *they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran forth.*
2. vix agmen nōvissimum prōcesserat, cum Gallī flūmen transīre nōn dūbitant, *scarcely had the rear advanced, when the Gauls without hesitation crossed the river.*

Obs. The verb in the leading clause is usually the imperfect or pluperfect indicative, often preceded by the adverbs *vix*, *jam*, etc. *Sūbitō* and *rēpente* are often used in the temporal clause.

## ITERATIVE USE OF CUM.

2. When *cum* (or *ūbi*, *sīmul ac*, or the general relatives *quīcumque*, *quōtiēns*) means *whenever*, *as often as*, and designates repeated or customary action, it is followed in most writers by the subjunctive, in Nepes and other late writers by the indicative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. cum quaequam cōhors impētum fēcērat, hostēs rēfūgiēbat, *whenever any cohort had made an attack, the enemy retreated.*



2. *cum in jūis dūcī dēbitōrem vīdissent, undīque convōiābant*, whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they hurried together (made it a rule to hurry together) from all quarters.

CUM HISTORICAL.

**339. RULE LX.** -- *Cum*, meaning *when*, is used in Historical Narration with the imperfect subjunctive for contemporaneous action, with the pluperfect subjunctive for antecedent action.

EXAMPLES.

1. *cum civitās armīs jūis suum exsēquī conārētur, Crgētōrix mortuus est*, when the state was attempting to assert its authority by force of arms, *Orgetorix* died.
2. *Caesar, cum Pompējum vicisset, in Itāliam trājēcit*, when *Caesar* had conquered *Pompey*, he crossed over to Italy.
3. *Caesārī cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat* (320. b.) *ab urbe prōficiōsī*, when this (had been) was announced to *Caesar*, he hastened to set out from the city.

Obs. *Cum*, followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, is generally *historical*; i. e., it is used in historical narration, a historical tense standing in the leading clause. The subjunctive is translated like the indicative. A notion of cause often intrudes, as in Ex. 3. *Cum nuntiātum esset* points out both the *time* and *cause* of *Caesar's* setting out. Usually the temporal clause comes first.

CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CUM.

**340. RULE LXI.** -- *Cum* Causal (= *since*) and *cum* Concessive (= *although*) may be used with any tense of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

1. *quae cum ita sint*, and since these things are so.
2. *Aeduī, cum sē dēfendēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt* (320. b.), the *Aeduans*, since they were not able to defend themselves, sent envoys to *Caesar*.
3. *nihil mē adjūvat* (320. b.) *cum posset*, he gave me no assistance, although he had it in his power.

Obs. 1. **Cum**, followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, is almost always CAUSAL or CONCESSIVE, and translated by *since*, *while*, *although*; it cannot be historical.

Obs. 2. Note the translation of the above examples: the subjunctive is rendered by the indicative with *when*; the temporal clause may often be rendered by a *participle*.

Obs. 3. The temporal conjunction **cum** (also **ubi**, **ut**, **quando**, either alone or compounded with **-cumque**) may mean *whenever*, and then, like the general relatives, has the construction of the protasis in conditional sentences.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **cum rōsam vīderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur**, *whenever (if in any case) he had seen a rose, he thought spring had begun.*
2. **cum sē inter turmās insinuāvērunt, dēsiliunt**, *whenever (if in any case) they have worked their way into (among) the squadrons, they (are wont to) leap down.*
3. **cum quaequam cōhors impētum fēcērat, hostēs rēfugiēbant**, *whenever any cohort (had made) made an attack, the enemy retreated.*

OBS. For Temporal Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Caesar, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit.
2. Legati Cicéronem, cum Romae essent, audiēbant.
3. Diu cum esset pugnatum,<sup>1</sup> impedimentis<sup>2</sup> castrisque nostri potiti sunt.
4. Haec cum flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit.
5. Postquam copias venire vidit, flumen exercitum traducere maturavit.
6. Simul atque signa nostra viderunt, portas aperuerunt.

Supplementary Exercises:—

1. Caesar dum reliquae navee convenirent,<sup>3</sup> ad horam nonam exspectavit.
2. Nec prius<sup>4</sup> sunt visi quam castris appropinquarent.
3. Milites cupidē exspectabant, dum dux se e castris contra hostes educeret.
4. Donec te vidisset,

nōluit ābire puer.<sup>5</sup> 5. Dōnec tē vidērat, nōluit ābire puer.  
 6. Nōn exspectandum<sup>6</sup> sibi<sup>7</sup> stānūt dnm in Santōnēs Helvētī  
 pervēnrent. 7. Tum, cum rēs magnās permultī amiserant,  
 Rōmae fides cecēdit. 8. Caesar priusquam eōdem est prō-  
 fectus, lūna vīsa est. 9. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit  
 obsidēs, arma, servōs<sup>8</sup> pōposcit.<sup>9</sup>

Translate into Latin :—

1. When I was at Athens, I heard Zeno. 2. When ambas-  
 sadors came to Caesar, he demanded corn. 3. When they  
 had advanced three days, the enemy appeared. 4. Caesar  
 determined not to wait until the enemy should arrive.  
 5. After Caesar perceived that, he led his forces to the  
 nearest hill. 6. The boy was unwilling to depart until he  
 had seen you (*i.e.* he waited for the purpose of seeing you).  
 7. While the senate was preparing war against Caesar, he  
 made himself dictator. 8. Before Caesar attempted any-  
 thing, he calls Divitiacus to himself. 9. I waited until he  
 came.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *When the battle had been going on for a long time.*
2. Why ablative ?
3. Account for the mode ; the subjunctive is common with **expecto**.
4. See 337. 2. Obs.
5. The subjunctive in this sentence shows that the boy waited for the *purpose* of seeing you, *i.e.* he intended to see you ; the next sentence implies only that he did see you, without implying an intention.
6. Supply **esse**.
7. Why dative ?
8. Note that when several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin differs from the English either in omitting the conjunction altogether or in repeating it after each word, *e.g.* either **obsidēs, arma, servōs**, or **obsidēs et arma et servōs** ; not **obsidēs, arma, et servōs**, as in English.
9. See 178. 2.

Mention the three chief uses of **cum**. When does **cum** temporal take the subjunctive? Give the meanings and uses of **cum**. Give the meanings of **cum**. What mode is used with most of the particles of time? When do **antēquam** and **priusquam** take the subjunctive? When the temporal clause refers to future time, what mode is used after **cum**? after **antēquam**? When the temporal clause introduced by **cum** contains the main statement, what mode is used? Which are correct: **cum est**, **cum fuit**, **cum erat**, **cum fuērit**, **cum mōnēbat**?

### 8. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

**Obs.** A clause may perform many of the offices of a noun, and is, therefore, called a *noun*, or *substantive*, *clause*.

**THAT GLASS IS MALLEABLE** *was known to the ancients*. The dependent clause, *that glass is malleable*, is equivalent to a noun, and is the *subject* of *was*.

*We perceive* **THAT FIRE IS HOT**. The dependent clause in this sentence is the *object* of the verb *perceive*.

*A peculiarity of the English is*, **THAT IT HAS SO MANY BORROWED WORDS**. The clause introduced by *that* is equivalent to a noun standing in the predicate after *is*; the clause is, therefore, an attributive complement explanatory of *peculiarity*.

*It is known* **THAT CÆSAR CONQUERED GAUL**. *It* has no meaning until explained by the clause introduced by *that*, which is equivalent to a noun, and is, therefore, in apposition with *it*, *i.e.* explanatory of *it*.

*I know nothing about* **WHAT YOU ARE ASKING**. The clause *what you are asking* is the object of *about*. In English, *what* is at once interrogative (as in the sentence above) and introduces substantive clauses; or it is a compound relative (corresponding to **quī, quae, quōd**), and introduces adjective clauses.

Hence —

**341.** A Substantive Clause is one which, like a noun, is the subject or object or complement of a verb, or is used as an explanatory modifier of the subject or object.

**342.** Substantive Clauses may be classified as follows:—

INFINITIVE CLAUSES.

1. The accusative with the infinitive is used as the subject of *esse* or of impersonal verbs, and as the object of the following:—

(1) Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and (for Indirect Discourse, see **348**) equivalent expressions.

(2) Verbs of *wishing and willing, permitting, commanding, and forbidding* (most of *commanding* and *forbidding*, except *jūbeo* and *vēto*, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive).

(3) Verbs of *emotion* (joy, sorrow, etc.), and also verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening, swearing* (these verbs are sometimes followed by the complementary infinitive, see **256**).

EXAMPLES.

1. *dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī*, he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.
2. *dulce prō patriā mōrī est*, to die for one's country is sweet.
3. *Caesar prōficiscī mātūrat*, Caesar hastens to depart.
4. *dīcitur montem tēnērī*, it is said that the mountain is held.

OBS. 1. In the foregoing examples the pupil will notice that the infinitive is used as subject (Ex. 2) or as object (Ex. 3), or that the infinitive with a subject accusative is the subject or object of the verb. Substantive clauses have their verbs in the infinitive or subjunctive mode, with a subject of infinitive in the accusative case.

OBS. 2. All substantive clauses are regarded as of the neuter gender. The tense of the verb in the infinitive clause is determined by the rule in **319**.

FINAL CLAUSES.

2. Final Clauses are object clauses after verbs of *fearing*, and after verbs of *asking, allowing*, etc. See **321. 2**.

EXAMPLES.

1. *nītitur ut vincat*, he strives to conquer (lit. that he may conquer).
2. *tīmeo ut lābōrēs sustineās*, I fear (that) you will not endure the labors.
3. *nōn vēreor, nē nōn vēniās*, I do not fear (that) you will not come.
4. *vēreor nē eat*, I fear (that) he will go.

OBS. 1. The clause of *purpose* may be translated by *that* with *may, might, shall, or should*, or by the infinitive.

Obs. 2. After negative clauses, *nē nōn* is regularly used instead of *ut* (see Ex. 3).

## CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

3. Consecutive Clauses are used as the subject, object, or explanatory appositive with many impersonal verbs (*it happens, it remains, it follows, it is lawful, etc.*); with *ut* after *fācere* and *efficiēre*; with *quīn* (after some verbs of *hindering* and the like), and especially after verbs of *doubting*, when a negative precedes; and with *tantum ābest (ut)*, *so far it is from*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Ita fit ut nēmō esse possit beātus* (as subject), *so it comes to pass that no man can be happy.*
2. *quae rēs, commeātus ut portārī possent, efficiēbat* (as object), *this movement rendered it possible (brought it about) that supplies could be brought.*
3. *accidit ut esset plēna lūna* (as subject), *it chanced to be full moon.*
4. *fācere nōn pōtūi quīn sententiam dīctārem*, *I could not but declare my opinion.*
5. *hābet hoc virtus ut dēlectet* (as appositive), *virtue has this (advantage), that it delights.*

Obs. The clause of *result* is generally translated by *that*, with or without *can* or *could*, sometimes by the infinitive or the participial noun in *-ing*, especially after verbs of *hindering*.

## INDICATIVE WITH QUOD.

4. Indicative Clauses with *quod* introduce a *statement of fact, specification, or object of feeling*.

Obs. The *quod*-clause may be the subject of impersonal verbs, the object of verbs of *emotion* (see 342. 3), or an explanatory appositive. It is generally translated by *that*, or *the-fact-that*; sometimes by *whereas*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *quod Rēgūlus rēdiit mirābile vidētur*, *the fact that Regulus returned seems strange.*
2. *quod dē dōmō scribīs*, *as to what you write of the house (specification).*
3. *gaudēmus quod civitatēs sua jūra hābent*, *we are glad that the states have their just rights (object of feeling).*
4. *māgnū est bēnēficiū nātūrae quod nēcesse est mōri*, *it is a great boon of nature that we must die (appositive).*

Obs. The pupil should note that, when the conjunction *that* introduces a clause denoting *purpose* or *result*, it takes the subjunctive, according to 321, or 322; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive (see 342. 1 and 254). *That* is to be rendered by **quod** when it introduces a substantive clause that contains the *ground* or *reason*, or that is the object of some verb of *emotion* or *feeling* (accusative and infinitive may also be used).

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

5. Indirect Questions are clauses (introduced by some interrogative word), which are the subject or object of a verb, or which depend on verbs expressing *doubt* or *uncertainty*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **scio quid quaerās**, *I know what you are asking* (object).
2. **quid diēs fērat incertum est**, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain* (subject).
3. **dūbīto an pōnam**, *I doubt whether I should not place, i.e. I am inclined to think, etc.*

(1) After verbs of *trial*, an indirect question is introduced by **sī** in the sense of *whether*.

## EXAMPLE.

**circumfunduntur hostēs sī quem aditum rēpērire possint**,  
*the enemy pour round (to see) if they can find an entrance.*

Obs. 1. **Dūbīto** may also be followed by **quīn** with the subjunctive if the sentence is negative; but, if there is no negative, it is followed by indirect question; and, when it means to *hesitate*, by the infinitive.

Obs. 2. Note the difference in meaning between Ex. 1 and **scio quod quaeris**, *I know what (= the thing which) you ask*, i.e. the answer to the question you ask. In Ex. 1, **quid** is an interrogative pronoun; in the other example, **quod** is a relative.

SYN. **Plācet**, *it pleases*, i.e. *it is one's will or determination*; **libet** (**lūbet**), *it pleases*, i.e. *it agrees with one's inclination*.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. **Militēs pontem faciēre jussī sunt.**
2. **Ego bonus esse dicor.**
3. **Caesar militēs hortātus est, ut acriter dimicarent.**
4. **Caesar jussit militēs castra munire.**
5. **Caesar vetuit militēs pontem rescindere.**
6. **Sāpiēs semper beātus sit<sup>1</sup>**

nēcesse est. 7. Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant. 8. Omnēs eīvōs mētūēbant, nē urbs ab hostībūs expūgnārētur. 9. Plācuit eī ut ad Ariovistam lēgātōs mittēret. 10. Nunquam pūtāvī fōre<sup>2</sup> ut supplēx ad tē vēnīrem. 11. Sentīmus nīvem esse albam. 12. Gaudeo quod vālēs.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The particle **ut** is often omitted, especially after verbs of *wishing* (**vōlo**, **nōlo**, **mālo**, and **fācio**), *necessity*, etc.; also after **dīc** and **fac**.

2. *That it would happen*. When there is no supine, **fōre ut** (or **fūtūrum esse ut**) is used for the future infinitive; the clause with **ut** is the subject of **fōre**.

What is a clause? How are clauses classified? What is an independent clause? A dependent clause? How are dependent clauses classified? Define each. Express in Latin *to die for one's country is noble*. With what does *noble* agree? What gender must it be? What is the gender of all substantive clauses?

## 9. INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. Questions are of two kinds: (1) **FACT-QUESTIONS**, or those that ask about the existence of a fact, and expect the answer *yes* or *no*: as, **scrībīte pāter**, *is my father writing?* Ans. *yes* or *no*. Such questions (unless rhetorical) are generally asked by the help of one of the interrogative particles, **ne**, **nōne**, **num**. (2) **WORD-QUESTIONS**, or those that ask about something connected with a fact, as *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *how*, *why*, etc., and they cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*: as, **quis hās litt. scrīpsit**, *who wrote this letter?* Ans. *Cicero*. **cūr nōn discēdis**, *why do you not depart?*

*Rhetorical Questions.*

Obs. Questions may be *real* or they may be *rhetorical*. A real question expects an answer; as, *Who is calling?* Ans. *John*. A rhetorical question does not expect an answer, but, under the guise of a question, contains an assertion, put for oratorical effect in the form of a question; as, *What is baser than a lie?* This is a rhetorical question, expecting no answer, but conveying the idea that *nothing is baser than a lie*. Sometimes no interrogative word is used in asking a question. In such cases an affirmative question generally expects a negative answer; a negative question, an affirmative answer. The omission of the interrogative word is common in rhetorical questions (especially with negatives) expressing *surprise*, *irony*, *impatience*, etc.; **pātēre tua consilia nōn sentīs**, *do you not see (you must surely) that your designs are laid bare?*



Direct simple questions generally take the indicative; but direct simple questions that ask *what is to be done*, when it is intended to imply that some such an answer as *nothing, nowhere*, etc., is expected, take the subjunctive (278. 1. 3); as,

1. *quid āgam, what am I to do?*
2. *quis hōc dūbītet, who could doubt this? (rhetorical question)*  
= *nēmō hōc dūbītet, no one could doubt it.*

Hence the rule:—

#### DIRECT QUESTIONS.

**343.** Direct Simple Questions are generally introduced by interrogative words, and, as a rule, take their verbs in the indicative.

**344.** Direct Simple Questions may take the subjunctive when they express *doubt, deliberation, or impossibility*, or imply a negative *opinion* on the part of the speaker or writer (278. 1. 2).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Rōmamne vēniēs, will you come to Rome? (ANS. yes or no.)*
2. *quisnam in hortō ambūlat, who is walking in the garden?*  
(ANS. *Cesar.*)
3. *quis paupertātem nōn extimescit, who does not dread poverty?*
4. *quid hōc hōmīne faciās, what can one (you) do with this man?*  
(ANS. *nothing.*)
5. *quis hoc crēdat, who would believe this? (ANS. no one.)*

#### Double Questions.

Obs. Fact-Questions may consist of two parts, *i.e.* they may be disjunctive (or double); as, *is it this or is it that?* The first member of a double question is introduced by the particles *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second by an (*anne* or *-ne*); as, *utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, is that your fault or ours?* Occasionally the interrogative particle is omitted with the first member; as, *silōquar an sileam, must I speak or be silent?* The following exhibits the various forms of double questions:—

<i>quaero utrum vērum an falsum sit,</i> <i>quaero vērum-ne an falsum sit,</i> <i>quaero vērum an falsum sit,</i> <i>quaero vērum falsum-ne sit,</i>	}	<i>I ask whether it is  true or false.</i>
---	---	--

The principle may be stated in the following rule:—

**345.** Direct Double Questions take the same mode as simple questions, and are introduced by *utrum* or *-ne*, *whether*, in the first member, followed by *an*, *anne*, or; *annōn*, *neque*, or *not*, in the second.

## EXAMPLE.

*utrum* *puērī* *lēgunt* *an* *scrībunt*, are the boys reading or writing?

*Indirect Questions.*

Obs. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect* (or *independent* and *dependent*). *Who calls me?* is a direct question, *i.e.* it is a simple independent interrogative sentence. Such sentences, as a rule, take the indicative or the deliberative subjunctive (see 278. 1. 3). *He asks who is calling him* is an indirect question; *i.e.* the simple interrogative sentence, *who is calling him*, is made to depend on the verb *asks*, and becomes a dependent clause; the verb *is calling* is, in Latin, in the subjunctive mode. Hence the following rule:—

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

**346. RULE LXII.**—Indirect Questions take their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the regular rule for sequence of tenses (see 319).

## EXAMPLES.

- quis* *mē* *vōcat*, who is calling me? (Direct.)
- rōgāt* *quis* *sē* *vōcet*, he asks who is calling him. (Indirect.)

## Primary Tenses —

*rōgat*, he asks,  
*rōgābit*, he will ask,  
*rōgāvit*, he has asked,  
*rōgāverit*, he will have asked,

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

{ *quis* *sē* *vōcet*, who is calling him.  
 { *quis* *sē* *vōcāverit*, who has called, or who called him. *quis* *sē* *vōcātūrus* *sit*, who is going to call him.

## Secondary Tenses —

*rōgābat*, he was asking,  
*rōgāvit* (aorist), he asked,  
*rōgāverat*, he had asked,

{ *quis* *sē* *vōcāret*, who was calling him. *quis* *sē* *vōcāvisset*, who had called him. *quis* *sē* *vōcātūrus* *esset*, who was going to call him?

Obs. 1. Sometimes the interrogative word is omitted in the first clause; in direct questions *annōn* is generally used; in indirect, *neque*; *num* in indirect questions means *whether*.

Obs. 2. The particle **an** is used after such phrases as **nĕscio**, **haud scio**, **dūbito an**, in the sense *I do not know but, I doubt but, i.e. I am inclined to think*; as, **haud scio an ita sit**, *I do not know but it is so*. The forms of the interrogative **quis**, and **quī**, combine with **nĕscio**, and are equivalent to an indefinite pronoun; as, **nĕscio quis**, *somebody or other*; the verb is in the indicative.

## DEPENDENT DOUBLE QUESTION.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **puērī utrum lĕgant an scribant nescio**, *I don't know whether the boys are reading or writing.*
2. **utrum lĕgat necne nescio**, *I don't know whether he is reading or not.*

Obs. 1. Note that the subjunctive in indirect questions is translated by the indicative, because it stands for the indicative. Note, also, that the indirect question is always a dependent clause introduced by some interrogative word which connects it with the preceding clause.

Obs. 2. If the direct question had its verb in the subjunctive, no change is made on becoming indirect (except the tense of the leading verb must be in a secondary tense if it is required by the sequence of tenses); but the difference must be shown by the English rendering: thus. (1) **quid āgimus**, *what are we doing?* and (2) **quid āgāmus**, *what are we to do?* become alike in the indirect form,—**nōn sātis constābat quid āgērent**, *they did not rightly know (1) what they were doing, or (2) what they were to do.*

*Questions and Answers.*

Obs. There is no one word in Latin meaning simply *yes* and *no*. In answering a question the verb is generally repeated; as, **estne tibi penna**, *have you a pen?* the answer would be **est mihi penna**, *I have a pen*; or simply **est**. Sometimes adverbs are used in answer to a direct question; as, **ĕtiam**, **ita**, **sic**, **vĕrum**, **vĕrō**, **rectĕ**, **certĕ**, **sānĕ**, etc.,—**haecine tua dōmus est?** **ita**, *is this your house? yes*; **dāsne hoc?** **do sātis**, *do you admit this? yes I do indeed*. *No* may be expressed by repeating the verb with a negative, or by **nōn**, **nōn vĕrō**, **nōn ita**, **mīnimĕ**, *by no means*, **immo** or **imo**, *yes indeed, nay rather*, etc.; as, **nōn irāta es?** **nōn sum irāta**, *you are not angry? I am not*. In answer to a double question, one member of the alternative must be repeated; as, **tūne an frāter ērat**, *was it you or your brother?* **ego (ēram)**, *it was I*. Hence the following rule:—

**347.** In answering a question in Latin, either the verb, with or without a negative, is repeated for the

words YES or NO; or an intensive or negative particle is used, with or without the repetition of the verb.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Fuistīne hērī in schōlā? 2. Dīe fuērisne hērī in schōlā? 3. Quærit num Cæsar in urbe sit. 4. Num ita audēs dicēre? 5. Utrum ūnus an plūrēs sunt mundī? 6. Quæritur utrum ūnus an plūrēs sint mundī? 7. Utrum Cātō an Cæsar libī præstantior et clārīor vir esse vidētur? 8. Cæsar jussit eōs spēcūlārī num hostēs ex castrīs exīrent. 9. Quæritur dīi utrum sint, necne. 10. Isne est quem quaero, annōn? 11. Num dūbium est cāsūne an consiliō factus sit mundus? 12. Cñjus hic liber est? tuusne? Nōn, sed frātris. 13. Utrum vestra an nostra culpa est? 14. Causa īgitur nōn bōna est? immo optīma. 15. Quisnam in hortō ambūlat? 16. Nescio quis in hortō ambūlat.

SYN. **Orbis terrārum**, rather than **terra**, when there is decided reference to other lands.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Is Cæsar in the city? 2. He inquires whether Cæsar is in the city. 3. Who is walking in the garden? 4. He asks who is walking in the garden. 5. Is it true or false? 6. He asks whether it is true or false. 7. Did Cæsar come into the senate yesterday? No. 8. Is this your book or mine? It is mine. 9. Are you reading or writing? 10. He asks whether you are reading or writing.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

How may simple questions be classified? (*Ans.* Fact-questions and word-questions.) How many kinds of word-questions? What is a double question? How is a direct simple question asked? Mention the most common interrogative words. What is an indirect question? How is it asked? What is the mode of the verb in indirect questions? What is a rhetorical question? How is a question in Latin answered? How is a double question answered?

## LESSON XCVIII.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Obs. 1. Direct Discourse (*ōrātiō recta*) gives the exact words of the speaker or writer; as, *Ariovistus said*, "I HAVE CROSSED THE RHINE" = Lat. *Ariovistus dixit*, "*Rhēnum trānsiī*." The words *I have crossed the Rhine* are in direct discourse; the original speaker is represented by the narrator as speaking in the *first person* (because the speaker refers to himself), and the words are given precisely as they were uttered. Indirect Discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) uses the same words, except that some are changed to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted. These changes affect only the pronouns, pronominal adverbs, modes, and tenses (but not always all of these); as, *Ariovistus said THAT HE HAD CROSSED THE RHINE* = Lat. *Ariovistus dixit sē Rhēnum trānsisse*. The original words, *I have crossed the Rhine*, have been changed to *that he had crossed the Rhine*, to indicate the change of relation in the speaker; the first person in English is changed to the third, and the perfect tense to pluperfect, and, in Latin, the indicative to the accusative with the infinitive, which together form an infinitive substantive clause, the object of the leading verb *dixit*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. a. *rēx urbem oppūgnat*, *the king assaults the city.*  
 b. *dux dicit*, "*rēx urbem oppūgnat*," *the leader says*, "*The king is assaulting the city.*"  
 b. *dux dicit rēgem urbem oppūgnāre*, *the leader says that the king is assaulting the city.*
2. a. *scribit*, *he writes.*  
 b. *dicit sē scribere*, *he says that he is (now) writing.*
3. a. *nōs pārātī sūmus*, *we are ready.*  
 b. *sē pārātōs esse arbitratī sunt*, *they thought that they were ready.*
4. a. *sunt nōnnullī quōrum auctōritās āpud plēbem plūrimū vālet*, *there are some whose influence prevails most with the common people.*  
 b. *Liscus dicit esse nōnnullōs quōrum auctōritās āpud plēbem plūrimū vāleat*, *Liscus says that there are some whose influence prevails most with the common people.*

Obs. 2. In the foregoing examples marked *a*, note that each gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer, and is, therefore, in Direct Discourse; note, also, that each sentence marked *a* is a declarative sentence, and that the principal verb is in the indicative.

Note further, that, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse, marked *b*, the nominative has been changed to the accusative, the indicative has been changed to the infinitive, and the personal pronoun *nōs* (Ex. 3) has been changed to the reflexive *sē*. In Ex. 2. *a*. the subject is not expressed, but in Indirect Discourse the subject must (as a rule) be expressed. Note finally, that *vālet* in the dependent clause, in Ex. 4, has been changed to the subjunctive *vāleat*, in order to show the difference of relation, *i.e.* to relieve the quoter of undue responsibility. If we again examine the sentences in the foregoing examples, after their change to Indirect Discourse, we shall notice that they differ from those in Direct Discourse partly in the use of different modes and tenses, and partly in the use of different pronouns. Hence the following rules:—

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**348. RULE LXIII.**— In passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, principal clauses, if declarative, are changed to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and subordinate clauses to the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *a.* Caesar in Galliam vēnit.  
*b.* Caesārem fērun̄t in Galliam vēnīsse.
2. *a.* mōns tēnētur.  
*b.* nuntius dīcit montem tēnērī.
3. *a.* scientia ūtilis est.  
*b.* ūtīlem arbītror esse scientiam.
4. *a.* obsīdēs quōs ab Aeduīs hābeo, inquit Ariovistus, non reddam.  
*b.* Ariovistus rēspondit sē obsīdēs quōs ab Aeduīs hāberet nōn reddītūrum esse.

Supplementary Examples:—

## DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Divicō ita cum Caesāre ēgīt:—

Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciēt, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiū ūbi tū eōs constituēris atque esse vōluēris; sīn bellō persēquī persēvērābis, rēmīniscēre et vētēris incommōdī pōpūli Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciēret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi fūtūrōs Helvētiōs, ūbi eōs Caesar constitūisset atque esse vōlūisset; sīn bellō persēquī persēvērāret, rēmīniscērētur et vētēris incommōdī pōpūli Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

## Translation.

*Divico treated with Caesar as follows:—*

*If the Roman people shall make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians will go to that place and will remain there where you shall have determined and wished them to be; but if you shall persist in following them with war, remember the ancient disaster of the Roman people and the ancestral valor of the Helvetians.*

*If the Roman people should make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians would go to that place and remain there where Caesar should have determined and wished them to be; but if he should persist in following them with war, let him remember the ancient disaster of the Roman people and the ancestral valor of the Helvetians.*

Obs. 1. Note that, in passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, the first and second persons of pronouns and of verbs are changed, when the sense so requires, to the third person. *In all cases, the changes of pronouns depend on sense (354).*

Obs. 2. The report in Indirect Discourse may be made either from the *standpoint of the speaker*, i.e. as if the speaker reported was still speaking (vivid form), or from the *standpoint of the reporter*, the report being made as if the speech was a matter of the past.

## INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

349. The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse represent the time of the action as *present, past, or future*, relatively to that of the principal verb.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *dīcit montem ab hostībus tēnērī*, he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.
2. *dīxit montem ab hostībus tēnērī*, he said that the mountain was held by the enemy.

Obs. Note that, in the foregoing examples, the leading verbs *dīcit* and *dīxit* have as an object a clause whose *verb* is in the infinitive, and whose *subject* is in the accusative. Note, further, that the present infinitive is translated by the *present tense* after *dīcit*, and by a *past tense* after *dīxit*; i.e. the infinitives denote the same *time* as the verbs on which they depend. Hence we observe that these infinitives represent the time of the action not as present absolutely, but as present relatively to the time denoted by the principal verb; i.e. the present infinitive expresses *contemporaneous*

action, the perfect infinitive *prior action*, and the future infinitive *future, or subsequent, action*.

## EXAMPLES.

## 1. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

**dīcit sē scribēre**, he says that he is (now) writing.

**dīcēbat sē scribēre**, he was saying that he was (then) writing.

**dīcet sē scribēre**, he will say that he is (then or now) writing.

## 2. PRIOR ACTION.

**dīcit sē scripsisse**, he says that he wrote, has or had written, or was writing.

**dīcēbat sē scripsisse**, he was saying that he wrote, had written, or was (previously) writing.

**dīcet sē scripsisse**, he will say that he has (had now or then) written, or wrote.

## 3. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

**dīcit sē scriptūrum esse**, he says that he will write.

**dīcēbat sē scriptūrum esse**, he was saying that he would write, or was going to write.

**dīcet sē scriptūrum esse**, he will say that he is going to write (now or then).

**dīcit fōre (fūtūrum esse) ut scribat**, he says that (it will happen) he will write (then or now).

**dīcēbat fōre ut scriberet**, he was saying that (it would happen) he would write (then or now).

Obs. 1. The perfect infinitive represents in Indirect Discourse the *perfect*, the *aorist*, the *pluperfect*, and the *imperfect indicative*. When the leading verb is in the future, the infinitive expresses a double relation,—(1) to the time of asserting, and (2) to the time of the action asserted; as, **dīcet sē scribēre**, he will say (1) that he is now writing, (2) that he is THEN writing, i.e. at the time of saying. The future infinitive can be formed only from verbs that have a perfect passive participle. The want of it is supplied by the use of the future infinitive of **sum (fōre or fūtūrum esse)** with a consecutive clause. This periphrase sometimes occurs when the regular forms might be used.

Obs. 2. In Indirect Discourse, note that the present infinitive stands for the present indicative (or sometimes for the imperfect, especially after **mēmīnī**); and that the perfect infinitive stands for any *past tense* of the indicative.

Obs. 3. With verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening*, and the like, the Latin idiom differs from the English in requiring the subject to be (usually) expressed; as, **spērat sē scriptūrum esse**, he hopes to write (lit. he hopes that he will write).



Obs. 4. The infinitive is said to stand, in Indirect Discourse, and its tenses to correspond to those of the finite modes, when it depends on a verb implying *thought*, or the *expression of thought*; thus, **cūpit vēnīre**, *he desires to come*, **vēnīre** is not in Indirect Discourse, but is really a noun, the object of **cūpit**. But in **dīcit sē vēnīre**, *he says he is coming*, **vēnīre** represents **vēnio** (indicative) of Direct Discourse.

Obs. 5. The subject of the infinitive in Indirect Discourse must (as a rule) be expressed, even though it is wanting in Direct Discourse: as, **clēmēns sum**; **dīcit sē esse clēmēntem**.

#### TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**350.** Tenses in Indirect Discourse generally conform to the ordinary rules for the use of tenses in the Subjunctive and Infinitive, as determined by the tense of the *introductory verb*; but an Aorist (*i.e.* a Perfect) Infinitive takes the sequence of past tenses, even if the introductory verb is primary (see **348. 2**).

Obs. 1. Each tense in Direct Discourse is ordinarily represented by the same tense in Indirect Discourse; but, when the indicatives of those tenses that have no subjunctive (*viz.*, *future* and *future perfect*) are to be changed to the subjunctive, or when the indicatives of those tenses that have no infinitive (*viz.*, *imperfect* and *pluperfect*) are to be changed to the infinitive, on passing to Indirect Discourse, they take the tense nearest them in time. Thus the —

Future Indicative becomes Present or Imperfect Subjunctive, according to sequence of tenses.

Future Perfect Indicative becomes Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, according to sequence of tenses.

Imperfect Indicative = Perfect Infinitive.

Pluperfect Indicative = Perfect Infinitive.

Future Indicative becomes Future Infinitive.

Future Perfect Indicative = Future Perfect Infinitive.

Obs. 2. The Historical Present is often treated in Indirect Discourse as a past tense, and is followed by a past tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clauses; as, **Helvētīī lēgātōs ad Cæsārem mittunt, quī dīcērent**, *the Helvetians sent ambassadors to Cæsar (who should say, i.e.) to say*.

Obs. 3. For the sake of *vividness*, a past tense may be followed by the present subjunctive; as, **exītus fuit orātīōnis, neque vācāre agrōs, quī dārī possint**, *the close of the oration was, that there were (are) not lands unoccupied which could (can) be given*.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES AFTER OTHER MODES.

1. The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the sequences of primary tenses; the Imperfect, Aorist, and Pluperfect Subjunctive have the sequences of the secondary, or historical, tenses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *praestā quod rēcēpistī*, perform what you have undertaken.
2. *quid mē prōhībēret Epicūrēum esse, sī prōbārem quae ille dīcēret?* what could prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says).

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES AFTER AN INFINITIVE OR A PARTICIPLE.

2. When a subordinate clause depends on any part of an infinite verb (Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, Supine), the tense of that clause is determined by that of the verb on which the Infinitive verb depends (as these have no time of their own, but a Perfect Infinitive or Perfect Participle has the sequence of past tenses); as,

- cūpio scīre quid āgās*, I desire to know what you are doing.  
*cūpiēbam scīre quid āgērēs*, I was desirous to know what you were doing.

351. The following table presents a synopsis of the chief Uses of the Modes in Direct and Indirect Discourse:—

Clauses.	Clauses.	Direct Discourse.	Indirect Discourse.
Declarative	Principal Subordinate	Indicative <sup>1</sup>	Acc. with Inf.
Interrogative		Ind. or Subj.	Subjunctive.
Imperative	Principal	Indicative <sup>2</sup>	Subj. or Inf. <sup>2</sup>
	Subordinate	Ind. or Subj.	Subjunctive.
Final Consecutive Conditional Concessive Comparative Temporal Causal Relative	Subordinate	Imperative <sup>3</sup>	Subjunctive.
		Subjunctive	Subjunctive.
		Subjunctive	
		Ind. or Subj.	
		Ind. or Subj.	
		Ind. or Subj.	
		Ind. or Subj.	

Obs. 1. When the principal clause, or *apodosis*, is in the subjunctive, as in Unreal Conditions, then special rules are required (see 355. 5).

Obs. 2. Interrogative sentences may sometimes have their verbs in the subjunctive, as in Rhetorical Questions (344): the subjunctive is either retained or changed to infinitive. The deliberative subjunctive (278) is always retained. But Rhetorical Questions that are in the indicative in Direct Discourse are changed to the accusative with the infinitive in Indirect Discourse if the subject is of the *first or third person*, into the subjunctive if the subject is of the *second person* (see 356).

Obs. 3. Imperative clauses may have their verbs in the subjunctive (278); the subjunctive is then retained in Indirect Discourse.

**352.** The Construction of Indirect Discourse is used after verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (declarative), *asking* (interrogative), *commanding* (imperative).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvīsse**, *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est exercitum vēnīsse**, *Caesar was informed that the army had come.*

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**353.** Reflexive Pronouns, **suī** and **suus**, refer primarily to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

1. In some Subordinate Clauses the Reflexive must be used to refer either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate clause; but this happens only when reference is made to the thought or will of the subject in the leading clause, as in Infinitive Clauses, Final Clauses, or in Indirect Discourse (Indirect Questions).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **ānīmus sentit sē vī suā mōvērī**, *the mind perceives that it is moved by its own power.*
2. **quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam mōrī prōhibitūrus**, *they asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.*

## PRONOUNS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**354.** In passing from Direct Discourse to Indirect, pronouns of the first or second person are regularly changed, if the sense requires, to pronouns of the third person, as follows:—

1. PERSONAL: **ĕgo** (**nōs**) is changed to forms of the reflexive **sē** (sometimes **ipse**); **tu** is changed to forms of **ille** or **is**.

2. POSSESSIVE: **meus** (**noster**) and **tuus** (**vester**) are changed to forms of **suus** (sometimes genitive of **ipse** or of **is**).

3. DEMONSTRATIVE: **hīc** } are changed to forms of **ille** or **is**;  
**iste** }  
**nunc** is changed to **tum** and **tunc**.

4. INTENSIVE: **ipse** may be retained, and then refers to the principal subject, like an emphatic reflexive.

Obs. Hence we have two reflexives in some clauses, referring to (1) leading subject, (2) subject of the infinitive.

## EXAMPLES.

1. DIRECT: **annūlum ĕgo meā mānū cōnfēcī**, *I have made the ring with my own hand.*

INDIRECT: **glōriātus est annūlum sē suā mānū cōnfēcisse**, *he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.*

2. DIRECT: **sī obsīdēs ā vōbīs mīhī dābuntur, vōbiscum pācem fāciam**, *if hostages shall be given to me by you, I will make peace with you.*

INDIRECT: **rēspondit, sī obsīdēs ab iīs sībī dentur, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum**, *he replied that if hostages should be given to him by them, he would make peace with them.*

3. **cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius dilligentiā dēspērārent**, *why (asked he) should they despair of their own courage or his diligence?*

Obs. The personal pronoun may, of course, be retained in Indirect Discourse when the sense requires it; in short, all changes of pronouns must conform to the sense.

## Example.

DIRECT: **quidvis perpētiar**, *I will endure anything.*

INDIRECT: **āfirmāvī quidvis mē perpessūrum**, *I asserted that I would endure anything.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**355.** Conditional Sentences, in passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, undergo the following changes:—

1. In SIMPLE CONDITIONS (326. 1) the apodosis is changed to the accusative with the infinitive (the tenses of the infinitive being present, past, or future, according as the tense of the verb in the apodosis is present, past, or future).

2. The protasis is changed to the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the leading verb of *saying*, etc.; but an aorist (*i.e.* perfect) infinitive takes the sequence of past tenses.

EXAMPLES.

O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābet, dat.**

C. O. PRESENT: **dīcīt sē, sī pēcūniam hābeat, dāre.**

O. O. PAST: **dīxit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dāre.**

O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābuit, dēdit.**

O. O. **dīcit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dēdisse.**

3. In FUTURE CONDITIONS (326. 2) the present and perfect subjunctive (or future indicative) of the apodosis are changed to the future infinitive (or the periphrase **fōre ut**, etc.).

4. The tenses (present and perfect) in the protasis remain unchanged if the leading verb of *saying* is in a *primary tense*; otherwise, they (present and perfect) are changed respectively to the imperfect and pluperfect.

EXAMPLES.

O. R. **sī pēcūnia n hābeat, det.**

O. O. PRESENT: **dīcīt sē, sī pēcūniam hābeat, dātūrum esse.**

O. O. PAST: **dīxit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dātūrum esse.**

5. In UNREAL CONDITIONS (326. 3) the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the apodosis, *when active*, are changed respectively to the future or future perfect infinitive; *when passive*, these tenses are expressed respectively by the periphrases **fūtūrum esse ut** or **fūtūrum fuisse ut**, with the imperfect subjunctive. This periphrase must be used in the active when the verb in the apodosis has no future participle, and hence no future infinitives.

6. The tenses in the protasis remain unchanged, no matter what may be the tense of the leading verb.

## EXAMPLES.

- O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābēret, dāret.**  
 O. O. **dīcit** or **dīxit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dātūrum esse.**  
 O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābuisset, dēdisset.**  
 O. O. **dīcit** or **dīxit sē, sī pēcūniam hābuisset, dātūrum fuisse.**

## Supplementary Examples : —

1. a. **sī quid Caesar mē vult, illum ad mē vēnīre oportet,** *if Caesar wishes anything of me, he ought to come to me.*  
 b. **respondit, sī quid Caesar sē vēlit, illum ad sē vēnīre oportere,** *he replied that, if Caesar wished anything of him, he ought to come to him.*
2. a. **sī stīpēdium rēmittātur, libenter rēcūsem (326. 2) pōpūlī Rōmānī amīctiam,** *if the tribute is (should be) remitted, I would gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people; or,*  
 a. **sī stīpēdium rēmittātur, libenter rēcūsābo (326. 2, Obs. 1) pōpūlī Rōmānī amīctiam,** *if the tribute is (shall be) remitted, I will gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people.*  
 b. **respondit, sī stīpēdium rēmittātur, libenter sēsē rēcūsātūrum pōpūlī Rōmānī amīctiam,** *he replied that, if the tribute should be remitted, he would gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people.*
3. a. **sī quid mīhi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum vēnissem,** *if I wanted anything from Caesar, I should have come to him.*  
 b. **respondit, sī quid ipsī (354. Obs.) ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse,** *he replied that, if he wanted anything of Caesar, he would have come to him.*

## INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## EXAMPLES.

1. a. **quid dē praedā faciendum censētis,** *what do you think ought to be done in regard to the booty?*  
 b. **littērās ad sēnātum misit, quid dē praedā faciendum censērent,** *he wrote to the senate (asking) what they thought ought to be done in regard to the booty.*
2. a. **quid tibi vīs,** *what do you mean (wish for yourself)?*  
 b. **ad postūlāta Caesāris respondit, quid sibi vellet,** *to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he mean?*

3. *a. num rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre possum, am I able to lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*  
*b. respondit, num rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse, he replied, could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*
4. *a. quid vērēmīnī, aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte dēspērātis, what do you fear, or why do you despair of your valor?*  
*b. quid vērerēntur aut cūr dē suā virtute dēspērārent, what did they fear, or why did they despair of their valor?*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, those marked *a* are Direct Questions, and have their verbs in the indicative (see 343). In the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse, marked *b*, these verbs have been changed to the subjunctive or to the infinitive. Note that rhetorical questions (Exs. 3 and 4) in the indicative in Direct Discourse are changed to the accusative with the infinitive in Indirect Discourse, if the subject is *first* or *third* person (Ex. 3); into the subjunctive, if the subject is *second* person (Ex. 4). Hence the rule:—

**356.** Interrogative Sentences generally take the subjunctive, but sometimes (especially when rhetorical) the infinitive with subject accusative.

Obs. Subjunctive Rhetorical Questions in Direct Discourse (see 344) remain, as a rule, in the subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. Questions of Deliberation (278) always retain the subjunctive.

#### IMPERATIVE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. *a. rēmīniscēre vētēris incommōdī pōpūli Rōmānī, remember the ancient disaster of the Roman people.*  
*b. rēmīniscērētur vētēris incommōdī pōpūli Rōmānī, let him remember (said he) the ancient disaster of the Roman people.*
2. *a. cum lēgiōne vēnī, come with a legion.*  
*b. scribit Lābiēnō cum lēgiōne vēniat, he writes to Labienus to come (lit., that he should come) with a legion.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that those marked *a* have their verbs in the imperative; in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse, marked *b*, these imperatives have been changed to the subjunctive. Hence the rule:—

**357.** All Imperatives in Direct Discourse are changed in Indirect Discourse to the Subjunctive; the negative is *nē*.

Convert the following sentences into Indirect Discourse, and translate:—

## DIRECT DISCOURSE.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## 1. Caesar certior factus est

Trēs jam cōpiārum partēs Hel-  
vetiū id flūmen tradūxērunt.

## Translation.

Already the Helvetians have led  
three parts of their forces over that  
river.

## 2. Liscus dicit

Sunt nōnnulli quōrum auctoritās  
apud plēbem plurimum vālet.

## Translation.

There are some whose influence  
prevails a great deal among the  
common people.

## 3. Lōcūtus est Divitiacus

Ob eam rem ex civitate profūgi  
et Rōmam vēni, quod nēque  
iūrējūrandō nēque obsidibus  
tēnēbar.

## Translation.

For this reason I fled from the state  
and came to Rome, because I was  
being held (i.e. refused to be held)  
neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Obs. The pupil should note that clauses like the following, introduced by relative pronouns or by relative adverbs, are not strictly in Indirect Discourse; still, Indirect Discourse, in its widest application, may include indirect questions or any subordinate clause that contains a statement made on the authority of any other person than the writer (see 364).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **dīcam quod sentio** (relative clause), *I will tell that which I think.*
2. **dīcam quid intellēgam** (indirect question), *I will tell what I know.*



## EXERCISES.

Translate into English, and give the Rule for all Modes and Tenses :—

1. Puer dicit, "Cūpio discere." 2. Puer dicit sē cūpere discere. 3. Pāx est compōsita. 4. Nuntius allātus est pācem esse compōsitam. 5. "Omnia pēriērunt," inquit Cæsar; "consūlite, milītēs, vestrae salūtī." 6. Cæsar dixit omnia pēriisse; milītēs suae salūtī consūlerent. 7. Cæsar dixit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra mīnūtūrum esse. 8. Ariōvistus dixit, sē Aeduīs bellum nōn esse illātūrum. 9. Ariōvistus dixit, sē Aeduīs bellum nōn esse illātūrum, sī stipendium quōtannis pendērent. 10. Anīmadvertit Cæsar unōs ex omnibus Sēquānōs nihil eārū rērum faciēre, quōs cētēri faciērent, sed tristēs cūpīte dēmissō terram intuerī. 11. Dux dixit sē intelligēre quid egisset hostis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Cæsar has assaulted the city. 2. The messenger said, "Cæsar has assaulted the city." 3. The messenger said that Cæsar had assaulted the city. 4. You are mistaken. 5. He thinks that you are mistaken. 6. I shall not wage war upon the Æduans. 7. He answered that he should not wage war upon the Æduans. 8. Cæsar said that the Helvetians had departed from their territories in order that they might obtain possession of all Gaul. 9. Cæsar said that he had sent the cavalry to sustain (*lit.*, in order that it might sustain) the attack of the enemy. 10. It is related that, when Cæsar had conquered Pompey, he crossed into Asia. 11. Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Æduans, if they paid the tribute yearly. 12. The mountain is held. 13. He says that the mountain is held. 14. The messenger says that the mountain which he saw was held by the enemy. 15. Cæsar said that he would send the cavalry which he had with him to defend the mountain.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is meant by Indirect Discourse? What is the law for tenses in Indirect Discourse? How is the tense of a verb in a subordinate clause determined? Give the rule for modes in Indirect Discourse. After what verbs may the Indirect Discourse be used? What change is made in pronouns in passing to Indirect Discourse? To what is the future in Direct Discourse changed in Indirect Discourse? To what the future perfect? Translate the following: *he hopes to come; he promises to write.* How does the English construction of such sentences differ from the Latin? What word in English introduces Indirect Discourse? Is it always necessary to use *that* in translating Indirect Discourse into English? Give the rule for imperative sentences when changed to Indirect Discourse.

## LESSON XCIX.

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**358.** Relative Clauses are introduced by relative pronouns and relative adverbs; the latter are called conjunctive adverbs.

Obs. A Relative Clause has the force of an adjective or adverb, limiting the antecedent; as, *puer qui lægit, the boy who reads = the reading boy.* The relative agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person, but the case depends on the construction of the relative sentence. (See 242.)

**359. RULE LXIV.**—A relative clause, having a definite antecedent, and adding merely a descriptive fact, takes the indicative.

## EXAMPLE.

Caesar æquitēs quōs Labiēnus addūxerat præmisit, *Cæsar sent ahead the cavalry which Labienus had brought up.*

**360. RULE LXV.**—Relative pronouns and relative adverbs take the subjunctive when they introduce clauses of purpose, result, condition, cause, or concession.

## PURPOSE.

Obs. The subjunctive with **quī** expresses a Purpose chiefly after verbs of *sending, giving, and choosing*, with reference to the *object* of the sentence; a Purpose with reference to the *subject* being expressed by **ut**, etc. If the construction be passive, then, of course, **quī** will refer to the subject.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **lēgātōs mīserunt quī pācem pētērent**, *they sent envoys to (who should, or that they might) sue for peace.*
2. **lēgātī missī sunt quī pācem pētērent**, *envoys were sent to (who should) seek peace.*

## RESULT.

1. Relative Clauses are often used to characterize an *indefinite* or *general antecedent*, especially after negatives, where the idea of result is not obvious.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **sunt quī dīcant**, *there are some who say.*
2. **nēmō est quī nōn cūpiat**, *there is no one who does not desire.*

(1) A Relative Clause of Characteristic is used even when the antecedent is definite; but it is especially common —

- a. After **ūnus** and **sōlus**.
- b. After **dīgnus**, **indīgnus**, **idōneus**, and **aptus**.
- c. After comparatives with **quam**.

Obs. The Relative of Characteristic is equivalent to the Restrictive Relative with the subjunctive. The Relative of Characteristic has a tendency to take the subjunctive after indefinite and general expressions (for examples, see 324); but even then the indicative may be used when the statement is a definite fact, and not a general characteristic (*i.e.* with a definite antecedent): as, **sunt quī dīcunt impēria . . . nēquīsse pātī**, *there are some who assert, etc. (i.e. I know some who assert, etc.)*. Particularly to be noted is the Restrictive Relative in such phrases as **quod sciam**, *so far as I know*; **quod mēmīnerim**, *as far as I remember*.

## EXAMPLE.

**nōn is sum quī hīs ūtar**, *I am not such a one as to use these things.*

361. RULE LX  
roduced by the  
sī quis, sī quī  
ordinary condit

1. **haec quī vīdēt**  
*any one who*  
*admit that*
2. **errat longē**,  
*any one sup*

Obs. Causal Cl  
by **ut**, **utpōte**, **quip**  
although the indic

1. **hābeo sēnec**  
**auxit**, *I ch*  
*love of con*
2. **mīseret tuī**  
**fāciās inī**  
*so great a r*
3. **hābeo sēnec**  
**auxit**, *I ch*  
*increased n*

Obs. In Cicero  
in Sallust, the ind

**absolvīte Ver**  
**cōpīsse**, *a*  
*that he has*

362. RULE  
Discourse, lik  
subjunctive.

**nuntiātum es**  
*was annou*  
*had return*

## CONDITION.

**361. RULE LXVI.**—A Condition is sometimes introduced by the Indefinite Relative (*quī, quae, quod*—*sī quis, sī quī, etc.*), and the modes are used as in ordinary conditional clauses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *haec quī videat, nōnne cōgātur cōnfitērī deōs esse, if any one show<sup>1</sup> i see these things, would he not be compelled to admit that there are gods?*
2. *errat longē, quī crēdat, he greatly errs who supposes (i.e. if any one supposes, he greatly errs).*

## CAUSE.

Obs. Causal Clauses introduced by *quī* alone, or strengthened by *ut, utpōte, quippe*, generally take their verbs in the subjunctive, although the indicative is occasionally used to state a fact (Ex. 1).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *hābeo sēnectūtī grātiam, quae mihī sermōnis āviditātem auxit, I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.*
2. *mīsēret tuī mē quī (= cum tū) hunc tantum hōminem faciās inimicum tibi, I pity you since you (in that you) make so great a man as this inimical to you.*
3. *hābeo sēnectūtī grātiam, quae mihī sermōnis āviditātem auxit, I cherish gratitude to old age, which (because it) has increased my love of conversation.*

Obs. In Cicero the mode with *quippe quī* is the subjunctive; in Sallust, the indicative.

## CONCESSION.

*absolvite Verrem, quī (= cum is) sē fāteātur pēcūniās cōpisse, acquit Verres, although he confesses (should confess) that he has taken bribes.*

**362. RULE LXVII.**—Relative Clauses in Indirect Discourse, like other dependent clauses, take the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLE.

*nuntiātum est ēquītēs quī praemissī essent rēvertisse, it was announced that the horsemen who had been sent in advance had returned.*

a. A Relative Clause, even in Indirect Discourse, may take the indicative, if it contains a statement on the authority of the narrator (= the present speaker or writer), or if it is a mere circumlocution.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vicī quam Gallīs concēsserat, omnēs noctū discēssisse,** *Caesar was informed through his scouts that all of them had withdrawn during the night from that quarter of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.*
2. **quis nēget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum pōtestāte administrārī,** *who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods?*

Obs. The statement on the authority of the present speaker or writer is equivalent to saying that the statement is a *fact*; hence, the indicative is used. The relative clause **quam . . . concēsserat**, although standing in Indirect Discourse, is in the indicative, because it is an *explanation* given by the writer himself (Caesar). The relative clause **quae vidēmus**, may be considered as explanatory (*i.e.* it is a *circumlocution*), and although introduced into the Indirect Discourse, the verb (**vidēmus**) is in the indicative, because the manner of making the assertion is not important enough to rise into consideration; hence, the verb remains in the mode in which it would naturally be, *viz.* the indicative. The statement is virtually made on the authority of the *present* speaker, because he does not think it worth while to shift the responsibility; *i.e.* it often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he will use the indicative or subjunctive.

## INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

Obs. In Latin we often find a *clause subordinate to another clause which is itself subordinate*. When the first subordinate clause is a subjunctive (or an infinitive) clause, then the subjunctive is used in the second subordinate (or *intermediate*) clause, because anything depending on a potential is itself necessarily potential. The verb in the second subordinate clause is said to be in the subjunctive *by attraction*. The verb in the second subordinate clause may be in the indicative, but, if the clause (intermediate) is in Indirect Discourse, its verb is naturally in the subjunctive (as in the foregoing lesson), unless the clause is *merely explanatory*, *i.e.* a *circumlocution* (362. Obs.) containing a statement which is regarded

as true independent indicative; thus, *scēs what I see (quī says that he sees) in a subordinate clause; sē effīcēre possit, nē* that he wishes *vē* as to form an esse into the subjunctive direct Discourse subjunctive, would ha containing a circ merely explanatory a *fact* (on the aut Hence:—

363. RULE I  
mate clause ma  
on, and form  
subjunctive c

1. **respondit**  
*replied th*  
*Nervii.*
2. **vēreor nē,**  
*Iest, while*
3. **tanta rēru**  
**vulnērib**  
**grārent,**  
*our men,*  
*renewed t*

Obs. The ter  
(or citations) de  
like (as **dīco**, r  
introduces in pr  
the term Indire  
which indirectly  
than the speak

as true independently of the quotation. The verb is then in the indicative: thus, *dicit sē vidēre ea quae video*, he says that he sees what I see (in fact); whereas *quae videam* would mean (he says that he sees) what as he alleges I see; *quae video* is the intermediate clause; so *nēmō tam pōtēns est ut omnia quae vēlit efficere possit*, no one is so powerful as to be able to accomplish all that he wishes. *vēlit* is so closely connected with *possit*, etc., as to form an essential part of the result, and is therefore, attracted into the subjunctive. Hence, relative clauses of characteristic in Indirect Discourse (or restrictive clauses), dependent on the subjunctive, would have their verb in the subjunctive, while clauses containing a *circumlocution* or *explanation* of the narrator, *i.e.* a merely explanatory or parenthetical clause, or one that introduces a *fact* (on the authority of the narrator), may be in the indicative. Hence:—

## ATTRACTION OF MODE.

**363. RULE LXVIII.**—A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it depends on, and forms an essential part of, an infinitive or subjunctive clause.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *respondit sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum*, he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.
2. *vēreor nē, dum mīnuere vēlim, lābōrem augeam*, I fear lest, while I am wishing to lessen the toil, I may increase it.
3. *tanta rērum commūtātiō facta est, ut nōstrī etiam quī vulnērībus cōfectī prōcūbuissent, proelium rēdintegrarent*, so great a change of affairs was brought about that our men, even those who had fallen worn out with wounds, renewed the battle.

## PARTIAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**Obs.** The term *Indirect Discourse* is strictly applied to clauses (or citations) dependent on some word of *saying, thinking, and the like* (as *dīco, rēspondeo, nuntio, aiō, arbitror*, while *inquam* introduces in prose Direct Discourse). In a more general sense, the term *Indirect Discourse* may be used to designate all clauses which indirectly express the words or thoughts of any person other than the speaker or narrator; and even the past thoughts or words



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5

5.0

5.6

6.3

7.1

8.0

9.0

10.0

11.2

12.5

14.0

16.0

18.0

20.0

22.5

25.0

28.0

31.5

36.0

40.0

45.0

50.0

56.0

63.0

71.0

80.0

90.0

100.0

112.0

125.0

140.0

160.0

180.0

200.0

225.0

250.0

280.0

315.0

360.0

400.0

450.0

500.0

560.0

630.0

710.0

800.0

900.0

1000.0

1120.0

1250.0

1400.0

1600.0

1800.0

2000.0

2250.0

2500.0

2800.0

3150.0

3600.0

4000.0

4500.0

5000.0

5600.0

6300.0

7100.0

8000.0

9000.0

10000.0

11200.0

12500.0

14000.0

16000.0

18000.0

20000.0

22500.0

25000.0

28000.0

31500.0

36000.0

40000.0

45000.0

50000.0

56000.0

63000.0

71000.0

80000.0

90000.0

100000.0

112000.0

125000.0

140000.0

160000.0

180000.0

200000.0

225000.0

250000.0

280000.0

315000.0

360000.0

400000.0

450000.0

500000.0

560000.0

630000.0

710000.0

800000.0

900000.0

1000000.0

1120000.0

1250000.0

1400000.0

1600000.0

1800000.0

2000000.0

2250000.0

2500000.0

2800000.0

3150000.0

3600000.0

4000000.0

4500000.0

5000000.0

5600000.0

6300000.0

7100000.0

8000000.0

9000000.0

10000000.0

11200000.0

12500000.0

14000000.0

16000000.0

18000000.0

20000000.0

22500000.0

25000000.0

28000000.0

31500000.0

36000000.0

40000000.0

45000000.0

50000000.0

56000000.0

63000000.0

71000000.0

80000000.0

90000000.0

100000000.0

112000000.0

125000000.0

140000000.0

160000000.0

180000000.0

200000000.0

225000000.0

250000000.0

280000000.0

315000000.0

360000000.0

400000000.0

450000000.0

500000000.0

560000000.0

630000000.0

710000000.0

800000000.0

900000000.0

1000000000.0

1120000000.0

1250000000.0

1400000000.0

1600000000.0

1800000000.0

2000000000.0

2250000000.0

2500000000.0

2800000000.0

3150000000.0

3600000000.0

4000000000.0

4500000000.0

5000000000.0

5600000000.0

6300000000.0

7100000000.0

8000000000.0

9000000000.0

10000000000.0

11200000000.0

12500000000.0

14000000000.0

16000000000.0

18000000000.0

20000000000.0

22500000000.0

25000000000.0

28000000000.0

31500000000.0

36000000000.0

40000000000.0

45000000000.0

50000000000.0

56000000000.0

63000000000.0

71000000000.0

80000000000.0

90000000000.0

100000000000.0

112000000000.0

125000000000.0

140000000000.0

160000000000.0

180000000000.0

200000000000.0

225000000000.0

250000000000.0

280000000000.0

315000000000.0

360000000000.0

400000000000.0

450000000000.0

500000000000.0

560000000000.0

630000000000.0

710000000000.0

800000000000.0

900000000000.0

1000000000000.0

1120000000000.0

1250000000000.0

1400000000000.0

1600000000000.0

1800000000000.0

2000000000000.0

2250000000000.0

2500000000000.0

2800000000000.0

3150000000000.0

3600000000000.0

4000000000000.0

4500000000000.0

5000000000000.0

5600000000000.0

6300000000000.0

7100000000000.0

8000000000000.0

9000000000000.0

10000000000000.0

11200000000000.0

12500000000000.0

14000000000000.0

16000000000000.0

18000000000000.0

20000000000000.0

22500000000000.0

25000000000000.0

28000000000000.0

31500000000000.0

36000000000000.0

40000000000000.0

45000000000000.0

50000000000000.0

56000000000000.0

63000000000000.0

71000000000000.0

80000000000000.0

90000000000000.0

100000000000000.0

&lt;



of the speaker or narrator himself may take this construction. On this principle, indirect questions and dependent constructions following verbs of *wishing, desiring, etc.*, as well as final clauses, may be explained as Indirect Discourse, the indirect relation often being confined to a dependent clause, and not extending to the whole sentence; as, *nōva nupta flet quod ire necesse sit, the bride is weeping because she must go (says she)*. This sentence in Indirect Discourse is: *nōva nupta dicit sē flēre quod ire necesse sit*. Hence —

INFORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**364. RULE LXIX.** — A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it expresses, though not in formal indirect discourse, the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer.

EXAMPLES.

1. *omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus rēliquisset mīhī dōnāvit, he gave to me all the books which (as he said) his brother had left.*
2. *Sōcrātēs accūsātus est quod corrumpēret iuventūtem, Socrates was arraigned because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.*
3. *Aeduī questī sunt quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum pōpūlārentur, the Aeduī complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*

Obs. 1. The constructions following verbs of *wishing, desiring, commanding, permitting, caring, striving, hindering, fearing*, and the like, may be explained as Informal Indirect Discourse (usually called *pētitiō obliqua*).

EXAMPLES.

1. *nīhil indīgnius est quam eum quī culpā cāreat supplicīō nōn cārēre, nothing is more unbecoming than that he who is free from fault should not be free from punishment.*
2. *mīlitēs mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgērant persēquērentur, he sent soldiers to (who should) pursue those who had fled (i.e. the fugitives).*

Obs. 2. Note, in the foregoing examples, that the relative clause *qui cāreat* (see 361), depending on an infinitive, has its verb in the subjunctive by the ordinary rule; in Ex. 2, the clause *qui fūgērant* has its verb in the indicative, because it is regarded as parenthetical, i.e. it is a circumlocution (see 362. a).

## Supplementary Examples :—

1. **nōn dūbito quā nōva nupta fleat quod ire nēcesse sit,**  
*I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.*
2. **primum pōsuit eam (causam) dē quā mōdo dixi, quae orta esset ex praesēnsiōne rerum futūrārum,** *he first mentioned that of which I have just spoken (direct statement), which (according to him) had its origin in a presentment of the future.*
3. **nēscire quid antequam nātus sis accidērit, id est semper esse puērū,** *not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.*
4. **Ariovistus dixit sē obsidēs quōs ab Aeduīs hāberet nōn redditūrum.**
5. **Caesar nēgavit sē Helvētiīs quod postulāvit dare posse.**
6. **nuntiātum est equitēs quī praemissī essent rēvertisse.**
7. **dixit oppidum, quod vidēs, Ariovistī fuisse.**

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English, and give the Rule for all Modes and Tenses :—

1. Caesar dat nēgōtium Sēnōnibus, ūti ea quae apud Belgās gērantur<sup>1</sup> cōgnoscant, sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciānt.
2. Caesar grāviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iīs nōn sublēvētur<sup>1</sup> praesertim cum eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscepērit.<sup>1</sup>
3. Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgētōrigis permōti, constituērunt ea quae ad prōficiendum pertinērent<sup>1</sup> comparāre.
4. Dens est, quī mundum rēgit.
5. Hostēs lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī<sup>2</sup> pācem pētērent.<sup>1</sup>
6. Nēmō tam pōtēs est ut omnia quae vilit<sup>1</sup> effīcere possit.<sup>1</sup>
7. Dignus est quī laudētur.
8. Damna mājōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestimārī possint.<sup>1</sup>
9. O fortunāte adūlescēns, quī (= cum tū) tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēneris.<sup>1</sup>
10. Absolvite<sup>3</sup> virum, quī<sup>4</sup> (= cum is) fāteātur<sup>1</sup> pecūniās cēpisse.<sup>1</sup>
11. Haec quī videat,<sup>5</sup> nōne cōgātur<sup>1</sup> fātērī deōs esse.
12. Caesar ab Aeduīs frūmentum flāgitābat,<sup>1</sup> quod essent publicē polliciti.<sup>6</sup>

Translate into Latin:—

1. The boys who study will learn. 2. The farmer sent men to plough the field. 3. There were some who thought the man should<sup>7</sup> be condemned to death. 4. The boys said that they would give you whatever they had (then). 5. Would not the man who<sup>5</sup> should see these things be forced to confess that there are gods. 6. No one can be king of the Persians (*Persārum*) who has not first<sup>8</sup> learnt<sup>9</sup> the discipline of the Magi (*Magōrum*). 7. Who could (*possit*) love him whom he fears? 8. He promised to give<sup>10</sup> what I had asked. 9. The lieutenant, on-his-return<sup>11</sup> to Cæsar, reported what<sup>12</sup> he had seen in the enemy's camp.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Explain mode and tense.
2. Relative of Purpose.
3. *Acquit*.
4. *Though he*, etc.
5. **Quī videat = sī quis videat**, if any one were to see.
6. The subjunctive refers to the promises as made by the Æduans.
7. Use **condemnandum esse**.
8. *First = ante*.
9. **Quī nōn percēpērit = nīsi percēpērit**, unless he has learned, etc.
10. **Sē dātūrum**.
11. **Rēversus**.
12. = *that which*.

What is a relative clause? Mention the various classes of relative clauses. What will be the mode of a verb (in Indirect Discourse) in a relative clause that depends on an infinitive clause or another relative clause? May the verb in the second relative clause ever be in the indicative? Why has this verb a tendency to be in the subjunctive? Define an intermediate clause. Point out the intermediate clause in the following: *He says that he sees what I see*. Mention the various classes of relative clauses. Explain the meaning of *circumlocution*. When is a relative clause equivalent to a circumlocution? What is meant by informal indirect discourse?

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

Translate into Latin : —

1. The waves on the shores [of the sea] are high.
2. Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was consumed<sup>1</sup> by lightning.
3. Neither you nor I have done this.
4. You and he praise the streams of the country.
5. The man said one thing and the boy another.<sup>2</sup>
6. Homer is called the king of poets.
7. The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus.
8. Hear much,<sup>3</sup> speak little.
9. After his death the people repented of their judgment.
10. Cæsar kept demanding corn of the Ædui.
11. The elephant is said to live two hundred years.
12. Augustus died at Nola.
13. He wandered about the banks of the river Po and the shores of the Adriatic Sea.
14. A good man forgets all injuries.
15. At what price does he give lessons?<sup>4</sup>
16. It is not lawful for any man<sup>5</sup> to lead an army against his country.
17. Having learned these things, Cæsar returns to the fleet.
18. What o'clock is it?
19. Is that your fault or mine?
20. He asked whether that was your fault or mine.
21. If they (shall) give hostages, Cæsar will make peace with them.
22. Can anybody do this?
23. Can somebody do this?
24. Plato lived eighty-one years.
25. Wherefore it pleased him to send<sup>6</sup> legates to Ariovistus, to demand<sup>7</sup> from him that he should appoint some place central with respect to both of them for a conference, (saying) that he wished to treat with him concerning the republic, and the highest interests of both.
26. On the 10th of April we set out for the province.
27. Is this said to have been done by night or by day?
28. The Germans have not entered a house for fourteen years.
29. It is of great consequence<sup>8</sup> to me<sup>9</sup> that I should see you.

30. On the last day of December he set sail,<sup>10</sup> and arrived at Athens on the 10th of January. 31. In the first of the spring the consul came to Ephesus, and, having received the troops from<sup>11</sup> Scipio, he made<sup>12</sup> a speech<sup>13</sup> in-presence-of<sup>14</sup> his soldiers (in which), after extolling their bravery, he exhorted them to undertake<sup>15</sup> a new war with<sup>16</sup> the Greeks, who had (as he said) helped Antiochus with auxiliaries.

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Use <b>concrēmātum est</b> .   | 9. See <b>315. 3. (2), a</b> .                       |
| 2. Use <b>aliud . . . aliud</b> . | 10. Use <b>solvit</b> .                              |
| 3. Use the plural.                | 11. Use <b>ā</b> .                                   |
| 4. Lit. <i>teach</i> .            | 12. Use <b>hābuit</b> .                              |
| 5. Use <b>licet nēmīnī</b> .      | 13. Use <b>contīōnem</b> .                           |
| 6. See <b>321</b> .               | 14. Use <b>apud</b> .                                |
| 7. See <b>321. Obs</b> .          | 15. Use <b>ad</b> with the ger. of <b>accīpēre</b> . |
| 8. See <b>315. 3. (2)</b> .       | 16. Use <b>cum</b> .                                 |

## MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES.

### I. *SUM* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

[Learn the principal parts and meaning of **absum**,<sup>1</sup> **adsum**, **dēsum**, **insum**, **intersum**, **obsum**,<sup>2</sup> **praesum**, **prōsum**, **possum**, **subsum**,<sup>3</sup> **sūpersum**.]

Translate into Latin : —

1. God is present in all places. 2. They profit neither themselves nor others. 3. They were not able to profit me. 4. He has been absent from home six months. 5. This cannot profit you, but injures you and your friends. 6. A leader was wanting to the army. 7. The cavalry profited our army. 8. He was present in the battle. 9. They were able to be present. 10. They governed the city for ten years.

1. For euphonic changes, see **7**. and **ff**.
2. Principal parts: **obsum**, **obesse**, **offuī**.
3. Principal parts: **subsum**, **subesse**, no perf.

II. *EO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

[Learn the principal parts and meaning of *abeo*, *adeo*, *ante-eo*, *circumeo*, *coeo*, *egeo*, *ineo*, *intēreo*, *introeo*, *obeo*, *pereo*, *prae-eo*, *praetereo*, *prōdeo*, *rēdeo*, *sūbeo*, *transeo*, *vēneo*.]

Translate into Latin : —

1. The soldiers crossed the river.
2. He was surrounded by the fleet of the enemy.
3. The merchants came to sell their goods.
4. Hannibal returned to his native country.
5. They went forth from their territories.
6. They formed the plan of entering the city.
7. Caesar approached the city.
8. *In the beginning of spring* we will return to you.
9. He died at Rome.
10. The dog barks at the passers-by.<sup>1</sup>
11. Bring me aid or I shall perish.
12. The soldiers attacked the enemy *while crossing* the river.

1. Lit. *those passing by*.

III. *FERO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

[Learn the meaning and the principal parts of *affero*, *rēfero*, *antefero*, *aufero*,<sup>1</sup> *confero*, *differo*, *infero*, *offerō*, *effero*, *tollo*, *dēfero*, *prōfero*, *transfero*.]

Translate into Latin : —

1. He wages war against Rome.
2. Hannibal transferred the war into Italy.
3. We preferred peace to war.
4. Verres removed gold and silver from Sicily.
5. The soldiers retreated and betook themselves to the mountain.
6. The Romans intrusted the chief command to Caesar.
7. Friends often differ from each other.

1. *b* before *f* becomes *u*.

## IV. CASES.

1. Thou and my friend have written the letter.
2. Caesar, the leader of the army, has waged war in Italy and Gaul.
3. I who am encouraging you cannot (encourage) myself.
4. He is ashamed of his cruelty.
5. I am weary of life.

6. The wise man will teach his son justice. 7. The people made Cæsar consul. 8. Every tenth man was chosen. 9. Every sixth man was chosen. 10. All the best men (lit., each best man) were chosen. 11. They fear this enemy. 12. Hannibal crossed the Alps with his army. 13. The river goes through the midst of the city. 14. This, lastly (*ad extrēmum*), I particularly (*māgnōpēre*) ask you. 15. We ought not to conceal our opinions from our friends. 16. He leads his army over the river. 17. Cæsar leads the cavalry over the bridge. 18. The people appoint him general. 19. O wolf, excellent guardian, as the saying is (*ut ājunt*), for the sheep (*gen.*). 20. The Romans were eager for glory. 21. One man (*dat.*) must not fight with (*cum*) two. 22. What pleases you also pleases me. 23. This thing is unlike that. 24. The life which we enjoy is short. 25. We pity those who repent of their faults. 26. We love those who have repented of their faults. 27. *When these things had been done, and the whole of Gaul had been subdued*, the nations which dwelt beyond the Rhine sent ambassadors to (*ad*) Cæsar. 28. Cicero went to Athens. 29. The ambassadors came from Carthage. 30. The men fled to Rome. 31. The soldiers departed from Italy. 32. Setting forth (*prōfectus*) from Carthage, he made for (*pētēre*) Italy. 33. He was a brave man at home and in war. 34. He will return home in the evening. 35. When my son returns from the country, I will send him to (*ad*) you. 36. We perceive that snow is white. 37. It is said that snow is white. 38. I believe that the souls of men are immortal. 39. Who was the man? 40. I will tell you who the man was. 41. The wall is two hundred feet long. 42. I will send you a letter.

---

 V.

1. No brave man shudders at the enemy. 2. Who was present (*intēresse*) at your conversation? 3. Against the Tarentines, who were in the lowest part of (*ultīmus*) Italy,

justice. 7. The  
 tenth man was  
 10. All the best  
 11. They fear  
 Alps with his  
 1st of the city.  
 ly (*māgnōpēre*)  
 e opinions from  
 the river. 17.  
 18. The people  
 guardian, as the  
 20. The Romans  
 must not fight  
 so pleases me.  
 which we enjoy is  
 their faults. 26.  
 ults. 27. *When*  
*Gaul had been*  
 the Rhine sent  
 t to Athens. 29.  
 The men fled to  
 ly. 32. Setting  
 (*pētēre*) Italy.  
 ar. 34. He will  
 son returns from  
 36. We perceive  
 is white. 38. I  
 . 39. Who was  
 a was. 41. The  
 and you a letter.

7. 2. Who was  
 3. Against the  
 (*ultimus*) Italy,

war was declared. 4. Plato died in (his) eighty-second year,  
 while writing. 5. Romulus called the city after (e) his name,  
 Rome. 6. Have you been at Athens? 7. He asked the boy  
 whether he wished to return to his father. 8. Philosophy  
 heals the mind. 9. The soldiers lie on the ground. 10. The  
 soldiers fight with their companions. 11. The soldiers fight  
 with the sword. 12. Caesar was stripped of his property.  
 13. The art of carefully educating boys is difficult. 14. The  
 art of governing the State is very difficult. 15. The enemy  
 fortified their camp *after they* had crossed the river. 16.  
 Wolves are like dogs. 17. Only a few are deserving of  
 praise. 18. Thou art free from faults. 19. A bad man is  
 never free from fear. 20. The deeds of the general are  
 worthy of a triumph. 21. Relying on thee, we have under-  
 taken this business. 22. Cicero was very much devoted  
 (*āmāns*)<sup>1</sup> to Pompey. 23. The letter is full of good promise  
 (*spēs*). 24. You have freed the city from danger and the  
 citizens from fear. 25. As (*ut*) a shore without a harbor  
 cannot be safe for ships, so (*sīc*) a heart (*ānīmus*) without  
 fidelity cannot be stable for friends. 26. My older brother  
 is in his thirty-third year; the younger, in his twenty-fifth; my  
 oldest sister is in her eighteenth; my youngest, in her twelfth.

1. With *gen.*

#### VI. MOODS.

1. Is that your fault or ours? 2. He asked whether that  
 was your fault or ours. 3. What are you doing? 4. I  
 know what you are doing. 5. I shall hear what you are  
 doing. 6. I knew what you were doing. 7. I had learned  
 what you were doing. 8. I had learned what you were  
 going to do. 9. I learned what you were doing. 10. I  
 learned what you were going to do. 11. Let us remember.  
 12. My father takes care that I am well educated, actively  
 exercised, thoroughly accomplished, and carefully instructed.



13. My father took care that I was well educated, actively exercised, thoroughly accomplished, and carefully instructed. 14. If the boy studies diligently, he will learn rapidly. 15. If the boy had studied diligently, he would have learned more rapidly. 16. If the boy should study diligently, he would learn rapidly. 17. When the war was ended,<sup>1</sup> ambassadors from all the States (*gen.*) came to Cæsar. 18. When the boy was taught, he was silent. 19. When the enemy had assaulted the town, all the citizens were filled with great fear. 20. The enemy were assaulting the town, when they saw our cavalry. 21. While I was writing, you were reading and my brother was playing. 22. While the leader was drawing up his forces, the enemy surrounded the city. 23. When the leader had drawn up his forces, he ordered them to assault the city. 24. Our soldiers are led out in (*in*) the line of battle before the enemy fortify their camp. 25. I do not doubt but that the soldiers fought bravely. 26. The boy was punished because he did not obey the teacher. 27. The messenger said that "The commander was drawing the soldiers up in line of battle while the enemy were fortifying their camp." 28. The messenger said that the commander had led his soldiers out of the city before that the enemy had fortified their camp. 29. The soldiers who were sent by Cæsar fortified their camp, and then crossed the river to attack the enemy. 30. He issued a proclamation (*edico*) that no one<sup>2</sup> of the soldiers should fight with the enemy. 31. The soldiers fought so bravely that no one<sup>3</sup> of the enemy escaped. 32. Would not the (man) who<sup>4</sup> sees these things be compelled to confess that there are gods? 33. O fortunate youth, who<sup>5</sup> hast found a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess. 34. Cæsar sent the soldiers to<sup>6</sup> fortify the camp. 35. There were some who<sup>7</sup> pitied him. 36. The joy was greater than what men could receive (*cæpio*). 37. He was a suitable man to send. 38. He deserves to be praised. 39. He came into the garden for the sake of taking a walk. 40. God has made

the animals for the sake of man, as, for instance (*ut*), the horse for riding (*vēhī*), the ox for ploughing. 41. Man is naturally eager to learn. 42. The soldiers were eager to fight. 43. Wrapping-paper (*charta emporētica*) is worthless (*inūtilis*) for writing. 44. I fear he has not received the letter. 45. I fear that, if I give this letter to him, he will open it (*solvēre*). 46. (It is) by obedience (*obsēquium*) (that) you have brought it about (*efficere*) that no one is dearer to the king than you. 47. After the war was finished the consul returned to Rome. 48. Although the ground (*lōcus*) was unfavorable (*inīquus*), nevertheless Cæsar determined to attack the enemy. 49. Although I have asked you to come to me, nevertheless I know that you cannot help me. 50. As the consul was hastening<sup>1</sup> to Rome, the enemy overtook (*consēquī*) his army. 51. The soldiers crossed the river without any hesitation.<sup>8</sup> 52. Divide your troops *without weakening them*.<sup>9</sup> 53. He divided my troops *without dividing his own*.<sup>10</sup> 54. The consul cannot cross the river *without dividing his army*.<sup>11</sup> 55. No army can be divided *without being weakened*.<sup>12</sup> 56. We cannot let him go without giving him money. 57. He departed without accomplishing his mission (*rēs*). 58. Can you condemn the army without also condemning the general? 59. He received the letter,<sup>13</sup> and,<sup>14</sup> without opening (*rēsolvēre*) it, laid it down. 60. You have written (*do*) many letters to Rome without writing any<sup>15</sup> to me.

1. Translate this clause in two different ways, 259.

2. Use *nē quis*. 3. Use *ut nēmō*.

4. *Quī videat* = *sī quis videat*. 5. 324. 6. 321. 7. 324.

8. (1) *Nihil dūbitantēs*, 260; (2) *nēque quidquam dūbitāverunt*; (3) *nūlla interpōsitā dūbitātiōne*; (4) *sine ullā dūbitātiōne*.  
9. *Nē dēbilitēs*.

10. (1) *Cum suās nōn dividēret*; (2) *suīs nōn dīvisīs*.

11. (1) *Nisi exercitum dīvisērit*; (2) *nisi exercitū dīvisō*.

12. (1) *Quīn dēbilitētur*; (2) *ut nōn dēbilitētur*.

13. 259. f. 14. 260. f. 15. *Cum nullās*.

## GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

---

### AGREEMENT OF VERBS, NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

#### SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE (p. 53).

**1.** The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.

#### AGREEMENT OF VERBS (p. 54).

**2.** A finite verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

#### APPOSITION (p. 60).

**3.** A noun used to describe another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

#### PREDICATE NOUN (p. 100).

**4.** A noun in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with it in case.

#### AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES (p. 203).

**5.** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

#### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES (p. 66).

**6.** Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

#### PREDICATE ADJECTIVE (p. 100).

**7.** A predicate adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case.

## GENITIVE.

## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS (p. 61).

8. A noun limiting the meaning of another noun, and denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES (p. 115).

9. Many adjectives are followed by the genitive to complete their meaning.

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE (p. 198).

10. Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive denoting the whole.

## PREDICATE GENITIVE (p. 103).

11. A noun in the predicate, denoting a different person or thing from the subject, is put in the genitive.

1. Certain adjectives of quantity — as *māgnī*, *parvī*, *plūris*, *mīnōris* — are used to denote indefinite price.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS (p. 294).

12. Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, and *forgetting*, — *rēcōrdor*, *mēmīnī*, *rēmīnīscor*, and *oblīviscor*, — are followed by the genitive (sometimes the accusative).

1. The genitive is used (p. 295)

(1) With *mīsēreor*, *mīsērēscō*.

(2) With the impersonals *rēfert* and *intērest*.

(3) The impersonals *mīsēret*, *paenitet*, *pūget*, *pūget*, and *taedet*, take the genitive of the object with the accusative of the person.

(4) Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime (p. 294).

(5) *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, take the genitive to express the price or value indefinitely (p. 295).

## DATIVE.

## INDIRECT OBJECT (P. 62).

13. The indirect object of an action is put in the dative

1. With intransitive and passive verbs.
2. With transitive verbs, in connection with the direct object.

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS (P. 164).

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with most intransitive verbs signifying *to favor, please, trust, assist*, and their contraries; also, *to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon*, and *be angry*.

## DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR END (P. 170).

15. The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end, usually with another dative of the person or thing affected or interested.

## DATIVE OF POSSESSOR (P. 242).

16. The dative of the possessor is used with the verb *sum*.

## DATIVE OF AGENT (P. 258).

17. The dative of the agent is used with the gerundive to denote the person interested in doing the action.

## DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS (P. 173).

18. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and sūper*, and sometimes *circum*.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES (P. 114).

19. The dative is used after adjectives to denote the object to which the quality is directed.

## ACCUSATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

## DIRECT OBJECT (p. 55).

20. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

## SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (p. 217).

21. The subject of the infinitive mode is put in the accusative.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES. — PERSON AND THING (p. 156).

22. Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing* take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES. — SAME PERSON OR THING (p. 159).

23. Verbs of *naming, calling, choosing, making, reckoning, regarding, esteeming, showing,* and the like, take two accusatives of the same person or thing.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE (p. 182).

24. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

## NAME OF THE PLACE TO WHICH (p. 188).

25. The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, regularly requires the preposition *in* or *ad*.

1. But with names of towns and small islands, and with *dōmum, dōmōs,* and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted.

## ACCUSATIVES IN EXCLAMATIONS.

26. The accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in exclamations.

## COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.

27. Intransitive verbs often take an accusative of cognate, or kindred meaning (the accusative, if a noun, being usually accompanied by an adjective or pronoun).

1. To this head belongs the adverbial use of the accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives with intransitive verbs. If such verbs are used transitively, an accusative of the person may stand with this adverbial accusative.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER COMPOUNDS.

**28.** Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, sūper,** and **trans,** become transitive, and take the accusative.

## VOCATIVE (p. 75).

**29.** The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

## ABLATIVE PROPER.

## PLACE FROM WHICH (p. 210).

**30.** The place *whence*, or *from which*, is denoted by the ablative with a preposition — **ā, ab, dē, ex** (p. 234).

1. Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition (p. 234); also **dōmō, rūre,** and sometimes **hūmō.**

## SEPARATION, CAUSE, SOURCE, ORIGIN (p. 210).

**31.** Separation, cause, source, and origin, are denoted by the ablative with or without a preposition.

1. **Fido** (w. dat. also), **confido, diffido,** and **frētus** and **contentus** are followed by the ablative (p. 210).

2. Compounds with **ā, ab, dē, ē, ex,** denoting separation from a person or place, take the ablative when used figuratively; but, in a local and literal sense, they require a preposition with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT (p. 131).

**32.** The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

## INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

## MEANS AND INSTRUMENT (p. 287).

**33.** The means and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

1. **Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor,** and their compounds, are followed by the ablative (p. 253).

## ABLATIVE OF MEASURE (P. 287).

34. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the standard by which anything is measured.

## MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE (P. 281).

35. The ablative is used with comparatives, and words implying comparison, to denote the measure of difference.

## ABLATIVE OF PRICE (P. 283).

36. The price is expressed by the ablative when it is a definite sum.

1. **Dignus** and **indignus** are followed by the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (P. 278).

37. A noun, adjective, or verb may be followed by the ablative to denote in what respect its signification is taken.

## ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES (P. 112).

38. The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when **quam**, *than*, is omitted.

## ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL (P. 288).

39. The material of which anything is made is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ex** or **dē**; but **constāre**, *to consist*, sometimes omits the preposition.

1. **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative of the thing needed (p. 288).

2. Most verbs and adjectives signifying *plenty* and *want* are followed by the ablative (308. Obs. 1).

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER (P. 289).

40. The ablative of manner generally takes the preposition **cum**, unless it has a modifying adjective or genitive (when **cum** may be omitted).



## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT (P. 289).

41. The ablative of accompaniment takes the preposition **cum**, except in a few military and other phrases.

## ABLATIVE OF QUALITY (P. 269).

42. A noun denoting quality, quantity, or description, and having an adjective joined with it, may be put in the genitive or in the ablative.

## LOCATIVE.

## PLACE IN WHICH (P. 234).

43. The name of the *place where*, or *in which*, regularly requires **in** with the ablative.

## NAMES OF TOWNS (P. 234).

44. Names of towns and small islands, and also **dōmus**, **rūs**, and a few other words omit the preposition, and the name of the *place where*, or *in which*, takes the locative.

## TIME (P. 167).

45. The time *when*, or *within which*, is put in the ablative; time *how long*, in the accusative.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (P. 222).

46. A noun (or a pronoun) and a participle may be put in the ablative, called absolute, to express the *time*, *cause*, *concession*, *means*, *condition*, or some *attendant circumstance* of an action.

## INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE MODES.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

47. The indicative mode asserts action or being as a fact, or inquires after a fact.

## SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE (P. 217).

48. The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, *hearing*, and the like.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT, OBJECT, OR COMPLEMENT (P. 217).

49. The infinitive may be used as the subject, object, appositive, or complement of a verb.

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION (P. 227).

50. Instead of the gerund with its object in the accusative, the gerundive is generally used, the noun taking the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with the noun in gender, number, and case.

1. The gerund governs the same case as its verb, but is itself governed like a noun (225 ff.).

### SUPINE.

FORMER SUPINE (P. 232).

51. The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion.

LATTER SUPINE (P. 232).

52. The supine in **-ū** is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base*, and the nouns *fās, nēfās, and ōpus*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

(P. 246).

53. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express a *wish, command, exhortation, prohibition, or concession*; also, in questions of *doubt* or *deliberation*, and in *mild* or *modest assertions*.

### MODES AND TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES (PP. 302, 309, 347).

54. A primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; and a secondary tense is followed by a secondary. (319, 322. Obs., 350. 1 and 2.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE (p. 306).

**55.** Final clauses take their verbs in the present or imperfect subjunctive, according as the leading verb is in a primary or a secondary tense.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT (p. 309).

**56.** Consecutive clauses take their verbs in the subjunctive, but the tense is generally independent of the regular rule for sequence of tenses. (See **322.** and Obs.)

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (p. 317).

**57.** Conditional sentences with **sī, nīsi, nī, sīn,** take —

*Simple Present and Past Conditions.*

1. Any present or past tense of the indicative in both clauses when nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition.

*Future Conditions.*

2. The future indicative in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a *distinct* and *vivid* manner; the present (or perfect subjunctive) in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a less *distinct* and *vivid* manner.

*Unreal Present and Past Conditions.*

3. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses, to represent the supposed case as *unreal*, or *contrary to fact*. The imperfect denotes *present time*, and the pluperfect *past*.

## COMPARATIVE CLAUSES (p. 320).

**58.** Comparative clauses, introduced by **ut, ūtī, sicut, quēmadmōdum,** etc., and followed by the demonstrative particles **īta, sic** (*so*), etc., regularly take the indicative unless the subjunctive is required, as in indirect discourse or as in conditional sentences.

1. Comparative clauses, introduced by **āc sī, ut sī, quam sī, quāsi, tanquam, tanquam sī, vēlut, vēlut sī,** are, in fact, conditional clauses, of which the conclusion

is omitted or implied, and therefore take the subjunctive like conditional sentences; but the tense is determined by the regular rules for sequence of tenses.

#### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (P. 322).

**59.** Concessive clauses are introduced by concessive conjunctions, — *although, granting that*, — and take the indicative or the subjunctive (according to the principles stated on p. 321 f.).

#### CAUSAL CLAUSES (P. 323).

**60.** Causal clauses, introduced by **quod, quia, quōniam, quandō**, take the indicative when the reason assigned is stated as a fact, and indorsed by the speaker or writer.

1. Causal clauses introduced by **cum** or the relative **quī** regularly take the subjunctive.
2. Causal clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quōniam**, take the subjunctive (in Indirect Discourse, **348**), to state the reason as the *assertion or opinion of some one else than the speaker or writer*.

#### TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

##### ANTECEDENT ACTION (P. 326).

**61.** Temporal clauses, introduced by **postquam, postcā quam, ūbi, ūt, ūt primum, ūbi primum, sīmul ac**, etc., take the indicative (commonly the aorist indicative or historical present).

##### CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION (P. 321).

**62.** **Dum, dōnec, quoad, while, as long as**, take the indicative (any tense).

1. **Dum, dōnec, quoad, until**, take the indicative in the statement of a *fact*, the subjunctive when *purpose* is expressed (*i.e.* if the accomplishment of the purpose is the limit of the action).

## SUBSEQUENT ACTION (p. 327).

**63.** *Antequam* and *priusquam*, *before*, are used with any tense of the indicative, except the imperfect and pluperfect, to express the mere priority of one event to another.

1. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the subjunctive to express (1) the *intentional* priority of one action to another (*i.e.* when the action is *purposed* or *desired* by the subject of the leading verb), (2) or when its non-occurrence is expressed or implied.

CONSTRUCTIONS OF *CUM*.*CUM* TEMPORAL (p. 329).

**64.** *Cum* temporal (= *when*), introducing a clause that defines the *mere time* of an action, may be used with all the tenses of the indicative.

*CUM* HISTORICAL (p. 330).

**65.** *Cum*, meaning *when*, is used in historical narration with the imperfect subjunctive for contemporaneous action, with the pluperfect subjunctive for antecedent action.

CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE *CUM* (p. 330).

**66.** *Cum* causal (= *since*) and *cum* concessive (= *although*) may be used with any tense of the subjunctive.

## INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES.

## DIRECT QUESTIONS (p. 338).

**67.** Direct simple questions are generally introduced by interrogative words, and, as a rule, take their verbs in the indicative.

1. Direct simple questions may take the subjunctive when they express *doubt* or *deliberation*, or imply a negative *opinion* on the part of the speaker or writer (278. 1, 3).

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS (P. 339).

**68.** Indirect questions take their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the regular rule for sequence of tenses (see 319).

## DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE (P. 343).

**69.** In passing from direct to indirect discourse, principal clauses, if declarative, are changed to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and subordinate clauses to the subjunctive.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES (P. 355).

**70.** A relative clause, having a definite antecedent, and adding merely a descriptive fact, takes the indicative.

**71.** Relative pronouns and relative adverbs take the subjunctive when they introduce clauses of *purpose*, *result*, *condition*, *cause*, or *concession*.

## ATTRACTION OF MODE (P. 359).

**72.** A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it depends on, and forms an essential part of, an infinitive or subjunctive clause.

## INFORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE (P. 360).

**73.** A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it expresses, though not in formal indirect discourse, the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer.

## ADVERBS.

## USES OF ADVERBS (P. 119).

**74.** Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

## CONJUNCTIONS (P. 176).

**75.** Conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences.

## READING LESSONS.

### I. FABLES.

NOTE. — The figures in the following sections refer to the rules on p. 370 ff.

#### 1. THE KID AND THE WOLF.

Căpella,<sup>1</sup> stāns<sup>6</sup> in tectō dōmūs,<sup>8</sup> lūpum<sup>20</sup> vīdit<sup>2</sup> praetēreuntem, et lūdificāvit. Sed lūpus, “Nōn tū,” inquit, “sed lōens tuus, mē lūdificat.”

Saepe lōcus et tempus hōmīnēs tīmīdōs audācēs reddit.

#### 2. THE BOY BATHING.

Puer, balneum pētēns in flūviō, aquā paene exstinctus est. Et vīdēns viātōrem quendam, clāmāvit, “Subvēnī mīhī!”<sup>14</sup> Sed hic exprōbrāvit puērō<sup>13</sup> tēmērītatem. Puellūlus autem dixit, “Prīmum subvēnī, deinde rēprēhendere<sup>49</sup> licet.”

#### 3. THE FOX AND THE LION.

Vulpēs vīdit leōnem rētibus<sup>33</sup> captum, et stāns prōpe, lūdificāvit eum īnsolenter. Leō autem, “Nōn tū,” inquit, “mē lūdificās,<sup>2</sup> sed mālum quod in mē incidit.”

#### 4. THE ASS IN THE LION'S SKIN.

Asīnus, pellem<sup>27</sup> leōnis indūtus, circum currēbat, cētēra ānimālia<sup>20</sup> terrēns. Et cum vulpem vīdēret, eam quōque terrēre<sup>49</sup> cōnātus est. Sed haec, āsīnī vāgītū<sup>46</sup> audītō, “Seīto,” inquit, “mē quōque territam fūtūram fūisse nīsi tē vāgientem audīssēm.”<sup>57</sup>

#### 5. THE HOUND AND THE LION.

Cānis vēnātīcus<sup>6</sup> leōnem vīdit, et īnsēcūtus est. Cum autem leō sē vertēret, āe rūgīret, cānis mētūēns rētrorsum

fūgit. Tum vulpēs, cōspicēta, “O mālum cāpit!” inquit;  
 “Tēne<sup>21</sup> leōnem sectārī? eūjus<sup>5</sup> nē vōcem quidem tōlērāre  
 pōtuistī.”

#### 6. THE WOLF AND THE LAMB.

Lūpus insēcūtus est āgnūm. At hic in templū cōnfūgit.  
 Lūpō autem āgnūm invōcante, et mīnūtante pontificem eum  
 sacrificātūrum, rēspondit āgnus, “Mālem quidem deō sācer  
 esse quam ā tē trūcīdārī.”

#### 7. THE FARMER AND THE SNAKE.

Agrīcōla sēnex, hīemis tempōre, serpentem invēnit gēlū  
 rīgēntem, et mīsrēscēns sub veste condidit. Mox serpens,  
 incālēscēns, et indōlem suam rēcūpērāns, bēnēfactōrem mō-  
 mordit interfēcīque; quī mōriēns dīxit, “Justa pātior, quī<sup>5</sup>  
 ānimālī<sup>13</sup> imprōbō vītam servāvērīm.”<sup>71</sup>

#### 8. THE WIDOW'S HEN.

Vīdua quaedam gallīnam hābuit, quae singūla ōva cottīdiē  
 pēpērit. At rāta, sī plūs hordeī<sup>10</sup> gallīnae<sup>13</sup> dēdisset,<sup>57</sup> hanc  
 bīna cottīdiē ōva pārītūram, īta fēcīt. Sed gallīna, pinguis  
 facta, nē singūla quīdem postēā pārēre vālēbat.

## II. LIFE OF CÆSAR.

### CÆSAR IS PROSCRIBED, BUT PARDONED BY SULLA.

1. G. Jūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā gēntis famīliā,<sup>31</sup> annum  
 āgēns sextum et dēcīmum, pātrē amīsīt. Paulō post Cor-  
 nelīam dīxit ūxōrem, eūjus enim pāter Sullae<sup>10</sup> esset nīmīens,  
 vōluit Sulla Cæsārem compellēre<sup>40</sup> ut eam dīmīteret; nēque  
 id pōtuit effīcēre. Ob eam causam Caesar bōnis<sup>31</sup> spōliātus,  
 eum etiā ad mortem quaerērēt, mūtātā veste, noctū ēlapsus  
 est ex urbe, et, quamquam tunc quartānae morbō lūbōrābat,  
 pōpe per singūlās noctēs lātēbrās commūtāre cōgēbātur; et  
 comprēhensus ā Sullae libertō, vix datā pēcūniā<sup>33</sup> ēvāsīt.



Postrēmō per prōpinquōs et affīnēs suōs vēniam impētrāvit, diū rēpugnante Sulla, quī cum deprēcāntibus ornātissimīs virīs dēnēgasset, atque illi pertināciter contendērent victus tandem dixit, eum, quem salvum tantōpēre cūpērent, āllī-quandō optimātium partibus,<sup>15</sup> quās simul dēfendissent, exī-tiō<sup>16</sup> futūrum, multōsque in eō puērō īnesse<sup>18</sup> Māriōs.

#### CÆSAR'S CAPTURE BY THE PIRATES.

2. Caesar, mortuō Sullā et composītā sēditione civīlī, Rhō-dum sēcēdere<sup>19</sup> stātuit, ut per ōtīm Apollōniō, tunc claris-simō dicendū māgistrō, ōpēram dāret; sed in itinēre ā pirātīs captus est, mansitque apud eōs quadrāgintā diēs.<sup>21</sup> Per omne autem illud spātium ita sē gessit, ut pirātīs<sup>20</sup> terrōrī<sup>15</sup> pārīter ac vērērationī<sup>15</sup> esset. Interim cōmitēs servōsque dīmiserat ad expēdiendās pēcūniās, quibus rēdimērētur. Vīgintī tālenta pirātae postulāvērāt; ille vērō quinquāgintā dātūrum<sup>18</sup> sē spōpondit. Quibus nūmērātis, expōsitus est in litōre. Caesar libērātus cōnfestim Mīlētum,<sup>25</sup> quae urbs proximē āberat, prōpērāvit; ibīque contractā classe, stantēs ad huc in eōdem locō praedōnēs noctū adortus, āliquot nāvēs, mersīs āliīs,<sup>46</sup> cēpit, pirātāsque ad dēditionem rēdaetōs eō affēcit supplicīō, quod<sup>5</sup> illis saepe per jōcum minātus ērat, cum ab iīs dētīnērētur; crucībūs<sup>28</sup> illōs suffīgī jussit.

#### CÆSAR'S QUÆSTORSHIP IN SPAIN.

3. Caesar quaestor<sup>3</sup> factus in Hispāniam prōfectus est; cumque Alpēs transīret, et ad cōspectum paupēris cūjusdam vicī cōmitēs ejus per jōcum inter sē dispūtārent, an illic ētiam esset ambitiōnī<sup>16</sup> lōeus; seriō dixit Caesar, malle sē ibī prīmum esse quam Rōmae<sup>44</sup> sēcundum. Ita ānimus dōmīnātiōnis<sup>9</sup> āvidus ā primā aetāte rēgnum conēpiscēbat, semperque in ōre hābēbat hōs Eurīpīdis, Graeci poetae, ver-sus: *Nam sī violandum est jūs, rēgnandī grātīā violandum est; āliīs rēbus pietātem cōlās.*<sup>51</sup> Cum vērō Gādēs,<sup>25</sup> quod est Hispāniae oppīdum, vēnisset, vīsā Alexandrī<sup>8</sup> māgnī imāgīne

ingēmit, et lācīmās fūdit. Causam quaerentibus amīcīs, “ Nōme,” inquit, “ idōnea dōlendī causa est, quod nīhildum nāmōrābile gessērim, eam aetātem ādeptus, quā<sup>45</sup> Alexander jam terrārum orbem subēgērat?”

## LEADER OF THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY.

4. Caesar in captandā<sup>50</sup> plēbis grātiā et ambiendīs<sup>50</sup> lōnō-  
rībūs patrīmōnium effūdīt; aere āliēnō oppressus ipse dicē-  
bat, sībī<sup>10</sup> ōpus esse millīēs sestertium,<sup>10</sup> ut hābēret nihil.  
His artībūs cōsūlātum ādeptus est, collēgaque eī dātus  
Marcus Bibūlus, cui<sup>14</sup> Caesāris cōsūlia hand placēbant.  
Inītō māgistrātū<sup>40</sup> Caesar lēgem agrāriam tulit, hoc est, de  
dīvidendō ēgēnīs cīvībūs<sup>13</sup> agrō publicō; cui<sup>14</sup> lēgī<sup>14</sup> eum sēnā-  
tus rēpūgnāret, Caesar rem ad pōpūlum dētūlit. Bibūlus  
collēga in fōrum vēnit, ut lēgī<sup>13</sup> fērēndae<sup>50</sup> obsistēret; sed  
tanta commōta est sēlitiō, ut in cāput cōsūlis cōphūsus  
stercōre<sup>39</sup> plēnus effundērētur, fascēsque frangērētur. Tan-  
dem Bibūlus, ā sātellitībūs Caesāris fōrō<sup>31</sup> expulsus, dōmī<sup>41</sup>  
sē continēre per rēliqūum annī tempus coactus est, cīriāque  
abstinēre. Intereā nāus Caesar omnia ad arbitrium in rē-  
publicā administrāvit; unde quīdam hōmīnēs faciētī, quae eō  
annō gesta sunt, nōn, ut mōs ērat, cōsūlibūs<sup>46</sup> Caesāre et  
Bibūlō acta esse dicēbant, sed Jūlio et Caesāre, ūnum cōsū-  
lem nōmīne et cōgnōmīne prō duōbūs appellantēs.

## PROCONSUL IN GAUL.

5. Caesar functus cōsūlātū<sup>33</sup> Galliam prōvinciam acecēpit.  
Gessit autem nōvem annīs,<sup>45</sup> quībūs in impēriō fuit, haec fērē.  
Galliam in prōvinciae Rōmānae formam rēdēgit; Germānōs,  
quī trāns Rhēnum incōlunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum<sup>10</sup> ponte fabri-  
cātō aggressus māximīs affēcīt clādībūs.<sup>33</sup> Britānōs antecā  
ignōtōs vīcit, iisque<sup>14</sup> pēcūniās et obsidēs impērāvit; quō in  
bellō multa Caesāris facta ēgrēgia narrantur. Inclīnante in  
fūgam exercītū, rapuit ē mānū mīlītis fugientis scūtum, et in  
prīmam āciem vōlitāns pūgnam rēstituit. In āliō proeliō

ăquiliferum terga vertentem faucibus<sup>33</sup> comprehendit, in contrariam partem retraxit, dexteramque ad hostem protendens: "Quorsum tū," inquit, "abīs? Illic sunt, quibus cum dimicamus." Quō factō militibus animōs addidit.<sup>33</sup>

#### CAESAR BEGINS THE CIVIL WAR.

6. Caesar cum adhuc in Galliā detineretur, ne imperfecto bello discederet, postulavit ut sibi liceret, quamvis absentī, iterum consulatū petere;<sup>49</sup> quod ei a senātū est negatur. Eā rē commotus in Italiā rediit, armis injuriam acceptam vindicaturus; plurimisque urbibus<sup>46</sup> occupatis Brundisium contendit, quō Pompeius consulesque confugerant. Tunc summae audaciae facinus Caesar edidit: a Brundisio Dyrrachium inter oppositas classes gravissimā hieme<sup>45</sup> transiit; cessantibusque copiis, quas subsēqui jussērat, cum ad eas accessendās<sup>50</sup> frustrā misisset, morae<sup>49</sup> impatiens castris noctū egrēditur, clam sōlus nāviculam conscendit obvolutō capite, ne agnosceretur. Mare, adverso vento vehementer flante, intumescēbat; in altum tamen protinus dūrigi nāvigiū jubet; cumque gubernator paene obrūtus fluctibus<sup>33</sup> adversae tempestati cederet: "Quid timēs?" ait; "Caesarem velis."

#### CAESAR DEFEATS POMPEY AND SUBDUES THE EAST.

7. Deinde Caesar in Thessaliā profectus est, ubi Pompeium Pharsalicō proelio fudit, fugientem persecutus est, eumque<sup>21</sup> in itinere cognovit occisum fuisse. Tunc bellum Ptolēmaeo,<sup>18</sup> Pompeii interfectori,<sup>3</sup> intulit a quō sibi quōque insidias parari videbat; quō victo, Caesar in Pontum transiit, Pharnacemque, Mithridatis filium rebellantem aggressus intra quintum ab adventū diem, quattuor vērō, quibus in conspectum venerat, horis, ino proelio profligavit. Quam victoriae celeritatem inter triumphandum notavit, inscripto inter pompae ornamenta trium verborum titulo, *Veni, vidi, vici*. Sua deinceps Caesarem ubique comitata est fortuna.

Scipionem et Jubaam, Nuniidae regem, reliquias Pompeianarum partium in Africa refoventes, devicit. Pompeii liberis in Hispania superavit. Clementer usus est victoriis,<sup>33</sup> et omnibus,<sup>14</sup> qui contra se arma tulerant, pepercit. Regressus in urbem, quinquies triumphavit.

CÆSAR IS DECLARED PERPETUAL DICTATOR, BUT IS SOON  
AFTER ASSASSINATED.

8. Bellis civilibus confectis, Caesar, dictator<sup>3</sup> in perpetuum creatus, agere insolentius coepit. Senatui ad se venientem sedens excepit, et quendam, ut assurgeret noventem, irato vultu<sup>40</sup> respexit. Cum Antonius, Caesaris in omnibus expeditionibus comes, et tunc in consulatione collega, ei<sup>18</sup> in sella aurea sedenti pro rostris diadema, insigne regium, imponeret, non visus est eo facto offendi.<sup>40</sup> Quare conjuratum est in cum a sexaginta amplius viris,<sup>32</sup> Cassio et Bruto duobus conspirationis. Cum igitur Caesar Idibus<sup>45</sup> Martiis in senatum venisset, assidentem specie officii circumsteterunt, illicoque unus e conjuratis, quasi aliquid rogaturus, propius accessit, reuenticque togam ab utroqueumero apprehendit. Deinde clamantem, "Ista quidem vis est," Cassius vulnerat paulo infra jugulum. Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphio trajecit, conatusque prosilire aliud vulnus accepit. Cum Marcum Brutum, quem loco filii habebat, in se irruentem vidisset, dixit: "Tu quoque, fili mi!" Dein ubi animadvertit undique se strictis pugionibus peti, togam caput obvolvit, atque ita tribus et viginti plagis<sup>33</sup> confossus est.

CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

9. Erat Caesar excelsa statura<sup>42</sup> nigris vegetisque oculis,<sup>42</sup> capite<sup>42</sup> calvo quam calvitii deformitatem aegre ferebat, quod saepe obtrectantium jocis esset obnoxia. Itaque ex omnibus honoribus sibi a senatu populoque decretis non aliud recepit aut usurpavit libentius, quam jus laureae perpetuo gestandae. Eum vni<sup>9</sup> pareissimum fuisse ne inimici quidem negarunt;

unde Cātō dicere sōlēbat, ūnum ex omnibus Caesārem ad ēvertendam reipublicam sōbriū accessisse. Aruōrum<sup>9</sup> et ēquītandī pēritissimū erat; lābōris ultrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōnunquam equō, saepius pēdibus anteibat, cūpīte dētectō, sive sōl, sive imber esset. Longissimās viās incredibīlī celeritate cōnfecit, ita ut persaepe nuntiōs dē sē praevēnerit, neque eum mōrābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō<sup>33</sup> vel innixus inflātis ūtribus<sup>33</sup> trāiciēbat.

### III. THE HELVETIAN WAR.

[From Woodford's *Epitome of Caesar's Gallic War*.]

#### CÆSAR'S DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs. Unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Celtae,<sup>1</sup> quī<sup>5</sup> linguā<sup>33</sup> nōstrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,<sup>37</sup> institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Gārumna flūmen dīvidit, ā Belgīs Matrōna et Sēquāna. Fortissimī<sup>6</sup> sunt Belgae, prop- terea quod proximī sunt Germānīs,<sup>19</sup> quī trāns Rhēnam incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte<sup>37</sup> praecedunt, quod fere cottidianīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt. Una pars iūctum cāpit ā flūmine Rhodānō; continetur Garumnā flūmine, oceānō, finibus Belgārum. Attingit etiam flūmen<sup>3</sup> Rhēnum. Vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad infēriorem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Gārumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnacōs montēs et eam partem oceānī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet, spectat inter oceāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

#### ORGETORIX AND HIS PLAN OF EMIGRATION.

2. Apud Helvētīōs nobilissimū<sup>6</sup> et ditissimū fuit Orgētōrix. Is conjūratiōnem nobilitātis fecit, et civitātī<sup>14</sup> persuāsīt, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent. Fācilius

eīs persuāsit, quod undīque locī nātūrā<sup>33</sup> Helvētīi continentur : unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit ; altērā ex parte, monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquānōs et Helvētīos ; tertīā, lacū Lēmānō et flūmine Rhōdānō, quī Prōvinciam nōstram ab Helvētīis dīvidit.

#### THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY.

3. His rēbus adductī, cōstituērunt ea quae<sup>3</sup> ad prōficiendum pertinērent comparāre,<sup>40</sup> jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximū nūmērum coēmēre, sēmentēs quam māximās faciēre, cum proximīs cīvitātibus amicitiam cōfirmāre. In tertium annum prōfectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

#### EMBASSY OF ORGETORIX TO THE NEIGHBORING STATES.

4. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās<sup>50</sup> Orgētōrix dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit. In eō itinēre persuadet Casticō, Sēquānō, ut rēgnū in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod<sup>5</sup> pāter ante hābuerat. Itemque Dumnōrigī Aeduō, quī māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuadet. Inter sē jūsjūrandum dant, et tōtīus Galliae sēsē pōtiri posse sperant. Ea rēs est Helvētīis<sup>13</sup> enuntiāta. Orgētōrigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut ignī<sup>33</sup> cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā<sup>45</sup> Orgētōrix ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque cōndūxit. Per eos sē eripuit. Cum cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs jūis suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgētōrix mortuus est.

#### THE ROUTE SELECTED.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilominus Helvētīi id quod cōstituērunt faciēre<sup>40</sup> cōnantur. Ubī sē pārātōs esse<sup>48</sup> arbitrātī sunt, oppīda sua omnia, vicōs, prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Trium mensium mōlita cibāria quemque dōmō efferre jūbent. Erant omnīnō itinēra duo, quibus<sup>5</sup> itinēribus<sup>33</sup> dōmō exire possent : unum per Sēquānōs, angustum et difficīle, inter

montem Jūram et flūmen Rhōdānum; alterum per prōvinciam nōstram multō facilius atque expēditius, proptereā quod Rhōdānus nōnnullis locis<sup>43</sup> vādō<sup>44</sup> trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allōbrōgum est Gēnāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnibus rēbus<sup>45</sup> ad prōfectiōnem comparātis, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhōdāni omnēs convēniant. Caesārī eum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe prōficeiscī, et in Galliam ultēriōrem contendit. Pontem jubet rēscindī.<sup>46</sup>

CÆSAR RECEIVES AN EMBASSY FROM THE HELVETHI.

6. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs<sup>7</sup> facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī<sup>71</sup> dīcērent ‘sībī<sup>16</sup> esse in animō sine ullō mālēficiō iter per prōvinciam faciēre.’ Caesār ā lacū Lēmānō ad montem Jūram mūrū fossamque perducit. Nēgāt sē posse<sup>48</sup> iter ulli per prōvinciam dāre.<sup>49</sup> Rēlinquēbātur ūna per Sēquānōs via, quā, Sēquānīs invitīs, propter angustias ire nōn pōtērant. Hīs<sup>14</sup> eum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnōrigem mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre,<sup>46</sup> impētrarent. Dumnōrix apud Sēquānōs plūrimū pōtērat, et Helvētīis<sup>19</sup> erat amicus, quod Orgētōrigis filiam in matrīmōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquānīs impētrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētīos ire pātiantur.

THE ÆDUI AND OTHER TRIBES COMPLAIN TO CÆSAR OF THE ENCROACHMENTS OF THE HELVETHI.

7. Caesār in Itāliam magnīs itinēribus contendit, duāsque ibi lēgiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs ex hibernīs edūcit, et in ultēriōrem Galliam, per Alpēs, ire contendit. In fines Vōcontīōrum diē septimō pervēnit; inde in Allōbrōgum finēs, ab Allōbrōgibus in Sēgusiānōs exercitū dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhōdānum primī. Helvētīi jam per angustias et finēs Sēquānōrum suās cōpiās trānsdūxerant, et Aeduōrum agrōs pōpūlabantur. Aeduī, cum sē<sup>20</sup> dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt rōgātum<sup>51</sup> auxiliū. Eōdem tempore Aeduī Ambarri, cōsanguīneī<sup>3</sup> Aeduōrum, Caesārem

certiorem faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobrogēs, qui trans Rhodanum vicōs possessionēsque habebant, fugā<sup>33</sup> se ad Caesarem recipiunt. Caesar non expectandum sibi<sup>17</sup> statuit, dum in Santonōs Helvetiū pervenirent.

CÆSAR SURPRISES AND ROUTES ONE CANTON OF THE HELVETII AT THE RIVER ARAR.

8. Flūmen est Ara., quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquānorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate,<sup>40</sup> ita ut oculis, in ūtram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. Id Helvetiū, rātibuscum et lintribus iunctis, transibant. Ubi Caesar certior factus est tres copiarum partes Helvetiōs<sup>21</sup> transduxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen esse, de tertiā vigiliā ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum transierat. Eōs impeditōs aggressus, magnam eōrum partem concidit. Rēliqui sese in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellabatur Tigūrinus:<sup>3</sup> nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita, quae pars calāmitatem populo<sup>48</sup> Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit.

CÆSAR CROSSES THE RIVER ARAR AND RECEIVES A SECOND EMBASSY FROM THE HELVETII.

9. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās copias Helvetiōrum ut cōsulerquī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetiū, repentinō ejus adventū commotū, legatōs ad eum mittunt, eijus legatiōnis Diviciō princeps fuit, quī bellō<sup>45</sup> Cassianō dux Helvetiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: 'Sī pacem populus Rōmānus cum Helvetiīs faceret, in eam partem itūros, ubi Caesar eōs<sup>21</sup> esse voluisset; sin bellō persēquī persēverāret, rēminiscētur et vctēris incommodi<sup>12</sup> populi Rōmāni, et pristinae virtūtis Helvetiōrum: sē ita ā patrībushic majōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte



quam dōlō contendērent. Quāre, nē committēret, ut is lōcus, ūbī cōnstitissent, ex cālāmītate pōpūlī Rōmānī nōmen cāpēret.'

THE HELVETII, ENCOURAGED BY THE SUCCESS OF THEIR CAVALRY, PREPARE TO ATTACK CÆSAR'S ARMY.

10. Iīs Caesar ita respondit: <sup>6</sup> 'Sibi<sup>16</sup> minus dubitātiōnis dārī, quod eās rēs, quās eommēmōrassent, mēmōriā<sup>33</sup> tēnēret. Sī vētēris contūmēliac<sup>12</sup> oblīviscī vellet, num rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse? Tāmen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, ūti ea<sup>13</sup> quae polliceantur factūrōs intelligat, et sī Aeduīs dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sōciīsque eōrum intulērīnt, item, si Allobrōgībus sātisfaciant, scēsē eum iīs pācem factūrum.' Dīviō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā mājōribus suis īnstītūtōs esse, ūti obsidēs accipēre, nōn dāre cōnsuēvērīnt; ējus rēi pōpūlum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōe responsō dātō, discessit. Postērō diē castra ex eō lōcō mōvent. Idem facit Caesar. Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī<sup>5</sup> vīdeant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciāt. Quī aliēnō lōcō eum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium eomittunt, et paucī dē nōstrīs eadunt. Helvētīi audācius subsistēre, nōnunquam nōstrōs lācessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō contūnēbat, ae sātis hābēbat in praesentiā hostem rāpīnīs<sup>31</sup> prōhibēre. Ita diēs<sup>24</sup> eireiter quīndēcim iter fceērunt, ūti, inter nōvissimum hostium agmen et nōstrum prīmum, nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus<sup>38</sup> passuum intēresset.

THE ÆDUI NEGLECT TO FURNISH THE CORN THEY HAD PROMISED AND CÆSAR CALLS THE GALLIC CHIEFS TO A COUNCIL.

11. Intērim cottīdiē Caesar Aeduos<sup>22</sup> frūmentum, quod<sup>5</sup> essent publicē pollicētū, flāgītāre. Nam, propter frīgōra, nōn mōdo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn ērant, sed nē pābūlī quīdem sātis māgna cōpia suppētēbat. Eō autem frūmentō,<sup>33</sup> quod flūmine Arāre nāvibus subvexerat, minus ūti<sup>49</sup> pōtērat,

ttēret, ut is locus,  
nānī nōmen cāpē-

CESS OF THEIR  
R'S ARMY.

minus dūbītātōnis  
mēmōriā<sup>33</sup> tēnēret.

rēcentium injūri-  
sī obsīdēs ab iīs

Os intelligat, et sī  
i intulērint, itē,

pacem factūrum.<sup>7</sup>

us suīs īnstītūtōs  
ēvērint; ējus rēi

sō dātō, discessit.

tem fācit Caesar.

t, quās in partēs

tātū Helvētiōrum

adunt. Helvētīi

lācessere coepē-  
sātis hābēbat in

ca diēs<sup>24</sup> circīter

hostium agmen

t sēnīs milibus<sup>38</sup>

ORN THEY HAD  
LIC CHIEFS TO

imentum, quod<sup>5</sup>  
pter frīgōra, nōn

d nē pābūli quī-  
ntem frūmentō,<sup>33</sup>  
us ūtī<sup>49</sup> pōtērat,

quod iter ab Arāre Helvētīi āvertērant, ā quibus discēdere  
nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcēre Aeduī: conferrī, comportārī,  
adesse dīcere. Ubī sē diūtius dūcī intellexit, et diem īnstāre,  
quō diē frūmentum<sup>21</sup> milītibz mētīrī oportēret, convocātis  
eōrum pīncēpībuz, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs hābē-  
bat, in hīs Dīvitiācō, et Liscō, quī summō māgistrātū<sup>18</sup> prae-  
erat, grāvīter eōs accūsāt, quod ab iīs nōn sublēvētur; prae-  
sertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum pīcībuz adductus, bellum  
suscepērit. Tum dēmum Liscus prōpōnit: 'esse nōnnullōs,  
quōrum auctōritās āpud plēbem plūrimum vāleat; hōs<sup>21</sup> sēdī-  
tīōsā atque improbā orātīōne multītūdīnem dētērrēre,<sup>48</sup> nē  
frūmentum cōferant. Ab iisdem nōstra cōsilia hostībuz  
ēnuntiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quīn ētiam, quod  
rem Caesārī ēnuntiārīt, intelligēre sese quantō id cum pēri-  
cūlō fēcērit, et, ob eam causam, quamdiū pōtuerit, taceisse.

LISCUS INFORMS CAESAR THAT IT IS OWING TO THE TREACH-  
ERY OF DUMNORIX THAT SUPPLIES ARE NOT FURNISHED.

12. Caesar hāc orātīōne Dumnōrigem,<sup>21</sup> Dīvitiāci frātre,  
dēsīgnārī<sup>48</sup> sentiēbat; sed quod, plūribz praesentībuz, eās  
rēs jactārī nōlēbat, eēlērīter cōncīlium dīmīttit, Liscum rē-  
tinet; dīcit libērīus atque audācius. Eādē sēcrētō ab āliīs  
quaerit; rēpērit esse vērā: 'ipsum esse Dumnōrigem summā  
audāciā,<sup>42</sup> māgnā āpud plēbem propter libērālītatem grātīā,  
cūpīdum nōvārum rērum;<sup>9</sup> complūrēs annōs<sup>24</sup> omnia Aeduōrum  
vectīgālia parvō pīctīō rēdempta hābēre; proptēreā quod, illō  
licente, contrā licēri audeat nēmō. Iīs rēbuz suam rem fāmī-  
liārem auxisse, māgnūm nūmērū ēquītātīs semper circūm sē  
hābēre. Fāvēre Helvētīs<sup>11</sup> propter affīnitātem, odisse Caesa-  
rem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū pōtēntia ējus dēmīnūta,  
et Dīvitiācus frāter in antīquūm locū grātīae atque hōnōris  
sit rēstītūtus. Si quid accīdat Rōmānīs, summam in spem  
rēgnī per Helvētīōs obtīnendī vēnīre; impēriō pōpūli Rōmānī,  
nōn mōdo de rēgnō, sed ētiam de eā quam hābeat grātīā,  
dēsperāre.

DIVITIACUS BESEECHES CÆSAR NOT TO TAKE SEVERE MEASURES AGAINST HIS BROTHER.

13. Cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimæ rēs accēdērent, sātis esse causæ arbītrābātur, quāre in eum aut ipse animadvertēret, aut eivitatē animadvertēre jūbēret. Hīs omnibus ūnum rēpūgnābat, quod Divitiācī frātris summum in pōpulum Rōmānum stūdiū, summam in sē vōluntātem, cōgrēgiam fidem, justitiam, tempērantiam cōgnōvērāt: nam nē ējus supplicio Divitiācī ānimum offendēret vērēbātur. Itaque, priusquam quicquam cōnārētur,<sup>63</sup> Divitiācum<sup>48</sup> ad sē vōcārī jūbet; simul commōnēfacit quæ, ipsō<sup>46</sup> præsente, in conciliō Gallōrum sint dicta; et ostendit quæ sēpārātim quisque dē eō āpud sē dixērit. Divitiācum multīs cum lacrimis obsēcrāre coepit, nē quid grāvius in frātrem stātueret: ‘scire<sup>49</sup> sē<sup>21</sup> illa esse vērā, sese tāmen et āmōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commōvērī. Quod sī quid eī<sup>13</sup> ā Cæsare grāvius accidisset, eum ipse eum locum āmicitie āpud eum tēneret, nēmīnem existimātūrum nōn suā vōluntāte factum, quā ex rē fūtūrum, ūtī tōtius Gallie<sup>8</sup> ānīmī ā sē āvertērentur.’ Cæsar ējus dextram prendit; Dumnōrigem ad sē vōcat; frātrem ādhibet; quæ in eō rēprēhendat ostendit; mōnet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vitet.

CÆSAR PREPARES TO ATTACK THE HELVETH.

14. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior<sup>6</sup> factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia<sup>24</sup> passuum ab ipsius castris octo, quālis esset<sup>68</sup> nātūra montis et quālis in cirenitū adscensus, quī cōgnoscērent<sup>71</sup> mīsīt. Rēnuntiātum est faciilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Lābiēnum, lēgātum, cum duōbus lēgiōnibus summum jūgnū montis adscendēre jūbet. Ipse de quartā vigiliā eōdem itinēre, quō hostēs ierant, ad cōs contendit; cōquitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.

## CÆSAR'S PLAN IS DEFEATED BY THE MISTAKE OF CONSIDIUS.

15. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Titō Lābiēnō tēnērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quingentīs passibus abesset, nēque aut ipsius adventūs, aut Lābiēnī, cōgnītus esset, Cōnsīdius, ēquō admissō, ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem ā Lābiēnō occupārī vōlnerit, ab hostibus<sup>32</sup> tēnērī; id sē ex Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximū collem subducit, aciem instruit. Lābiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum (ut undīque inō tempore in hostēs impētus fieret), monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat, procliōque abstīnēbat. Multō dēnique diē, per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā suis tēnērī, et Cōnsīdium, perterritum, quod<sup>4</sup> nōn vidisset prō vīsō remuntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuerat intervallō, hostēs sequitur; et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

## TO SECURE SUPPLIES CÆSAR TURNS ASIDE FROM THE PURSUIT OF THE HELVETII.

16. Postrīdiē ejus diēi quod omnīnō biduum supērat, cum exercitū frumentum mētūrī oporteret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum duōdēvīgintī āberat, rei frumentāriæ<sup>18</sup> prospiciendum existimāvit, ac Bibracte<sup>25</sup> ire contendit. Helvētīi, seu quod perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere existimarent, sive quod rē frumentāriā<sup>31</sup> interelūdī posse cōfidērent, itinere conversō, nostrōs ā nōvissimō agmine insēquī ac lācessere coepērunt.

## CÆSAR PREPARES FOR A GENERAL ENGAGEMENT.

17. Postquam id animū advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitātumque, qui sustinēret hostium impētum, misit. Ipse intērim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instruxit. Sarcinās in unum locum cōferri, et

SEVERE MEAS-

accēderent, satis ipse animadver-

His omnibus num in populum atem, egrēgiam : nam nē ejus bātur. Itaque,

ad sē vocārī sente, in conciliō ntim quisque dē merimīs obsēcrare scire<sup>49</sup> sē<sup>21</sup> illa

istimātiōne vulgī is accēdisset, cum nēmīnem existī-

rē futurum, utī sar ejus dextram adhibet; quae celiqum tempus

HELVETII.

factus hostēs sub strīs octo, quālis scensus, quī cōg- esse. Dē tertiā tōbus lēgiōnibus Ipse de quartā l cōs contendit;

eum ab iis, quī in sup̄eriore āciē cōstitērant, mūnirī jussit. Helvētū, cum omnibus suis carris scētū, iupēdimenta in ūnum locum cōtulērunt. Ipsī cōfertissimā āciē,<sup>46</sup> rējectō nōstrō ēquitātū, phālange factā, sub p̄imam nōstram āciem successērunt. Caesar, p̄imum suō<sup>46</sup> deinde omnium rēuōtīs<sup>46</sup> ēquīs, ut spem fūgae tolleret, cōhortātus suos, proelium cōmīsit. Milītēs, ē locō sup̄eriore p̄lis missīs, faciē hostium phālangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disjectā, glādiīs destructīs in cōs impētum fēcērunt.

#### CÆSAR TOTALLY DEFEATS THE HELVETH IN A FIERCE BATTLE.

18. Gallīs<sup>15</sup> māgnō erat impēdimentō,<sup>15</sup> quod, plūribus eōrum scētīs<sup>46</sup> ūnō ictū<sup>33</sup> p̄lōrum trānsfixīs et couligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, nēque ēvellere, nēque, sinistrā impēditā, sātis commōdē pūgnāre pōtērant. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī, et pēdem rēferre et, quod mōns sūberat cōreiter mille passuum, eō sē rēcipere coepērunt. Captō monte, et succēdentibus nōstrīs, Boī et Tulingī, quī agmen hostium claudēbant, ex itinere nōstrōs aggressī, circumvēnere; et id cōspicātī Helvētū, quī in montem sē rēcēperant, rursus instāre et proelium rēdintēgrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō intūlērunt; p̄ima et sēcūda āciēs, ut vietīs<sup>14</sup> ac submōtīs rēsistēret; tertia, ut vēnientēs excēperet. Ita ancipitū proeliō diū atque acriter pūgnātum est.

#### THE HELVETH RETREAT TO THE TERRITORY OF THE LINGONES.

19. Diūtius cum nōstrōrum iupētūs sustinere nōn possent, altērī sē, ut coepērunt, in montem rēcēperunt; altērī ad impēdimenta et carrōs suos sē cōtulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vespērum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem viderē nēmō pōtuit. Ad multam noctem etiā ad impēdimenta pūgnātum est, proptēreā quod p̄o

vallō carrōs objēcērant. Impēdimentīs castrīque nostrī pōlītū sunt. Ibī Orgētōrigis filia atque finēs ē filiīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circīter mīlia hōmīnum centum et trīgintā superfūerunt, eāque tōtā nocte iērunt: in finēs Lingōnum diē<sup>45</sup> quartō pervēnerunt, cum, et propter vulnēra militum et sēpultūram occīsōrum, nostrī eōs sēquī nōn pōtuissent. Caesar ad Lingōnēs littērās nuntiōsque misit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sēquī coepit.

THE HELVETH MAKE TERMS WITH CÆSAR AND RETURN  
TO THEIR COUNTRY.

20. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inōpiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum sē ad pēdēs prōjēcissent, suppliciterque lōcūtī pācem pētissent, atque eōs in eō lōcō, quō tum essent, adventum suum exspectāre jussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, pōposcit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs rēvertī jussit; et quod, omnibus frūgibus āmissis, dōmī<sup>44</sup> nihil ērat, Allobrōgibus impērāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facērent; ipsōs oppīda vicōsque, quōs incendērant, restituēre jussit, quod nōluit cum lōcum<sup>21</sup> vācāre,<sup>48</sup> nē, propter bōnitātem agrōrum Germānī in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent.

THE NUMBER OF THE HELVETH BEFORE AND AFTER THEIR  
MIGRATION.

21. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tābulae rēpertae sunt, littērīs Gracēis cōfectae, quibus in tābulis nōminātīm rātīō cōnfecta erat, quī nūmērus dōmō<sup>30</sup> exīssēt<sup>68</sup> eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et itēm sēpārātīm puērī, sēnēs, mūliērēsque. Summa omnium fuērat ad mīlia trēcentā sexāgintā et octo. Eōrum, quī dōmum rēdiērunt, rēpertus est nūmērus mīlium centum et dēcem.

## NOTES.

### I. FABLES.

1. *stāns*, present participle, see *sto*; *dōmūs*, genitive, fourth declension, see 174; how does it differ in meaning from *dōmī*? — *praetēreuntem* (see *praetēreo*) agrees with *lūpum*, object of *vidit*. Account for the position of *inquit*. Is *nōn tū*, etc., direct or indirect discourse? How is *lōcus* declined in the plural? Ans. *lōcī*, m., means *places in books*; *lōca*, n., *places*; gen. *lōcōrum*, dat. *lōcīs*, acc. *lōcōs*, m.; *lōca*, n., etc.

2. *Subvēnī* (imperative), *help*. — *puērō*, etc., *reproached to the boy his rashness*, or, as we say, *he reproached the boy for his rashness*. — *rēprēhendēre* (infinitive), *to reprove*. — *licet*, *it is permitted*, i.e. *you may reprove*.

3. *captum* is a partic., from *cāpio*, agreeing with *leōnem*. — *mālum* (nominative), *understand mē lūdificat*.

4. *pellem indūtus*, *having put on the skin*; *induo*, although passive in form, is used in a middle or reflexive sense, as, *I clothe*, i.e. *I put clothing on myself*, and may be followed by the accusative. — *vidēret*: why subj.? — *cōnatus est*, a deponent verb; see 282. — *hacc*, i.e. *vulpes*. — *audissem* for *audivissem*; see 89. 2.

5. *tēne . . . sectārī*, *you hunt a lion?* *tē* is the subject of *sectārī*; *ne* asks the question. — *nē . . . quidem*, *not even; whose voice even you could not endure*; *nē quidem*, *not even*, always have the emphatic word between them.

6. *hic*, *he*. — *lūpō*, abl. — *pontificem sārificātūrum*, sc. *esse*, *that the priest would*, etc. For the construction in indirect discourse, see 348 ff. — *māllem*, *I would rather*.

7. *tempōre*; why ablative? — *Justa*, *justly*, lit. *just things*; see 83. 4.

8. *pēpērit*, see *pārio*. — *rāta hanc pāritūram* (*esse*), *thinking that she would lay*; see 348. — *plūs hordeī*, *more barley*; see 237.

## II. LIFE OF CÆSAR.

[For a sketch of *Cæsar's life*, see p. 402.]

1. annum . . . dēcimum, being in his sixteenth year. — paulō post . . . ūxōrem, a little while after he married *Cornelia*; dūcere ūxōrem, to marry, is said of the husband only. — cūjus . . . inimicus, since her father was unfriendly to *Sulla*: how does inimicus, as a noun, differ from hostis? — ut eam dīmittēret, to divorce her, lit. that he should divorce her. — bōnis, property. — cum . . . quærērētur, when he was even sought for in order to be put to death: what kind of a clause is this? why imperfect subj. ? on what verb does it depend? — mūtātā veste: what does this participle denote? how is the ablative absolute rendered (259)? — quartānae, supply fēbris, lit. sick with the disease of quartan ague; lābōrābat. — per prōpinquōs, etc., by means of his relations. — quī . . . dēnēgasset, when he would have refused it to the distinguished men who begged for it; dēnēgasset, see 338. — āliquantō . . . fūtūrum, will ruin (lit. be for a ruin) the party of the aristocracy, etc.: give the synonyms of cūpio; of puer.

2. Sulla died B.C. 78. — mortuō, 282. — sēcādēre, to retire. — per ōtium, at (his) leisure. — dīcendī, of oratory. — ōpēram dāret, might give (his) attention. — SYN. māneo, remain, whether for a long or short time; commōror, remain for some time in a place, sojourn; hābito, dwell permanently. — sē gessit, he conducted himself. — ut . . . esset: does this clause denote purpose or result? why is esset in the impf. subj. ? — Give the syns. of intērim. — ad . . . pēcūniās, to get money: the gerundive sometimes denotes purpose. — servus, mancipium, famulus, all mean a slave: servus, as one politically inferior; mancipium, a salable commodity; famulus, a family possession. — SYN. cōmes, companion, a fellow-traveller; sōcius, a companion, member of the same society; sōdālis, a companion in amusement or pleasure. — quibus rēdimērētur: does this relative clause denote purpose or result? — Milētus, a flourishing city of Ionia. — proximē ābērat, was at the nearest distance off. — SYN. poena, general word for punishment; supplicium (supplicō, kneel), a severe punishment (the criminal kneeling for the blow); cruciātus (crux, cross), torture, as of one on the cross; tormentum (torqueo, twist), a racking torture, to extort confession.

3. quaestor . . . factus: fio, in the sense of to be made, appointed, is used as the passive of facio. — inter sē, together. — concūpiscēbat, desired earnestly, coveted. — in ōre hābēbat, lit. had in his mouth, i.e. kept repeating. — cōlās, see 278. 1. (1). — quod: a relative generally agrees in gender with a noun in its own clause. — mēmōrābile: a partitive genitive could not be used after nihil; only neuter adjectives of



second declension are so used. — *orbis terrarum* must be used in preference to *terra*, when there is a decided reference to other lands.

4. in . . . *honoribus*, in soliciting the favor of the plebeians, and in canvassing for the magistracies (honors). — *dicebat* . . . *sestertium*, lit. he used to say that there was need to himself of 1,000 times 100,000 *sestertii*, — 100,000,000 *sestercēs*, or nearly \$4,000,000; *sestertium*, gen. plur. used for *sestertiōrum*. — *ut haberet nihil*: after he had freed himself from debt, there would be nothing left of his own. — *cōsūlātum*: every Roman citizen who aspired to the consulship had to pass through a regular gradation of public offices, and the age in which he was eligible to each was fixed by the *Lex Annalis*, B.C. 180, as follows: for the *Quæstorship*, which was the first of the magistracies, one must be twenty-seven years of age; for the *Ædileship*, thirty-seven; for the *Prætorship*, forty; and for the *Consulship*, forty-three. (See Leighton's *Roman History*, p. 185, note 4.) — *inīto* . . . *tūlit* (see *ineo*), when he had entered upon the office *Cæsar* proposed, etc. — *ēgēnis civibus*, among needy citizens. — *ut . . . obsisteret*, that he might oppose the law's being enacted. — *fōrō*, from the *forum*. The *Forum* was situated between the *Capitoline* and *Palatine hills*; it was the chief place of public business (see *L.'s Rom. Hist.*, p. 385). There were other *fōra*, but this was distinguished as *Forum Rōmānum*, or as *Forum*, being the most important. — *dōmī sē continēre*, to remain at home. — *cūriā*, from the *senate-house*: *sēnātus*, the *senate*, either the senators or the place where they met; *cūria*, the building where the senators assembled. — *quīdam*, some. — *nōn ut mōs erat*, not as was the custom; *mōs*, an established custom, especially of a nation; *cōsuetūdo*, habit, which results in a settled usage (*mōs*); *caerimōnia*, a religious ceremony. — *consūlibus Cæsare et Bibulō*, in the consulship of *Cæsar* and *Bibulus*. The year was generally designated at Rome in this way; the name of the consuls for the year being put in the ablative absolute with *cōsūlibus*. This was the year B.C. 59. In this case the two names (*nomen*, i.e., *Julius*; *cōgnōmen*, *Cæsar*) of *Cæsar* are used.

5. A consul, after his term of office expired, was usually sent as proconsul to govern a province; by *Sulla's* laws, a consul must remain in Italy during his term of office, and then might be sent to govern a province (*L.'s Rom. Hist.*, p. 182). *Cæsar* departed to his province in B.C. 58 (*L.'s Rom. Hist.*, p. 308). — *gessit . . . fērē*, during the nine years in which he was in power he accomplished in substance the following. — *primus Rōmānōrum*, first of the Romans. — *ponte fabricātō*, by constructing a bridge. — *māximīs . . . clādibus*, he made a great slaughter. — *iīs*, from them. — *quō in bellō*, in this war. — *inclinante in*

*fugam, giving way.* — *SYN. scūtum, any shield; clipeus, a round shield; parma, similar to clipeus, but smaller, a buckler; ancile, an oval shield.* — *in primam aëciem, to the front* (L. Rom. Hist., p. 370). — *terga verterentem, turning his back* (to the enemy), *fleeing.* — *illīc sunt, there are those.* — *ānimōs, courage.*

6. *adhūc, still.* — *ut . . . absentī, that it should be permitted to him, although absent; what is the subject of liceret?* It was a law that every candidate for the consulship should appear before the magistrate in the city, and have his name entered on the official list of candidates before election (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 322). — *vindicatūrus, to avenge.* — *Brundisium, a town in Calabria, was the port from which those going from Rome to Greece, or the East, embarked; Dyrrāchium, a city on the coast of Illyriūm.* — *cessantibus cōpiīs, his forces delaying; what does this participle denote?* — *flante, blowing.* — *in altum, out into the deep sea.* — *dīrīgī, to be steered.* — *cēdēret, would yield.* Cæsar had sailed from Brundisium with only 20,000 men (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 380). Owing to the vigilance of the enemy the rest of Cæsar's army was unable to follow him. His position was thus critical; cut off from the rest of his army, and threatened by a force three times superior to his own. In his impatience he attempted to sail in a fisherman's boat across the Adriatic to Brundisium, for his reinforcements, but the storm compelled him to turn back. In a short time the remainder of the army succeeded in crossing; at the battle of Pharsalus (in Thessaly), Pompey's army was totally defeated (b.c. 48). (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 326 ff.)

7. *fūgientem, (him) fleeing.* — *eumque . . . fuisset, and on the way he learned that he had been killed.* — *SYN. cōgnōsco, learn* (something beforehand); *āgnōsco, recognize* (something before known). — *Ptolēmaeō, against Ptolemy.* The war against Ptolemy is called the Alexandrine war (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 332). — *quattuor . . . profīgāvit, but he conquered him in one battle within four hours after he had come; the relative quibus is in the ablative, agreeing with its antecedent, hōris.* — *inter triumphandum, during his triumph.* After a successful campaign, the victorious general was awarded, by the decree of the senate, the honor of a triumph. He entered the city in a chariot drawn by four horses, preceded by the captives and spoils of war, and followed by his soldiers. After passing along the *Via Sacra*, he ascended to the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus to offer sacrifices (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 181, n. 2). — *Pompeiānārum partium, of the Pompeian party.* The battle was fought at Thapsus, in Africa, in b.c. 46. — *in Hispāniā: the two sons of Pompey, Cnæus and Sextus, had collected a large army in Spain. After a hard-fought battle Cæsar completely defeated them at Munda* (b.c. 45).

8. *coepit* has passive perf. and infinitives, 305. 1. — *quendam*, for *quendam*. — *assurgēret*, why imperfect subj. ? — *ei . . . sēdentī*, on him sitting in the golden chair. — *rēgium*, royal. — *ā sexāgintā . . . virīs*, by more than sixty men. — *cōnjūrātum est*, a conspiracy was formed. — *Idibus Martiīs*, on the Ides of March, i.e. the 15th. — *assidentem . . . circumstētērunt*, they stood around him sitting, under pretence of paying honor. — *quāsi . . . rōgātūrus*, as if to ask something. — *clāmantem*, sc. *eum*, i.e. *Caesārem*. — *arreptum*, which he had seized. — *quem . . . hābēbat*, whom he had regarded as his son.

9. *erat . . . stātūrā*, *Caesar* was of, etc., see 292. — *aegrē fērēbat*, grieved (on account); *quod . . . obnoxia*, it was often the subject for the jokes of his slanderers. — *sibī*, to him. — *laureae gestandae*, of wearing a crown of laurel. — *eum . . . fuisse*, that he was. — *inimici*: give the synonyms. — *nē* and *quidem* enclose the emphatic word as in the text. — *ad . . . rempublicam*, to overturn the republic. — *anteibat*, see *anteo*. — *dētectum*, uncovered; see *dētēgo*. — *sive . . . esset*, whether it was sunshine or rain. — *Syn. plūvia*, rain (general word); *imber*, rain (heavy, pouring shower); *nimbus*, rain (from dark clouds). — *longissimās viās*. *Caesar* was noted for the rapidity of his movements; he is said to have travelled at the rate of one hundred Roman miles per day, equal to about ninety-two English miles. — *innixus . . . utribus*, resting upon inflated bags.

### III. THE HELVETIAN WAR.

#### SKETCH OF CÆSAR'S LIFE.

GAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR was born, by the common account, in the year B.C. 100 (or, by a probable reckoning, two years earlier), and was assassinated in the year B.C. 44, at the age of fifty-six. The earlier date of his birth is consistent with the fact that he was *Quæstor* in B.C. 68, *Ædile* in B.C. 65, *Prætor* in 62, and *Consul* in 59, since one was not eligible to these offices, according to the *Lex Annalis*, until he had entered upon the age of thirty-seven, forty, and forty-three respectively. But *Cæsar* was most likely exempted by a special act, as *Pompey* and many other prominent political leaders had been (from the *Lex Annalis*). *Cæsar* sprang from an old patrician family, but the circumstances of his early life brought him into close connection with the *Marian*, or democratic, party; for his aunt *Julia* had married *Marius*, and he himself, when but a boy of seventeen, had taken the daughter of *Cinna*, one of the *Marian* leaders, for his wife. At the bidding of *Sulla*, when dic-

—quendam, for  
 . . . sēdenti, on  
 sexāgintā . . .  
 iracy was formed.  
 i. — assidentem  
 nder pretence of  
 thing. — clāman-  
 l seized. — quem

—aegrē fērēbat,  
 he subject for the  
 ndae, of wearing  
 imiēi: give the  
 word as in the  
 — anteibat, see  
 . . . esset, whether  
 rd); imber, rain  
 ouds). — longis-  
 movements; he  
 oman miles per  
 us . . . utribus,

account, in the  
 earlier), and was  
 x. The earlier  
 was Quæstor in  
 ), since one was  
 s, until he had  
 ee respectively.  
 as Pompey and  
 e *Lex Annalis*).  
 instances of his  
 arian, or demo-  
 nd he himself,  
 f Cinna, one of  
 Sulla, when dic-

tator, Cæsar had refused to divorce his wife, as Pompey had done. His name was then placed upon the list of the proscribed, which means that he could be killed by any partisan of Sulla who happened to see him, and his property would be confiscated, a large reward being first paid to the assassin. Cæsar fled at once from the capital, and concealed himself among the Albans hills, until, by the intercession of the vestal virgins, and many prominent men among the nobility, Sulla was induced to grant a pardon. "You wish it," said Sulla, "and I grant it; but in this boy there are more than one Marius." Cæsar, however, would not accept pardon, and so long as Sulla lived, he avoided the capital. While in Asia Minor, he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene (or Mitylene), winning the civic crown for saving the life of a citizen. When the news of Sulla's death reached him, he returned to Rome; but, seeing that there was no prospect at present of the popular party regaining power, he decided to withdraw again from the capital, and to devote himself at Rhodes to the study of oratory, in which he had already gained some renown. On his way thither he was captured by pirates, with whom the Mediterranean Sea at that time swarmed, because the government at home had been for many years so inefficient and lax. The pirates demanded twenty talents — nearly twenty-five thousand dollars — for his ransom. "It is too little," said Cæsar; "you shall have fifty; but once free, I will crucify you." And he kept his word; for no sooner had he gained his liberty than he manned some vessels, overpowered the pirates, and conducted them to a neighboring city as prisoners.

On his return to Rome, Cæsar used every means to increase his popularity. His affable manners, and still more his unbounded liberality, won the hearts of the people. At the age of thirty-five (assuming the earlier date) he was Quæstor in Further Spain (b.c. 68). Two years later (b.c. 65) he was Curule Ædile, an office which gave him a good opportunity to win the favor of the people, because he was to have charge of the public games and exhibitions. As Ædile, Cæsar not only embellished the forum and public buildings, and exhibited three hundred and twenty pairs of gladiators equipped in silver, but in all the diversions of the theatre, in the processions and public tables, he far outshone the most ambitious of his predecessors. His prodigality was frightful, his debts enormous, amounting at this time to more than one hundred million sesterces — nearly five million dollars. When the chief pontiff died (b.c. 63), the most illustrious men of the state sought the office. Cæsar, however, did not give way to them, although Catulus, one of his opponents, who had been Consul,

and was now a prominent member of the senate, fearing to be defeated by one so much inferior in rank, station, and age, offered Caesar large sums of money to pay his debts, if he would withdraw from the contest. On the morning of the election, Caesar is reported to have said to his mother, who would gladly have had him withdraw from the struggle, "I shall this day be either chief pontiff or an exile."

The next year Caesar was Praetor, and as Proprator he went, at the end of his year of office, to govern Spain. Before his departure, his old friend Crassus, the richest man at Rome, had to pay a part of his debts, and to stand security for the rest to the amount of nearly a million of dollars. Caesar is reported to have said in his reckless way that he needed a hundred million sesterces to be worth just nothing at all. In Spain he displayed that civil and military ability which afterwards made him famous. It must have been a strange sight to see this dissolute spendthrift, this profligate demagogue, with his countenance pale and white, withered before its time by the excesses of the capital, this delicate and epileptic man, walking at the head of his legions, and fighting as the foremost soldier with the wild tribes of Lusitania.

On his return to Rome, Caesar found Pompey, who had just completed the Mithridatic war in the East, and was arranging for his triumphal entry into the city, at variance with the senate. Caesar at once saw his opportunity; he formed a political coalition with Pompey and Crassus, one part of the bargain being that Caesar should have the consulship for the next year (b.c. 59), and after that the government of Gaul for five years. In accordance with this programme, Caesar was entrusted, at the expiration of his consulship, with the command of Cisalpine Gaul, Illyria, and the province of Narbo, or simply *provincia*, with three legions, for a term of five years. Caesar had now attained his object. As Proconsul of Cisalpine Gaul, he could watch the progress of affairs in the capital, while the threatening movements of the tribes in Gaul opened to him the prospect of subjugating the country and training an army for the impending civil war, for Caesar no doubt then clearly saw that a struggle between himself and Pompey for the chief power at Rome was inevitable.

For a long time the Romans had felt the importance of possessing Gaul, but as yet no systematic effort had been made to extend their dominion in that quarter farther than occupying the seaboard between the Alps and Pyrenees (b.c. 121). The climate of Gaul was healthful, the soil rich and fertile, and the intercourse with Rome easy by land and sea. Roman merchants and farmers had already emigrated

ing to be defeated  
ferred Caesar large  
aw from the con-  
rted to have said  
thdraw from the  
an exile."

erator he went, at  
ore his departure,  
to pay a part of  
mount of nearly a  
his reckless way  
h just nothing at  
bility which after-  
ange sight to see  
with his counte-  
e excesses of the  
the head of his  
the wild tribes of

no had just com-  
ranging for his  
enate. Caesar at  
ion with Pompey  
esar should have  
that the govern-  
this programme,  
ulship, with the  
vince of Narbo,  
a of five years.

Cisalpine Gaul,  
while the threat-  
the prospect of  
impending civil  
le between him-  
vitable.

ee of possessing  
to extend their  
eaboard between  
aul was health-  
a Rome easy by  
ready emigrated

in great numbers to Gaul, and disseminated Roman culture and civilization to such an extent that many of the tribes could transact business with Roman ambassadors in the Latin language. The centre of this civilization and refinement was the old Greek city Massilia; also the resort of those who had been banished from the capital. The merchants stationed there carried on an extensive trade with the interior of Gaul, and even with Britain. They transported their wares up the Rhone and Saone, and thence by land to the Seine and Loire, or across to the Garonne, and so to the Atlantic. This intercourse produced a close connection between the tribes from the Rhone and the Garonne to the Rhine and the Thames. Caesar saw how essential the possession of this country was to the Roman state, and that to its conqueror was offered the prospect of surpassing the fame of Camillus and Marius.

Of the population of Gaul, the Ædui had entered into an alliance with Rome, while the Belgæ in the north, and the Sequani in the south, sought an alliance with the Germans. The Ædui, relying on the assistance of Rome, imposed heavy tolls on the navigation of the Saone. The Sequani complained bitterly of this, and thinking that the Roman government was too much occupied with its own contentions at home to furnish its clients assistance, determined to rid themselves of the influence of Rome, and punish the Ædui. For this purpose they invited the German prince, Ariovistus, with about 15,000 men, to their assistance. The Ædui were defeated, and forced to pay tribute to the Sequani, to give hostages, and to swear never to wage war for their recovery, or to solicit the aid of Rome. Divitiacus, the chief magistrate of his clan, alone refused to sign the treaty, and fled to Rome to ask assistance. Ariovistus now invited other tribes across the Rhine, and demanded land to settle them on; the whole frontier of Gaul, from the sources of the Rhine to the ocean, was threatened by the invasion of the German tribes. These tribes so pressed upon the Helvetians, who were hemmed in on the south and the west by the Alps, Lake Geneva, and the Jura Mountains, that they determined to abandon their country to the Germans, and seek larger and more fertile fields in the west. Caesar, on the expiration of his consulship, had remained in the vicinity of the capital until he accomplished his political schemes. But when the news reached him that the Helvetii had abandoned their homes, and were advancing upon Geneva with the purpose of crossing the Rhone and forcing their way through the Province, he hastily made his preparations, reached the Rhone in eight days, and by skilful negotiations delayed the advance until a

line of entrenchments had been constructed from Lake Geneva to the Jura Mountains. Defeated in the attempt to cross the river in this direction, the Helvetii were compelled to take their way along its right bank, and thus make their journey westward by a more northerly route. Caesar hastily collected his forces, followed up the left bank of the Saone, cut to pieces in a fierce battle a part of the Helvetian army, and pursued the remainder to Bibracte, where he defeated them in a terrible battle, and compelled the survivors to return to their native country and rebuild their homes.

1. *Gallia*: *Gaul* extended from the Pyrenees and the Gulf of Lyons on the south to the British Channel and German Ocean on the north. It was bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the east by the Rhine and Italy. It was called *Trānsalpīna* (i.e. *beyond the Alps*), to distinguish it from *Cisalpīna* (i.e. *on this side of the Alps*), in northern Italy. It included France, Belgium, part of Switzerland and Holland, and the part of Germany west of the Rhine. In the division which Caesar here makes he does not include the southeast part, called *Gallia Narbonensis*, or commonly *Prōvincia*, whence the modern name Provence. The Roman dominion in the *Prōvincia* was secured by the establishment of *Narbo Marcius*, a Roman colony on the Atax, in B.C. 121.

The most remote Roman towns towards the west and north were *Lugdunum*, *Convenarum* (or *Convenae*), *Tolosa*, *Vicenna*, and *Geneva*. The country was well provided with roads and bridges. The commerce on the Rhone, Garonne, Loire, and Seine was considerable and lucrative, and extended even into Britain. The people were tall, of fair complexion and of sanguine temperament, fond of fighting, but easily discouraged. They were skilled in working copper and gold. Copper implements of excellent workmanship, and even now malleable, have been found in the tombs in many places in Gaul. The Romans are said to have learned from them the art of tinning and silvering. The Gauls, or as they called themselves the Celts, had attained so much skill in mining, that the miners, especially in the iron-mines on the Loire, acted an important part in sieges. There was no political union among the different clans, no leading canton for all Gaul, no tie, however loose, uniting the whole nation under one leadership. Sometimes one canton would extend its power over a weaker one, as the *Suessiones* in the north, the maritime cantons in the west, the two leagues in the south, one headed by the *Ædni*, the other by the *Sequani*; but the Celts as a nation lacked political unity, and the cantons, for the most part, existed independently

side by side. In matters of religion they had long been centralized. The association of Druids embraced the British islands, all Gaul, and perhaps other Celtic communities. The Druids had a special head elected by the priests themselves, special privileges, as exemption from taxation and military service, and an annual council.

The Province in Caesar's time extended from the Pyrenees to the Alps on the coast, and was bounded on the east by the Alps, on the west by the **Mons Cevenna** (Cevennes), southward from the latitude of **Lugdunum** (Lyons), and on the north (where it narrowed off) by the Rhone, from the western extremity of Lake Geneva to the junction of the Rhone and Saone. — **omnis**: Caesar means all of Gaul, except that part which had been subdued by the Romans, in opposition to **Gallia** in the limited sense of one of the three divisions. — **est divisa**, lit. *has been divided*; usually translated *is divided*, as this form in English expresses a completed action, the participle being used as an adjective. — **trēs** is placed at the end of the sentence as being the significant word, indicating the number of divisions. — **ūnam**: supply *partem* as object of **incōlunt**. — **āliam**, *another* (part.): if Caesar had been enumerating them in order, he would have used **altēram** or **sēcundam**. — **tertiā** . . . **appellantur**, *the third, those who are called in our language Gauls*. — **īnstitūtis**, *in customs*; when three or more nouns stand together, the conjunctions may be omitted altogether, or used between the first and second, and second and third, *etc.* — **inter sē**, *among themselves* or *from one another*. — **dividunt** is to be supplied after **Mātrōna et Sēquāna**. — **proptēreā quod**, *because* (lit. *because of this*); distinguished between **proptēreā**, *for this reason*, and **praetēreā**, *besides*. — **Germānis**, *to the Germans*. — **incōlunt**, *dwelt*. Give the synonyms of **bellum**. — **quōque**, *also*; the ablative of **quisque** is **quōque**. — **virtūte**, *in valor*; **virtūs**, from same root as **vir**, means *manhood*. — **ūna pars**, *one part*, of the main divisions of Gaul, *i.e.* **Gallia Celtica**. — **flūmine**, *etc.*: notice that the connectives are omitted. — **finibus**: **finis**, *limit*; plur., **finēs**, *limits*, often applied to what is included in those limits, *territory*. — **ad**, *towards*. — **Belgae**; hence the modern **Belgium**. — **infēriorem partem**, *i.e. towards the mouth of the river*. — **ad**, *near to*. — **spectat inter occāsum sōlis**, *it looks between the setting of the sun*, *i.e. it looks northwest*, *i.e.* from the Province.

2. **āpud**, *among*; **āpud** with the name of a person often means *at the house of*; with the name of an author, *in the writings of*. — **nōbilissimus**, see 141. — **ditissimus** from **dīs** (149. 4). — **Is** is expressed because it is emphatic. Note the position of the word **Orgetōrix** at the end of the sentence, to give prominence to the name. — **SYN.**



nōbilis, clārus, illustris, denote distinction: clārus is one celebrated for his deeds; illustris, for his rank or character; nōbilis, for his noble birth; cēlēber and inclūtus (inclitus) denote celebrity, are generally used of things, not of persons. — civitātī, the state, i.e. the people, all the inhabitants of a state under one government; it is here the indirect object of persuāsit, while the clause introduced by ut is the direct object (321. 1). — exirent is plural on account of the plural implied in civitās; why in the imperf. subj.? — continentur, are hemmed in. — ūnā ex parte, on one side. — Helvētium, see Helvētius. — altissimō; altus, high, when reckoned from below; deep, when from above downward. — tertiā, sc. ex parte. — lāeū Lēmānnō: now Lake Geneva. — The pupil should be required to describe the rivers and give the situation of the places mentioned in the text.

3. adductī, induced. — pertinērent is in the subjunctive, because it is implied that these things belonged to their departure in the opinion of the Helvētians; which (as the Helvetians thought), pertained to their departure (364). — jumentōrum (from same root as jungo, jūgum) is both pack and draught animals. — sēmentēs . . . faciēre, to make as large sowings as possible; for the force of quam with the verb possum in connection with the superlative, see 151. Obs. 3. — proximū has no positive; its place is supplied by prōpinquus. — in . . . cōfirmant, they fix by law upon their departure for the third year.

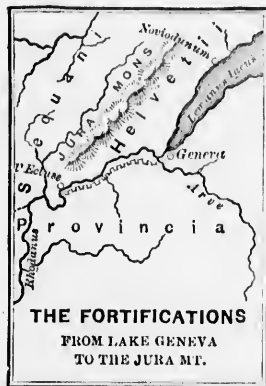
4. Ad cōficiendās, to accomplish: con is here intensive; it usually means, in composition, together. In how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin (321. 3, Obs. 1)? — dēligitur: dēligo, to choose in general (not to be undecided in one's choice); ēligo, choose, in the sense of selecting from several. — Sēquānō, the Sequanian. — ut rēgnum . . . occūpāret: this clause is the direct object of persuādet, prevails upon; persuādet is in the historical present, and may therefore be followed by the imperfect subjunctive (320. 6). Give the synonymes of rēgnum. — plēbī, to the plebeians (see L.'s Rom. Hist.). — ut idem cōnārētur, that he should strive for the same thing. — tōtius, all. — SYN. omnis, all (without exception), in opposition to nēmō; ūniversī (ūnus-vertō, lit. turned into one, i.e. the parts brought into unity), all collectively, in opposition to singūli; cunctī, all united together in opposition to dispersī; tōtus, the whole, in opposition to separate parts; whereas intēger (intangō, lit. untouched), uninjured, still whole. — ea rēs, this design, lit. this conspiracy. — ut, when. — ex . . . dicēre, to plead his cause in chains; lit. out of chains, i.e. (being) in chains. — damnātum, sc. eum, translate, it was necessary that the punishment should follow him condemned, namely, that he should be burned; the clause ut ignī crēmārētur explains poenam (342.

3); for this use of the subjunctive, see 323. 5. — SYN. *ignis*, fire; *flamma*, flame; *incendium*, a conflagration; *ignis* is the cause, *flamma*, the effect. — *fāmiliam*, household. — *clientēs*, for the relations between client and patron at Rome, see L.'s Rom. Hist.; here the word is applied to the retainers of the Helvetian chief. — *chaerātōs*, debtors. — *per eōs sē ēripuit*, by means of them he rescued himself; for the force of *per*, see 248. Obs. 1. — *incētāta*, incensed. — *jūs snum exsequi*, to enforce (lit. follow out) their authority.

5. *nihilōminus*, lit. the less by nothing, i.e. nevertheless. — SYN. *cōnor*, try, attempt; *mōlior* (*mōlēs*), undertake a difficult work; *nitor* (lit. lean upon), strive. — SYN. *aedificium* is a general word for buildings of all kind; *dōmus*, the house as the residence and home of the family; *aedēs* (pl.) also means a dwelling-house, composed of several apartments. — *incendo*, *accendo*, *inflammo*, all mean to set on fire; *incendo*, from within; *accendo*, from a single point, as to light a lamp; *inflammo*, to put into a blaze, either from within or without; *succendo*, set on fire from beneath; *erēio*, destroy by burning. — *trium mensium* (genitive), for three months. — *quemque*, each one; *jūbent*, for the construction after *jūbeo*, see 342. 1. (2). — *quibus itinēribus*: the noun to which the relative refers is sometimes repeated, as in this case; this repetition of the antecedent is necessary when there are two nouns preceding, and it might be difficult to determine to which the relative referred; the relative clause is consecutive, and takes the subjunctive, see 322. — The pupil should be required to trace this route on the map. — *altērum*, the other (of the two). — *lōcīs*, for the omission of the preposition, see 270. 2. c. — *vādō transītur*, is crossed by a ford. — *Allōbrōgum*. The Allobroges dwelt on the south side of Lake Geneva next to the Helvetii, where the Rhone flowed from the lake. — *ad Helvetiōs pertinet*, extends (across) to the Helvetii. The Helvetii occupied a greater part of what is now Switzerland. — *diem dīcunt*, they appoint a day; for the repetition of the antecedent, see note above. — *convēniant*, are to assemble: the indicative means that they are assembling; what does this relative clause denote, purpose or result? — Describe the Rhone. — *mātūrat*, hastened, the historical present; what is the object of *mātūrat*? — *ab urbe* (270. 2, Obs. 2), from the city, i.e. Rome. Caesar had obtained previously to the expiration of his consulship (B.C. 59) the provinces Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum with three legions for five years; afterwards Transalpine Gaul was added with another legion. He set out from the city as proconsul in the spring of B.C. 58. — *Galliam ultēriōrem*, Farther Gaul, i.e. Gaul beyond the Alps, or Transalpine Gaul.

6. *certiōrēs factī sunt*, were informed. — SYN. *lēgātus*, an ambassa-

*dor*, a lieutenant; *ōrātor*, one who pleads a cause, an enemy, an orator; *rhētor*, one who gives lessons in rhetoric, a rhetorician. — *quī dicērent*, to say, lit. who should say, a relative clause denoting purpose. — *sibi esse in ānimō*, that it was their intention, lit. that it was to them in mind: what is the subject of the verb *esse*? What is the object of *dicērent*? — *sine ūllō mālēficiō*, without (doing) any harm. The Helvetii had two ways by which they could go from home, one through the narrow pass between Mount Jura and the banks of the Rhone; the other by the fords of the Rhone, which led directly into the Province. In order to prevent the Helvetii from taking the latter route, Cæsar drew a line of fortifications on the southern side of the river, from Lake Geneva to



the Jura mountains, a distance of about eighteen miles. To accomplish this work, Cæsar had the 10th legion = 5000, and about 5000 or 6000 new levies = 10,000 or 11,000 infantry. — *nēgat sē posse*, he says he cannot; *nēgo* is generally used in preference to *dīco nōn*. — *ūna* is emphatic, one only. — *ut . . . impētrarent*, that, he being the intercessor, they might obtain (their request). — *plūrimū pōtērat*, was able to accomplish a great deal (Rule 27). — *amicus*, friendly. — *in mātīmōnium dūxerat*, had married; when speaking of a man taking a wife, *dūcere (uxōrem)* was used, i.e. he leads her to his house; of a woman taking a husband, *nūbere* was used, lit. *nūbere sē*

*vīrō*, to veil herself for a husband, — an allusion to the veil worn during the marriage ceremony. — *itāque*, therefore; *itāque* means *and so*. — What is the object of *impētrat*!

7. in Italiām, into Italy, i.e. into Cisalpine Gaul. — *duās lēgiōnēs cōnserībit*: the 11th and 12th, and the three (the 7th, 8th, and 9th) legions in winter-quarters at Aquileia, in Illyria; one legion (the 10th) was already on the Rhone = six in all = about 25,000 men. The Allobroges and Vocontii were both in the province. — *jam*, at this time, i.e. while Cæsar was absent collecting troops. — *Angustiās*, the narrow pass between the Jura and the Rhone. — *Svx. pōpūlor*, to ravage (by pillage and fire); *vasto*, to lay waste; *dēpōpūlor*, utterly to ravage. — *Aeduī Ambarri*, the Aeduī near the Arar (or Saône). — *rōgātum*, to ask, see 266. — *dēpōpūlatīs*, the use of the participle of the deponent verb in a passive sense, see 279. a; the way led through the *Pas-de-l'Écluse*.

an *euoy*, an *orator* ;  
*au.* — *quī dicērent*, to  
 g purpose. — *sibi esse*  
 o them in mind: what  
 bject of *dicērent*?—  
 The *Helvetii* had two  
 ough the narrow pass  
 ne; the other by the  
 rovince. In order to  
 Caesar drew a line of  
 rom Lake Geneva to  
 a distance of about  
 accomplish this work,  
 legion = 5000, and  
 ew levies = 10,000 or  
 gat *sē posse*, he says  
 enerally used in pref-  
 ūna is emphatic, *one*  
 ārent, that, he being the  
 obtain (their request).  
 was able to accomplish  
 ). — *amicus*, *friendly*.  
 ūxerat, had married;  
 man taking a wife,  
 is used, i.e. he leads  
 f a woman taking a  
 used, lit. *nūbere sē*  
 the veil worn during  
 que means *and so.* —

aul. — *duās lēgiōnēs*  
 e 7th, 8th, and 9th)  
 one legion (the 10th)  
 000 men. The *Allo-*  
 jam, at this time, i.e.  
 ūstias, the narrow pass  
 to ravage (by pillage  
 y to ravage. — *Aedū*  
 rōgātum, to ask, see  
 he deponent verb in  
 the *Pas-de-l'Écluse*.

— *sēsē . . . nōn facile . . . prōhibēre*, that they with difficulty could ward  
 off, etc. — *sē . . . rēcipiunt*, betake themselves. — *nōn expectandum*  
 (esse) *sibi stātuit*, he thought he ought not to wait.

8. *flūmen est Arar*, there is a river (called) *Arar*; the *Saône*.  
 It unites with the Rhone at the city of Lugdunum (*Lyons*), about seventy  
 miles from Lake Geneva. — *quod* agrees with *flūmen* (Rule 5). — *incrē-*  
*dibilī . . . possit*, with incredible smoothness of current, so that it cannot be  
 determined by the eyes in what direction it flows; *lēnitāte*, smoothness, con-  
 trasted not only with the Rhone, but with the rapidity of the rivers in  
 Italy. — *possit*, 322. — *rātibus et lintribus junctis*, the ablative abso-  
 lute to supply the place of the perfect active participle; *lintribus*, small  
 boats; these were boats made of logs hollowed out. — *trānsibant*, were  
 now crossing; note the force of the imperf. — *Helvētiōs trānsdūxisse*,  
 that the *Helvetians* had, etc. In Napoleon's Caesar, this place of crossing  
 the Saone is said to have been at Châlons sur Saône; according to  
 Göler, near Lyons, between Trevoux and Villefranche. — *citrā flūmen*,  
 on this side of the river, i.e. on the east side. — *dē tertiā vigiliā*, just at  
 the beginning of the third watch. The Romans divided the night into four  
 watches (the first beginning at sunset), each of three hours; the third  
 watch began at midnight and extended (it now being the month of  
 June) to 2 o'clock a.m. — *aggressus* has the sense of a perfect active  
 participle, the verb being deponent. — How does *concidit* differ from  
*concedit*? — *is pāgus*, this canton, in the neighborhood of Zürich. —  
*appellābātur*, from *appello*, *name*, also to speak to; *vōco*, call, summon;  
*uōmiuo*, *name*, in the sense of appointing or electing; *citō*, quote. — *L.*  
*Cassium*, this defeat was in B.C. 107. — *cōnsulem*, see *L.'s Rom. Hist.*,  
 p. 50. — *sub jūgum*. It was considered the lowest degree of military  
 disgrace for the Roman soldiers to be obliged to pass under the yoke.  
 The yoke was formed by placing two spears upright in the ground, and  
 fastening a third across the top of the other two; under this the con-  
 quered army must pass in token of subjugation. — *ea . . . persolvit*,  
 was the first to suffer punishment; *prīnceps* is equivalent to *prīma*.

9. *consēquī*, to overtake. — in *Arāre*, over and upon, i.e. a floating  
 bridge. — *faciendum*, 286. — Why is *ējus* used, not *suō*? — *lēgātōs*, in  
 diplomatic language, an ambassador or *euoy*; in military affairs, lieut-  
 enant, i.e. the commander of one or several legions; the tribunes still  
 ranked as formerly, among the higher officers of the legion, but their  
 duties were in Caesar's time limited more to the management of the inter-  
 nal affairs of the legion. Neither did a tribune take the place of a *lēgātus*  
 in case the latter was disabled, but a *quaestor*, who also outranked the  
 tribunes. — *cūjus . . . fuit*, the chief of which embassy was *Divico*. — *bellō*

*Cassiānō*, in the war with *Cassius*, i.e. in B.C. 107, when the consul *Cassius* was the commander. — *ēgit*, argue, discourse. — *Syn. dux*, a leader, a general; *ductor*, a guide; *impērātor*, a commander or emperor. — *pācem* and *bellō* are placed prominently to mark them as significant words. This section is an indirect discourse (348), depending on *dīcēs* (*saying*) implied in *ēgit*. Compare the form of direct discourse under 348. For the use of the future indicative or present subjunctive, see 326. 2, and 355 ff. — *rēmīniscērētūr . . . incommōdī*, he should remember both the old overthrow (lit. inconvenience); this refers to the defeat of *Cassius*. — *nē committēret*, he should not bring it to pass; *committēre ut* often forms a periphrase like *efficēre* (see 342. 3); *nē commīsēris* (350), in direct discourse.

10. *hīs*, sc. *lōgātīs*. — *sībī . . . dārī*, that the less doubt is given to him; *mīnus*, subj. acc. of *dārī*, following *respondit*. — *tēnēret mēmōriā*, held in memory; remembered. — *vētēris contūmēliae*, former insult. — *factūrōs*, sc. *Helvētiōs*. — *Aeduīs* is governed by *sātisfāciant*. — *ipsīs* (see 354. 4): the dative follows the compound, *intūlērīnt*, 203. — *sātisfāciant*, pay damages. The direct discourse (355) would be: *mīhī mīnus dūbitātiōnis dātūr, quod eās rēs, quās commēmōrāvīstis, mēmōriā tēneo. Sī vētēris contūmēliae oblivīscī vōlo, num possum rēcēntium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre? Tāmen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mīhī dābuntur (dentur), utī ea, quae pollicēmīnī, vōs esse factūrōs intelligam, et sī Aeduīs dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sōcīisq̄e eōrum intūlistis, itē sī Allōbrōgībūs sātisfācīētīs, vōbīs cum pācem fāciam. — hōc responsō dātō = cum hoc responsum dēdisset. — idem, neut.; the masculine is *īdem*. — *quī vīdeant*: what does this relative clause denote, cause, purpose, etc. (360)? — *vīdeant* is plur., because *ēquitātum* implies *ēquitēs* as the subject. — *quī*, these, i.e. *ēquitēs*. — *ālīenō lōcō*, in an unfavorable place, lit. a place better for the other party; for the omission of the preposition, 270. 2. c. — *audācius*, still more boldly. — *ac . . . praesentiā*, and deemed it sufficient for the present. — *īta*, in such a way. — *nōvissīmum āgmen*, the part of the army nearest to those pursuing, i.e. the rear. — *nōstrum prīmum*, our front, or van; supply *āgmen*. — *nōn . . . intēresset*, not more than five or six miles (each day) intervened; the distributives *quīnīs* and *sēnīs* imply that this was the constant difference between the armies.*

11. *intērīm*, give the *syns.* — *cottīdīē*, every day, is used of things that are daily repeated; in *singūlōs diēs*, daily, of those things which from day to day are making advance. — *quod . . . flāgītāre*, kept demanding . . . which they had promised in the name of the state; *flāgītāre*, the historical infinitive, equivalent to *flāgītābat*; *pollicītī essent* refers to the prom-

ise as made by the *Aedni*, see **364**. — *frīgōra*, the cold climate, the plural is emphatic; the plural of words relating to the weather was often used, as, *sōlēs*, *sunbeams*; *nīvēs*, *falls of snow*. — *nōn mōdo* followed by *sed* (*ētiam*), *not only . . . but also*, places the emphasis on the last; when both sentences are negative, *nōn mōdo*, [*nōn*] . . . *sed nē quīdem* (= *sed ētiam nōn*), the second *nōn* in the first clause is omitted if both sentences have the same verb, and the verb is in the second clause; if both clauses have their own verb, as in the text, both negatives are used; *nē . . . quīdem*, *nē* and *quīdem* enclose the emphatic word. — *pābūli*, *green fodder*. — *suppētēbat*, *was at hand*. — *autem*, *besides*. — *quod . . . subvērāt*, *which he had brought up the river Arri in vessels*. — *diem . . . Aeduī*, *the Aedni kept putting him (Caesar) off from day to day*. — *dūcere*, historical infinitive. — *cōnferri . . . dicere*, *they kept saying that it was collecting, was coming in, was close by*; the subject of *cōnferri*, *comportārī*, and *adesse* is *frūmentum*; they all depend on *dicere*. — *sē diūtius dūci*, *that he was being put off too long*. — *frūmentum*. The Roman soldier received no meal or bread as his monthly allowance, but merely the grain, which he had to pound and make into bread for himself; 4 *modii* of wheat (about 50 pounds) were given monthly to each foot-soldier (nearly a bushel, if we reckon a bushel at 60 pounds); 12 *modii* of wheat and 42 *modii* of barley to each horseman. Sometimes the Roman soldier carried a supply of food for 17 days (Amnian.: *Hist. Libr.* 17), and occasionally sufficient for a longer time; a supply for only 5 days is mentioned as an exception (Plut. *Sert.* 13). Regularly the price of the corn was deducted from the soldier's pay, which for legionaries = 225 *denarii* = about \$37 to \$40. A *modius* of corn cost less than a *denarius* (see L.'s *Rom. Hist.*, p. 374). — *quī . . . praeerat*, *who held the chief magistracy*; *quī . . . is to Liscus*. — Why is *ab* expressed before *is*? why is *sublēvatur* in the subjunctive? why present subjunctive? — *Syn.* *dēmum*, *at length* (not till now); *dēnique*, *finally* (in short); *tandem*, *at last* (after many efforts); *postremō*, *lastly* (last in order) — *prōponit*, *set forth*, introduces the indirect discourse (**348**) which follows. — *plūrimum vāleat*, *is very powerful*; *vāleat*, what would this be in the direct discourse? — *seditiōsā . . . orātiōne*, *by seditious and wicked speeches*. — *nē frūmentum cōnferant*, *from contributing the corn*; *cōnferant* is plural on account of the collective noun *multitūdō* preceding. — *nōstra* in the direct discourse would be changed to *vestra*. — *ā sē*, *by himself*; *ā mē* in the direct discourse. — *quīn ētiam . . . ēnuntiāvērūt*, *moreover our plans are disclosed*; *quīn ētiam*, *nay even*. — *intelligere . . . fecerūt*, *he was well aware with how great peril he did that*. — *Syn.* *intelligo*, *understand* by means of reflection; *sentio*, *per-*

*coire* by the senses or by the mind. — *quandiu pōtuerit*, as long as he had been able. — *Syn.* *tāceo*, utter no word, be silent, pass over in silence; *silco*, make no noise, be still.

12. *Dumnōrigem . . . dēsīgnārī*, that *Dumnōrix* was meant. *Dumnōrix* led the national party among his people, as opposed to Rome, while his brother *Divitiacns* favored an alliance with the Romans. — *plūribus praesentibus* (abl. abs.), lit. more being present, or in the presence of so many. — *eās rēs jactārī*, that these matters should be agitated; *jactārī*, a frequentative from *jācio*. — Give the *syns.* of *concilium*. — *rēperit esse vēra*, he finds (that these statements) things are true. — *ipsum . . . audaciā*, that it was *Dumnōrix* himself, a man of the greatest boldness. — *cūpidum nōvārum rērum*, desirous of a revolution. — *complūrēs . . . hābere*, that he has farmed for many years all the revenues of the *Ædui* at a low price. — *Syn.* *vectigal*, tithes (*dēcūma*), on agricultural produce; *tribūtum*, an extraordinary property tax, levied in the tribes, and paid back when the exigency was passed; *scriptūra*, rent of the pasture lands; *portōrium*, harbor duties originally, afterwards applied to tolls paid on transit of merchandise. The revenues among the Romans were not collected directly, but were farmed out (or leased) by the censors to contractors called *publicāni*, who paid a fixed sum into the treasury, and collected the taxes for their own use; they so abused their privileges, that the name *publican* became a term of reproach. — *illō licente*, he bidding, i.e. when he bid. — *audeat*, see 348. — *rem familiārem*, private property. *Dumnōrix* is the subject of *fāvēre* and *ōdisse*. — *Syn.* *pōtentia*, power as an attribute of a person: *pōtestās*, power as of a magistrate, power to do anything; *ditio* (see *dicio*), power, jurisdiction. — *siquid . . . Rōmānīs*, if anything then should happen to the Romans, i.e. in case of any disaster. — *obtīnendī*, see 264. 1. — *impēriō*, under the government, ablative of time and cause. — *dē rēgnō*, of royal power.

13. *certissimae rēs*, the most undoubted facts. — *ānimadvertēret*, should punish him. — *ūnum rēpugnābat*, one consideration opposed. — *summum . . . stūdium*, the very great attachment towards the Roman people; the clause *quod*, etc., is in apposition with *ūnam*, and might be introduced by *namely*. — *vōluntātem*, good will, as a friend; *stūdium*, attachment, zeal, as a partisan. — *ējus* refers to *Dumnōrix*. — *vērēbātur*, give the synonyms. — *itāque . . . cōnārētur*, therefore before he attempted anything: for the subjunctive, see 337. — *commōnēfacit*, reminds, lit. warns. — *ipsō* (354. 4) *praesente*, when he himself was present, i.e. *Divitiacns*. — *dē eo*, concerning him, i.e. *Dumnōrix*. — *āpud sē*, before himself, i.e. *Cæsar*. — *nē quid . . . stātueret*, that he should not determine anything too severe against his brother. — *scīre . . . vēra*, (saying) that he knew those

things were true. — SYN. *pōpūlus*, the *people*, originally only the patricians, came to include the plebeians; *plebs*, *common people*, opposed to the patricians; *vulgus*, the *ignorant multitude*. — *quod . . . accidisset*, because if anything too secret should be done to him by *Cæsar*; *accidisset* represents, in indirect discourse, the fut. perf. indie. (*acciderit*) by sequence of tenses (see 326. 2). — *eum locum*, that place = so high a place. — *apud eum*, i.e. *Cæsar*. — *futurum*, it would happen, see 349. — *animi*, the affections. — *fratrem adhibet*, he has his brother present.

14. *exploratoribus*: SYN. *explorator*, a scout; *spēculator*, a spy; *ēmissarius*, a secret agent. — *milia passuum* = 4854 ft., a little less than an English mile = 5280 ft. — *quālis . . . adscensus*, what kind of an ascent it was by a circuitous route, i.e. at various parts of its circuit. — *quī cognoscērent*, misit, he sent (persons) to ascertain; *quī cognoscērent* denotes the purpose (see 324); the antecedent of *quī* is the object of *misit*: what is the object of *cognoscērent*? — *facilem*, se. *adscensum*. — *dē quarta vigiliā* = about 2 o'clock A.M. — *eodem itinere*, along the same route. — *quō*, by which (271).

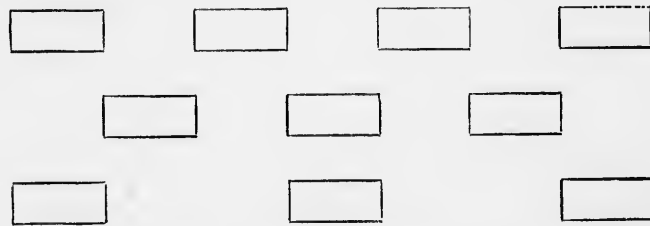
15. *primā luce*, at daybreak. — *summus mōns*, the summit of the mountain. — *ipse*, and when he himself, se. *cum*. — *passibus* (see 215. 1); a Roman pace was the distance from where the heel is raised to where it is set down again = 5 Rom. ft. = nearly 4.6 Eng. ft.; a Rom. mile = 4840 ft., an Eng. mile = 5280 ft. — *nēque . . . Labiēni*, and (when) neither his own approach nor that of Labiēns. — *ēquō admissō*, with his horse at full speed. — *vōluerit*, in indirect discourse (348). — *sē* is the subject of *cognōvisse*. — *ex . . . insignibus*, by the Gallic arms and ornaments; *insignibus*, lit. devices on the shields and helmets. — *subdūcit*, draws off: — *ut eī praeceptum erat*, as he had been instructed. What is the subject of *praeceptum erat*? — *expectābat*, continued to look out: imperfect, see 317. 3. — *multō denique diē*, at last, when much of the day had passed. — *prō visō*, as seen; lit. for seen. — What is the object of *rēnuntiāsse*? — *quō consuerat intervallō*, with the usual distance; *intervallō* is the antecedent of *quō*.

16. *diē* is gen. after the adverb *postridīe*. — *mētiri*, to measure out. — *rei . . . existimāvit*, he thought he must look out for supplies, se. *sibi esse*. — *Eibracte = Mont Benray*. — *seu . . . existimārent*, because they believed that the Romans, being terrified, were departing; the subjunctives *existimārent* and *confidērent*: sometimes the subjunctive is used after *quod*, *quia*, with verbs of saying, thinking, etc., although the idea expressed is that of the writer, and the reason assigned is his own. Roby explains this subjunctive in 1746, and renus.; Vaniček, 527, ann. 2. *Cæsar's army* was composed of four veteran legions, and two legions



newly levied; viz.: the 10th, which he had found in the Province, the old legions (7th, 8th, and 9th) which he had brought from Aquileia, and the two new ones (11th and 12th) raised in Cisalpine Gaul = very nearly 36,000 legionaries. To these must be added 4000 cavalry, raised in the Province and among the Ædui, and nearly 20,000 auxiliaries, making a total of 59,000 or 60,000. This estimate does not include the men assigned to other duties, as working the machines, taking care of the baggage, the army servants, etc. In the engagement Cæsar did not employ the two legions newly raised. The Helvetians had about 79,000. For the time denoted by the infinitive, see 349; *discēdere* here is the imperfect infinitive.

17. *postquam id ānimum advertit, after that Cæsar perceives this; id* is governed by *ad* in composition. — *in colle mēdiō, on the middle of the hill, i.e. midway up the hill.* — *trīplicem āciem:* the triple line of battle was formed with the four veteran legions, viz.: the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th. The arrangement was such that one legion (probably the 10th) formed the right wing, two legions the centre, and one legion the left wing; the legions were in the same line. This is of importance, because the triple line of Cæsar is commonly misunderstood; if the legion is considered as the tactical unit, there is but one line; but the cohorts of each legion were arranged in three lines. The celebrated *trīplex āciēs* is, then, the order of battle, according to which the ten cohorts, of which each legion was made up, were stationed in *three* lines, one behind the other; ordinarily four being in the front line, three in the second, and three in the third, a suitable space being left between the cohorts. The arrangement of the cohorts of the legion when in line of battle will be understood from the following diagram:—



In Cæsar's line of battle, then, the four legions formed a front line of sixteen cohorts, a second line of twelve, and a third line of twelve. — *sarcinās, each soldier's baggage:* in this sense used only in the plural: each soldier carried besides his personal baggage and trenching tools

provisions for a number of days. The various articles of baggage were bound into bundles (*sarcinae*), and then bound to the upper end of a pole (*furca*) 5 or 6 feet long. On the march this pole was carried on the shoulder, and rested, during a halt, on the ground. The poles were an invention made by Marius, and were hence called by the soldiers "Marius' mules" (*muli Mariani*). The weight carried by a soldier, aside from his food and extra clothing, was 35 to 50 pounds; the entire weight (including provisions and clothing) was, as stated above, not far from 60 to 75 pounds. *sarcinae* means originally both baggage and packs, or burdens; it was used sometimes to signify the packs carried by the soldiers (*Bel. Gal. II. 17*), sometimes for the heavy baggage (*Bel. Civ. I. 81*); here it is used for both. The *impēdimenta* were the heavy baggage, tents, engines of war, etc., which were carried in wagons or on horses. — *eum*, sc. *locum*. — *in sup̄eriōre aciē*, in the upper line (the rear), i.e. those on the top of the hill, the two legions of newly levied soldiers. — *cōnfertissimā aciē*, in very close array. — *phālange factā*: the phalanx consisted of a large body of men in solid mass, with their shields raised above their heads, locked and overlapped so as to form a close fence. — *sub . . . successērunt*, they advanced close up to our front line. — *primum . . . ēquis*, first his own horse. — *pilis*: the pilum was a shaft of wood, a little more than six feet long, with a sharp iron head projecting about nine inches; fragments of *pila* have been found at Alise. — *perfrēgērunt*, broke through, see *perfringo*. — *eā disjectā*, when this (phalanx) was broken apart.

18. *Gallis . . . impēdimentō*, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls. — *plūribus eōrum scutīs*, several of their shields, see synonyms of *scutum*. — *cum . . . inflexisset*, when the iron (head) became bent. Their shields were locked over their heads, and overlapped one another; a javelin would pierce through more than one, and bind them together. Movements of their left hands, in which the shield was held, were thus impeded. — *pēdem rēferre*, to fall back. — *eō*, thither. — *captō monte*, the mountain being reached. — *succēdentibus nōstris*, our men coming close up below. — *āgmen . . . claudēbant*, closed the enemy's line of march. — *ex itinēre*, on the march. — *circumvēnēre*, perfect tense, third person, plural. — *Rōmānī . . . intulērunt*, the Romans turned, and advanced in two divisions: the Romans indicated the movements of their armies by terms derived from the *signum*, the standard: thus *signa convertēre*, to turn; *signa cōferre*, to engage; *signa inferre*, to advance; it was the third line that wheeled about and advanced, while the first and second opposed the Helvetians who had been driven back. — *ut . . . rēsistēret*, that it might resist those (who had been) conquered and driven back:

for the subjunctive, see **321**. — *ancīpītī proeliō*, in a double conflict (lit. *two-headed*).

19. *altērī . . . altērī*, the one party . . . the other party, referring to the Helvetians, and to the Boii and Tulingi respectively. — *ab hōrā septimā*, from one o'clock in the afternoon; the day began at sunrise, and ended at sunset; the end of the sixth hour was noon. — *pūgnātum sit*, the battle raged, see **313**. 1. — *āversum hostem*, an enemy turned about. — *ad multam noctem*, till late at night. — *prō vallō*, for a rampart; the vallum was composed of the dirt heaped up (agger) from the ditch (fossa) against the stakes (vallī). — *eāque tōtā nocte*, during that whole night, **196**. — *nōstrī*, sc. *militēs*. — *pōtuissent*, see **338**. — *littērās*, a letter. — *nē . . . rē jūvārent* (ordering), that they, etc.

20. *quī cum*, when they. — *suppliciter locūtī*, speaking suppliantly. — *quō tum essent*, where they then were; the subjunctive is used to indicate that Cæsar did not know where they were. — *pāruērunt*, they obeyed. — *quī perfūgissent*, which had fled to these, i.e. whatever, etc., see **361**. — *ut . . . faciērent*, lit. that they should supply them with corn, i.e. to supply, etc. — *ipsōs*, them, emphatic, used to distinguish the Helvetii from the Allobrogibus (**354**. 4).

21. *tābūlæ*, lists. — *littērīs Graecīs cōfectæ*, made out in Greek letters, which had been learned in Greek Massilia. — *rātiō cōfecta erat*, an account had been kept. — *quī nūmērus . . . eōrum*, what number of them. — *possent*, see **364**. — *summa*, the sun.

The following brilliant description of the battle near Bibracte is from Mommsen's History of Rome (vol. iv. p. 253, Eng. ed.): "The two armies posted themselves on two parallel chains of hills; the Celts began the engagement, broke the Roman cavalry which advanced into the plain, and ran onward against the Roman legions posted on the slope of the hill, but were there obliged to give way before Cæsar's veterans. When the Romans, thereupon following up their advantage, descended in their turn to the plain, the Celts again advanced against them, and a reserved Celtic corps took them at the same time in the flank. The reserve of the Roman attacking column was pushed forward against the latter; it forced it away from the main body upon the baggage and the barricade of wagons, where it was destroyed. The bulk of the Helvetic host was at length brought to give way, and compelled to beat a retreat in an easterly direction, — the opposite of that towards which their expedition led them. This day had frustrated the scheme of the Helvetii to establish for themselves new settlements on the Atlantic Ocean, and handed them over to the pleasure of the victor; but it had been a hot day also for the conquerors."

## INDEX.

[The references are to *pages*; figures or letters in parentheses to *paragraphs*. The index is very full, and will aid pupils greatly if they are taught to consult it.]

- A**, sound of, 28; *ā* or *ab* (prep.), 64, 171; after *pēto* or *postūlo*, with abl. of agent after passives, 130, 211; with gerund, 229.
- ABLATIVE**, 48, 97; rule of position, 98; ending *-ābus*, 56; in *-e*, 92; *-i*, 92; in *-i* of adject., 109, 111; in *-e* of adjectives, 109, 111; in *-ābus*, 141; after prepositions, 172. **SYNTAX**, 97, 130; of crime, 294; duration of time, 182; uses of, 209; abl. proper, 209; instrumental abl., 209; locative abl., 209; gen. rule for abl. proper, 210; compounds with prep., 210; abl. of cause, 210; or with prep., 210; instrumental abl.: (1) means or instrument, 131, 287; (2) measure, 287; (3) difference, 281, 288; (4) distance, 182, 288; (5) price, 283, 288; (6) abl. of time with adverbs, 288; (7) material, 288; (8) manner, 289, accompaniment, 289; (10) quality and characteristic, 289; of agent, 130, 211; of time, 167; abl. absolute, 222; meaning of, 222; of quality, 269; specification, 278; of difference, 281.
- Ablative absolute**, 222.
- ābus*, in dative plural of 1st declension, 56.
- ābūtōr**, 287.
- ac**, see **atque**.
- Accent**, rules of, 33.
- accīdit**, synopsis of, 291.
- Accompaniment**, abl. of, with *cum*, 152.
- ACCUSATIVE**, 55; in *-im*, 88, 92; pl., in *-is*, 88; after prepositions, 64; as objects, 55; with verbs of remembering, etc., 294; with impers., 294; with *jūro*, etc., 164. **SYNTAX**, 55; as direct object, 55; with verbs of feeling, 294; after compounds, 173; with impers., 294; cognate, 373; two accusatives, 158; passive use, with verbs of asking, 156; adverbial, 373; duration of time and extent of space, 167, 182; with *per*, 183; as subject of infinitive, 217; in indirect discourse, 343; in substantive clauses, 334 f.; of gerundive, 226 f.
- Accusing and acquitting**, verbs of, 294.
- Ēc sī**, 321.
- Active voice**, 8, 39-119; how to convert to passive, 136.
- ad**, 63, 173; meaning *near*, 297; in comps., 173.
- ADJECTIVES**, 5; defined, 66; position, 67; like nouns, 67; inflection of, 66; of 1st and 2d decls., 66, 68; model for parsing, 67; of 3d decl., 105, 107; of two or three terminations, 108; of one termination, 108; the inflection of comparatives, 111; cases of, used as adverbs, 123; model for parsing, 112; gen. with, 114; dat. with, 114; adj. clauses, 297; adjectives in *-quus*, 114. **COMPARISON**, 110, 111; construction with comparatives, 112; comparison by adverbs, 116; rule of agreement, 66; rule of gender, 66, 105; position, 67; demonstratives as adj., 190; neut. adjs. as nouns,

- 67; superlatives, 110 ff.; with gen., 115; with dat., 114; model for parsing, 67.
- adjūro** with acc., 164.
- ADVERBS**, defined, 12, 119; classified, 13, 122, 124; illustrated, 12; how formed, 122, 124; compared, 12, 124; position of, 119; numeral, 119, 180; derived from adjectives, 123; classification of, of place, of time, etc., 13, 124; model for parsing, 125.
- Adverbial accusative, 373.
- Adverbial clauses, 297.
- Adverbial phrases, 12, 13, 119.
- Adversative conjunctions, 175.
- adversus** (prep.), 173.
- Agent, abl. of, with **ā** or **ab**, 130, 211; dat. of, 258; agreement, 53; of subject, 53; of predicate, 54.
- ālo**, infl. of, 286.
- al, -ar**, as nent. endings, 87 ff.
- āliquis**, infl. of, 207.
- ālius**, infl. of, 177.
- Alphabet, 23; vowels and diphthongs, 23; consonants, 23, 24, 25; classification of, 24; see table, 25.
- alter**, infl. of, 177.
- Alternative questions, 338, 32; answer to, 338.
- ambo**, infl. of, see **duo**.
- Although, 322.
- ambio**, 280.
- amnis**, gender of, 95.
- an, anne, annōn**, 338 f.; **an** used after **nēscio, haud, scio, dūbito an**, 340.
- Analysis of sentences, 18, 189; directions for analyzing: 1; of verbs, 42, 44, 72, 120; of pass. voice, 127.
- Answer, form of, 340.
- ante** with **quam**, 325, 328.
- Antecedent, its use with relatives, 203; omitted, 203.
- Antepenult, 30.
- antēquam**, 327; often written separate, 328.
- Aorist, 37, 299; rendered like perfect, 326.
- Apodosis, 314.
- Apposition, 60.
- arbor**, gender of, 95.
- Arrangement of words, 90.
- Article, 6.
- As**, used as a rel. pron., 203.
- Asking, verbs of, 156.
- Assimilation of consonants, 24.
- atque**, 175.
- Attraction of mode, 359.
- Attributive adjective, 100.
- audeo**, 255.
- aut**, 175.
- Auxiliary verb, 7, 100.
- ar**, adjective ending, 108; adjective in, with gen., 115.
- B**, sound of, 28.
- bam**, tense-ending, 44 ff.
- Bargaining, verbs of, 283.
- belli**, locative, 235.
- bo**, verb-ending, 44 ff.
- bōnus**, declined, 66.
- bōs**, decl., 96.
- C = G**, sound of, 28; guttural, 25; for **qu**.
- cānis**, gender of, 95; gen. pl. of, 89.
- Cardinal numbers, 180.
- cāro**, gender of, 95.
- Cases, 4, 47, 48; general view of, 49; genitive, 48; dative, 48; accusative, 48; vocative, 48; ablative, 48; independent, 4.
- Case, defined, 4; oblique cases, 48.
- Case-endings, table of, 51, 58, 78, 88, 89.
- Case-suffix, 46.
- causā**, used with gen., 210.
- Causal clauses, 323, 324; **cum** and **quī**, causal, 324.
- Causal conjunctions, 176, 323.
- cēlo**, with two accus., 156.
- Characteristic clause of, 40, 130, 133, 135, 138, 144, 151, 152; characteristic vowel, 40 ff.; sometimes dropped, 135, 139.
- Cities, construction of, 234 ff.
- cīvis**, abl. sing. of, 92.

- CLAUSES, defined, 190, 248; syntax of dependent, 296 ff.; subordinate, 176; conditional, 314 ff.; final, 306 ff.; consecutive, 309 ff.; comparative, 320; concessive, 321; causal, 323; temporal, 325 ff.; substantive, 333 ff.; interrogative, 337 ff.; as subject, object, or appositive, 325; relative, 355 ff.; intermediate, 358; in ind. disc., 347; with causal conjunctions, 176.
- Cognate accusative, 373.
- Command, expression of, 178, 248; in indirect discourse, 352; mild command, 248.
- Common gender, 94.
- Comparative clauses, 320 ff.; sequence of tenses, 321; in indirect disc., 321.
- Comparative conjunctions, 176, 320.
- Comparative suffix, 111.
- Comparatives, inflection of, 106, 111; ways of, 110; stem of, 111; meaning of, 110, 113, 118; connective vowel, 130; construction of, 112.
- Comparison of adjectives, 5, 62, 110, 114; ways of, 5, 110; irregular, 116; defective, 116; of adverbs, 114; construction of, 112; with *quam*, 112; model for parsing, 112.
- Complement with copula, 18, 100.
- Complementary infinitive, 217, 218.
- Completed action, tenses of, 121.
- Complex sentences, 189.
- Compound sentences, 189.
- Compound words, inflection of, 96, 142; verbs with dative, 173.
- Concessive conjunctions, 176, 321; their use, 321, 323.
- Concessive clauses, 322; in indirect disc., 347.
- Condemning, verbs of, 294.
- cōnīcio*, written also *cōnīcio*, 169.
- Conditional conjunctions, 176.
- Conditional clauses, 314; classified, 314 ff.; in ind. disc., 350.
- Conditional particles, 314.
- CONDITIONS, nature of, 314, 315; simple present and past, 314 f., 317; in ind. disc., 350; future, 314 f., 317; in ind. disc., 350; unreal present and past, 314 ff., 317; in ind. disc., 350; verbs of duty, etc., 358; in ind. disc., 350; disguised, 319; omitted, *id.*; in indirect discourse, 350 ff.; exception in sequence of tenses, 302, 316.
- cōnfido*, 210.
- Conjugation, in English, 7; in Latin, 39, 40, etc.; characteristic vowel, 40; the four conjunctions, 41, 71; 1st conj., 41, etc., 126; 2d conj., 129, 132, 135, 137; 3d conj., 144, 146, 151; 4th conj., 165 ff.; how translated, 263; formation of, 42, 71; paradigms of four conj., 259 ff.
- Conjunctions, defined, 13; illustrated, 13; classification of, 13, 175; model for parsing, 176.
- Connecting vowel (so called), 130.
- Connectives, relative used as, 202.
- Consecutive clause, 309; exception in sequence of tenses 309; characteristic and result, 311; used after what, 310, 311.
- Consecutive conjunctions, 176.
- Consonants, classification of, 26; changes of, 26; double, 23; u a consonant, 24.
- Consonant stems, 78, 161; 3d decl., 77; of adjec., 107.
- cōnsc̄āre*, with abl., 288.
- cōnsc̄at*, synopsis of, 291.
- cont̄ctus*, with abl., 210.
- Continued action, see Tenses.
- Contraction of verbs, 72.
- Coördinate clauses, 298.
- Coördinate conjunctions, 175.
- Copula, 18, 99.
- Copulative conjunctions, 175.
- cor*, gender of, 95.
- Countries, names of, gender.
- Crime, gen. of, 294.
- cr̄inis*, gender of, 95.
- cum*, prep., 172; used with abl. of pronouns, 172; appended to abl. of pers. pron., 194; in temporal clauses, 329; *cum inversum*, 329; causal,

- 324, 330; concessive, 322, 330; not used with certain abis., 289; iterative use, 329; historical, 330; translation of, 331.
- DATIVE** endings, 51, 58, 78; in *-abus*, 56; in *-i*, 77; dat. of 4th decl., in *-ibus*, 41. **SYNTAX**, 164; indirect object, 62, 164; used for the locative, 235; with intransitive verbs, 164; with transitive verbs, 62; uses of, with verbs meaning *favor*, etc., 164; with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, etc., 173; with compounds of *satis*, *bere*, etc., 164; of possession, 242; agency with gerundive, 258; of interest, 169; of purpose or end, 170; of advantage and disadvantage, 170; of apparent agent, 170; dat. reference, 170; dat. instead of gen., 170; with adjectives, 114; of fitness, 114; with impers. verbs, 274.
- dea**, inflection of, 56.  
Declarative sentence, 74.
- Declension**, 46; of nouns, 49; how distinguished, 49; general rules for, 50; termination, 49; 1st decl., 51, 52; 2d decl., 57-63; stem, 57; case-endings, 58; nom. and voc. endings wanting in nouns in *-er*, 59; neut. nouns, 62; 3d decl., 77-93; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142.
- Defective nouns, 83, 96, 142.  
Defective verbs, 7, 285.
- dēlecto**, with ace., 164.
- Deliberative subjunctive, 248, 348.
- Definite, see Perfect.
- Definite price, 283.
- Demonstrative pronouns, use of, 199; used as personal pron., 198; as adtee. pron., 199; position of, 199; voc. wanting, 199; in ind. disc., 349.
- dēns**, gender of, 95.  
Dental stems, 80.
- Deponent verbs, 250; conjugation of, 251, 253; participles of, 252; abl. with, 253; synopsis of, 253 f.
- deus**, inflection of, 59; stem of, 59.
- dīc**, imper. of, 179.  
**diēs**, inflection of, 142; gender of, 142.  
**difficilis**, comparison of, 116.  
**diffido**, with abl., 210.  
**dignus**, with abl., 288; with relative clause, 312.
- Diphthongs, 23; sound of, 28; quantity of, 31.
- Direct discourse, 342.  
Direct object, 53.  
Direct question, 338.
- Disjunctive conjunctions, 175.  
**dissimilis**, infl. of., 106; with gen. or dat., 114, 115; compar. of, 116.
- Distance, acc. or abl., 182 f.
- Distributive numerals, 180; how used with pl. nouns with a sing. meaning, 182.
- do**, infin. of, 56; irregular, 74.  
*-do, -po*, feminine endings, 95.  
**dōmī**, locative, 234 f.  
**dōmōs**, **dōmum**, 118.  
**dōmus**, inflection of, 140; gender of, 141.  
**dōnec**, 326.
- Dubitative subjunctive, 248.  
**dūbīto an**, 310.  
**dūbīto**, with **quīn**, 336.  
**dūc**, imperative of, 179.  
**dum**, 326; in the sense of *while*, etc., 327; denoting purpose, 326, 327.  
**dummōdo**, 318.
- duo**, inflection of, 181.  
Duration, acc. of, 182.  
*-dus*, participle in, 256 f.
- E**, prep., see **Ex**.
- ēdo**, ind. of, 280; irregularity of, 280; pass. of, 280.
- Effecting, verbs of, 311.
- ēgeo**, with gen.
- Emphasis, as affected by or affecting arrangement, 90.
- Enclitic, 176. [42 f.]
- Endings, of case, 51, 58, 88; of verbs, English method of pronunciation, 34-36.
- English verb, forms of, 14-17.  
**ēnim**, 176.

- eo, irreg. verb, inflection of, 279;  
stem of, 279; intrans. compounds  
of, 279; trans. compounds, 279;  
pass. of, 280; perfect of, 280.  
-er, nom. ending, 59.  
ergo, 175.  
-es, as nom. ending, 88.  
esse and its compounds, 272; inflec-  
tion of, 102; inflection of com-  
pounds, 272.  
et . . . et, both . . . and, 175.  
etiam, in answers, 334.  
etiam, i, 322.  
etsi, 322.  
EUPHONIC CHANGES, 25; vowel weak-  
ening, 26; of 3d conj., 149, 154.  
evēnit, synopsis of, 291.  
Exclamatory sentences, 74.  
Expletive, 192.  
F, sound of, 28.  
Fac, imper. of, 179.  
facilis, comparison of, 116.  
facio, 282; compounds of, 282.  
fārī, def. verb, 287.  
fās, with supine, 232.  
Fearing, verbs of (nē or ut), 307.  
Feminine, rule of gender, 95.  
fer, imper. of, 179.  
fēro, infl. of, 276; compounds of,  
277; irregularity of, 277.  
fido, semi-deponent, 255; with abl.,  
210.  
filius, infl. of, 58; voc. of, 48.  
Fifth declension, 142.  
Filling, verbs of, with ablative, 288.  
Final clauses, 298, 306; how trans-  
lated, 306, 307; in indirect dis-  
course, 317 f.  
Final conjunctions, 176, 306.  
Final vowels, quantity of, 86.  
finis, gender of, 95; abl. sing., 92.  
Finite verb, 9.  
flo, infl. of, 282; used as pass. of  
fācio, 282; compounds of, 282.  
First conjugation, formation, 41 ff.;  
inflection of, 41 ff.  
First declension, 51.  
flāgito, constr. of, 156.  
fōns, gender of, 95.  
fōre ut, 345.  
Forgetting, verbs of, 294.  
fōrem, 241.  
Fourth conjugation, formation of,  
157 ff.; inflection, 157 ff.  
frētus, with abl., 210.  
fruor, fungor, with abl., 287.  
FUTURE TENSE, 10, 41, 109, 120, 130,  
144; vowel changes, 145, 158.  
FUTURE PERFECT, 9, 10; syntax, 304;  
for simple future, 315; represented  
in subj., 304; in ind. disc., 304.  
fūtūrum sit ut, used instead of  
periphrastic form, 304.  
G = c (in early use), sound of, 28.  
gaudeo, 255.  
GENDER, 13; natural and grammati-  
cal, 47; common, 94; of 1st decl.,  
51; of 2d decl., 57, 62; of 3d decl.,  
94, 95; of 4th decl., 140; 5th  
decl., 142; gen. of indeclinable  
words, clauses, etc., 47, 334.  
General truth, 328.  
General relatives, 331, 357.  
GENITIVE, 48, 60; pl. in -um, 92; of  
1st decl., 51; of 2d decl., 57, 59; of  
nouns in -ius, and -ium, 58; gen-  
der, 58; of 3d decl. in -ium, 92; in  
-ius, 177; of adjec., 66, 109. SYN-  
TAX, 61; subjective, 162; objective,  
162; possessive, 60, 162; in predi-  
cate, 103; partitive, 198; predicate  
gen., 103, 104; with adjectives, 115;  
with verbs, 294 f.; of memory, 295;  
of charge and penalty, 294; of  
feeling, 295; impers., 295; interest,  
295; of plenty and want, 115; of  
value, 295; of gerundive, 228; of  
quality, 269.  
GERUND, 38, 225; not one of the  
principal parts of a verb, 38; nom.  
how supplied, 225; how formed,  
226; endings of, 226; acc., how  
used, 226; its government, 227;  
equivalent gerundive forms, 227;  
of 3d and 4th conjugations, 255.  
SYNTAX, 228.



- GERUNDIVE, 227; uses of gen., 227, 228; dat. 228; acc., 228; abl., 229; after what verbs used, 228; of 3d and 4th conjugations, 255; when not admissible, 228.  
**grātiā**, with gen., 210.  
 Greek nouns, 52.  
 Guttural stems, of nouns, 17; of verbs, 148, 161.
- H**, spirant, 23; guttural, 24; sound of, 28.  
**hic**, infl. of, 197; use of, 197, 198 f.  
 Hindering, verbs of, with **nō** or **quōminus**, 308; negative with **quā**, 310; sequence of tenses, 310; after neg. indef. expressions, 310.  
 Historical infin., 412.  
 Historical present, 303, 346.  
 Historical tenses, 302.  
 Hoping, verbs of, 345; with infin., 345.  
**HORTATORY SUBJ.**, 248.  
**hūmī**, locative, 235.
- I**, sound of, 27; **i** and **j** interchangeable, 24; **i** suppressed in **cōnicio**, etc., 169; how pronounced between two vowels, 286; of perfect, 71.  
 -*i*, abl. in, 87, ff., 92.  
 -*i*, stems of nouns, 91; of adjectives, 105, 106.  
 -*ibam* = -*ībam* (4th conj.), 221.  
**īdem**, infl., 200; derivation of, 201; use, 201.  
**īdōneus**, compared, 114; **īdōneus quī**, 312.  
 -*īs* in 5th decl., 142 f.  
**īgitur**, meaning of, 175.  
**īgnis**, gender of, 95; abl. sing., 92.  
 -*ī* in gen. of 2d decl., 58; contracted into -*i*, 58.
- ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, 175.  
**ille**, inflection of, 197; use, 199.  
 -*im*, acc. ending in 3d decl., 88, 92.  
 Imperative mode, 9, 75, 177, 178; personal endings, 74, 178; negative with, 178; tenses of, 178; first person of, 179, 241; passive, 186.
- IMPERATIVE SENTENCES**, 74; implying condition, 319; in ind. disc., 352.  
**IMPERFECT TENSE**, formation, 41, 130, 145, 152, 158; uses, 96, 37, 299, 121.  
**IMPERSONAL VERBS**, 291; synopsis, 7, 291; classification, 292; passive of intrans., 293. **SYNTAX**, 294 f.; conseq. clauses after impers., 311; acc. with infin. or **quod** with indie., 335; subst. clauses after impers., 335.  
 in, constr. of, 172; with expressions of time, 167.  
 Incomplete action, tenses of, 121.  
 Increment of nouns, 77.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 47; rule of gender, 47.  
 Indefinite pronouns, 207; indefinite second person, 228.  
 Indicative mode, meaning and use of, 8.  
**indignus**, 288; relative clause with, 312.  
**INDIRECT DISCOURSE**, 342; applied to what, 359; used after what verbs, 348; informal, 360; infin. in, 344; tenses in, 346; reflex. pronouns in, 348; conditional sentences in, 350; imperative sentences, 352; interrogative sentences, *id.*  
 Indirect object, 62.  
**INDIRECT QUESTIONS**, 336, 337 f.  
 Indo-European, 21.  
 Infinitive clause, 334.  
 Infinitive verb, 347.  
**INFINITIVE MODE**, 9, 213; meaning, 9; use, 213; formation, 40, 126, 129, 144, 157, 214; present infin., 40, 126, 129, 144, 157; infins. of active voice, 213; of pass. voice, 214; personal endings, 214. **SYNTAX**, 213; classification of uses of, 213; when in ind. disc., 346; subj. must as a rule be expressed, 346; as subject, 217; object, 217; complement, 217; with subj. acc., 216; as meaning purpose, 308; perfect,

- ENCES, 74; imply-  
 319; in ind. disc.,  
 E, formation, 44,  
 8; uses, 96, 37, 299,  
 BS, 291; synopsis,  
 ation, 292; passive  
 . SYNTAX, 294 f.;  
 after impers., 311;  
 or quod with in-  
 . clauses after im-  
 ; with expressions  
 , tenses of, 121.  
 IS, 77.  
 IS, 47; rule of gen-  
 ns, 207; indefinite  
 228.  
 meaning and use  
 relative clause with,  
 URSE, 342; applied  
 used after what  
 rmal, 360; infin. in,  
 46; reflex. pronouns  
 ional sentences in,  
 sentences, 352; in-  
 tences, *id.*  
 2.  
 NS, 336, 337 f.  
 1.  
 334.  
 47.  
 s, 9, 213; meaning,  
 mation, 40, 126, 129,  
 present infin., 40,  
 37; infins. of active  
 pass. voice, 214;  
 gs, 214. SYNTAX,  
 ion of uses of, 213;  
 sc., 346; subj. must  
 expressed, 346; as  
 bject, 217; comple-  
 i subj. acc., 216; as  
 ose, 308; perfect,
- 345; future with *fōre ut*, 345; rep-  
 resents in ind. disc., 345; after *mē-*  
*mīnī*, 345; subject of, must in ind.  
 disc. be expressed, 346.  
 INFLECTION, defin. of, 46; termina-  
 tion of, 46 ff.  
 Informal ind. disc., 360; after what  
 verbs, 360.  
 Inquam, 286; position of, 286.  
 Inseparable prepositions, 174 (7).  
 Intensive pronouns, 200; in ind.  
 disc., 349.  
 Inter *sē*, 195.  
 intērest, constr. of, 295.  
 Interjections, defined, 14, 74.  
 INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES, SYNTAX of,  
 358; merely explanatory, 358 f.  
 Interrogative conjunctions, 176; in  
 ind. disc., 351.  
 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, 205;  
 particles, 205, 337; implying con-  
 dition, 319.  
 Interrogative word, 74; omitted, 337,  
 338, 339.  
 Intransitive verbs, 6, 119; dat. with,  
 164.  
 -io, noun-ending, 95.  
 -io, verb-ending of 3d conj., 168.  
 ipse, 200; infl. of, 200; use of, 200,  
 329; compared with *sē*, 200, 349.  
 īri, in fut. infin. passive, 232.  
 is, inflection of, 200; use of, 200 f.  
 -is, acc. pl. ending, 88; gen. ending,  
 79; pl. cases of 2d decl., 158, 82.  
 Islands, names of, loc. use, 234.  
 iste, 197; use of, 197 f.  
 It, as sign of impersonals, 292.  
 Itaque, accent, see Vocab.  
 Iter, infl. of, 96; gender of, 95.  
 -ius, gen. sing. ending, 177; quantity,  
 177.  
 J, semi-vowel, 23; sound of, 28; = i,  
 24; interchangeable with j, 24.  
 jūbeo, with acc., 164; construction  
 of, 334.  
 Jūppiter or Jūpīter, infl. of, 96.  
 jūs, gender of, 99.  
 jūsjūrandum, infl. of, 96.  
 jūvēns, how compared, 117; gen.  
 pl. of, 89.  
 jūvo, with acc., 164.  
 K, sound of, 28.  
 Knowing, constr. w. verbs of, 334.  
 Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 115.  
 L, sound of, 28.  
 Labial stems (3d decl.), 77; gender  
 of, 94.  
 laedo, with acc., 164.  
 Latin language, 21; origin and rela-  
 tionship, 21.  
 Laws of euphony, 149.  
 Letters, classification of, 24 f.  
 libet, impers., 292.  
 licet, synopsis of, 291.  
 LINGUAL STEMS, 77; gender of, 83.  
 LIQUIDS, see Lingual.  
 Literature, periods of Latin, 22.  
 LOCATIVE CASE, 48; locative abla-  
 tive, 209, 234; locative forms, 96,  
 141, 188.  
 Iōcō, without prep., 235.  
 Iōcus, declen. of, 70; meaning in pl.,  
 70.  
 M, sound of, 28; verb-ending, lost, 43.  
 māgnī, genitive of value, 283.  
 Making, verbs of, 159.  
 mālo, inflection of, 273.  
 Material, abl. of, 288.  
 māterfāmiliās, infl. of, 96.  
 māxīme, as sign of superl., 110.  
 May, potential, how expressed, 240.  
 Mens, abl. of, 287.  
 Measure, abl. of, 287.  
 mēdius (middle part of), 415.  
 memīnī, infl. of, 285; with pres.  
 infin., 345.  
 mēridiēs, infl. of, 142; gender of,  
 142.  
 -met, enclitic, 193.  
 meus (voc. mī), 195.  
 mille, as adj. or as noun, 181; how  
 infl., 181.  
 militiāe, locative, 235.  
 mīnōris, gen. of value, 283.

- miseror**, with gen., 235.  
**miseret**, 292; with acc. and gen., 295.  
 Modern languages derived from Latin, 22.  
 Modes, 8, 239.  
 Mode-signs, 243, 268; modes in dependent clauses, 297, 306 ff.; infin., 213 ff., 344.  
 Modification, of words, 3; of subject or predicate, 190.  
**mōdo**, **dum mōdo**, with subj. in conditions, 318.  
**mōns**, gender of, 95.  
 Mood, see Mode.  
 Motion, expressed with prep., 172.  
 Mountains, names of, gender, 47.  
 Mutes, 23 ff.; mute stems (3d decl.), 78 ff.
- N**, sound of, 28; stems in *n*, 80.  
 Nasals, 23.  
**nāvis**, abl. sing. of, 92.  
**nē**, with hortat. subj., 248; prohibitions, 248; final clauses, 306 f.; consecutive clauses, 308; with verbs of fearing, 307.  
*-ne*, enclitic, in questions, 75, 76, 244.  
 Necessity, verbs of, 257.  
**neque**, 339.  
**nēfās**, with supine, 232.  
 Negative particle, 76; as expressing *no* in answer to questions, 340.  
**nēgo**, better than **dico** . . . **nōn**, 410.  
**nēmō**, use of, 165.  
**nē nōn**, 335.  
**nēque**, 175.  
**nēquis**, 207.  
**nē . . . quidem**, 412.  
**nescio an**, 340.  
**nescio quis**, 340.  
 NEUTER NOUNS, 62 ff., 94 f.  
*-n*, lengthens preceding vowel, 32.  
**nī**, **nīsi**, 314 ff.  
**nōlo**, 273 f.
- NOMINATIVE**, 4, 53; sign of, 77; formation from stem, 1st decl., 46, 51; 2d decl., 57, 59-63; 3d decl., 77, 78, 81, 82, 83, 85, 87; summary of rules for forming the nom. of 3d decl., 87; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142 f.  
 SYNTAX: as subject, 53; pred. after **esse**, 100.  
**nōn**, in answer, 310.  
**nōn dūbīto quīn**, 323.  
**nōnne**, 75, 176.  
**nōn quīa**, **nōn quod**, **nōn quīn**, 324.  
**nōster**, 191; in lud. disc., 319.  
**nōstri**, as obj. gen., 193.  
**nōstrum**, as partitive gen., 193.  
 NOUNS, defined, 1, 2; classified, 3; Latin nouns, 46; infl., 46; modification of, 47; paradigms, 51 ff.; rule of agreement, 60 ff.; model for parsing, 54; abstract and collective, 397; of 1st decl., 49 ff.; 2d decl., 57 ff.; 3d decl., 77 ff.; classification of, 77, 93; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142.  
*-us* as adjective ending, 107 f.; gen. pl. of, 92; lengthens preceding vowel, 32.  
**nūllus**, infl. of, 177; used for gen. and abl. of **nēmō**, 165.  
**num**, force of, 74, 206; in indirect questions, 339.  
 Number, 2, 3, 10, 47; of nouns, *id.*; of adjectives, 66; of verbs, 10, 41 ff.
- NUMERALS**, 180; classification of, 180.
- O**, sound of, 27; quantity of *o* final, 86.  
**O** in **āmo** = **a** and **o** and **m**.  
**O sī**, with subj. of wish, 248.  
 Object defined, 4, 55; direct, 55; indirect, 62; model for parsing the objective, 56.  
 Object clauses, 307.  
 Oblique cases, 48; oblique disc., 342, 360.  
**ōdī**, 285.  
**offendo**, with acc., 164.  
**oportet**, 292.  
 Optative subjunctive, 248.  
**ōpus**, *work*, infl. of, 81.  
**ōpus** and **ūsus**, *need*, with abl., 288.  
**Orātiō obliqua**, see Indirect Discourse.

nom. of 3d decl., 142 f.; 5th decl., 142 f. act, 53; pred. after  
 0.  
 323.  
 quod, nōn quā,  
 l. disc., 349.  
 193.  
 tive gen., 193.  
 2; classified, 3;  
 infl., 46; modifica-  
 tions, 51 ff.; rule  
 ff.; model for pars-  
 et and collective,  
 49 ff.; 2d decl.,  
 7 ff.; classification  
 decl., 140; 5th decl.,  
 ling, 107 f.; gen. pl.  
 preceding vowel,  
 177; used for gen.  
 5, 165.  
 4, 206; in indirect  
 7; of nouns, *id.*; of  
 f verbs, 10, 41 ff.  
 classification of, 180.  
 quantity of *o* final, 86.  
*o* and *m*.  
 wish, 248.  
 55; direct, 55; in-  
 el for parsing the  
 oblique disc., 342,  
 164.  
 ve, 248.  
 of, 81.  
 ced, with abl., 288.  
 see Indirect Dis-

Order of words, 90.  
 Ordinal numbers, 180.  
 ordo, gender of, 95.  
 -os for -us, in nom. sing. of 2d decl., 57.  
 Origin of Latin language, 21; how  
 related, 21; where spoken, 21.

**P**, sound of, 28.  
**paenitet**, constr. of, 295.  
 Palatal consonants, 25.  
**pānis**, gen. pl. of, 89; gender of, 95.  
 Participial clauses, 219; implying  
 condition, 319.

Participial stem, 38, 137.  
 PARTICIPLES, defined, 11; illustrated,  
 11, 38, 219; classified, 11, 219; infl.  
 of, 38, 108, 109, 128; abl. in -i, 109;  
 nom. and gen. pl., 109; how trans-  
 lated, 219, 223; in abl. abs., 222;  
 voices of, 220; of trans. verb, 220;  
 of intrans. verbs, 220, formation  
 of, 220; infl. of, 221; directions for  
 parsing, 223. SYNTAX, 219; time of,  
 221; of deponent verbs, 250; perf.  
 pass., with passive meaning, 253;  
 perf., 128; perf. act., how supplied,  
 224; perf. partic. denoting paren-  
 tage, etc., 210; agreement of, 220;  
 gerundive, 220, 226 ff.; neut. of the  
 perf. in enumerating the principal  
 parts of a verb, 155.

PARTICLES, defined, 74; interroga-  
 tive and negative, 74. SYNTAX of,  
 248, 306 ff.; conditional, 315; ten-  
 poral, 325.

Parts of speech defined, 1-14.  
 Passive voice, 8, 119; analysis of,  
 120; origin, 121; pass. sign, 121.

Passive sign, 120, 121 ff.  
**pēlgāus**, neut., see Vocab.  
 Penalty, gen. of, 294.  
**pēnes**, 172.  
 Penult, 30; quantity of, 33.

**per**, 64, 172; with expressions of  
 time, 167, 183; for agent, 210; in  
 composition, 174 (7).

Perfect stem, 10, 71; analysis, 72;  
 synopsis of rules for forming, 161;  
 in composition, 118.

PERFECT TENSE, 71; perfect def-  
 inite, 37, 303; personal endings,  
 71, 133, 147, 161; used as present,  
 286; origin of, 134; *v* suppressed in  
 perfect, 72; stem, how formed, 71,  
 133, 147, 165; of subj. in sequence  
 of tenses, 301 f.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS, 256;  
 act., 257; pass., 257; pass., how  
 used, 294; meaning and formation  
 of, 257; periphrastic forms in sub-  
 ordinate clauses, 303.

Person, defined, 10; the first person  
 is the first in order, 195.

PERSONAL ENDINGS, 42, 71, 120, 121,  
 123, 166; meaning of, 42, etc., 121;  
 how formed, 166.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 5, 193 f.; re-  
 tained in ind. disc., 349.

Persons of verbs, 3, 10.

*Petitiō obliqua*, 360.

**pēto**, with **ā** or **ab**, 156.

Phonetic changes, 25, 26, 154.

Phrases, 13, 173; defined, 191; adj.  
 and adverb, 65; prepositional, 172.

**pīget**, constr. of, 295.

Place, to which, 187, 234; relations of,  
 require prep., 237; locative uses, 235.

Plenty, verbs of, 288.

Pleonasm, 4 (c).

Pluperfect, 10, 72; analysis of, 72.

Plural, of nouns, 3, 47, 51 ff.; of  
 verbs, 10, 36, 39 ff.

**plūris**, gen. of value, 283.

**plūs**, inflection of, 106, 111.

**pōsco**, constr. of, 156.

**poenitet**, see **paenitet**.

**pōns**, gender of, 95.

**posse**, 270 f.

Possessive pronouns, 194; in ind.  
 disc., 349.

Position, rules of, 90.

**possum**, infl. of, 271; how formed,  
 271.

**posteā**, 326.

**postquam**, 326.

**postūlo**, constr. with **ā** or **ab**, 156.

Potential mode, 9; how expressed,  
 240.

- Potential subjunctive, 248, 328.  
**pōtior**, with ablative, 287; with genitive, 287.  
**prae**, 172.  
**PREDICATE**, 18, 190; defined, 18, 190; after **esse**, 18, 100; agreement, 18, 100.  
**PREPOSITIONS**, 64, 171, 172; use of, 172, 173; inseparable, 174.  
 Present stem, how formed, 40 ff.  
**PRESENT TENSE**, 9, 10; used for aorist, 303.  
 Preteritive tenses, 395.  
 Price, abl., 283.  
**prīdiā**, loc., see 415 (16).  
 Primary tenses, 300.  
**PRINCIPAL PARTS** of verbs, 38, 126; neut. of the perf. partic., 155.  
**prior** used instead of **primus**, 182.  
**priusquam**, 327; often written separate, 328.  
**prō**, preposition, 172.  
 Prohibitions, 178, 248.  
 Promising, etc., verbs of, 345.  
**PRONOUNS**, 5; defined and classified, 5, 172; infl. of, 193-207; personal and reflexive, 193, 194; rule for position of, 196; possessive, 194; demonstrative, 197; determinative, 200; relative, 202; interrog., 205; indefinite, 207; pronouns strengthened by *-met*, *-te*, etc., 193; reduplicative forms, 194; exs. illustrating use of, 195; rule for position, 196. **SYNTAX** of, 203.  
**PRONUNCIATION**, modes of, 27; Roman, 27, 28; phonetic, 27; English, 34.  
**prōsum**, infl. of, 272.  
 Protasis, 304.  
 Proviso, 318.  
**pūdet**, 295.  
**pūgnātur**, impers., synopsis of, 291.  
**PURPOSE**, 306; ways of expressing, 308.  
**Qu**, sound of, 28.  
**quaero** (**QUAERO**), irreg. verb, 286; constr. of, 156.  
**quam**, with superl., 118, 275; with compar., 112, 275; comparative particles, 320.  
**quamlibet**, 207; infl. of, see Vocab.  
**quamsi**, 320, 321.  
**quamvis**, 207; infl. of, see Vocab.  
**quantī**, gen. of value, 283.  
**QUANTITY**, general rules of, 31, 32, 86; of final vowels, 32, 86; of other syllables, see Preface.  
**quāsi**, 320, 321.  
*-que*, enclitic, 76; as conj., 175.  
**queo**, irreg. verb, 282, 286.  
**QUESTIONS**, 74, 206; single or double, 206; fact questions, 337; direct, 338; indirect, 339; rhetorical, 337; dependent and independent, 339; alternative, see double, 338; in indirect disc., 351 f.  
**quī**, relative, infl. of, 202; agreement of, 203; position of, 203; model for parsing, 203; general relative, 202; indefinite, 207, 209; expressing purpose, 306, 356; concessive, 322; with **nēscio**, 340; strengthened by **ut**, **ut pōte**, etc., 357.  
**quicumque** (**quicunque**), 212.  
**quia**, 176, 323.  
**quidam**, 205; indef., 207.  
**quidem**, 412.  
**quīn**, in consecutive clauses, 310; with verbs of hindering, 310; **nōn quīn**, 310.  
**quis**, infl. of, 205; distinction from **quī** in use, 205, 207; compounds of, 205; indef. 207; with **nēscio**, 340.  
**quisnam**, 205.  
**quisptam**, 207.  
**quisquam**, 207.  
**quisquis**, 202.  
**quivīs**, 217.  
**quō**, in final clauses, 310.  
**quoad**, 326.  
**quod**, conj., 176; clauses with, 323, 324, 335; as acc. of specification, 373.  
**quod si**, see Vocab.  
**quōmīnus**, 308 ff.; with verbs of hindering, 308.  
**quōniam**, 323 f.

- Quotation, 342.  
quum, see cum.
- R, sound of, 28; substitute for s, 82.  
Reading Latin at sight, directions for, 211.  
Reciprocal (*each other*), how expressed, 194 f.  
rēcōrdor, 294.  
Reduplication, 148; of pronouns, 194; in perf., 148, 161; lost, 148; in compounds, 148; reduplicated forms of pronouns, 194.  
rēfert, with gen., 295.  
Reflexive pronouns, 194 f., 348. SYNTAX of, 194, 348; in indirect discourse, 349; two reflexives, 349.  
Reflexive verbs, 121; reflex. stem, 121.  
Regular verbs, 7, 54 ff.  
RELATIVE CLAUSES, 5, 202, 203; how introduced, 355; force of, 355, 297 f., 355. SYNTAX, 203; concessive, 322, 355; in ind. disc., 357 f.; conditional, 355; characteristic and result, 356; as causal, 355; temporal, 355.  
RELATIVE PRONOUNS, inflection of, 202; how trans. at beginning of a sentence, 203. SYNTAX, 203; rule of agreement, 202, 355; position, 203; how translated at the beginning of a sentence, 203; model for parsing, 203; omitted in Eng. but not in Latin, 203; *as* as a rel., 203.  
rēspūblica, infl. of, 142.  
Remembering, constr. with verbs of, 294.  
rēmīniscor, 294.  
rēs, infl. of, 142.  
Restrictive relative, 356.  
RESULT, clause of, 312, 356.  
Rhetorical questions, 337; in ind. disc., 352.  
rōgo, constr. of, 156.  
Roman pronunciation, 27, 28.  
Roman writers, 22.  
Romance languages, origin of, 22.  
Rules of syntax, 306 ff.; general rules of, 371.  
rūs, constr. of, 234.
- S, sound of, 28; as sign of nominative, 77-93; s of the nom. and voc. is sometimes dropped, 82; s becomes r, 82; s unites with c or g, 85.  
SECOND CONJUGATION, formation of, 129 ff.  
SECOND DECLENSION, nouns of, 57 ff. sed, 175.  
Semi-deponents, 255.  
Semi-vowels, 24.  
sēnex, infl. of, 96; compar. of, 117.  
SENTENCE, parts, 17; analysis of, 18, 191; classification of, 74, 189 ff., 290, 298; simple, 189; complex, 189, 190; compound, 189, 190; model for analyzing, 191.  
SEPARATION, abl. of, 209.  
SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 302; rules for applying, 304; in indirect discourse, 302, 346, 347 f.; after participles, 347; after infinitives, etc., 347.  
sī, conj., 176; conditional, 314 ff., concessive, 322.  
sīmul &c, 326.  
Signs of quantity, 23; of accents, 33.  
sīmīlis, infl. of, 106; with gen. or dat., 114, 115; compar. of, 116.  
sīquis, 207.  
sōleo, 255.  
sōlus, infl. of, 177; with rel. clause, 312.  
sonants, 25.  
Space, acc. of, 182.  
Specification, abl. of, 278; acc. of, 373. See Cognate Accusative.  
STEM, defined, 40; noun-stem, 46; how formed, 46; 1st decl. or a-stems, 49-52; 2d decl., 57; 3d decl., 77; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142; verb-stems, 40; terminations of, 40; stem-characteristic, 40; 1st conj., 40; 2d conj., 130, 137; 3d conj., 144; 4th conj., 157; labial, dental, lingual, guttural, u-stems, of verbs, 148, 161; present verb-stems, 40, 126; perfect, 71, 126, 133, 146, 147; participial, 126, 137, 163, 165; stems classified and defined, 259 f.; stem-words, 82.

- sub, 172.
- SUBJECT**, defined, 17, 53, 55; omitted, 42; plur. subj., 150; in indir. disc., 346; with verbs of promising, etc., 345.
- SUBJUNCTIVE MODE**, 9; paradigm of, 243, 245 f.; has no fut., how supplied, 256, 239; uses of, 239; analysis of, 243; personal endings, 243; tenses of, 240, 303; tenses wanting, 303; how translated, 240, 241, 244; classification of uses, 250; concessive, 248; hortatory, 248; optative, 248; dubitative, 248; potential, 248; negative with, 244, 248; four conjugations of, 245; pass. of, 246; in independent sentences, 248; in dependent clauses, 248; in rel. clauses, 248, 355 ff.; in intermediate clauses, 248, 358; in indirect discourse, 248, 243 ff.; in indirect questions, 339; how translated in indirect questions, 340.
- SUBORDINATE CLAUSES**, 190, 248, 291 ff.; how classified, 297 f.; in indirect disc., 342.
- Subordinate conjunctions, 176.
- SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES**, defined and classified, 333; infinitive, 334; of purpose, 334; of result, 335; with **quod**, 335; ind. question, 336; gender of, 334.
- subter, 172.
- Suffix, defined, 46; of nouns, 46; of verbs, 42 ff.
- sum, inflection of, 101, 102.
- summus, compar. of, 117; meaning of, 118, 415.
- sunt qui, 356.
- sūper, 172.
- SUPERLATIVE**, defined, 5; of adject., different ways of forming, 5; infl. of, 111; how trans., 113, 118; of adverbs, 124.
- SUPINE**, noun of 4th decl., 38, 231; meaning and use of, 231; not common, 232; not one of the principal parts of verbs, 232; government of, 232; dependence of, 232; uses of, 231; its government, 232; sup. in *-um* not common. Stem, 231; how formed, 231.
- Surds, 25.
- Syllabication, 29.
- Syllables, rules for division of, 29, 34.
- Synopsis of tenses, 73; of impersonal verbs, 91.
- SYNTAX**, 17, 53 ff. See each case and mode in index.
- T**, sound of, 28.
- taedet, constr. of, 295.
- tānquam, 321.
- tānquam sī, 321 f.
- tantī, gen. of price, 283.
- Teaching, verbs of, 156.
- Temporal conj., 176; classification of, 325; clauses: (1) antecedent action, 326; (2) contemporaneous action, 326; (3) subsequent action, 327.
- TENSES**, 9; how classified, 9, 37; meaning, 9, 41, etc.; analysis of, 44; classification of, 299; denoting incomplete, complete, or indefinite action, 299; primary and secondary, 300; endings, 260 ff.; formation of, 260 ff. **SYNTAX**, 9 f., 299, 306 ff.; classification, 299; present, 299; imperf., 9 f., 299; future, 9 f., 299; perfect, 9 f., 299; pluperfect, 9 f., 299; future perfect, 9 f., 299; sequence of, 300 ff.; of infin., 344.
- Tense-signs, 45 ff., 74, 121, 145, 243, 268.
- Terminations, 46; of infl., 46, 51 ff.; of nouns, 51 ff.; of verbs, 40, 42 ff.
- terrā marique, 235, 236.
- That, uses of, 336; 306 ff.
- THIRD CONJUGATION**, verbs of, 144 ff.; formation of, 144 ff.; infl., 144-155; verbs in *-io*, 168.
- THIRD DECLENSION**, nouns of, 77 ff.; rules of gender, 47, 51, 57, 94, 95.
- Though, see Although.
- Threatening, infir. with, 345.
- Time and place, construction of, 167, 182, 188, 234 ff.
- TIME**, when, 167; how long, 182.

- tōtus, 177.  
 Towns, names of, gender of, 47; construction with or without preposition, 234 ff.  
 trāns, prep., 172; comps. of, with acc., 374.  
 Transitive verbs, 7, 119.  
 Translation of subjunctive, 241.  
 trēs, infl. of, 181.  
 turrīs, abl. sing. of, 92.  
 -tūs, noun-ending, 95.
- U, sound of, 27; a consonant, 24; interchanged with v, 24.  
 ūbī, in temporal clauses, 326; ūbī primum, 326.  
 -abus, case-ending in 4th decl., 141.  
 -ūdo, noun-ending, 95.  
 ūllus, infl. of, 177.  
 ūnus, infl. of, 181; in pl., 181; with pl. nouns of a sing. meaning, 181.  
 ūnus qui, with subj., 356.  
 ūnusquisque, 207.  
 -ūrus, future participle, 220; in indirect discourse, 346.  
 ūsus, *necl.* with abl., 288.  
 ut, as concess., 322; comparative, 320; as final, 306; of result, 309; ut nō, 306; with subst. clauses, 333, 334; c. mission after, 337.  
 ut, *when*, 325, 326; ut primum, 326.  
 ūter, infl. of, 177.  
 ūterque, infl. of, 177.  
 ūtī, ūtinam, with subj. of wish, 248; utī, comparative particle, 320.  
 ūtor, etc., with abl., 287; as transitive, 228.  
 utrum, 339; utrum . . . an, 338.  
 ut sī, 320, 321.
- V, sound of, 28; originally not distinguished from u, 28; interchangeable with u, 24; syncopated in perf., 72, 161.  
 Value, gen. of, 283.  
 vel, 175.  
 vēiut, 320, 321.  
 vēiut sī, 320, 321.  
 Verb-stem, 40.  
 Verb, as complete sentence, 43.  
 Verbs, defined, 6; modification, 6, 36, 38; formation, 39 ff.; regular, 7; deponent, 253 f.; semi-deponent, 255; irregular, 7, 273; defective, 285; impersonal, 291; rule of agreement, 54. SYNTAX of, 54 ff.  
 Verbs of perceiving, declaring, etc., 217, 334, 348.  
 Verbal endings, 42, 44 ff., 130.  
 Verbals in -ax, 115; in -bilis, 115.  
 vērō, in answers, 340.  
 vescor, with abl., 253.  
 vesperī, 60, see Vocab.  
 vēto, with acc. and infin., 334.  
 vētus, infl. of, 109; compar., 116.  
 -vī, in perf., 71, 134. The *i* is part of the stem, 71.  
 vīs, infl. of, 96.  
 VOCATIVE, 48, 58 ff., 182; case, 15; like nom., 59, 62, 77; except in 2d decl., 57, 77; in -ī of nouns in -ius, 58. SYNTAX, 75.  
 VOICE, 8, 119, 137; act. and pass., 8, 119; formula for converting act. to pass., 136.  
 vōlo, infl. of, 273.  
 VOWELS, 24; quality of, 24; open, close, medial, 24; vowel stems, 78, 161; characteristic vowel of the stem dropped, 139; vowel of the stem lengthened, 161; characteristic vowel changed, 130, 133, 135, 138, 144, 145, 147, 151, 154, 158, 160, 163, 179; characteristic vowel of stem shortened, 72.
- W, not in Latin alphabet, 23; = v, 24.  
 Want, verbs of, 288.  
 Way by which, abl., 237.  
 Wish, expression of, 248.  
 Winds, gen. of names of, 47.  
 Wishing, constr. with verbs, 334.
- X, sound of, 28; lengthens preceding syllable, 32.
- Y, sound of, 27.  
 Year, how expressed, 182, 222.





# VOCABULARY.

## I.—LATIN AND ENGLISH.

### ABBREVIATIONS.

a. . . . .	<i>active.</i>	indecl. . . . .	<i>indeclinable.</i>
abl. . . . .	<i>ablative.</i>	incl. . . . .	<i>inchoative.</i>
acc. . . . .	<i>accusative.</i>	intr. . . . .	<i>intransitive.</i>
adj. . . . .	<i>adjective.</i>	interj. . . . .	<i>interjection.</i>
adv. . . . .	<i>adverb.</i>	irr. . . . .	<i>irregular.</i>
conj. . . . .	<i>conjunction.</i>	m. . . . .	<i>masculine.</i>
comp. . . . .	<i>comparative.</i>	n. . . . .	<i>neuter.</i>
dat. . . . .	<i>dative.</i>	num. . . . .	<i>numeral.</i>
def. . . . .	<i>defective.</i>	part. . . . .	<i>participle.</i>
dep. . . . .	<i>deponent.</i>	perf. . . . .	<i>perfect.</i>
dīm. . . . .	<i>diminutive.</i>	pl. . . . .	<i>plural.</i>
f. . . . .	<i>feminine.</i>	p.p. . . . .	<i>perfect part.</i>
gen. . . . .	<i>genitive.</i>	prep. . . . .	<i>preposition.</i>
imperat. . . . .	<i>imperative.</i>	pron. . . . .	<i>pronoun.</i>
impers. . . . .	<i>impersonal.</i>	tr. . . . .	<i>transitive.</i>

The quantity of vowels that are long or short by *position*, of diphthongs, and of short final syllables, is not given.

The references in the Vocabulary are to the sections of this book.

<b>ā, āb</b> , prep. with abl. (a only before consonants; <b>ab</b> before vowels and consonants), <i>from, by</i> ; <b>ab sinistrā parte</b> , <i>on the left side.</i>	<b>abs-que</b> , prep. with abl., <i>without, but for, except.</i>
<b>ab-ō, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum</b> , <i>to put away, hide, conceal.</i>	<b>abs-tīneo, -tīnēre, -tīnui, -tentum (tērēo)</b> , <i>to hold (one's self) off, abstain, refrain, spare.</i>
<b>ab-ducō, -ducēre, -dūxī, -ductum</b> , <i>to lead from, withdraw.</i>	<b>ab-sum, -esse, fui, irr.</b> , <i>to be absent, to be wanting.</i>
<b>ab-eo, -ire, -ivi, or ii, -itum</b> (298. Obs. 3), <i>to go away, depart.</i>	<b>āc</b> , see <b>at-que</b> .
<b>ab-icio</b> (pronounced <b>ab-jicio</b> ), <b>-icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (ab; jācio)</b> , <i>to throw away, abandon.</i>	<b>Acca Lārentia, -ae, F.</b> , the wife of the shepherd Faustulus, who reared Romulus and Remus.
<b>abs-ēns, -entis</b> , part. ( <b>ab-sum</b> ), <i>absent.</i>	<b>ac-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum (ad; cēdo)</b> , <i>to go towards, approach.</i>
<b>ab-solvo, -solvēre, -solvi, -sōlūtum</b> , <i>to unbind, acquit.</i>	<b>ac-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī</b> , no p.p. ( <b>ad; cādo</b> ), <i>to fall upon, happen, (w. dat. pers.) befall.</i>

- ac-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum (ad; caedo), to cut into.
- ac-cipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptum (ad; cāpio), to take, accept.
- ac-curro, -currere, -cūcurri and -curri, no p.p., to run to.
- ac-cūso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad; causa), to accuse, blame.
- ācer, -cris, -cre, adj., sharp, keen, eager, active.
- āciēs, -ei, F., an edge; a line of battle, fierceness.
- ācriter, adv. (ācer), sharply, keenly, fiercely.
- ācus, -ūs, F. (ācuo), (a thing sharpened), a needle, pin.
- ād, prep. with acc., to, towards, near to, at, besides.
- ād-āmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to begin to love.
- ad-do, -dēre, -didī, -ditum, to add, join, annex to.
- ad-dūco, -ēre, -xī, -ctum, to lead to, bring to (of persons).
- adī, see aff.
- ād-hībeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum (ad; hābeo), to have in; to summon.
- ad-huc, adv. (ad; hic), to this place, thus far, besides, as yet.
- ād-īpiscor, -īpisci, -eptus sum, dep. (ad; āpiscor, 282), to obtain, win.
- ad-jūvo, -jūvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, to help, assist.
- ad-mīnistro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to manage, administer.
- admīrā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (admīror), an admiring, admiration, wonder, surprise.
- ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (282), to admire, wonder at.
- ad-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, to let go, allow; admissō equō, at full gallop.
- ad-mōneo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to warn, urge, admonish.
- ād-ōlē-sco, -ōlescere, -ōlēvī, -ultum, inch. (ād-ōleo), to grow up, grow, increase.
- ād-ōperio, -īre, -uī, -tum, to cover.
- ād-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus sum, dep., to rise up against; to attack, assault, begin.
- ād-ōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to worship, respect, entreat, beg.
- adp, see ads.
- ads, see ass.
- adspicio, see aspicio.
- ād-ūlescens, -entis, part. (ād-ūlesco), young; as noun, c., a young man, a young woman (from 15 to 30, and sometimes to 40 and later).
- ad-sum, ādesse, affui (or adfui), to be near, be present, assist.
- ad-ven-tus, -ūs, M. (advēnio), a coming to, arrival.
- ad-versārius, -a, -um, adj. (ad-versus), turned towards, fronting; as noun, M., an opponent, enemy.
- ad-versus, prep. w. acc., opposite to, against, towards.
- ad-versus, -a, -um, part. (ad-vertō), turned towards, opposite; as noun, opponent.
- ad-vertō, -ēre, -tī sum, to turn to or towards, to direct; animū advertēre, to observe, attend to; animū advertēre in aliquem, to punish one.
- aedēs, -is, F., a temple; pl., a house.
- aedific-ium, -iī, N. (aedifico), a building.
- aed-ī-fico, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (aedes; facio), to build.
- Aedui, -ōrum, M., a tribe in Gaul between the Liger (modern Loire) and the Ārar (Saône).
- Āedūus, -a, -um, an Ādiuan.
- aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, disabled.
- agrē, adv. (aeger), feeble; with difficulty, scarcely.

leo), to grow

I, -tum, to

s sum, dep.,  
; to attack,

tum, to wor-  
t, beg.

D.  
part. (ācū-  
ncum, C., a  
ung woman  
l sometimes

I (or adfui),  
t, assist.

dvēnio), a

adj. (adver-  
s, fronting;  
ment, enemy.  
cc., opposite

rt. (adver-  
s, opposite;

um, to turn  
irect; āni-  
to observe,  
advertēre  
sh one.

le; pl., a

edifico), a

vī, -ātum  
uild.

ibe in Gaul  
r (modern

(Saône).  
Éduan.

adj, sick,

eeble; with

acgrōtus, a, -um, adj. (aeger),  
sick, ill.

āēr, -ēris, M. (acc. aēra and  
aērem), the air, cloud, mist.

aes, aeris, N., copper, money,  
wages; aes āliēnum, another's  
money, i.e. a debt.

aes-tās, -ātis, F., summer.

aes-tīmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (aes),  
to estimate, value (304).

aetās, -ātis, F. (aevum), age  
(of old or young).

af-fēro, -ferre, -attūli, -allātum  
(ad; fēro), to bring.

af-ficio, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum (ad;  
fācio), to treat, affect, visit (with  
punishment, etc.).

af-finis, -e, adj. (ad; finis),  
bordering upon, adjacent to,  
kindred.

affin-itās, -ātis, F. (affinis), rela-  
tionship by marriage, relation-  
ship, nearness.

ā-fōre, fut. inf. of absum, to be  
away, absent.

Āfrica, -ae, F., Africa, especially  
the country near Carthage.

āger, -grī, M., a field, territory.

agger, -ēris, M., a heap, mound,  
embankment.

ag-grēdiōr, -grēdī, -gressus sum.  
dep. (ad; grādiōr), to go to,  
approach, attack.

ag-men, -inīs, N. (āgo), that  
which is led, i.e. army (on the  
march).

a-gnosco, -noscēre, -nōvī, -nī-  
tum (ad; gnosco = nosco),  
to recognize, own, acknowledge.

agnus, -ī, M., a lamb.

āgo, -ēre, ēgī, actum, to drive;  
to do; āgēre cum, to treat with;  
āgēre dē, talk over.

agr-ārius, -a, -um, adj. (āger), of  
fields or public lands.

agr-ī-cōla, -ae, M. (āger; cōlo), a  
cultivator of the land, a farmer.

āio, def. (305, 2), to speak, say.

ālacr-itās, -ātis, F. (ālācer), live-  
liness, eagerness, alacrity.

Alba, -ae, F., Alba (Longa), an  
ancient town of Latium, 20  
miles S.E. of Rome, built by  
Aescānius, son of Ēnēas.

Alb-ānus, -a, -um, adj. (Alba),  
of or belonging to Alba; Alban.  
albus, -a, -um, adj., white, fair.

Ālexander, -drī, M. (Defender of  
men), son of Philip and Olymp-  
pia, surnamed "the Great,"  
the founder of the Macedonian  
Empire (B.C. 356-323).

āli-ēnus, -a, -um, adj. (ālius),  
belonging to another person or  
thing; foreign, hostile; aes āli-  
num, debt.

āliquamdiū, adv. (āliquis; diū),  
awhile, for some time.

āliqu-andō, adv. (āliquis), (of  
time past, future, or present),  
at some time, at iast.

āli-quantus, -a, -um, adj. (ālius;  
quantus), some, considerable.

āli-quis (āliqui), -qua, -quid or  
-quod (alius; quis), pron.  
indef. (247), some one, some,  
any; āliquid, something.

āli-quot, indef. num. adj., indecl.  
(ālius; quot), some, a few.

ālius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other  
(209); ālius . . . ālius, one . . .  
another.

Allōbrōgēs, -um, M., a Gallic  
people, bounded on the north  
and west by the Rhōdānus  
(Rhône), south by the Isāra  
(Isère), and extending east-  
ward to the Alps.

ālo, -ēre, -uī, altum, to nourish,  
support, feed.

Alpēs, -ium, F., the Alps; the  
high mountain range between  
Italia, Gallia, and Helvetia.

alter, -tēra, -tērnum, adj. (209),  
one of two, other, second; alter  
. . . alter, one . . . the other.

- altitūdo, -dīnis, F., *height, depth*.  
 altus, -a, -um, part. (ālo), *high, deep*.  
 alveus, -i, M. (alvus), *a channel, trough, skiff*.  
 Ambarri, -ōrum, M. pl., *a people of Gaul*.  
 amb-iō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum (eo), *to go about, canvass*.  
 ambi-tiō, -ōnis, F. (ambio), *a canvassing, ambition*.  
 ambo, -ae, -o, umm. adj., *both*.  
 ambūlo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to walk*.  
 āmīc-itia, -ae, (āmicus), *friendship*.  
 ām-īcus, -a, -um, adj. (āmo), *loving, friendly, kind*.  
 ām-īcus, -ī, M., *a friend*.  
 ā-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *to let go, lose, destroy*.  
 amnis, -is, M., *a river (large, deep stream)*.  
 āmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to love*.  
 āmor, -ōris, M. (āmo), *love*.  
 am-plexor, -plectī, -plexus sum, dep., *to wind around, embrace*.  
 amplius, comp. adv. (amplē), *more, longer, further*.  
 amplus, -a, -um, adj., *great, ample, spacious, grand, large*.  
 Amūllus, -iī, M., *a king of Alba, brother of Numitor, and great-uncle of Romulus*.  
 ān, disjunctive inter. particle (345), *whether, or*.  
 an-ceps, -cipītis, adj. (an; cāput), *two-headed, doubtful, critical*.  
 angust-iae, -ārum, F. (angustus), *narrowness, a narrow pass, defile*.  
 angus-tus, -a, -um, adj. (ango), *narrow, scanty*.  
 ān-īma, -ae, F., *air, breath, life*.  
 ānim-adverto, -tēre, -tī, -sum (ānimus; adverto), *to turn the mind to, to attend to; ānimad-vertēre in aliquem, to punish one*.  
 ānim-al, -ālis, N. (ānīma), *an animal (including man), living creature*.  
 ān-īmus, -ī, M., *the soul, mind, disposition, temper, thought*.  
 an-nōn, conj., *or not (345)*.  
 annū-lus, -ī, M., *ring*.  
 annus, -ī, M., *a year*.  
 anser, -ēris, M., *goose*.  
 anteā, adv., *before*.  
 ante-eo, -īre, -ivī or -iī, no p.p., N., *to go before, precede, excel*.  
 antē-pōno, -ēre, -pōsuī, -pōsi-tum, *to place before, prefer*.  
 ante . . . quam, conj., *before that*.  
 ant-īquus, -a, -um, adj. (ante), *former, ancient, old*.  
 Antōnius, -iī, M., *Marcus Antonius, the distinguished triumvir, conquered by Octavianus, at Actium, B.C. 31*.  
 anxius, -a, -um, adj. (ango), *tormented, anxious, troubled*.  
 āpērio, -īre, -uī, -tum, *to open, uncloze, show, reveal*.  
 āper-tus, -a, -um, part. (āpērio), *open*.  
 Āpollōnia, -ae, F., *a town of Macedonia*.  
 Apollōnius, -iī, M., *Apollonius, a celebrated rhetorician of Rhodes*.  
 ap-pāreo, -ēre, -uī, -itum (ad; pāreo), *to appear, be visible*.  
 ap-pello, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad; pello), *to address, call, name*.  
 ap-pēto, -pētēre, -pētīvi or pētīi, -pētītum, *to seek for*.  
 ap-prēhendo, -ēre, -dī, -sum (ad; prēhendo), *to seize, take hold of*.  
 ap-prōpinquo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad; prōpinquo), *to approach*.  
 Āprīlis, -is, M. (āpērio), *April; the month in which the earth opens itself to fertility; as adj., of April*.

ima), an  
an), living

mind, dis-  
t. 45).

no p.p.,  
e, excel.  
i, -pōsi-  
refer.

before that.  
ante),

Antoni-  
triumvir,  
ianus, at

ngo), tor-  
ed.  
to open,

(āpērio),

town of

pollonius,  
ician of

um (ad;  
visible.

um (ad;  
name.

or pētīi,

i. -sum  
seize, take

i, -atum  
to ap-

), April;  
the earth  
ility; as

āpud, prep. with acc., with, near  
to, in the presence of; āpud mē,  
at my house.

āqua, -ae, F., water.

āquīla, -ae, F., the eagle; the  
standard of the Roman legion.

āquīlī-fer, -ēri, M. (āquīla; fēro),  
an eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.

Āquītān-us, -a, -um, adj., Aquit-  
anian.

Ārar, -āris, M., a tributary of the  
Rhodānus in Gaul (now the  
Saône).

ara-trum, -ī, N., a plough.

arbītrium, -iī, N. (arbīter), a de-  
cision, judgment; power, will.

arbītror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.  
(arbīter), to hear, judge, think.

arc-eo, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., to inclose,  
keep off, prevent.

ar-cesso, -ēre, -sīvī, -sītum (ad;  
cēdo) (TO CAUSE to come), to  
summon, call, invite.

arcus, -ūs, M., a bow, rainbow.

arguo, -ēre, -uī, -ūtum, to make  
clear, accuse.

ārīdus, -a, -um, adj. (āreo), dry;  
N., as noun, dry land.

Ariovistus, -ī, M., a king of the  
Germans.

arma, -ōrum, N., arms, defensive  
weapons.

armo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (arma),  
to furnish with weapons, to arm,  
equip.

āro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to plough.

ar-rīpio, -ēre, -rīpuī, -reptum  
(ad; rāpio), to snatch, seize.

arrōgāns, -ntis, part. (arrōgo),  
assuming, haughty, proud.

arrōgan-ter, adv. (arrōgāns), as-  
sumingly, haughtily, proudly.

arrogantia (arrōgo), -ae, F.,  
arrogance, haughtiness.

ars, -artis, F., skill, ability, clever-  
ness, invention.

Arvernī, -ōrum, M., a people of  
Gaul, in the present Auvergne.

ar-vum, -ī, N. (āro), cultivated  
land, a field.

arx, arcis, F. (for arc-s from  
arceo), a castle, citadel, tower.

a-scendo, -scendēre, -scendī,  
-scensum (ad; scando), to  
ascend, mount up, climb.

Asia, -ae, F., Asia, generally Asia  
Minor.

āsīnus, -ī, M., an ass.

asper, -ēra, -ērūm, adj., rough,  
harsh, violent.

a-spīcio, -ēre, -exī, -ectum (ad;  
spēcīo), to look at, to behold, see.

as-sīdeo, -ēre, -ēdī, -essum (ad;  
sēdeo), to sit near; to besiege.

as-surgo, -gēre, -rēxī, -iectum  
(ad; surgo), to rise up, stand  
up.

at, conj., but, yet.

Athēnae, -ārum, F., Athens, the  
chief city of Attica.

at-que or ac, conj. [in the best  
writers ac is used only before  
a word beginning with a con-  
sonant], and also, and besides,  
and; simul atque, as soon as;  
minus ac, less than.

ātrōx, -ōcis, adj., savage, fierce,  
cruel, atrocious.

Attīcus, a Roman name.

at-tingo, -ēre, -tīgī, -tactum (ad;  
tango), to touch upon; border  
upon.

auctōrītās, -ātis, F. (auctor),  
authority, power, influence.

audācīa, -ae, F. (audāx), cour-  
age, daring.

audācīter, and audācīter, adv.  
(audāx), boldly, courageously,  
daringly.

audāx, -ācis, adj. (audeo), dar-  
ing, bold, courageous, violent.

aud-eo, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-  
dep. (243), to dare, venture.

audi-ēns, -entis, part. (audio),  
obedient to; as noun, M. or F.,  
a hearer.

- aud-io, -īre, -ivī or -ī, -itum, to hear, listen.**
- au-fēro, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, irr. (ab; fēro), to carry away, remove (295. Obs. 2).**
- au-fūgio, -ēre, -fūgī, -fūgitum (ab; fūgio), to flee away.**
- augeo, -ēre, -auxī, -auctum, to increase, enlarge.**
- augūr-ium, -iī, N., predictions founded (in part) on the observation of birds; divination, prophesy, soothsaying.**
- aur-eus, -a, -um, adj. (aurum), golden.**
- auspic-ium, -iī, N. (auspex), an amen (taken from the watching of birds), an auspice; auspic-ia, -iā, hābēre, to hold or take the auspices.**
- aut, conj. (205. 2), or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.**
- autem, conj. (205. 3), but, however, besides.**
- auxilium, -iī, N. (augeo), help, aid, assistance; auxilia, -ōrum, auxiliary troops.**
- āv-erto, -ēre, -tī, -sum, turn away from, avert, withdraw.**
- āvīd-itās, -ātis, F., eagerness.**
- āv-īdus, -a, -um, adj. (āveo), eager, covetous.**
- āvis, -is, F., a bird.**
- āvus, -ī, M., a grandfather.**
- B.**
- balneum, -ī, N. (pl. mostly balneae, -ārum, F.), a bath.**
- Balticus, -a, -um, Baltic.**
- barbārus, -a, -um, adj. foreign, strange, barbarian; barbāri, -ōrum, M., foreigners, barbarians; a name applied first by the Greeks and afterwards by the Romans to people of other nations.**
- be-ātus, -a, -um, adj. (beo), happy, prosperous, fortunate.**
- Belgae, -ārum, M., the Belgians, a warlike people dwelling in the north of Gaul.**
- b-ellum, -ī, N. (old form duellum) (duo), (a contest between two parties), war.**
- bēne, adv., well, finely, prosperously; bēne pūgnāre, to fight successfully.**
- bēnē-factor, -ōris, M. (bēne; fācio), a benefactor.**
- bēnē-ficium, -iī, N. (bēne; fācio), well-doing, favor, benefit.**
- Bībo, bībēre, bībī, no p. p., to drink.**
- Bibracte, -is, N., Bibracte, the chief town of the Edui.**
- Bibrax, -actis, N., Bibrax, a town of Gaul, in the territory of the Remi.**
- Bībūlus, -ī, M., Marcus Calpurnius, consul B.C. 59, colleague of Cæsar.**
- bī-duum, -ūī, N. (bis; diēs), a space of two days.**
- bī-nī, -ae, -a, numeral distributive adj. (bis), two each, two by two.**
- bī-partitō, adv. (bis; pars), in two parts, two divisions.**
- bis, num. adv., twice.**
- Boii, -ōrum, M., the Boii, a people of Gaul.**
- bōn-itās, -ātis, F. (bōnus), goodness, virtue, worth.**
- bōnus, -a, -um, adj., good (149. 4); as noun, bōnum, -ī, N., good; N. pl. as nom. bōnī (cf. 3. 4), good men; bōna, -ōrum, goods, property.**
- bōs, bōvis, com. gen. (121), an ox, a cow.**
- brāchium, -iī, N. (bracc-), an arm.**
- brēvis, -e, adj., short, small, brief.**
- Britannia, -ae, F., Britain.**
- Britannī, -ōrum, M., the inhabitants of Britain, Britons.**
- Britannicus, -a, -um, British.**

**Brundisium, -iī, n.**, *Brundisium*, an ancient town of Calabria, in S. E. Italy, nearest seaport to Greece.

**Brūtus, -ī, m.**, *Lucius Junius*, a founder of the Roman Republic, B.C. 509.

**Brūtus, -ī, m.**, *Marcus*, a friend of Cicero, a conspirator against Caesar; *Decimus*, a fellow-conspirator with the preceding.

## C.

**C.**, an abbreviation denoting **Gaius (Caius)**; as a numeral, **c = centum, hundred**.

**cādo, cādēre, cēcidī, cāsūm, to fall, happen, perish.**

**caed-ēs, -is, f. (caedo), slaughter, bloodshed, havoc.**

**caedo, -ēre, cēcidī, caesum (cādo), (to cause to fall), to cut down, kill, strike.**

**caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven.**

**Caesar, -āris, m., Gaius Julius**, murdered by Brutus and Cassius, B.C. 44.

**cālām-ītās, -ātis, f., disaster, calamity.**

**calcar, -āris, n., spur.**

**calv-ītium, -iī, n. (calvus), baldness.**

**calvus, -a, -um, adj., bald.**

**campus, -ī, m., a plain, field, level surface; Campus Martius**, a grassy plain in Rome, along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars, where elections were held, exercise and recreation taken.

**cānis, -is, com. gen., a dog; gen. pl. cānum (109. n. 1).**

**cāno, cānēre, cēcīnī, no p.p., to sing, foretell, predict.**

**canto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cāno), intens., sing.**

**cāpel-la, -ae, f. dim. (cāper), a she-goat.**

**cāpio, cāpēre, cēpī, captum, to take, seize (147).**

**cap-tīvus, -a, -um, adj. (cāpio), taken prisoner, captive; as noun, captīvus, -ī, m., a prisoner.**

**cāput, -ītis, n., the head.**

**carcer, -ēris, m., a dungeon, prison.**

**cāreo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, to be without, free from.**

**carmen, -īnis, n., a poem, song; an oracle.**

**carrus, -ī, m., a two-wheeled cart; cart, wagon.**

**Carthāgo (Kar), -īnis, f., Carthage**, a city of N. Africa.

**cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.**

**cāsa, -ae, f., a hut, cottage, cabin.**

**Casca, -ae, m., one of the conspirators against Caesar.**

**Cassi-ānus, belonging to Cassius.**

**Cassius, -iī, m., Cassius**, a proper name; the chief conspirator against Caesar.

**castel-lum, -ī, n. dim. (castrum), a castle, fort.**

**Castīcus, -ī, m., Casticus**, a Sequanian.

**castra, -ōrum, n. pl., a camp.**

**castrum, -ī, n., a castle, fortress.**

**cā-sus, -ūs, m. (cādo), a falling down; fall, chance, calamity.**

**cātēna, -ae, f., a chain, a fetter.**

**Cātilīna, -ae, m., Lucius Sergius Catilīna**; a Roman who attempted an insurrection against his country.

**Cātō, -ōnis, m., Marcus Porcius Cato (B.C. 93-45)**, the younger, who committed suicide after the battle of Thapsus.

**cātūlus, -ī, m. dim., a young dog; whelp, puppy.**

**causa (caussa), -ae, f., a cause, reason; causa, for the sake of.**

**cēdo, cēdēre, cessī, cessum, to go, yield, retreat.**



- céléber**, -bris, -bre, adj., *fr-*  
*quented, celebrated.*
- céler**, -éris, -ére, adj., *swift, fleet.*
- célér-itās**, -ātis, F. (**céler**), *swift-*  
*ness, quickness, speed.*
- célér-iter**, adv. (**céler**), *swiftly,*  
*quickly, speedily.*
- célo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (185), *to*  
*hide, conceal.*
- Celtae**, -ārum, M., *the Celts; the*  
*inhabitants of Central Gaul.*
- censeo**, -ére, -uī, -um, *to reckon,*  
*estimate; (of proceedings in*  
*Senate), vote, to give one's opin-*  
*ion.*
- centum**, adj., indecl., *a hundred.*
- centūria**, -ae, F. (**centum**), *a*  
*division of one hundred; a cen-*  
*tury, company.*
- centūriō**, -ōnis, M. (**centum**), *the*  
*commander of a century; a cen-*  
*turion.*
- certā-men**, -inis, N. (**certo**), *a*  
*contest, battle.*
- certiōrem** (acc.) **facēre**, *to inform.*
- certō**, adv. (**certus**), *certainly.*
- certo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight,*  
*contend.*
- certus**, -a, -um, adj. (**cerno**), *deter-*  
*mined, fixed, certain; resolved.*
- cesso**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intens.*  
*(cēdo), to delay, cease, linger.*
- (cētērus)**, -a, -um, adj. (nomina-
- tive singular M. not found),  
*the other, the rest.*
- ceu**, conj., *as, as if.*
- cībāria**, -ōrum, N. (**cibus**), *food,*  
*provisions, fodder.*
- Cicērō**, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Tul-*  
*lius Cicero, the greatest of Ro-*  
*man orators and writers (B.C.*  
*106-43).*
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, M., *a people of*  
*Northern Germany.*
- cingo**, **cingēre**, **cinxi**, **cinctum**,  
*to gird, surround, besiege.*
- circā**, adv. and prep. with the  
acc., *around, about.*
- circiter**, adv. and prep. with the  
acc., *round about, near.*
- circū-tus**, -ūs, M. (**circumeo**),  
*a going around in a circle; a*  
*circuit, compass.*
- circum**, adv. and prep. with acc.,  
*around, about, near.*
- circum-do**, -dāre, -dēdi, -dātum,  
*to put around, surround with,*  
*encompass; circumdāre mū-*  
*rum urbī or urbem mūrō*, *to*  
*put a wall round the city, or to*  
*surround the city with a wall.*
- circum-fundo**, -fundēre, -fūdī,  
-fūsūm, *pour around, (pass.)*  
*rush in on all sides.*
- circum-sto**, -stāre, -stētī, no p.p.,  
*to stand around; to surround,*  
*beset, besiege.*
- circum-venio**, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-
- tum, *to come around, encompass,*  
*invest.*
- cis**, prep. with acc., *on this side.*
- citērior**, -us, adj. (150. 1), *on*  
*this side, hither; Gallia citēri-*  
*or, hither Gaul, i.e., this side of*  
*the Alps.*
- citō**, adv., *quickly, speedily, soon*  
(comp. **citius**, sup. **citissī-**  
**mē**).
- citrā**, prep. with abl. and adv.,  
*on this side; before, within.*
- cīv-ilis**, -e, adj. (**civis**), *belonging*  
*to citizens, civil, courteous.*
- civis**, -is, com. gen., *a citizen.*
- civ-itās**, -ātis, F. (**civis**) *citizen-*  
*ship; a city, state; freedom of*  
*the city.*
- clādēs**, -is, F., *disaster, slaughter.*
- clam**, adv., *secretly; prep. with*  
abl., *without the knowledge of.*
- clāmo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to cry*  
*out, call, proclaim.*
- clārus**, -a, -um, adj., *clear, bright,*  
*illustrious.*
- classis**, -is, F., *a fleet.*
- claudo**, -ére, -sī, -sum, *to shut,*  
*close, surround, finish.*

prep. with the  
near.

(circumeo),  
in a circle; a

prep. with acc.,  
ar.

-dēdī, -dātum,  
surround with,  
circumdāre mū-  
bem mūrō, to

the city, or to  
with a wall.

undēre, -fūdī,  
round, (pass.)

es.

-stētī, no p.p.,  
; to surround,

e, -vēnī, -ven-  
und, encompass,

, on this side.

(150. 1), on  
Gallia citēri-

e., this side of

speedily, soon  
sup. citissī-

abl. and adv.,  
re, within.

(vis), belonging  
courteous.

., a citizen.  
(civis) citizen-  
e; freedom of

ster, slaughter.  
y; prep. with  
knowledge of

-ātum, to cry  
n.

j., clear, bright,

lect.  
-sum, to shut,  
finish.

claudus, -a, -um, adj., lame.

clēmen-ter, adv. (clēmēns),  
mildly, gently, calmly.

cliēns, -entis, com. gen. (clueo),  
a client, retainer (one attached  
to, and protected by a patron).

coelum, see caelum.

cō-ēmo, -ēmēre, -ēmī, -emptum  
(con; ēmo), to purchase to-  
gether, to buy up.

coepī, coepisse, def. (305. 1), to  
begin, undertake.

co-erceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum (con;  
arceo), to enclose wholly; re-  
strain.

cō-āgīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (con;  
āgīto), to think, meditate.

cō-gnōmen, -inīs, n. (con; gnō-  
men = nōmen), a surname; as  
Marcus (prae-nōmen) Tullius  
(nōmen) Cicērō (cō-gnōmen).

cō-gnosco, -gnoscerē, -gnōvī,  
-gnītum, (con; gnosco = nos-  
co), to find out; in perfect  
tenses, know.

cō-go, cōgēre, cōgēī, coactum  
(con; āgo), to drive together,  
collect, force, compel.

cōhors, -hortis, f., a cohort (a  
company of 600 soldiers).

cō-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.  
(con; hortor), to exhort, ad-  
monish.

col-lēga, see con-lēga.

col-līgo, see con-līgo.

collis, -is, m., high ground, a hill.

col-lōco, see con-lōco.

collōquium, see con-lōquium.

col-lōquor, see con-lōquor.

cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultum, to  
till, cultivate, cherish; to dwell.

cōmes, -ītis, com. gen. (con; eo),  
a companion, associate.

cōmītor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.  
(cōmes), to accompany, follow,  
attend.

commēā-tus, -ūs, m. (commeo),  
provisions, supplies.

com-mēmōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(con; mēmōro), to call to  
mind, mention.

com-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mis-  
sum (con; mitto), to connect,  
join, commit.

commōdē, adv. (commōdus),  
duly, properly, well.

com-mōdus, -a, -um, adj. (con;  
mōdus), fit, serviceable.

commōnē-fācio, -fācēre, -fēcī,  
-factum, to remind.

com-mōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī,  
-mōtūm (con; mōveo), to  
move violently, shake; bellum  
commovēre, to stir up war.

com-mūnis, -e, adj. (con; mū-  
nus), common, general.

com-mūto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(con; mūto), to exchange, alter.

com-pāro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(con; pāro), to put together,  
prepare, collect, compare.

com-pello, -pellēre, -pūī, -pul-  
sum, to drive together, force.

com-pleo, -plērē, -plēvī, -plētum  
(con; pleo), to fill full.

complōrā-tiō, -ōnis, f. (complō-  
ro), a loud weeping, lamentation.

com-plūrēs, -a or -ia, adj., sev-  
eral together, very many.

com-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsuī, -pō-  
sītum (con; pōno), to put  
together or in order, to settle.

com-porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(con; porto), to bring together,  
collect.

com-prēhendo, -ēre, -dī, -sum  
(con; prehendo), to catch hold  
of, seize; to perceive.

con-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -ces-  
sum, to grant, yield.

con-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cīsum  
(con; caedo), to cut to pieces,  
destroy, kill.

concīlio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (con-  
cīlium), to call together, make  
friendly, reconcile.

- con-cilium, -iī, N.** (con; cālo, *to call*), a meeting, assembly, council.
- con-clāmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *to cry out, to shout.*
- con-cūpi-sco, -cūpscēre, -cūpī-vī or -cūpī, -cūpītum,** *incl. (con; cūpio), to be very desirous of, strive after.*
- con-curro, -cūrēre, -currī or -cūcurrī, -cursum,** *to run together, assemble, fight.*
- con-cur-sus, -ūs, M.** (concurro), a concourse, assembly, attack.
- con-demno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; damno), *to condemn.*
- con-dic-iō, -ōnis, F.,** terms, condition.
- conditiō,** see **condiciō.**
- con-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum,** *to place together; to foment, hide.*
- con-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -ductum,** *to lead together, collect; to hire.*
- cōnfēro, cōnferre, contūli, collātum,** *to bring together, collect.*
- cōnfer-tus, -a, -um,** *part. (cōnfercio, to cram together), close, crowded, crammed.*
- cōnfestim,** *adv. (cōnfēro), immediately, speedily.*
- cōn-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum** (con; fācio), *to accomplish, finish.*
- cōn-fido, -fidēre, -fīsus sum** (248. 2, Obs. 3), *to trust confidently, confide.*
- cōn-firmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *to make firm, establish, strengthen.*
- cōn-fiteor, -fītērī, -fessus sum,** *dep. (con; fāteor), to confess.*
- cōn-fōdio, -fōdēre, -fōdī, -fossum,** *to dig; to pierce through, stab.*
- cōn-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgī,** *no p.p., to flee for refuge.*
- cōn-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum,** *dep. (con; grādior), to meet, encounter, contend, fight.*
- con-gruo, -gruēre, -gruī,** *no p.p., to agree with, meet.*
- cōn-icio** (pronounced **con-jī-cio**), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (con; jācio), *to throw together, throw, hurl; in fūgam conicēre, to put to flight.*
- con-jungo, -gēre, -xī, -ctum,** *to join together, connect, unite.*
- conjūrā-tiō, -ōnis, F.,** a swearing together, conspiracy.
- conjūrā-tus, -ī, M.** (conjūro), a conspirator.
- con-jūro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *to swear together, conspire.*
- conjux (conjunx), -ūgis, com. gen. (conjungo),** a wife, husband, a betrothed.
- con-lēga, -ae, M.** (con; lēgo), associate, colleague.
- con-ligo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; ligo), *to bind together; restrain.*
- con-lōco (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *to place together; to settle in a place; to give a woman in marriage.*
- con-lōquim, -iī, N.,** a talking together, conversation, conference.
- con-lōquor, -ī, -cūtus, dep.,** converse, have a conference together.
- cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** *dep. to attempt, endeavor, try.*
- cōn-sanguin-eus, -a, -um,** *adj. (con; sanguis), related by blood, related.*
- cōn-scendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum** (con; scando), *to climb; (nāvēs), embark.*
- cōn-scribo, -bēre, -psī, -ptum,** *to enlist, enroll, inscribe, write.*
- cōn-sen-sus, -ūs, M.** (consentiō), an agreement.
- cōn-sēquor, -quī, -cūtus sum,** *dep., to follow after, overtake.*
- cōn-sēro, -sērēre, -sēruī, -sertum,** *to join, unite, bring together; pūgnam or proelium cōnsērēre, to join battle; mā-*

gruī, no p.p.,  
 need con-jū-  
 sci, -jectum  
 throw together,  
 fugam confi-  
 ht.  
 -xī, -ctum, to  
 ect, unite.  
 F., a swear-  
 iracy.  
 (conjūro), a  
 vi, -ātum, to  
 aspire,  
 -ūgis, com.  
 , a wife, hus-  
 (con; lēgo),  
 e.  
 -ātum (con;  
 ther; restrain.  
 -āre, -āvī,  
 together; to  
 to give a ro-  
 , a talking to-  
 on, conference.  
 -tus, (dep., con-  
 ference together.  
 -sum, (dep., to  
 try.  
 -a, -um, adj.  
 ), related by  
 re, -dī, -sum  
 to climb; (nā-  
 -psī, -ptum, to  
 ribe, write.  
 (consentiō),  
 -cūtus sum.  
 fter, overtake.  
 , -seruī, -ser-  
 unite, bring to-  
 a or proelium  
 in battle; mā-

num cōnsērere, to engage in a  
 hand-to-hand conflict.  
 cōnsidēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 examine, consider, observe care-  
 fully.  
 Cōnsidiūs -iī, M., one of Caesar's  
 officers.  
 cōn-sīdo, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum,  
 to sit down together, encamp.  
 cōnsilium, -iī, N., deliberation,  
 advice, talent; cōnsiliō, on  
 purpose, intentionally.  
 cōn-sisto, -sistēre, -stitī, -sti-  
 tum, to stand still, make a stand.  
 cōnspec-tus, -ūs, M. (cōnspi-  
 cio), a sight.  
 cōn-spīcor, -ārī, -ātus, (dep., to see.  
 cōnspīrā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (cōnspī-  
 ro), an agreement, conspiracy.  
 cōnstan-tia, -ae, F. (cōnstant),  
 firmness, constancy.  
 cōn-stītuō, -uēre, -uī, -ūtum  
 (con; stātuo), to place, make,  
 determine.  
 cōn-sto, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, to  
 stand together; consist of (308).  
 cōnsuē-sco, -escēre, -ēvī, -ētum,  
 inch. (consueo), to be accus-  
 tomed, be wont.  
 cōnsuē-tūdo, -inis, F. (cōnsuē-  
 tus), custom, habit, usage, inter-  
 course.  
 cōnsul, -ulis, M., a consul; one  
 of the two chief magistrates  
 of Rome, chosen yearly.  
 cōnsul-ātus, -ūs, M. (cōnsul),  
 the office of consul, consulship.  
 cōnsūlo, -ēre, -uī, -tum, to delib-  
 erate, consider, advise, consult  
 for; ālicui cōnsulēre, to con-  
 sult for one's interest; āliq̄nem  
 cōnsulēre, to consult, take ad-  
 vice of, one.  
 cōnsul-tum, -ī, N. (cōnsūlo), a  
 decree, decision, resolve.

con-tendo, -dēre, -dī, -tum, to  
 strive for, contend, fight; hasten.  
 conten-tiō, -ōnis, F. (contendo),  
 a straining; dispute.  
 con-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,  
 to call to witness, invoke.  
 continen-ter, adv. (contīnens),  
 moderately; continuously, with-  
 out interruption.  
 con-tīneo, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -ten-  
 tum (con; tēneo), to hold to-  
 gether, to hold in, keep back, re-  
 strain, confine.  
 con-tingo, -tingēre, -tīgī, -tac-  
 tum (con; tango), to touch,  
 border upon; impers., contin-  
 git mīhī, it is my lot (313).  
 contīn-uus, -a, -um, adj. (con-  
 tīneo), unbroken, continuous.  
 contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.,  
 over against, opposite to.  
 con-trāho, -hēre, -xī, -ctum, to  
 draw together, assemble, contract.  
 contrā-rius, -a, -um, adj. (con-  
 tra), opposite, contrary, opposed,  
 hostile.  
 contrōvers-ia, -ae, F. (contro-  
 versus), controversy, dispute.  
 contūmē-lia, -ae, F. (contūmeo),  
 abuse, insult; in pl., abusive  
 epithets.  
 con-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ven-  
 tum, to come together, assemble;  
 convēnīre āliquem, to accost  
 one; convēnit, impers., it is  
 agreed upon (313).  
 conven-tus, -ūs, M. (convēnio),  
 a coming together; an assembly.  
 con-vertō, -tēre, -tī, -sum, to turn  
 round, change, turn; conver-  
 tēre in fugam, to put to flight.  
 con-vōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 call together, assemble, summon.  
 co-ōrior, -ōrīrī, -ortus (con; ōri-  
 or), dep., 3 and 4 conj., arise,  
 break out (war).  
 cōphīnus, -ī, M., a basket.  
 cōpia, -ae, F. (con; ops), abun-

- dance; pl., supplies, troops, wealth.
- cōpi-ōsus**, -a, -um, adj. (cōpia), well supplied, abounding, plentiful, copious.
- cōquo-ēre**, cōq̄i, coctum, to cook.
- cōram**, adv. and prep. with abl., openly; in the presence of, before.
- Cōrīnthus**, -ī, F., Corinth, a city of Greece.
- Cornēlia**, -ae, F., the first wife of Caesar.
- cornū**, -ūs, N., a horn; the wing of an army.
- corpus**, -ōris, N., a body, corpse.
- cōtīdī-ānus** or **cōtīdī-ānus** -a, -um, adj., daily.
- cōtīdīē** or **cōtīdīē** (quōt-), adv., daily.
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, frequent.
- crēdo**, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum (with dat. pers.), to trust; (with acc. and inf.), believe.
- crēmo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to burn.
- creo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bring forth, beget, create, elect.
- crē-scō**, crescēre, crēvī, crētum (creo), to grow, grow up, increase.
- crīnis**, -is, M., the hair.
- crūciā-tus**, -ūs, M. (crūcio), torture, torment.
- crux**, -ūcis, F., a cross, torture.
- cūbo**, -āre, -uī, -ītum, to lie down, recline.
- culpa**, -ae, F., crime, fault, failure.
- culpo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (culpa), to censure, blame.
- cum**, prep. with abl., with, together with, among.
- cum** (quum), conj., when, since, although, though; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.
- cunctor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to linger, hesitate, delay.
- cūpī-dē**, adv. (cūpīdus), eagerly, zealously, ardently.
- cūpīd-itās**, -ātis, F. (cūpīdus), a longing, desire, avarice.
- cūp-īdus**, -a, -um, adj. (cūpio), eager, desirous, covetous, fond.
- cūpio**, -ēre, -īvī (or -iī), -ītum, to long for a thing, covet; to favor (with dat.).
- cūr**, adv., why? for what reason?
- cūria**, -ae, F., a curia, one of the thirty parts into which Romulus divided the Roman people; the senate-house.
- cūra**, -ae, F. (quaero), trouble, care, attention, pains.
- Cūriātius**, -iī, M., an Alban family name.
- cūro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cūra), to care for; manage, govern; cure.
- curro**, currēre, cūcurī, cursum, to run, hasten.
- currus**, -ūs, M., a chariot.
- cur-sus**, -ūs, M. (curro), a running, race, journey, voyage.
- custōs**, -ōdis, M., guard, watchman.

## D.

- damno**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (damnum = fine, damage), to condemn, pass sentence on; **damnāre cāpitās**, to condemn to death.
- damnum**, -ī, N., loss.
- dē**, prep. with abl. (the subject of thought), of; (of place), down from, from; (of time), during, at, concerning.
- dea**, -ae, F. (dat. and abl. pl. **dē-ābus**), a goddess.
- dē-beo**, -bēre, -buī, -bītum (dē; hābeo), to owe, be bound, be due; with an infinitive after it, translate it by ought, must, etc.; impers., **dēbet**, it behooves, ought (313).
- dēcem**, num. adj. indecl., ten.
- Dēcem-ber**, -bris, M. (dēcem), the tenth month of the Roman

(cūpidus),  
 price.  
 j. (cūpio),  
 ous, fond.  
 -iī), -itum,  
 j, covet; to  
 hat reason?  
 ich Romm-  
 man people;  
 o), trouble,  
 Alban fam-  
 m (cūra),  
 ge, govern;  
 ri, cursum,  
 riot.  
 ro), a run-  
 voyage.  
 ard, watch-  
 tum (dam-  
 ne), to con-  
 n; damnā-  
 mn to death.  
 the subject  
 (of place),  
 (of time),  
 ng.  
 abl. pl. de-  
 bitum (de;  
 e bound, be  
 nitive after  
 ought, must,  
 z, it behooves,  
 leel, ten.  
 r. (decem),  
 the Roman

- year, reckoned from March;  
*December.*  
 dēcember, -bris, adj., of Decem-  
 ber.  
 dē-certo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 fight earnestly, to contend for.  
 dēcet, dēcēre, dēcuit, no p.p.,  
 impers., it is becoming (313).  
 dēc-īmus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,  
 the tenth.  
 dēc-rē-tum, -ī, N. (dēcerno), a  
 decree, decision.  
 dēc-us, -ōris N. (cf. dēcet), that  
 which is becoming, ornament.  
 dēdēcus, -ōris, N., dishonor, dis-  
 grace.  
 dēd-ītīō, -ōnis, F. (dē-dātiō), a  
 giving one's self up, a surrender.  
 dē-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-  
 tum, to lead away, withdraw;  
 mislead, seduce.  
 dē-fendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to ward  
 off, avert; to defend.  
 dē-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum, irr.,  
 to bear or bring from, so report;  
 land (of ships); accuse.  
 dē-fētiscor, -fētiscī, -fessus sum,  
 dep., to become tired out; to grow  
 faint.  
 deīn, see deinde.  
 deīn-cēps, adv. (deīn; cāpio),  
 one after the other, successively;  
 thereafter.  
 deīnde, adv., then, afterward, sec-  
 ondly.  
 dē-īcio (pronounced de-jicio),  
 -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (dē; jā-  
 cio), to throw down, dislodge,  
 deprive.  
 dēlec-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, in-  
 tens. (dēlicio), to delight, please,  
 amuse.  
 dēleo, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum, to wipe  
 out, to abolish, destroy.  
 dē-līgo, -līgēre, -lēgī, -lectum  
 (de; lēgo), to choose out, select  
 dē-līgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bind  
 together, bind up.  
 dē-mīnuo, -mīnuēre, -mīnuī,  
 -mīnūtum, to lessen, diminish.  
 dē-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mīs-  
 sum, to let or bring down, cast  
 down, dismiss.  
 dēmum, adv. (nethermost), at  
 last, at length, only; tum dē-  
 mum, then at length.  
 dēn-ārius, -a, -um, adj. (dēnī),  
 consisting of or containing ten.  
 dēn-ārius, -iī, M., a Roman silver  
 coin (containing originally ten  
 asses), equal to about sixteen  
 cents.  
 dē-nēgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to de-  
 ny, reject, refuse.  
 dēnī, -ae, -a, num. distributive  
 adj. (dēcni), ten each, ten at a  
 time, by tens, ten.  
 dēnique, adv., at last, finally.  
 dēns, dentis, M., a tooth.  
 dē-pello, -pellēre, -pūlī, -pul-  
 sum, to drive from, repel.  
 dē-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsuī, -pōsi-  
 tum, to lay aside; give up.  
 dēprēcā-tor, -ōris, M. (dēprēc-  
 cor), an interceder, intercessor.  
 dē-prēcōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,  
 to beseech, pray against, depre-  
 cate, beg.  
 dē-scendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum (dē;  
 scando), to come down, de-  
 scend.  
 dē-sēro, -ēre, -uī, -tum, to desert,  
 abandon.  
 dē-sīgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 mark out, appoint, choose.  
 dē-silio, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum  
 (de; sālīo), to leap down.  
 dē-sisto, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum,  
 to leave off, give over, desist.  
 dē-spēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to be  
 hopeless, despair of.  
 dē-spondeo, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to  
 promise, to betroth.  
 dē-stringo, -stringēre, -strinxī,  
 -strictum, to unsheath, draw  
 (the sword).

- dē-sum, -esse, -fuī**, to be away; to fail, be wanting (293. 4).
- dēsūper**, adv. (dē, from: sūper, above), from above.
- dē-tēgo, -tēgere, -texī, -tectum**, to uncover, expose; discover, reveal.
- dē-terreo, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum**, to frighten off, deter.
- dē-tīneo, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -tentum** (de; tēneo), to hold off, detain, hinder.
- dē-trāho, -trāhēre, -trāxi, -tractum**, to draw off, withdraw.
- dētri-mentum, -ī, n.** (dētēro), loss, damage, defeat.
- deus, -ī, m.** (176. 1), a god, divinity, deity.
- dē-vinco, -vincēre, -vīcī, -victum**, to conquer, vanquish.
- dē-vōro, -vōre, -vōvī, -vōtum**, to gulp down, devour, consume.
- dexter, -tra, -trum, and -tēra, -tērum**, adj., to the right, on the right side, right.
- dextēra, -ae, f.**, the right hand.
- diādēma, -ātis, n.**, a royal head-dress, diadem.
- dīc, imperat.** of dīco, say.
- dīco, dīcēre, dīxī, dictum**, to speak, say, name, appoint, plead; dicitur, it is said.
- dictā-tor, -ōris, m.** (dicto), dictator; a supreme magistrate, elected by the Romans only in seasons of emergency, when his power was absolute, and lasted for six months.
- dict-īto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.** (dicto), to say or plead often, declare.
- dic-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.** (dīco), to say often, dictate, prescribe.
- dic-tum, -ī, n.** (dīco), a saying, a word, command.
- diēs, -ēī, m.** (175. 2), a day of 24 hours; daylight; in diēs, daily, with an idea of constant increase; ad diem, at the appointed time.
- dif-fēro, differre, distūlī, dilātum**, to delay; meaning to differ; no perf. nor p.p.; inter sē diffēre, to differ from each other (295, Obs. 2).
- difficil-e, adv.**, with difficulty.
- dif-ficilis, -e, adj.** (dis; fācilis), hard, difficult.
- difficul-tās, -ātis, f.** (difficilis), difficulty, trouble.
- dif-fīdo, -fidēre, -fīsus sum**, semidep. (dis; fīdo, 248. 2, Obs. 8), to mistrust, despair.
- dīgnus, -a, -um, adj.**, worthy of (307, Obs. 4).
- dīligēns, -entis, part.** (dīligo), careful, attentive, diligent.
- dīligen-tia, -ae, f.**, diligence, carefulness.
- dī-līgo, -līgēre, -lēxī, -lectum** (dis; lēgo), to value highly, esteem, love.
- dī-mīco, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātum**, to fight, contend.
- dīmīdius, -a, -um, half**; as a noun, dīmīdium, the half.
- dī-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsi, -missum**, to send forth, dismiss, adjourn.
- dī-rīgo, -rīgēre, -rēxī, -rectum** (dis; rēgo), to direct, guide.
- dīs, dītis, adj.**, see dives.
- dis-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum**, to go apart, depart.
- disc-īpulus, -ī, m.** (disco), a learner, scholar, pupil.
- disco, discēre, didīcī**, no p.p., to learn.
- dīs-īcio** (pronounced dis-jīcio), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (dis; jācio), to tear asunder, scatter; break down.
- dī-spergo, -spērgēre, -spersi, -spersum** (dī; spargo), to scatter about, disperse.
- dis-plīceo, -plīcēre, -plīcuī, -plī-**

a, at the ap-  
 listūlī, dilā-  
 aning to dif-  
 p.p.; inter  
 for from each  
 ).  
 difficultly.  
 lis; faciġlis),  
 (difficilis),  
 as sum, semi-  
 8. 2, (Obs. 8),  
 j., worthy of  
 rt. (diligō),  
 diligent.  
 iligeuce, care-  
 xi, -lectum  
 ue highly, es-  
 or -uī, -ātum,  
 half; as a  
 the half.  
 -misi, -mis-  
 dismiss, ad-  
 xi, -rectum  
 ct, guide.  
 dives.  
 -cessi, -ces-  
 epart.  
 (disco), a  
 pupil.  
 ūci, no p.p.,  
 l dis-ūcio),  
 um (dis; jā-  
 nder, scatter;  
 re, -spersi,  
 argo), to scat-  
 -plūci, -pli-

cġtum (dis; plāceo) (with  
 dat.), to displease.  
 dis-pūto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to  
 discuss; argue.  
 dissēns-iō, -ōnis, f. (dissentio),  
 difference of opinion, disagree-  
 ment, quarrel.  
 dissidium, -i, n., discord.  
 dis-similis, -e, adj., unlike, dis-  
 similar.  
 dītiior, dītissimus, comp. and  
 superlative of dives.  
 diū, adv. (diēs), by day, a  
 long time, long ago; comp.,  
 diūtius; superlative, diūtis-  
 simē.  
 div-es, -itis, adj., rich (the noun  
 and acc. of the neut. pl. do not  
 occur; comp., dīvitior or dī-  
 tior; superlative, dīvitissimus  
 or dītissimus).  
 Divicō, -ōnis, m., Divico, a Hel-  
 vetian leader.  
 dī-vido, -vidēre, -vīsi, -vīsum, to  
 separate, divide, distinguish.  
 Divitiācus, -i, m., Divitiacus, an  
 Aduan chief.  
 do, dāre, dēdi, dātum (75. n. 3),  
 to give; finem dāre, to put an  
 end to.  
 dōceo, -ēre, -uī, -tum, to teach.  
 doc-tus, -a, -um, part. (dōceo),  
 learned, versed, experienced.  
 dōleo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to feel pain,  
 lament, be sorry for.  
 dōl-or, -ōris, m. (dōleo), pain,  
 anguish, anger.  
 dōlus, -i, m., guile, fraud, deceit.  
 dōm-i-cilium, -ii, n. (dōmus), a  
 habitation, dwelling, abode.  
 dōminā-tiō, -ōnis, f. (dominor),  
 rule; despotism.  
 dōminus, -i, m. (dōmo), a mas-  
 ter, lord, chief; owner.  
 dōmo, -āre, -uī, -itum, to subdue,  
 vanquish, overcome, conquer.  
 dōmus, -i or -ūs, f. (174), a house,  
 home; dōmī, at home.

dōnec, conj., as long as, while;  
 until (334).  
 dōno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dōnum),  
 to give (with acc. of thing and  
 dat. of person, or acc. of per-  
 son and abl. of thing).  
 dōnum, -i, n. (do), a gift, present.  
 dormio, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum, to  
 sleep, rest.  
 Dūbis, -is, m., a river of Gaul.  
 dūbitā-tiō, -ōnis, f. (dūbito), a  
 doubting, doubt, hesitation.  
 dūbito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intens.  
 (duo, through old form, dūbo),  
 to doubt, hesitate.  
 dūbius, -a, -um, adj. (duo), doubt-  
 ful (145); as noun, dūbium,  
 -i, n., doubt.  
 dū-centi, -ae, -a, num. adj. (duo;  
 centum), two hundred.  
 dūco, dūcēre, dūxi, ductum, to  
 lead; put off, consider, think;  
 mūrum dūcēre, to build a wall;  
 uxōrem in mātrimōnium dū-  
 cēre, to marry (a woman).  
 dulcis, -e, adj., sweet, agreeable.  
 dum, conj., while, so long as, un-  
 til, provided that (334).  
 dum-mōdo, conj., provided that,  
 if only (327).  
 Dumnōrix, -Igis, m., Dumnorix,  
 an Aduan chief.  
 duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two (213).  
 duō-dēcim, num. adj., indecl.,  
 twelve.  
 duō-dē-viginti, num. adj., in-  
 decl., two from twenty, eighteen.  
 dux, dūcis, c. (dūco), a leader,  
 guide.  
 Dyrrāchium, -ii, n., a sea-coast  
 town of Illyria.

## E.

ē, ex, prep. with abl., out of, from,  
 of; ex itinēre, on the march;  
 ex equō, on horseback.  
 ē-dīco, -dicēre, -dixi, -dictum,  
 to declare, publish; order.



- ēdo, ēdere** or **esse, ēdī, ēsum** or **essum** (299), *to eat*.
- ē-do, -dēre, -didī, -ditum**, *to give forth, publish, exhibit, display*.
- ē-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum**, *to lead forth, march out troops*.
- ēdūco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to bring up, rear, educate*.
- ef-fēro, efferre, extūlī, ēlātum**, irreg. (**ex; fēro**), *to carry forth, to bring forth, publish* (295).
- efficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum** (**ex; fācio**), *to make out, bring to pass; to effect* (323. 3).
- ef-fundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum** (**ex; fundo**), *to pour out or forth; to overflow; squander; effundere sē, to spread out*.
- ēgē-nus, -a, -um, adj.** (**ēgeo**), *in want, destitute, needy*.
- ēgo, meī**, pron., *I*; pl. **nōs** (229).
- ē-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum**, dep. (**ex; grādior**), *to go out, go forth, leave*.
- ē-grēg-ius, -a, -um, adj.** (**ē; grēx**), (out of the herd), *excellent, remarkable*.
- ē-icio** (pronounced **ē-jicio**), **-icēre, -jēcī, -jectum** (**e; jācio**), *to cast, thrust or drive out, expel, banish; ēicere sē, to rush out*.
- ē-lābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum**, dep., *to slip away, escape*.
- ē-lātus, -a, -um, part.** (**effēro**), *exalted, lofty, high*.
- ēlēgāns, -ntis, adj.**, *elegant*.
- ēlōquent-ia, -ae, f.** (**ēlōquens**), *a being eloquent, eloquence*.
- ē-mīneo** (**ex; mineo**), **-ēre, -uī**, no sup., *to stand out, excel*.
- ēmo, ēmere, emī, emptum**, *to buy* (304).
- ērim, conj.** (strengthened form of **nam, for**; placed after the first word or words), *for, indeed, in fact* (205. 5).
- ē-nuntio** (**cio**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to divulge; to report*.
- eo, ire, ivi** or **iī, itum**, irreg., *to go* (298).
- eō, adv. (is)**, *thither; to that place, so far; therefore*. With comparatives, *by so much, so much, the; quō . . . eō, the . . . the*.
- eōdem, adv. (idem)**, *to the same place, the same way*.
- Epicūrēus, -a, -um, adj.** *Epicurean*.
- ēpistūla, -ae, f.**, *a letter, epistle*.
- ēques, equitīs, m.** (**ēquus**), *a horseman, rider; pl., ēquitēs, cavalry; also the knights, the equites, as an order in the state*.
- ēques-ter, -tris, -tre, adj.** (**ēques**), *belonging to horsemen, equestrian*.
- ē-quidem, adv.**, *verily, truly*.
- ēquitā-tus, -ūs, m.** (**ēquito**), *a riding, cavalry*.
- ēquit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**ēques**), *to be a horseman; to ride*.
- ēquus, -ī, m.**, *a horse, steed*.
- ergō, adv.** (205. 4), *therefore, accordingly*.
- ē-rīpio, -rīpēre, -rīpuī, -reptum** (**e; rāpio**), *to snatch away, rescue; ērīpēre sē, to snatch one's self away, to escape*.
- ē-rūd-io, -ire, -ivī** or **-iī, -itum** (**e; rūdis**), *to free from rudeness, educate, instruct*.
- et, conj.** (205), *and, also, too, as; et . . . et, both . . . and, not only . . . but also*.
- ētiam, conj.**, *and also, besides, likewise*, (205. 5); *certainly, yes; with comparatives, still; māgis ētiam, still more*.
- et-sī, conj.**, *even if, although* (331); *yet, but*.
- Eurīpides, -is, m.**, *a celebrated Athenian tragic poet*.
- ē-vād-o, -dēre, -sī, -sum**, *to go forth, to escape from*.
- ē-vello, -vellēre, -vellī** or **-vulsī, -vulsum**, *to tear out, remove*.
- ē-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum**,

- to come out; come to pass, turn out.
- ē-verto, -tēre, -tī, -sum**, to turn, drive or thrust out; to overthrow, destroy.
- ex** or **ē** (**ē** only before consonants), prep. with abl., out of, from, of.
- ex-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum**, to go out, withdraw; to exceed.
- excell-ūs, -entis**, part. (**ex-cello**), high, lofty, excellent.
- excel-sus, -a, -um**, part. (**ex-cello**), elevated, lofty, high.
- ex-cīpio, -cīpere, -cēpī, -ceptum** (**ex**; **cāpio**), to take out; to receive; to succeed.
- ex-clūdo, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum** (**ex**; **claudio**), to shut out, exclude.
- ex-cōlo, -cōlere, -cōlūī, -cultum**, to cultivate; to improve.
- exemplum, -ī, N.** (**exīmo**), a sample.
- ex-eo, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum**, irreg., to go out (from life), withdraw (298).
- ex-erceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum** (**ex**; **arceo**), to exercise, practise; **nēgōtium exercēre**, to follow a business.
- exercitā-tiō, -ōnis, F.** (**exercito**), exercise, practice.
- exercitū-s, -ūs, M.** (**exerceo**), trained body of men; an army.
- ex-igo, -igere, -ēgī, -actum** (**ex**; **āgo**), to lead out, to drive forth, expel; to exact; finish; pass; **ālliquid ab ālliquē exigere**, to demand any thing from anyone.
- existimā-tiō, -ōnis, F.** (**existīmo**), a judging, judgment, opinion, character.
- ex-istīmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**ex**; **aestīmo**), to judge, think, esteem.
- exī-tium, -iī, N.** (**exeo**), destruction.
- ex-pēdio, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum** (**ex**; **pēs**), (to free the feet from), to extricate, disengage; set free.
- expēdit**, impers., it is profitable, useful (313).
- expēdi-tiō, -ōnis, F.** (**expēdio**), an expedition, excursion.
- expēdi-tus, -a, -um**, part. (**expēdio**), unimpeded, passable, without baggage.
- ex-pello, -pellere, -pūlī, -pulsum**, to drive out, eject, expel.
- experg-iscor, -pergiscī, -perrectus sum**, dep. (**expergo**), to be awakened; to awake.
- ex-pērior, -pēriī, -pertus sum**, dep. (**ex**; **pērior**, obsolete), to try; attempt.
- ex-pio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to atone for, expiate.
- explōrā-tor, -ōris, M.** (**explōro**), a searcher out, scout, spy.
- ex-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūī, -pōsitum**, to lay or put out, set forth; explain; to set on shore, disembark.
- expōs-itiō, -ōnis, F.** (**expōno**), a setting forth, exposition; a narration.
- ex-primo, -primere, -pressī, -pressum** (**ex**; **prēmo**), to press out; describe, express, utter.
- ex-prōbro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**ex**; **prōbrum**), to reproach.
- ex-pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to take by assault; to storm, capture.
- ex-qui-ro, -rere, -sivī, -sītum** (**ex**; **quaero**), to search diligently.
- ex-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus sum**, dep., to follow out, execute.
- ex-specto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to await, expect; fear.
- ex-spīro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to breathe out; expire.
- ex-stinguo, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum**, to put out, extinguish; to kill, destroy; **aquā extinctus**, drowned.

**exsul-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, intens. (**ex**; **sālio**), to leap up; rejoice exceedingly.

**ex-ter (tōrus), -ēra, -ērum**, adj. (**ex**), outside, foreign, strange; comp., **extērior**, outer, exterior; superlative, **extrēmus** or (**extīmus**), outermost, last.

**ex-tīmēscō, -tīmēscēre, -tīmūf**, no p. p., v. A. and N., fear greatly, dread.

**ex-tollo, -tollēre**, no perf., no p. p., to lift up, raise up, exalt.

**extrā**, adv., and prep. with acc., on the outside, beyond.

## F.

**fā-ber, -brī, M. (fācio)**, a carpenter, smith, artisan.

**fābrīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (fāber)**, to frame, make, construct, build.

**fābrīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., to frame, build, fashion.

**fā-būla, -ae, F. (for)**, a story, fable.

**fācētus, -a, -um**, adj., courteous.

**fācīl-e**, adv. (**fācīlis**), easily.

**fācīlis, -e**, adj. (**fācio**), easy, courteous, affable (149. 2).

**fācīnus, -ōris, N. (fācio)**, a deed, crime.

**fācio, fācēre, fēcī, factum**, to make, do; passive, **fīo, fīerī, factus sum**, to be made, to become (302); **castra fācēre**, to pitch camp; **impers., fit, it happens, is usual; fiat, so be it.**

**fac-tio, -ōnis, F. (fācio)**, a making; a party, faction.

**fac-tum, -ī, N. (fācio)**, a deed, act, exploit.

**fālio, fāllēre, fēfellī, falsum**, to deceive.

**fal-sus, -a, -um**, part. (**fallo**), false.

**fāmīl-ia, -ae, F. (fāmūlus, a servant)**, family-servants, retainers; family, household; **pāter fāmīliās** or **fāmīliae**, master of a family.

**fāmīl-āris, -is, M. (fāmīlia)**, of the household; subst., a friend.

**fās**, indecl., N. (**for**), (that which is right in the sight of heaven), divine law; right (267).

**fascis, -is, M., a bundle, parcel; fascēs, pl.**, a bundle of rods and an axe carried by the lictors before a chief magistrate, with which criminals were scourged and beheaded; the fuses.

**fāteor, fātērī, fassus sum**, to confess.

**fā-tum, -ī, N. (for)**, destiny, fate, calamity.

**faucēs, -ium, F. (found in the sing. only in the abl.; fauce)**, the throat, gullet; a defile, pass.

**Faustūlus, -ī, M., Faustulus**, the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.

**fāveo, fāvēre, fāvī, fautum**, to favor, protect.

**Fēbruārius, -ī, M., February.**

**fēlīc-iter**, adv. (**fēlīx**), auspiciously, favorably.

**fēlīx, -īcis**, adj. (**feo, to produce**), fruitful; happy, fortunate.

**fēra, -ae, F. (fērus)**, a wild animal, wild beast.

**fērē**, adv., nearly, generally.

**fēro, ferre, tūfī, lātum, irreg. (295)**, to bear, bring, endure; bring forth; tell, relate; raise, exalt; **fēruunt, they say; fertur, it is said; auxiliūm ferre, to bring aid; injūriās ferre, to inflict injuries; ferre lēgem, to propose a law.**

**fēr-ōx, -ōcis**, adj. (**fēro**), bold, fierce.

**ferrum, -ī, N., iron; sword, arms.**

**fāmulus**, a  
servant, retain-  
er; **pāter**  
domini, master of

**fāmilia**), of  
the family, a friend.  
(that which  
is of heaven),  
(267).

**alle**, parcel;  
a bundle of rods  
used by the lie-  
ge-nant; magis-  
trates were  
seated; the

**sum**, to

**est**, fate,

found in the  
mouth (fauce),  
defile, pass.  
instans, the  
ground brought up  
to us.

**utum**, to fu-

bruary.

**is**), onspi-

to produce),  
animate.

a wild ani-

ally.

**um**, irreg.

g, endure;

late; raise,

is; fertur,

a ferre, to

is ferre, to

is legem,

isro), bold,

cord, arms.

**fessus**, -a, -um, adj., wearied,  
tired, fatigued, weak, feeble.

**festino**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
hasten, hurry, accelerate.

**fidēs**, -ei, F. (fīdo), trust, faith,  
confidence, belief, credit; prom-  
ise, engagement, word.

**fīdo**, fīdēre, fīsus sum, semi-  
dep. (283 and 248. 2, Obs. 3),  
to trust, confide.

**filia**, -ae, F. (dat. and abl. pl.,  
sometimes filiabus; 75. N.), a  
daughter.

**filius**, -i, M. (vocative sing., fili;  
75. 5), a son.

**fīn-īo**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum (fī-  
nis), to limit, bound, finish.

**fīnis**, -is, M. and F., a boundary,  
limit, end; finēs, pl., the borders  
(of a territory), territory.

**fīn-ītimī**, -ōrum, M. (fīnis), neigh-  
bors; masc. pl. of fīnītīmus.

**fīo**, pass. of fācio (302).

**fīāgīto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to de-  
mand fiercely; to importune  
(185. 2).

**flecto**, flectēre, flexī, flexum, to  
bend, direct.

**fleo**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, to weep, cry.

**fletus**, -ūs, M. (fleo), a weeping.

**flo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to blow;  
blow away.

**floreō**, -ns, -ntis, part. (floreo),  
flourishing, prosperous.

**floreo**, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. (flos),  
to bloom, to be prosperous.

**flos**, flōris, M., a blossom, flower.

**fluctus**, -ūs, M. (fluo), wave, a  
billow, surge.

**flū-men**, -inis, N. (fluo; that  
which flows along), a river.

**fluo**, -ēre, -xi, -xum, to flow; dis-  
appear.

**flūv-ius**, -iī, M. (fluo), a river,  
running water, stream.

**fōdīo**, fōdēre, fōdī, fossum, to  
dig.

**foed-us**, -ēris, N. (fidus), a

league, treaty, compact, agree-  
ment.

**for**, fārī, fātus sum, dep. (305.  
2, c), to speak, say.

**fōre**, fut. inf. of sum.

**fōris**, -is, F., a door, gate (gen. pl.,  
fōrum).

**for-ma**, -ae, F., shape, form, beauty.

**for-sit-an**, adv., perhaps (fors;  
sit; an).

**fort-as-se**, adv. (forte; an; sit),  
perhaps, by chance.

**forte**, adv. (fors), by chance, per-  
haps.

**for-tis**, -e, adj. (fēro), strong,  
powerful, courageous, brave.

**fort-iter**, adv. (fortis), strongly,  
powerfully, boldly, valiantly.

**fōrum**, -i, N., a market place, pub-  
lic square, forum; a long open  
space in Rome, between the  
Capitoline and Palatine hills,  
surrounded by porticoes and  
the shops of bankers.

**fos-sa**, -ae, F., a ditch, trench.

**frango**, frangēre, frēgī, fractum,  
to break; (of ships) to wreck.

**frāter**, frātris, M., a brother.

**frētus**, -a, -um, adj., relying upon.

**frīgus**, -ōris, N. (frig- in frigeo),  
cold, coldness.

**frōns**, frondis, F., a leaf; leaves,  
foliage.

**fructu-ōsus**, -a, -um, adj. (fruc-  
tus), fruitful, advantageous.

**fruc-tus**, -ūs, M., fruit, profit, ad-  
vantage, income.

**frūges**, -um, F. pl. (frūx), fruits  
of the earth, crops.

**frūment-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (frū-  
mentum), of corn: rēs frū-  
mentāria, corn, provisions.

**frū-mentum**, -i, N. (fruor), corn,  
grain.

**fruor**, fruī, fructus and fruitus  
sum, dep., to enjoy (280).

**frustrē** adv., without effect, in  
vain.

**fūg-a, -ae, f.** (fūgio), a flight, exile, banishment.  
**fūgio, fūgēre, fūgī, fūgītum,** to flee or fly; to run away; escape.  
**fulg-ur, -ūris, n.** (fulgeo), lightning, brightness.  
**funda, -ae, f., sling.**  
**fund-itor, -tōris, m.** (funda, a sling), one who slings, a slinger.  
**fundo, fundēre, fūdī, fūsum,** to pour; scatter, rout; lacrimās fundēre, to shed tears; hostēs fundēre, to rout the enemy; fundī, to be poured out, to flow.  
**fungor, fungī, functus sum,** dep., to perform (280).

## G.

**Gādēs, -ium, f.,** a colony in southern Hispania (Cadiz).  
**Gaius (Caius), -iī, m.,** a Roman name.  
**Galba, -ae, m.,** Galba, a Roman emperor; a chief of the Suesiones.  
**gālea, -ae, f.,** a helmet.  
**Galli, -ōrum, m.,** Gauls, the people of Gaul.  
**Gallia, -ae, f.,** Gaul.  
**Gall-icus, -a, -um, adj.** (Gallia), Gallic.  
**gall-īna, -ae, f.** (gallus, a cock), a hen.  
**Gallus, -a, -um, adj.,** Gallic; as subst., a Gaul.  
**Garonna, -ae, m.,** a river of Gaul (now Garonne).  
**gaudeo, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum,** semi-dep. (283), to rejoice.  
**gaud-ium, -iī, n.** (gaudeo), joy, gladness, delight.  
**gēlu, -ūs, n.,** cold, frost, chill.  
**gēminā-tus, -a, -um, part.** (gēmi-no), doubled, double.  
**gē-minus, -a, -um, adj.** (gēno, to bring forth), twin, double.  
**Gēnāva, -ae, f.,** Geneva (on Lake Geneva, at its outlet into the

Rhone), a city of the Allobroges.  
**gēner, -ērī, m.,** a son-in-law.  
**gēn-itus, -a, -um, part.** (gīgno), begotten, born.  
**gēnū, -ūs, n.,** the knee.  
**gēnus, -ēris, n.,** birth, race, kind.  
**Germanī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Germans.  
**Germania, -ae, f.,** Germany.  
**Germānus, -a, -um, adj.,** German.  
**gēro, gērēre, gessī, gestum,** to carry, wear, bear, do, transact, carry on; sē gērēre, to conduct one's self; bellum gērēre, to carry on war; iēs gestae, deeds, exploits.  
**ges-tō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.** (gēro), to bear, carry, have.  
**gīgno, gīgnēre, gēnuī, gēnitum,** to beget, produce (283. 3).  
**glād-ius, -iī, m.,** a sword.  
**glōria, -ae, f.,** glory, fame; ambition, bragging.  
**glōri-or, -ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. (glōria), to glory, boast.  
**Gn. (Cn.),** Gneius, a Roman name.  
**Graecus, -a, -um, adj.,** Greek.  
**Graecus, -ī, m.,** a Greek.  
**grāphium, -iī, n.,** a writing-style.  
**grāt-ia, -ae, f.** (grātus), favor, regard; grātiae, pl., thanks; āgēre grātias, to give thanks; faciēre grātiam, to grant pardon, forgive; grātīā, with the gen., for the sake of, an account of; eā grātīā, for this or that reason, on this or that account.  
**grāt-ūlor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. (grātus), to wish joy, congratulate; to give thanks.  
**grātus, -a, -um, adj.,** pleasing; grateful.  
**grāv-is, -e, adj.,** heavy, weighty; important, grave, violent.  
**grāv-iter, adv.** (grāv-is), heavily, severely, weightily; elaborately.

**grex, grēgis, M.**, a flock, herd, drove; troop, company.  
**gubernā-tor, -ōris, M.** (gubernō), a steersman, pilot; ruler, governor.  
**gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to steer or pilot a ship; govern.

## H.

**hābeo, hābere, hābuī, hābitum**, to have; to esteem; **bēne sē hābere**, to be well; **sic hābere**, to be even so; **hāberī prō**, with abl., to be regarded as.  
**hāb-īto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.**, (hābeo), to have possession of, to inhabit; to dwell.

**Haeduus**, see **Aeduus**.

**haereo, haerere, haesi, haesum**, to hold fast, stick.

**Hannibal, -ālis, M.**, Hannibal, the son of Hamilcar, leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War.

**Harūdēs, -um, M. pl.**, Harudes, a German tribe in Gaul.

**haud, adv.**, not at all, not (negating single words).

**Helvētia, -ae, F.**, Helvetia, modern Switzerland.

**Helvētīi, -ōrum, M. pl.**, Helvetians, a people of Gallia.

**Helvētius, -a, -um, adj.**, Helvetian, of the Helvetii; **āger Helvētius**, the territory of the Helvetii.

**hērī, or hēre, adv.**, yesterday, lately.

**heu, interj.** (an exclamation of pain or grief), oh! ah! alas!

**Hibernia, -ae, F.**, Ireland.

**hib-ernus, -a, -um (hiems), adj.**, wintry; **hiberna, -ōrum, N. pl.** (sc. castra), winter-quarters.

**hic, haec, hoc, pron demonstr.** (234. 2), this, this of mine; he, she, it; the latter opposed to ille; **hōc, on this account.**

**hic, adv.**, here, hereupon.

**hiēmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (hiems)**, to pass the winter.

**hiems (-mps), -ēmis, F.**, the winter.

**hinc, -e, (hic), adv.**, from this place; from this time, hereafter; hence; **hinc . . . hinc**, on the one hand . . . on the other.

**Hispania, -ae, F.**, Spain.

**Hōmērus, -ī, M.**, Homer; the great epic poet of Greece.

**hōmo, -inis, com. gen.**, a human being; a man or woman, a mortal.

**hōnor (-os), -ōris, M.**, honor, repute; **hōnōrēs, pl.**, offices of honor, public offices.

**hōnōrific-ē, adv.** (**hōnōrificus**), comp. **hōnōrificentius**, sup. **hōnōrificentissimē**, with honor, in an honorable manner.

**hōnōr-ī-ficus, -a, -um, adj.**, (hōnōr; fācio), bringing honor, honorable; comp. **hōnōrificentior**, sup. **hōnōrificentissimus**.

**hōra, -ae, F.**, an hour. (The Romans divided their day into twelve intervals from sunrise to sunset; hence their hour varied in length at different seasons of the year).

**Hōrātius, -iī, M.**, (a), the name of the three brothers, in the time of Tullus Hostilius, who fought against the Alban Curatii; (b) Horatius Cocles, who, in the war with Porsenna, defended a bridge single-handed; (c) Horace, a Roman poet.

**hordeum, -ī, N.**, barley.

**horreo, horrēre, horruī, no p.p.**, to bristle; to tremble, shudder; to dread.

**horr-or, -ōris, M.** (horreo), a bristling; a shaking; dread, horror; religious awe.



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5

5.0

5.6

6.3

7.1

8.0

9.0

10

11.2

12.5

14.3

16

18

20

22.5

25

28

31.5

36

40

45

50

56

63

71

80

2.8

3.2

3.6

4.0

2.5

2.2

2.0

1.8

1.6

**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax





**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to incite, cheer, exhort, urge.  
**hortus**, -ī, M., a garden.  
**hospitium**, -iī, N. (hospes), a place of hospitality, inn.  
**hostis**, -is, com. gen. (108), a stranger, an enemy.  
**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj. (homo), pertaining to man, human; courteous, civilized.  
**hūmērus**, see ūmērus.

## I.

**Ībī**, adv., in that place, there.  
**Ībīdem**, adv., in the same place.  
**īco**, **īcēre**, **īcī**, **īctum**, to strike, hit, smite, stab; foedus **īcēre**, to make or conclude a treaty.  
**īc-tus**, -ūs, M. (īco), a blow, thrust.  
**īdem**, **eādem**, **īdem**, pron., the same, very (238. 2); **īdem quī**, the same as.  
**īdōneus**, -a, -um, adj., meet, proper, suitable (145).  
**īdūs**, -ūm, F. pl., the Ides; the fifteenth day of the months March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth day of the remaining months.  
**īgītur**, conj. (205. 3), then, thereupon; therefore, consequently.  
**īgnis**, -is, M., fire (108).  
**īgnōsco**, -gnōscēre, -gnōvī, -gnōtum (in; gnōsco = nōsco, with dat.), to pardon, forgive, excuse, overlook.  
**īgnōtus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; gnōtus = nōtus), unknown.  
**īllātus**, or **īnlātus**, see **īnfēro**.  
**īlle**, -a, -ud, pron. demonstr. (234. 3), that, that yonder; hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the one . . . the other.  
**īllīc**, adv. (īlle; ce), in that place, there.

**īl-licō**, adv. (in; lōcō), on the spot, instantly, there.  
**īmāgo**, -īnis, F., an image or likeness, statue, picture.  
**īmber**, -bris, M., a shower of rain.  
**īm-mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; mātūrus), auripe, immature.  
**īm-mō** (īmō), adv., on the contrary; no indeed, yes indeed.  
**īm-mortālis**, -e, adj. (in; mortālis), undying, immortal.  
**īm-par**, -āris, adj. (in; par), uneven, unequal, not a match for.  
**īm-pātiēns**, -entis, adj. (in; pātiēns), not able to bear, impatient.  
**īm-pēdī-mentum**, -ī, N. (īm-pēdio), a hindrance, impediment; **īm-pēdī-menta**, -ōrum, N. pl., baggage.  
**īm-pēdio**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītum (in; pēs), to entangle, hinder, impede.  
**īm-pēdī-tus**, -a, -um, part. (īm-pēdio), hindered, impeded.  
**īm-pello**, -pellēre, -pūllī, -pūllum (in; pello), to push against; urge on, impel.  
**īm-pērā-tor**, -ōris, M. (īm-pēro), general, commander (in chief).  
**īm-perfectus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; perfectus), unfinished, imperfect.  
**īm-pēr-ium**, -iī, N. (īm-pēro), a command; authority; empire, government.  
**īm-pēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; pārō), to command; govern, rule over; **īm-pērāre obsīdēs āllī-cuī**, to demand hostages from any one.  
**īm-pētro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; pātro), to accomplish; to make a request and have it granted.  
**īm-pētus**, -tūs, M., an attack, assault, onset; impetuosity.  
**īm-plōro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; plōro), to invoke with tears, call to one's assistance; to implore.

in; *lōcō*), on the  
there.

, an image or like-  
picture.

, a shower of rain.  
a, -um, adj. (in;  
ripe, immature.

adv., on the con-  
fess, yes indeed.

e, adj. (in; mor-  
ting, immortal.

adj. (in; par), un-  
not a match for.

antis, adj. (in; pā-  
e to bear, impatient.

m, -ī, n. (impē-  
are, impediment;

ta, -ōrum, n. pl.,

-ivī or -iī, -itum  
to entangle, hinder,

-um, part. (impē-  
d, impeded.

-lère, -pūlī, -pul-  
lo), to push against;

l.

ris, m. (impéro), a  
vauder (in chief).

-a, -um, adj. (in;  
unfinished, imper-

, n. (impéro), a  
authority; empire,

-āvī, -ātum (in;  
maud; govern, rule

-āre obsidēs āli-  
and hostages from

-āvī, -ātum (in;  
complish; to make

have it granted.

m., an attack, as-  
impetuosity.

-āvī, -ātum (in;  
voke with tears, call

ance: to implore.

im-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsi-  
tum (in; pōno), to place upon;  
place on; impose upon; finem  
impōnere, to make an end;  
mount (men on horses).

im-porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring  
in, import.

im-prīmīs, adv. (in; prīmīs), in  
the first place, chiefly, especially.

im-prōbus, -a, -um, adj. (in;  
prōbus), wicked, bad.

im-pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in;  
pūgno), to fight against, attack.

in, prep. with acc. and abl. (200.  
3), 1. with acc., in, into, against;  
in diēs, from day to day; 2.  
with abl., in, before, in the  
presence of.

in-cālēscō, -cālēscere, -cālūī, no  
p. p., incl. (in; cālēo), to grow  
warm or hot.

in-cendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to set  
on fire; inflame, irritate.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain,  
unreliable, hesitating.

in-cīdo, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cāsum  
(in; cādo), to fall in with, at-  
tack; to happen; in-mentīōnem  
incīdere, to mention accident-  
ally; impers., (314.3), incīdit,  
it happens, with dat.

in-cīpio, -cīpere, -cēpī, -ceptum  
(in; cāpio), to begin, undertake.

in-cīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to set in  
rapid motion; to incite, spur on.

in-clāmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
call upon for assistance; to in-  
voke; revile.

in-clīno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bend  
down, incline, yield, give way;  
in fūgam inclīnāre, to be on  
the point of fleeing; inclīnārī,  
to be on the point of falling.

incōla, -ae, com. gen. (incōlo),  
an inhabitant, resident.

in-cōlo, -cōlere, -cōluī, no p.p.,  
to dwell or abide in a place, to  
inhabit.

in-cōlūmis, -e, adj., uninjured,  
safe and sound.

in-commōdum, -ī, n., trouble,  
misfortune, defeat.

in-crēdībīlis, -e, adj. (in; crē-  
do), incredible, extraordinary.

in-crēpo, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātum  
or -ītum, to make a noise, rus-  
tle; rebuke; to clash.

in-cūso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in;  
causa), to accuse, blame.

inde, adv., from there, thence.

in-dīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in;  
dīco), to make known, and so  
point, to point out.

in-dīgnus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy  
(307. Obs. 4).

ind-ōles, -is, v. (ōlesco, to grow),  
inhorn or native quality, nature.

in-dulgeo, -dulgere, -dulsi, -dul-  
tum (in; dulcis), to be courteous,  
kind; to indulge, humor, give  
way to; concede, allow, grant.

in-duo, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, to  
put on, assume, clothe; in pass.,  
indui vestem, to put on a gar-  
ment.

in-eo, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum, irreg.,  
to go into, enter; inīre consili-  
um, to form a plan; inīre foe-  
dus, to make a treaty; inīre  
grātiam, to get into the good  
graces of (298. Obs. 3).

in-ermis, -e, adj., (in; arma),  
unarmed, defenceless.

in-ers, -ertis, adj. (in; ars), un-  
skilled; idle.

in-fāns, -antis, adj. (in; for),  
speechless; very young. As  
noun, com. gen., an infant,  
babe.

in-fēlix, -icis, adj., unhappy.

in-fērior, -ius, adj. (comp. of  
in-fērus, 150. 2), lower, later,  
inferior.

in-fēro, inferre, intulī, illātum  
(inlātum), irreg. (295. Obs.  
2), to carry in or into; in-

- ferre signa, to advance the standards, attack; inferre p̄dem or gr̄adum, to advance, attack; sē inferre, to betake one's self, go.
- in-fērus, -a, -um, adj.** (comp. in-fērior, sup. infimus or imus), low, nether. As noun, infērī, -ōrum, M. pl. (the inhabitants of the lower regions), the dead.
- infesto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (infestus),** to attack, molest, infest.
- in-festus, -a, -um, adj.** (old part. of infēro), hostile; unsafe.
- infimus, -a, -um, adj.** (superlative of infērus), the lowest, last, lowest part of.
- in-flecto, -flectēre, -flēxī, -flexum,** to bend down; warp; affect.
- in-flo, -flāre, -flāvī, -flātum,** to blow into; inflate.
- in-fluo, -fluēre, -flūxī, -fluxum,** to flow into, flow upon, flow.
- infrā, adv. and prep. with acc.,** below, beneath, under, underneath.
- in-gēns, -entis, adj.** (in; gēns, beyond its kind, so), great, vast.
- in-icio (pronounced in-jicio), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (in; jacio),** to throw or cast into, cast upon or against; infuse into, inspire; in-icēre mētum ālicuī, to inspire one with fear.
- in-īmīcus, -a, -um, adj. (in; āmīcus),** unfriendly, hostile. As noun, M., a private enemy or foe.
- in-īquus, -a, -um, adj. (in; ae-quus),** unequal, unjust; unkind.
- in-ī-tium, -ī, N. (ineo),** a beginning, commencement; origin.
- injūri-a, -ae, F. (injūrius),** injury, violence; insult, injustice.
- in-nāscor, -nāsc̄r, -nātus sum, dep.,** to be born in; spring up in.
- in-nitor, -nītī, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, dep.,** to lean or rest upon, support one's self by.
- in-nōcēns, -entis, adj.,** harmless; blameless, innocent; disinterested.
- in-ōp-ia, -ae, F. (inops),** poverty, need, want.
- inquam, def. (JOS. 2 b),** I say.
- in-scribo, -scribēre, -scripsī, -scriptum,** to write upon, inscribe; indicate.
- in-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus sum, dep.,** to follow after, pursue.
- in-sideo, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum (in; sēdeo),** to sit in; sit upon, settle upon; to get possession of, occupy.
- insīd-iae, -ārum, F. pl. (insīdeo),** an ambush; artifice, plot; per insīdiās, by stratagem, craftily.
- insīd-ior, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (insīdiae),** to lie in wait for, watch for, expect.
- in-sīgn-e, -is, N. (in-sīgnis),** a distinctive mark; badge (of office), a signal; ensign; in pl., in-sīgn-ia, -ium, badges of honor, decorations, ornaments.
- in-sīgnis, -e, adj. (in; sīgnum),** remarkable, distinguished, extraordinary.
- in-sīlio, -sīllire, -sīlūī, no p.p. (in; sīlio),** to leap or spring into; to leap or spring upon.
- in-sīnuo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; sīnus),** to penetrate or enter anywhere by winding in; insin-; with sē, work one's way
- in-sō'en-ter, adv. (in-sōlens),** unusually; haughtily, insolently.
- in-stītuō, -stītuēre, -stītuī, -stītūtum (in; stātuo),** to arrange, educate.
- in-stītū-tum, -ī, N. (Instituo),** custom, arrangement; in pl., institutions.
- in-sto, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum,** to stand upon; approach; harass.

antis, *adj.*, harmless; innocent; disinter-

er. (*inops*), poverty,

(305. 2 b), *I say.*

scribere, -scripsi, to write upon, incate.

qui, -sēcūtus sum, to follow after, pursue.

ere, -sēdī, -sessum, to sit in; sit upon, to get possession of;

um, *r. pl.* (*insid-*ous; artifice, plot; as, by stratagem,

i, -ātus sum, *dep.* to lie in wait for, expect.

n. (*insignis*), a dis-; badge (of office); sign; in pl., *insig-*aldges of honor, decaments.

adj. (*in*; *signum*), distinguished, extra-

re, -silui, *no p.p.* to leap or spring or spring upon.

e, -āvi, -ātum (*in*; penetrate or enter y winding in; *insin-*sē, work one's way

dv. (*insolens*), u-ighly, insolently. tuere, -stitui, -stī-tātuo), to arrange,

-i, *n.* (*instituo*), angement; in pl.,

-stiti, -stātum, to approach; harass.

*in*-struo, -struere, -struxi, -struc-tum, to erect; teach; set in order, arrange (of troops); clothe, array, ornament.

*in*-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, to become accustomed; to accustom or habituate one to a thing.

*in*-sūla, -ae, *r.* (*in*; *sālum*, the sea), an island.

*in*-sum, -esse, -fui, *irreg.*, to be in or upon, to belong to.

*in*-tactus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*in*; *tango*), untouched, unharmed; pure, chaste.

*in*-tēger, -gra, -grum *adj.* (*in*; *tango*), untouched; sound, whole, unhurt; fresh (of troops); blameless, pure; *ex integrō*, afresh.

*intel*-lēgo, -lēgere, -lēxi, -lectum (*inter*; *lēgo*), to distinguish between, to perceive; understand.

*inter*, *prep.* with acc., between, among, during, in the midst of; *inter sē differre*, to differ from each other; *dāre inter sē*, to interchange.

*inter*-cēdo, -cēdere, -cēssi, -ces-sum, to go between; to be, stand, or lie between, intervene; protest (as tribune).

*inter*-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsi, -clūsus (*inter*; *claudō*), to shut off; cut off; hinder; surround.

*inter*-dīco, -dīcere, -dīxi, -dic-tum, to forbid, interdict, prohib-; *āliquid interdīcere ālicui*, or *āliquem āliquā rē*, to exclude one from, to forbid one the use of anything; *interdī-cere ālicui āquā et igni*, to forbid one the use of fire and water, i.e., to deprive one of civil rights, to banish.

*inter*-eā, (*acc. pl. n.*), *adv.*, mean-while.

*inter*-est, *impers.* (313), it concerns, is of interest, is important; *interest meā*, 315. 3 (2), it is my concern; *interest omnium*, it is the interest of all.

*inter*-fec-tor, -ōris, *m.* (*inter*-ficio), a slayer, murderer.

*inter*-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum (*inter*; *fācio*), to destroy, kill.

*intē*-im, *adv.* (*inter*; *im* = *eum*), in the meantime, meanwhile.

*intē*-rior, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* (150.1), inner, interior.

*intē*-ri-tus, -ūs, *m.* (*intē*-reo), de-struction, ruin.

*inter*-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsi, -mis-sum, to discontinue, intervene.

*inter*-pello, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to interrupt, hinder; *urges*.

*inter*-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpi, -ruptum, to break asunder, break down.

*inter*-sum, -esse, -fui, *irreg.*, to be between, intervene, be present at; *interest*, *impers.*, see *inter*-est.

*inter*-vallum, -i, *n.*, space between, interval, distance.

*intrā*, *adv.* and *prep.* with acc., within, under (with numerals).

*in*-tueor, -tuēri, -tuitus (-tūtus) sum, *dep.*, to look at, contem-plate.

*in*-tūmēscō, -tūmēscere, -tūmui, *no sup.*, to begin to swell, to swell or rise up, increase; to be elated; swell with rage.

*in*-ūsītātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusu-al, extraordinary.

*in*-venio, -venire, -veni, -ven-tum, to come upon, find; invent.

*in*-vicem, *adv.* (*in*; *vicis*), by turns, alternately, one another.

*in*-victus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncon-querred; invincible.

*in*-video, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, to look spitefully at; envy.

- in-vītus, -a, -um, adj. (in; vōlo),** unwilling, reluctant.
- in-vōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to call on or upon; invoke; implore.
- ipse, -a, -um, pron. (238. 3),** self; very; himself, herself, itself.
- īra, -ae, F.,** anger, wrath, ire.
- īrā-cundus, -a, -um, adj. (īra),** prone to anger, irritable.
- īr-ascor, īrascī, īrātus sum, dep. (īra),** to be angry, be in a rage.
- īrā-tus, -a, -um, part. act. (īrascor),** angry, angered.
- ir-rīdeo, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsūm (in; rīdeo),** to laugh in ridicule; ridicule.
- ir-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpī, -rūptum (in; rumpo),** to break in, burst in.
- ir-ruo, -ruēre, -ruī, no p. p. (in; ruo),** to rush in or into; attack furiously, assault.
- is, ea, id, pron. (238. 1),** this, that; he, she, it; **is quī, the man who, such a one that; in eō esse, to be on the point of.**
- iste, -ta, -tud, pron.,** this of yours, that near you; this, that; that fellow (in contempt) (234. 2).
- īta, adv.,** thus, so; to such an extent; **īta . . . ut (with subj.),** in such a manner . . . that.
- ītālia, -ae, F.,** Italy.
- ītā-que, conj. (205. 4),** and so; therefore, accordingly.
- ītem, adv.,** in like manner; so also.
- īter, ītinēris, N. (eo),** journey, march, route (121); **ex ītinēre,** on the march; **māgnīs ītinērī-bus,** by forced marches.
- ītērum, adv.,** again, a second time.
- ītūrus, -a, -um, part. from eo.**
- J.**
- jāceo, -ēre, -uī, no p. p.,** to lie, lie prostrate, lie dead.
- jācio, jācēre, jēcī, jactum, to** throw, cast.
- jactā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (jācio),** a throwing; boasting.
- jact-īto, -āre, no perf., no p. p.,** frequentative (jacto), to pour forth frequently; to make a great display.
- jac-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** frequentative (jācio), to throw; talk about.
- jam, adv.,** now, already, presently, at length; with a negative, as **jam nōn,** no longer.
- jam-diū, adv.,** long ago, already, for a long time.
- jānuā, -ae, F. (jānus),** a door, gate.
- jānu-ārius, -a, -um, adj. (jānus),** of or belonging to January. As noun, M., January.
- Jānus, -i, M.,** an ancient Latin divinity, represented with two faces, one in front, the other behind.
- jōcus, -i, M. (in pl., also jōca, -ōrum),** a jest, joke.
- Jōvis, gen. of Jūpīter.**
- Jūba, -ae, M.,** a king of Numidia.
- jūbeo, jūbēre, jussī, jussum, to** order, command.
- jūdex, -icis, com. gen. (jūs; dīcc),** a judge, umpire.
- jūdic-ium, -iī, N. (jūdicō),** a judgment, trial, court.
- jū-dīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (jus; dīco),** to judge, determine.
- jūg-ūlum, -i, N., -us, -i, M. (jungo)** (that which joins), that which joins the shoulders and neck; the throat.
- jūg-um, -ī, N. (jungo),** a yoke; team; a summit (of a mountain).
- Jūlius, -iī, M.,** Julius, the name of a Roman gens; especially Gaius Julius Caesar, and his adopted son, Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.
- Jūlius, -iī, M.,** the month of July; so called after Julius Caesar.

nis, F. (jācio), a  
boasting.

e, no perf., no p.p.,  
ive (jacto), to pour  
ently; to make a great

-āvī, -ātum, frequen-  
cio), to throw; talk

ow, already, presently,  
with a negative, as  
no longer.

n., long ago, already,  
time.

F. (jānus), a door,

-a, -um, adj. (jānus),  
nging to January. As  
January.

M., an ancient Latin  
represented with two  
e in front, the other

M. (in pl., also jōca,  
a jest, joke.

of Jūpiter.

M., a king of Numidia.  
ēre, jussī, jussum, to  
ommand.

is, com. gen. (jūs;  
judge, umpire.

, -iī, N. (jūdīco), a  
trial, court.

āre, -āvī, -ātum (jus;  
o judge, determine.

-i, N., -us, -i, M. (jungo)  
nich joins), that which  
e shoulders and neck;

t.

i, N. (jungo), a yoke;  
summit (of a mountain).

i, M., Julius, the name  
oman gens; especially  
Julius Caesar, and his  
son, Gaius Julius Ce-  
sarianus Augustus.

M., the month of July;  
d after Julius Caesar.

Jūlius, -a, -um, adj., of July.

jū-mentum, -ī, N. (jungo), a beast  
of burden.

jungo, jungēre, junxī, junctum,  
to join, harness; sōcietātem  
jungēre, to form a partnership.

jūnior, -us, adj., comparative (jū-  
vénis, 150. 3), younger.

Jū-pīter, see Jūppīter.

Jū-ppīter, Jōvis, M. (121), Jupi-  
ter, son of Saturn, brother and  
husband of Juno, king of gods.

Jūra, -ae, M., a chain of moun-  
tains extending from the Rhine  
to the Rhone.

jūre, abl. of jūs, used adverbially,  
by right, justly.

jūro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to swear,  
take an oath.

jūs, jūris, N., justice, law; court  
of justice (acc. pl. wanting).

jūs-jūrandum, jūris-jurandī, N.  
(121), an oath.

just-ē, adv. (justus), rightly,  
justly.

jūvénis, -is, adj., com. gen. (109.  
N. and 150. 3), young, youthful;  
as subst., jūvénis, -is, com. gen.  
(gen. pl. jūvénium), a young  
man or woman (between 17  
and 45 or 46).

jūven-tūs, -ūtis, F. (jūvénis),  
youth, the season of youth.

jūvo, jūvāre, jūvī, jūtum, to help,  
aid.

juxtā, prep. with acc., near to,  
near; as adv., near by, in like  
manner, alike.

## K.

Kālendāe (Cal-), -ārum, F., Ca-  
lends, the first day of the  
month.

Karthāgō (Car-), -īnis, F., Car-  
thage; a celebrated city of  
Africa.

## L

L, an abbrev. for Lucius.

Lābiēnus, -ī, M., Labienus; an  
officer of Caesar in Gaul, who af-  
terwards went over to Pompey.  
lābōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (lābor),  
to toil, labor.

lāc, lactis, N., milk.

lācer, -ēra, -ērum, adj., torn, mem-  
bered, maimed.

lācesso, -essēre, -essivī, or -essī,  
or -ess<sup>r</sup> -essitum, to provoke,  
excite, assault, attack.

lacrīma, -ae, F., a tear; lacrīmās  
dāre, to weep.

lācus, -ūs, M., a lake.

laedo, laedēre, laesī, laesum, to  
strike, injure; annoy, violate.

laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (lae-  
tus), to feel joy, be glad.

lambo, -ēre, -ī, no p.p., to lick, lap.  
lānio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to rend,  
tear in pieces.

lāpis, -īdis, M., a stone, a stone  
(placed at the end of every 1000  
paces), a mile-stone.

lāqueus, -eī, M., a noose, halter,  
snare.

lāt-ē, adv. (lātus), widely; far  
and wide.

lāt-ēbra, -ae, F., (lāteo), a hiding-  
place, lurking-p e.

lāter, -ēris, M., a brick or tile.

latro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bark,  
yelp; bark at.

latro, -ōnis, M., a robber, highway-  
man.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.

lātus, -ēris, N., the side, flank, body,  
lungs; lātēris or lātērum dō-  
lor, pain in the side, pleurisy.

lā-tus, -a, -um, part. (fēro), borne,  
carried.

laudo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (laus),  
to praise.

laurea, -ae, F., a laurel-tree; lau-  
rel-crown.

- laus, laudis, F.**, *praise, glory*;  
**laudēs, fime.**  
**lĕgā-tiō, -ōnis, F.**, *an embassy, legation.*  
**lĕgā-tus, -ī, M.** (**lĕgo**), *an ambassador, lieutenant, messenger.*  
**lĕg-iō, -ōnis, F.** (**lĕgo**), *a legion*; consisting of between 4200 and 6000 men.  
**lĕgiōn-ārius, -a, -um, adj.** (**lĕgio**), *of or belonging to a legion; legionary.*  
**lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lĕgī, lectum, to gather, select; read.**  
**Lĕmannus, -ī, M.**, Lake Geneva.  
**lĕn-itās, -ātis, F.** (**lĕnis**), *softness, smoothness.*  
**leō, -ōnis, M.**, a lion.  
**lĕx, lĕgis, F.** (**lĕgo**), *law, precept.*  
**lĕbent-er, adv.** (**lĕbens**), *willingly, cheerfully, gladly.*  
**lĕbeo, -ĕre, uī, -itum, to please**;  
**lĕbet, impers.** (**314. 2**), *it pleases, it is agreeable.*  
**lĕber, -ĕra, -ĕrum, adj.**, *free, unrestricted*; in pl., **lĕbĕrī, -ōrum, M.** (the free members of the household), *children.*  
**lĕber, -brī, the inner bark of a tree**; a book (since the bark of a tree was used as material for writing upon).  
**lĕbĕrāl-itās, -ātis, F.** (**lĕbĕrālis**), *generosity, liberality.*  
**lĕbĕr-ĕ, adv.** (**lĕber**), *freely, frankly.*  
**lĕbĕrī, -ōrum, M. pl.** (see **lĕber**).  
**lĕbĕro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (lĕber)**, *to free, liberate, acquit (248).*  
**lĕber-tās, -ātis, F.** (**lĕber**), *freedom, liberty; candor.*  
**lĕber-tus, -ī, M.** (**lĕbĕro**), *a freedman.*  
**lĕbet, lĕbĕre, lĕbuit or lĕbitum est, impers.** (**314. 2**), *it pleases.*  
**lĕceor, -ĕrī, -itus sum, dep., to bid (at an auction).**  
**lĕcet, lĕcĕre, lĕcuit or lĕcĕtum est, impers.** (**314. 2**), *it is allowable, permitted; one may, can*;  
**lĕcet vĕnias, you may come.**  
**lĕc: ˘, conj.** (**206. 4**), *although, though, even if.*  
**lĕc-tor, -ōris, M.** (**lĕgo**), *a victor*; an attendant granted to a magistrate as a sign of official dignity.  
**lĕignum, -ī, N.**, *wood*; pl. *fire-wood.*  
**lĕnĕā-mentum, -ī, N.** (**lĕnea, a line**), *a line*; pl., *drawings, features, linements.*  
**lĕngōnĕs, -um, M.** (acc. pl. **lĕngō-nās**), *a people in Celtic Gaul.*  
**lingua, -ae, F.**, *the tongue; language.*  
**linter, -tris, F.**, *a boat, skiff, wherry.*  
**Liscus, -ī, M.**, **Liscus**, an AEduan chief.  
**littĕra (lĕtĕra), -ae, F.**, *a letter (of the alphabet)*; **littĕrae, pl.**, *an epistle, literature.*  
**lĕtus (littus), -ōris, N.**, *the sea-shore, shore, coast, beach.*  
**lōcus, -ī, M. pl.**, **lōcī or lōca, M. and N.** (**87. N. 2**), *a place.*  
**long-ĕ, adv.** (**longus**), *far off; much, by far (comp. longius; superlative, longissimĕ).*  
**longus, -a, -um, adj.**, *long; tall; distant, tedious.*  
**lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtus sum, dep., to speak.**  
**lūceo, lūcĕre, lūxī, no p. p., to shine, be evident.**  
**Lūcius, -iī, M.**, a Roman name.  
**lū-crum, -ī, N.** (**luo**), *gain.*  
**lūd-ī-crum, -ī, N.**, *sport; show, public games.*  
**lūd-ī-fico, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (lū-dus; fācio)**, *to make sport of; mock.*  
**lūd-ī-ficor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (lūdus; fācio)**, *to make sport of; to mock.*

**licuit** or **licitum** (314. 2), *it is allowed; one may, can; s, you may come.*

**206. 4**), although, *if.*

**M.** (**līgo**), a victor; *ant granted to a as a sign of official*

*wood; pl. fire-wood.*  
**n, -ī, N.** (**līnea**, a *pl.; drawings, feat-ments.*

**a, M.** (acc. pl. **Lingō** *ble in Celtic Gaul.*

**r,** the tongue; lan-

**r,** a boat, skiff,

**Liscus**, an **Ædnan**

**a**), -ae, F., a letter *phabet); littērae, e, literature.*

**-ōris, N.**; the sea- *coast, beach.*

**pl., lōcī** or **lōca**, **87. N. 2**), a place.

**(longus)**, far off; *tr (comp. longius; longissimē).*

**m, adj.**, long; tall; *ous.*

**lōcūtus sum**, dep.,

**e, lūxī**, no p. p., *to dent.*

**, a Roman name.**

**(luo)**, gain.

**ī, N.**, sport; show; *s.*

**re, -āvī, -ātum (lū-** *to make sport of;*

**irī, -ātus sum**, dep. *cio), to make sport*

**lūdo, -dēre, -sī, -sum (lūdus)**, *to play.*

**lūdus, -ī, M.**, a play, game, pas- *time; school; in pl., public games, shows.*

**lūgeo, lūgēre, lūxī**, no p. p., *to lament; mourn for.*

**lūna, -ae, F.** (**lūceo**), (the shin- *ing one), the moon.*

**lūpus, -ī, M.**, a wolf.

**lūsus, -ūs, M.** (**lūdo**), a playing; *sport, amusement, game.*

**lūx, lūcis, F.** (**lūceo**), light, day- *light; prīma lūx, day-break.*

## M.

**M**, as an abbrev. for **Marcus**.

**M**, as an abbrev. for **Mānius**.

**maereo (moer-), -ēre**, no perf., *no p. p., to grieve, lament.*

**māgis**, comp. adv., more, rather.

**māgister, -tī, M.**, *r. master, chief, leader.*

**māgistr-ātus, -ūs, M.** (**māgister**), *a magistracy, office, magistrate.*

**māgnific-ē**, adv. (**māgnificus**), *nobly, magnificently, splendidly, richly (comp. māgnificentius; superlative, māgnificentissī- mē).*

**māgnī-ficus, -a, -um, adj.** (comp. **māgnificentior**; superlative, **māgnificentissimus**), (**māgnus; fācio**), noble, grand.

**māgnītūdo, -inis, F.** (**māgnus**), *greatness, size, bulk.*

**māgnus, -a, -um, adj.** (comp. **mā- jor**; superlative, **māximus**), *great, large (149. 4); nātū mājor, greater in birth, older.*

**Maius, -ī, M.**, the month of **May**.

**mājōrēs, -rum, M. pl.** (**mājor**), *ancestors.*

**māl-e**, adv. (comp. **pējus**; super- *lative, pessimē*), (**mālus**), *badly.*

**mālē-dīco, -dīcēre, -dīxī, -dic- tum**, *to speak ill of, revile (193. 2).*

**mālē-fic-ium, -iī, N.**, *evil deed, crime.*

**mā-lo, malle, māluī**, no p. p., *irreg. (294), (māgis; vōlo), to wish rather, prefer.*

**mālum, -ī, N.** (**mālus**), *evil, misfor- tune, calamity, damage.*

**mālus, -a, -um, adj.** (comp. **pē- jor**; superlative, **pessimus**), *evil, wicked (149. 4).*

**mandā-tum, -ī, N.** (**mando**), a *charge, order, commission.*

**man-dō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (mā- nus; dō)**, *to commit into one's hands, to command.*

**māneo, mānēre, mansī, man- sum**, *to stay, remain, stop; wait for, await.*

**mānifestus, -a, -um, adj.**, clear, *plain, evident, manifest.*

**mānus, -ūs, F.**, a hand; band (of *troops), force (174).*

**Marcellus, -ī, M.**, **Marcellus**, a *Roman name.*

**Mārcus, -ī, M.**, a Roman name.

**māre, -is, N.**, the sea; **māre inter- num**, the **Mediterranean**.

**mār-ītimus, -a, -um, adj.**, of or *belonging to the sea; maritime; cō- piae mārītimae, naval forces.* As noun, **mārītīma, -ōrum, N. pl.**, places on the sea-coast.

**Mārius, -iī, M.**, **Gaius Marius** (157-86 B.C.); the conqueror of Jugurtha, and chief of the popular party at Rome. He was consul seven times.

**Mārs, -tis, M.**, the fabled father of Romulus; the god of war, of husbandry, of shepherds and seers.

**Mārtius, -a, -um, adj.** (**Mārs**), of *Mars; of or belonging to March.*

**Mārtius, -iī, M.**, the month of **March**.



- māter**, -tris, F., a mother; **māter-fāmi-liās**, or **māter-fāmi-liāe**, the mistress of a house (121).
- mātr-īmōnium**, -iī, N. (māter), wedlock, marriage; in **mātri-mōnium dūcere**, to marry (used only of a man marrying a woman).
- mātr-ōna**, -ae, F. (māter), a married woman, wife, matron.
- Mātrōna**, -ae, M., a river in Gaul (now the *Marne*).
- mātūr-ē**, adv. (mātūrus), early, speedily, quickly (comp. **mātūrius**; superlative, **mātūrimē** and **mātūrimē**).
- mātūr-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (mātūrus), to make ripe, ripen; hasten.
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj., ripe, mature; excellent; seasonable.
- māxīm-ē** (maxīm-), adv. (māximus), in the highest degree; very; mostly, chiefly.
- māximus**, -a, -um, adj., superlative of **māgnus**, greatest.
- Māximus**, -ī, M., a Roman name.
- mē-cum**, with me (230. 3).
- mēdiocrīter**, adv., moderately.
- mēdium**, -iī, N., the middle, midst; the presence or sight; **ē mēdiō tollere**, to put out of the way.
- mēdius**, -a, -um, adj., middle, mid; half way; intervening, intermediate.
- membrum**, -ī, N., a limb; division.
- mēmīnī**, -isse, N., def. (305. Obs. 3), to remember, recollect.
- mēmōr**, -ōris, adj., mindful.
- mēmōrā-bilis**, -e, adj. (mēmōro), memorable; worthy of mention.
- mend-āx**, -ācis, false, deceitful.
- mēns**, **mentis**, F., the mind, understanding, intellect, reason.
- mēnsa**, -ae, F., a table: (that which is put on table), food.
- mēnsis**, -is, M., a month.
- mentior**, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., to lie.
- mercā-tor**, -ōris, M. (mercor), a trader, merchant.
- mer-cēs**, -ēdis, F. (merx), hire, wages, salary; bribe.
- mergo**, **mergere**, **mersī**, **mersum**, immerse; sink, overwhelm; destroy.
- mēri-diēs**, -ēi, M. (mēdius; diēs) (175. 2), midday, noon; the south.
- mēr-ītus**, -a, -um, part. (mēreor), deserving.
- mēti-or**, **mētīrī**, **mensus sum**, dep., to measure, deal out (ratios).
- mētor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to measure, mark off.
- Mettius**, -iī, M., a Roman name.
- mētuo**, **mētūere**, **mētui**, no p. p., (mētus), to fear; be afraid.
- me-us**, -a, -um, pron. possessive (mē) (vocative sing. masc., **mī**, rarely **meus**), my, mine, belonging to me.
- mīgro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to depart, migrate, go away.
- mīles**, -itis, com. gen., a soldier, a foot-soldier.
- Milētus**, -ī, M., a city of Caria in Asia Minor.
- mīlia**, -ium, N. pl., see mille.
- mīlit-āris**, -e, adj. (mīles), of or belonging to a soldier or the soldiers; military; **rēs mīlitāris**, military science.
- mīlit-ia**, -ae, F. (mīlito), military service; warfare.
- mīlle** (mīle), numeral adj. indecl., a thousand (213. 2). As nom., used only in the nom. and acc. sing. (mīlle), and in pl. N., **mīlia** (millia), -ium, a thousand; followed by the partitive gen., as **mīlia pas-suum**, a thousand paces, one mile.
- mill-ies** (-iens), adv. (mille), a thousand times.

**ssum**, dep., *tolie*.  
**M.** (**mercor**), a  
 t.  
 f. (**merx**), *hire*,  
*bribe*.  
**ē**, **mersī**, **mer-**  
**sink**; *overwhelm*;  
 (**mēdius**; **diēs**)  
*y, noon*; *the south*.  
 part. (**mēreor**),  
**mensusum**,  
*deal out* (*ra-*  
**s sum**, dep., *to*  
*off*.  
 a Roman name.  
**mētūi**, no p. p.,  
*be afraid*.  
 pron. possessive  
 sing. masc., **mī**,  
*my, mine, belong-*  
**ātum**, *to de-*  
*away*.  
 gen., *a soldier*,  
 city of Caria in  
 ., see **mille**.  
 . (**mīles**), *of or*  
*soldier or the*  
*y; rēs militā-*  
*ence*.  
**mīlito**, *military*  
 e.  
 numeral adj. in-  
 l (213. 2). As  
 y in the nom.  
**mille**), and in  
**millia**), -ium,  
 followed by the  
 as **milia pas-**  
*ud paces, one*  
 udv. (**mille**), a

**Milō**, -ōnis, *Milo*, a friend of  
 Cicero.  
**mīnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to*  
*jut forth*; *threaten, menace*.  
**mīnor**, -us, adj. comp. (**parvus**),  
*less*. As noun, **mīnōrēs**, -um,  
 com. gen. pl., *descendants*.  
**minuo**, -uēre, -uī, -ūtum, *to les-*  
*sen, diminish, lower, reduce*; *to*  
*grow less*.  
**minus**, adv., *less*; **sī minus**, *if*  
*not* (**pārum**, **minus**, **mīnimē**).  
**mīror**, -rārī, -rātus sum, dep., *to*  
*admire*; *to wonder at* (279. 2).  
**mīr-us**, -a, -um, adj. (**mīror**),  
*wonderful, extraordinary*.  
**mīser**, -ēra, -ērum, adj., *wretched*,  
*unfortunate*; *sick, ill*.  
**mīser-eor**, -ērī, -itus or -ertus  
 sum, dep. (**mīser**), *to pity, feel*  
*pity for, commiserate*.  
**mīserē-sco**, -scēre, no perf., no  
 p. p., inch. (**mīserēo**), *to feel*  
*pity, have compassion for*.  
**mīseret**, **mīserēre**, **mīserītum**,  
 impers. (314. 2), *it distresses*,  
*stirs pity*; **mīseret mē**, *I pity*.  
**Mīthridātēs**, -is, M., *Mithridates*  
*the Great*, king of Pontus,  
 who waged war with the Ro-  
 mans, and, being at last con-  
 quered by Pompeius, stabbed  
 himself.  
**mōdo**, adv., *only, merely*; *at all*;  
*just now*; **mōdo . . . mōdo**,  
*now . . . now, at one moment*  
*. . . at another*; **nōn mōdo . . .**  
**sed etiam**, *not only . . . but*  
*also*; **mōdo**, with the subjunc-  
 tive mood, *if only, provided*  
*that*.  
**mōdus**, -ī, M., *a measure or stand-*  
*ard*; *bounds, limits, end*; *way*,  
*manner, method, mode*; **ad mō-**  
**dum**, in **mōdum**, with the  
 gen., *after the manner of*; *like*;  
**mōdō flūmīnis**, *like a river*;  
**hunc in mōdum**, *after this*  
*fashion*; **nūllō mōdō**, *by no*  
*means*.  
**moenia**, -ium, N. pl., *defensive*  
*walls, city walls*; *fortifications*.  
**mōlēs**, -is, F., *a mass, molē*; *dam*;  
*difficulty*.  
**mōlestus**, -a, -um, adj., *trouble-*  
*same, irksome, annoying*.  
**mōlo**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to grind*.  
**mōneo**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to admon-*  
*ish, warn*; *punish*; *teach*.  
**mōn-s**, **montis**, M., *a mountain*.  
**monstro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**mon-**  
**strum**), *to show, point out*.  
**mon-strum**, -ī, N. (**mōneo**), *a*  
*divine omen*; *a monster*.  
**mōra**, -ae, F., *a delay*; *obstacle*.  
**morb-us**, -ī, M., *a sickness, disease*;  
*affliction*.  
**mordeo**, **mordēre**, **mōmordī**  
 (**mēmordī**), **morsum**, *to bite*;  
*hurt*.  
**mōrior**, **mōrī** (**mōrīrī**), **mortuus**  
 sum, dep. (fut. part., **mōrītū-**  
**rus**), *to die, decay*.  
**mōror**, -ārī, **ātus sum**, dep. (**mō-**  
**ra**), *to tarry, stay, loiter*; *hinder*.  
**mor-s**, **mortis**, F. (**mōrior**), *death*.  
**mōs**, **mōris**, M., *usage, custom*; in  
 pl., *customs, character*; **ex mōre**,  
*according to custom*.  
**mō-tus**, -ūs, M. (**mōveo**), *a mov-*  
*ing*.  
**mōveo**, **mōvēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**,  
*to move, set in motion*; *take away*,  
*remove*; *influence*; **arma mō-**  
**vēre**, *to take arms*; **bellum**  
**mōvēre**, *to undertake war*.  
**mox**, adv., *presently, soon, directly*;  
*afterwards, then*.  
**mūlier**, -iēris, F., *a woman, female*.  
**mult-ītūdo**, -dīnis, F. (**multus**),  
*a great number, multitude*; *a*  
*crowd*.  
**mult-ō**, adv. (**multus**), *much, far*;  
*by far, by much*; **multō post** or  
**ante**, *long after or before*.  
**multus**, -a, -um, adj. (comp.

**plūs**; superlative, **plūrimus**),  
*much, many* (149. 4).  
**mundus, -ī, m.**, *the universe; the  
world, the earth.*  
**mūn-io, -īre, -īvī** or **-īī, -ītum**  
(**moenia**), *to fortify, build.*  
**mūnī-tiō, -ōnis, f.** (**mūnio**), *a  
fortification, rampart.*  
**mūrus, -ī, m.**, *a wall.*  
**mūs, -ūris, com. gen.**, *a mouse.*  
**musca, -ae, f.**, *a fly.*  
**mū-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.**  
(**mōveo**), *to change; exchange*  
(304).

## N.

**nac-tus, -a, -um, part.** (**nancis-  
cor**), *having obtained.*  
**nam, conj.**, *for* (205. 5).  
**nam-que, conj.**, *for, for indeed,  
for truly.*  
**nanc-iscor, nanciscī, nactus** or  
**nactus sum, dep.**, *to get, re-  
ceive; find.*  
**nāns, -antis, part.** of **no.**  
**narro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to tell,**  
*relate, narrate, recount.*  
**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep.**,  
*to be born* (248. 3).  
**nā-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (no), to**  
*swim.*  
**nā-tūra, -ae, f.** (**nascor**), *nature;  
disposition, character; nātūrā,*  
*naturally.*  
**nauta (nāvīta), -ae, m.**, *a sailor,  
seaman.*  
**nāv-īcūla, -ae, f., dim. (nāvis),**  
*a small vessel; boat, skiff.*  
**nāvīg-ium, -īī, n. (nāvīgo), a**  
*sailing; vessel, ship, boat.*  
**nāvis, -is, f. (acc., nāvem** or  
**nāvīm; abl., nāve** or **nāvī**), *a  
ship; nāvis longa, a ship of  
war.*  
**nē, adv. and conj.**, 1. **adv.**, *not, no;*  
**nē . . . quīdem, not even** (the  
word or phrase emphasized

always between the **nē** and  
**quīdem**); 2. **conj.**, *that not, lest;*  
*in final clauses, that not, lest;*  
*with verbs of fearing, that or  
lest* (321. 2 & 278. 1 (1)).

**-ne, interrog. and enclitic particle,**  
*whether* (in direct questions **ne**  
is not to be translated, except  
by laying emphasis upon the  
word to which it is joined).

**nec, see nēque.**

**nēcessāri-ō, adv. (nēcēr ārius),**  
*necessarily, unavoidably.*

**nē-ces-se, neut. adj.** (found only  
in nom. and acc. sing.) (**nē;**  
**cēdo**), *unavoidable, necessary.*

**nēcess-ītās, -ātis, f. (nēcēsse),**  
*necessity; force.*

**nēcēss-ītūdo, -īnis, f. (nēcēsse),**  
*closely bound; intimacy; close  
relationship.*

**nec-ne, conj.**, *or not.*

**nēco, -āre, -āvī(-uī), -ātum, to kill.**

**nē-dum, conj.**, *by no means, much  
less; not to say, much more.*

**nē-fās, n. indecl.**, *that which is  
unlawful* (267).

**nēg-līgo, -līgēre, -lēxī, -lectum**  
(**nec; lēgo**), *to neglect, disre-  
gard.*

**nēgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to say  
no; deny, refuse.**

**nēg-ōtium -īī, n. (nec; ōtium),**  
*a business, occupation; diffi-  
culty; matter; nullō nēgōtīō,*  
*without trouble.*

**nē-mō** (in place of gen. **nēmīnis,**  
**nullīus** is used; in place of abl.  
**nēmīne, nullō, m.**, or **nullā,**  
**f.**, is used), **m. and f. (nē;**  
**hōmo), no one, nobody; nēmō**  
**nōn, every body, all; nōn nē-**  
**mō, some.**

**nēpos, -ōtis, m. and f., a grand-  
son, a grand-daughter, a nephew.**

**nē-que** or **nec, conj.**, *and not;*  
**nēque (nec) . . . nēque (nec),**  
*neither . . . nor.*

the **nō** and  
j., *that not, lest*;  
that *not, lest*;  
earing, *that or*  
**8. 1** (1)).

clitic particle,  
t questions **ne**  
olated, except  
asis upon the  
is joined).

**nēcer ārius**),  
idibly.

j. (found only  
e. sing.) (**nē**;  
ble, necessary.

f. (**nēcesse**),

s, f. (**nēcesse**),  
intimacy; close

at.  
-**ātum**, to kill.  
na means, *much*  
much more.  
that which is

-**lēxi**, -**lectum**  
neglect, disre-

-**ātum**, to say

**nec**; **ōtium**),  
upation; diffi-  
ullō **nēgōtiō**,

gen. **nēmīnis**,  
in place of abl.  
m., or **nūllā**,  
and f. (**nē**;  
nobody; **nēmō**  
all; **nōn nē-**

nd f., a grand-  
ghter, a nephew.  
onj., and *not*;  
**nēque** (**nec**),

**nē quis**, -**qua**, -**quod** or (subst.)  
-**quid**, indef. pron., *lest any,*  
*that no one* (246).

**Nerviī**, -**ōrum**, m., *The Nerviī*, a  
people of Belgic Gaul.

**ne-scio**, -**scīre**, -**scīvī** or -**scīf**,  
-**scītum**, *not to know, to be*  
*ignorant of.*

**neuter**, **neutra**, **neutrum** (gen.  
**neutrius**), *neither* (209).

**nē-ve** (**neue**), and *not, nor*; **neve**  
. . . **neve**, *neither . . . nor.*

**nex**, **nēcīs**, f. (**nēco**), *death,*  
*murder, slaughter.*

**nī**, conj., *if not, unless* (326).

**nīger**, -**gra**, -**grum**, adj., *black,*  
*dark, dusky.*

**nīhil** (**nīl**), n., indecl., *nothing,*  
*not at all*; **nīhil hābeo quod.**  
*I have no reason that*; **nōn nī-**  
**hil**, *something*; **nīhilōmius**,  
*nevertheless.*

**nīhil-đum**, adv., *nothing as yet.*

**nīhilō**, adv. (with comparatives),  
*by nothing, no*; **nīhilō mājor**,  
*no greater.*

**nīhilōmius**, adv., see **nīhil.**

**nīl**, see **nīhil.**

**nī-si**, conj., *if not, unless* (326).

**nītor**, **nītī**, **nīsus** or **nīxus sum**,  
dep., *to rest upon, rely upon*; *to*  
*strive, endeavor.*

**nīx**, **nīvis**, f., *snow* (121).

**no**, **nāre**, **nāvī**, no p. p., *to swim,*  
*float.*

**nō-bīlis**, -e, adj. (**gnosco**), *that*  
*can be known*; *famous, noble.*

**nōbīl-itās**, -**ātis**, f. (**nōbīlis**),  
*celebrity, fame*; *the nobility,*  
*nobles.*

**nōceo**, -**ēre**, -**uī**, -**itum** (with  
dat.), *to harm, hurt, injure.*

**noctū**, abl. (used adverbially),  
*by night.*

**nōlo**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, irreg. (**non**;  
**vōlo**) (294), *not to wish, be*  
*unwilling.*

**nō-men**, -**inis**, n. (**nosco**), a

*name*; *renown*; **nōmen hā-**  
**bēre**, *to be famous.*

**nōmīnā-tim**, adv. (**nōmīno**), *by*  
*name, expressly.*

**nōmīno**, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** (**nō-**  
**men**), *to name*; *nominate.*

**nōn**, adv., *not, na.*

**Nōnae**, -**ārum**, f. (**nōnus**), *the*  
*Nones*; *the fifth day in every*  
*month of the year, except*  
*March, May, July, and Octo-*  
*ber, in which it was the seventh.*  
*So called because it was the*  
*ninth day before the Ides.*

**nōn-đum**, adv., *not yet.*

**nōn-ne**, interrog. particle (91. 1.  
b), *not?*

**nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, adj., *some,*  
*several.* As noun, **nōnnūllī**,  
-**ōrum**, m. pl., *persons, several.*  
**nōn-nunquam** (-**numquam**),  
adv., *sometimes, occasionally.*

**nō-nus**, -a, -um, adj. (**nōvem**),  
*the ninth.* As noun, **nōna**,  
-ae, f., *the ninth hour of the*  
*day, i. e., the third hour before*  
*sunset, at which hour business*  
*was ended at Rome.*

**nōs**, **nōstrum** or **nōstrī**, pl. of  
**ēgo**, *we* (239. 1).

**nōsco** (**gnōsco**), **nōscēre**, **nōvī**,  
**nōtum**, *to become acquainted*  
*with*; *learn*; **nōvī**, perf. with  
pres. meaning, *I know*; **nōvēr-**  
**am**, *I knew* (305. Obs. 2).

**nōs-ter**, -**tra**, -**trum**, possess.  
pron. (**nōs**), *our, our own, ours*  
(231); in pl., **nōstrī**, -**ōrum**,  
m., *our men, our troops.*

**nōto**, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** (**nōta**),  
*to mark, indicate*; *designate.*

**nō-tus**, -a, -um, part. (**nōsco**),  
*known.*

**nōvem**, num. indecl. adj., *nine.*

**Nōvem-ber**, -**bris**, m. (**nōvem**),  
*November*; *the ninth month of*  
*the old Roman year (which*  
*began in March).*

- Novembris**, -e, adj., of *November*.  
**nōvī**, see **nōsco**.  
**nōvus**, -a, -um, adj., *new; recent, strange; nōvae rēs, revolution; the comparative of this adj. is wanting, superlative nōvissimus, latest, last; nōvissimum āgmen, the rear.*
- nox**, **noctis**, F., *night; darkness.*  
**nūbēs**, -is, F., *a cloud.*  
**nūbo**, **nūbēre**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum** (**nūbes**), *to veil one's self, marry (used only of a woman marrying a man, and governs the dative), see mātrīmōnium.*
- nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. (**nē; ūllus**) (**209**), *not any, none, no.*
- num**, interrog. particle (**91. 1. c**), *whether?*
- nūmēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**nūmērus**), *to count, number; esteem.*
- nūmērus**, -ī, M., *a number; a multitude.*
- Nūmīdia**, -ae, F., *a country of northern Africa (now Algeria).*
- Nūmītor**, -ōris, M., *a king of Alba, brother of Amulius and grandfather of Romulus and Remus.*
- numquam** (**nunquam**), adv. (**ne; umquam**), *at no time, never; nōn nunquam, sometimes.*
- nunquam**, see **numquam**.
- nuntio** (**nuncio**), -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**nuntius**), *to announce, declare.*
- nuntius** (-cius), -ī, M., *a messenger; news, tidings.*
- nūper**, adv. (**nōvus**), *recently.*
- O.**
- Ō**, interj., *O! oh!*
- ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of, for; quam ob rem, wherefore, accordingly.*
- ōb-aer-ātus**, -a, -um, adj. (**ob; aes**), *involved in debt. As noun, ōbaerātus, -ī, M., a debtor.*
- ōb-ēdio**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītum (**ob; audio**) (with dat.), *to give ear to; obey.*
- ōb-eo**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītum, *to go towards, meet, die.*
- ob-īcio** (pronounced **ob-jīcio**), -jīcere, -jēcī, -jectum (**ob; jācio**), *to cast in the way; reproach.*
- oblītus**, -a, -um, part. (**oblīviscor**), *having forgotten; forgetful.*
- oblīviscor**, **oblīviscī**, **oblītus sum**, dep., *to forget.*
- ob-nōxius**, -a, -um, adj. (**ob; nōxa**), *frail; liable; obedient.*
- ob-ruo**, -ruēre, -ruī, -rūtum, *to overwhelm; crush.*
- ob-sēcro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**ob; sācra**), *to beseech, supplicate.*
- obses**, -īdis, M. and F., *a hostage.*
- ob-sīgno**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to seal, seal up; attest.*
- ob-sisto**, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum, *to oppose, hinder, obstruct.*
- ob-sto**, -stāre, -stītī, *to stand against, oppose, hinder.*
- ob-stringo**, -stringēre, -strinxī, -strictum, *to bind.*
- ob-tīneo**, -tīnēre, -tīnūī, -tentum (**ob; tēneo**), *to hold, possess, occupy; last.*
- ob-trecto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**ob; tracto**), *to disparage; injure, thwart.*
- ob-vius**, -a, -um, adj. (**ob; via**), *meeting, in the way, so as to meet; obvium īre ālicuī, to meet one.*
- ob-volvo**, -volvēre, -volvī, -vōlūtum, *to wrap around, muffle up; cover, disguise.*
- occā-sus**, -ūs, M. (**occīdo**), *a fall, setting; death, overthrow.*
- oc-cīdo**, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cīsum



optimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *bōnus*), *best*.  
 ōpus, -ēris, N., *work, labor, task*.  
 ōpus, N. indecl. (308. Obs. 2), *that which is necessary, need*.  
 As adj., *needful, necessary*.  
 ōra, -ae, F., *a border, coast, shore, region, district*.  
 ōrā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (ōro), *a speaking, speech; oration*.  
 ōrā-tor, -ōris, M. (ōro), *a speaker, orator, ambassador*.  
 ōrbis, -is, M., *a circle; orbis terrārum, the whole world, the globe; (in war) a hollow square*.  
 orbis, -a, -um, adj., *deprived, bereft*.  
 ōrdō, -inis, M. (ordior), *an arranging, rank, line; ordine, ex ordine, in ordinem, in order, in turn; extrā ordinem, out of order, irregularly; ordo ēquester, the equestrian order, the knights*.  
 Orgētōrix, -igis, M., *Orgetorix, a Helvetian noble*.  
 ōri-ēns, -entis, part. (ōrior), *rising*. As noun, M., *the east; the rising sun*.  
 ōrior, ōrī (ōrīrī), ortus sum, dep. (248. 3), *to arise, originate from; to begin*.  
 ornā-mentum, -ī, N. (orno), *an ornament, decoration, equipment; in pl., jewels*.  
 ornā-tus, -a, -um, part. (orno), *adorned, ornamented*.  
 ōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ōs), *speak, espec., to pray, beseech*.  
 ōs, ōris, N., *the mouth, the face, countenance; speech*.  
 os-tendo, -tendēre, -tendī, -tensum or tentum (ob; tendo), *to show, display; declare; praemia ostendēre, to offer rewards*.  
 ōtium, -iī, N., *leisure, freedom from business; quiet*.

ōvis, -is, F., *a sheep*.  
 ōvo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to exult, rejoice, triumph in an oration*.  
 ōvum, -ī, N. (āvis) (belonging to a bird), *an egg*.

## P.

P., an abbreviation of *Publius*.  
 pā-bŭlum, -ī, N. (pasco), *food (for animals); fodder*.  
 Pādus, -ī, M., the *Po*.  
 paene, adv., *nearly, almost*.  
 paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, no p. p., impers. (314. 2), *it repents, with acc. of person and gen. of thing, or infinitive in place of thing; paenitet mē factī, I repent of the action; paenitet mē fēcisse, I repent having done it*.  
 pāgus, -ī and -ūs, M., *a canton, rillage*.  
 pālam, adv., *openly, publicly; as prep. with abl., before, in the presence of*.  
 pall-īdus, -a, -um (palleo), *pale*.  
 pālūdāmentum, -ī, N., *a military cloak*.  
 pā-lus, -ī, M., *a stake, prop, pale, to spread out, extend, throw open; passis crīnibus, with dishevelled hair*.  
 pango, pangēre, pēgī, (panxī, pēpīgī) pactum (panctum), *to fasten, fix in; settle*.  
 pānis, -is, M., *bread, loaf*.  
 pār, pāris, adj. (gen. pl., pārium), *equal, equal to; as subst., pār, pāris, M., a match for; also pār, pāris, N., a pair*.  
 parco, parcēre, pēpercī (parsī), no p. p., *to spare*.  
 parcus, -a, -um, adj., *sparing, frugal, thrifty*.  
 pār-ēns, -entis, M. and F. (gen.

pl., *pārentum* and *pārentium*)  
*(pārio)*, a parent; father, mother.

*pāreo*, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., to appear, obey (with dat.).

*pārio*, *pārēre*, *pēpērī*, *partum*, to procure; bring forth, lay, beget.

*pārtar*, adv. (*pār*), equally, in like manner, as well.

*pāro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to procure, prepare, provide.

*pars*, *partis*, F., a part, portion; party; *ex omni parte*, in all respects; *nūllā ex parte*, in no respect.

*partus*, -ūs, M. (*pārio*), a bearing, birth; offspring.

*parvūlus*, -a, -um, adj. dim. (*parvus*), very small, petty, slight; young. As noun, *parvūlus*, -ī, M., a little boy; *parvūla*, -ae, F., a little girl.

*parvus*, -a, -um, adj. (comp. *mīnor*, superl. *minimus*), small, little (149. 4).

*pas-sus*, -ūs, M. (*pando*), a step, pace; pace (as measure of length, consisting of five Roman feet); *mille passuum*, a thousand steps, one mile.

*pās-tor*, -ōris, M. (*pasco*), a feeder, shepherd.

*pāter*, -tris, M., a father.

*pāter-fāmiliās*, *patris-fāmiliās*, M., a father of a family, master of a household.

*pāti-ēns*, -entis, part. (*pātiōr*), suffering, patient; unyielding; *pātiēns ōneris*, able to bear a burden.

*pātiōr*, *pātī*, *passus sum*, dep., to bear, suffer, allow.

*pātr-ia*, -ae, F. (*pāter*), fatherland, native country, native place.

*pātr-īcius*, -a, -um, adj. (*pāter*), patrician, noble.

*pātr-īmōnium*, -iī, N. (*pāter*), an estate inherited from a father; *patrimony*; fortune.

*paucus*, -a, -um, adj., few, some (generally plural); *pauca* or *paucī*, -ōrum, a few words; a few persons, etc.

*paulō*, adv. (*paulus*), by a little, a little, somewhat.

*paulus* (*paullus*), -a, -um, adj., little, small.

*pauper*, -ēris, adj., poor, needy (comp. *paupērior*, superl. *pauperrimus*).

*pauper-tās*, -ātis, F. (*pauper*), poverty.

*pāx*, *pācis*, F. (that which binds), peace; favor; *pāce tuā*, with your permission.

*pēcū-nia*, -ae, F. (*pēcus*, -ūdis), money, riches, wealth.

*pēcus*, -ōris, N., a herd, flock; cattle.

*pēd-es*, -ītis, M. (*pes*; *eo*) (one that goes on foot), a foot-soldier; infantry.

*pējor*, -us, adj. (comp. of *mālus*), worse.

*pellis*, -is, F., a skin, hide; a garment (made of skin).

*pello*, *pellēre*, *pēpūlī*, *pulsum*, to strike; expel.

*pendeo*, *pendēre*, *pēpendī*, *pen-sum*, to hang, be suspended.

*per*, prep. with acc., through, during, by means of.

*pēr-āgo*, -āgēre, -ēgī, -actum, to finish, complete.

*pēr-āgro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*per*; *āger*), to lead through; finish; (with *concilium*) hold.

*per-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-tum (*per*; *cāpio*), to take in, learn; (of harvests) to gather; seize.

*percunctā-tiō* (*contātiō*), -ōnis, F. (*percunctor*), an inquiring of; an inquiry.

*per-dūco*, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum, to lead through, conduct; draw out, extend.

*per-āgo*, -āgēre, -ēgī, -actum, to finish, complete.

*pēr-āgro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*per*; *āger*), to lead through; finish; (with *concilium*) hold.

*per-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-tum (*per*; *cāpio*), to take in, learn; (of harvests) to gather; seize.

*percunctā-tiō* (*contātiō*), -ōnis, F. (*percunctor*), an inquiring of; an inquiry.

*per-dūco*, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum, to lead through, conduct; draw out, extend.

*per-āgo*, -āgēre, -ēgī, -actum, to finish, complete.

*pēr-āgro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*per*; *āger*), to lead through; finish; (with *concilium*) hold.

*per-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-tum (*per*; *cāpio*), to take in, learn; (of harvests) to gather; seize.

*percunctā-tiō* (*contātiō*), -ōnis, F. (*percunctor*), an inquiring of; an inquiry.

*per-dūco*, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum, to lead through, conduct; draw out, extend.

*per-āgo*, -āgēre, -ēgī, -actum, to finish, complete.

*pēr-āgro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*per*; *āger*), to lead through; finish; (with *concilium*) hold.

*per-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-tum (*per*; *cāpio*), to take in, learn; (of harvests) to gather; seize.

*percunctā-tiō* (*contātiō*), -ōnis, F. (*percunctor*), an inquiring of; an inquiry.



- pērēgrīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., *to travel about or in foreign lands.*
- per-eo, -īre, -iī (-ivī)**, no p. p., irr. (to go through), *to perish, die.*
- per-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum**, irr., *to carry through, convey; accomplish; suffer, endure.*
- per-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum** (per; **fācio**), *to make (completely); finish; effect.*
- per-fringo, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractum** (per; **frango**), *to break through; to shatter.*
- pērīcūl-ōsus, -a, -um**, adj. (**pērīcūlum**), *full of peril; dangerous.*
- pērīcūlum (-clum), -ī**, N. (**pērīor**, obsolete), *a trial; risk, danger.*
- pērī-tus, -a, -um**, adj. (**pērīor**, obsolete), *experienced, skillful.*
- per-māgnus, -a, -um**, adj., *very great, very large.*
- per-mitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum**, *to let through; permit.*
- per-mōveo, -mōvere, -mōvī, -mōtum**, *to move deeply.*
- pernic-iēs, -eī** (also **-iī**), F. (**per-nēco**), *destruction, ruin, overthrow.*
- per-paucus, -a, -um**, adj., *very little, very few.*
- per-pētior, -pētī, -pessus sum**, dep. (per; **pātor**), *to endure.*
- perpētū-ō**, adv. (**perpētūus**), *constantly, perpetually.*
- perpētū-um**, adv. (**perpētūus**), *forever, perpetually.*
- perpētūus, -a, -um**, adj., *continuing; constant, lasting.*
- per-saepe**, adv., *very often.*
- per-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus sum**, dep., *to follow after; pursue.*
- persēvēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**persēvērus**), *to persist, persevere (in anything).*
- per-solvo, -solvere, -solvī, -sōlūtum**, *to pay (fully), render.*
- per-stringo, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum**, *to bind, firmly, fasten; seize; wound slightly; censure.*
- per-suādeo, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsūm**, *to convince, persuade.*
- per-terreo, -terrere, -terrū, -territum**, *to frighten or terrify thoroughly.*
- pertināc-ia, -ae**, F. (**pertīnax**), *perseverance, obstinacy.*
- pertināc-iter**, adv. (**pertīnax**), *firmly, stubbornly.*
- per-tineo, -tinere, -tīnūī**, no p. p. (per; **tēneo**), *to stretch, extend; have reference to.*
- per-turbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to confuse utterly; to disturb.*
- per-venio, -venire, -venī, -ventum** (to come through to), *to arrive at, reach.*
- pēs, pēdis**, M., *the foot; pēdibus, on foot.*
- pessimus, -a, -um**, adj. (superl. of **mālus**), *worst.*
- pestis, -is**, F., *a plague, pest.*
- pēto, pētēre, pētīvī, pētītum**, *to aim at, go to; hence, to ask (185. 2).*
- phālaux, -angis**, F., *a band of soldiers, phalanx.*
- Pharnācēs, -is**, M., king of Pontus, defeated by Caesar.
- Pharsāl-icus, -a, -um**, adj. (**Pharsālus**), *of Pharsalus, Pharsalian.*
- pi-ētās, -ātis**, F., (**pius**), *piety; love, gratitude.*
- pīget, pīgēre, pīguit and pīgītum est**, impers. (314. 2), *it vexes, annoys, troubles; pīget mē ālicūjus rei, I dislike a thing.*
- pīlum, -ī**, N., *a javelin (a heavy javelin of the Roman infantry, which they hurled at the enemy at the beginning of an action, and then used their swords).*
- pinguis, -e**, adj., *fat, fertile; stupid.*

tringere, -strinxī.  
 bind firmly, fasten;  
 slightly; censure.  
 suadere, -suāsī,  
 convince, persuade.  
 terrere, -terrūi, -ter-  
 rify or terrify  
 e, F. (pertinax),  
 obstinacy.  
 adv. (pertinax),  
 only.  
 ere, -tinuī, no p. p.  
 ), to stretch, extend;  
 e to.  
 e, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 y; to disturb.  
 nire, -vēnī, -ven-  
 ne through to), to  
 ch.  
 the foot; pēdibus,  
 -um, adj. (superl.  
 worst.  
 a plague, pest.  
 ētīvī, pētītum, to  
 o; hence, to ask  
 s, F., a band of sol-  
 r.  
 M., king of Pontus,  
 Cæsar.  
 -a, -um, adj.  
 ), of Pharsalus,  
 F., (pius), piety;  
 e.  
 pīguīt and pīgī-  
 pers. (314. 2), it  
 troubles; pīget mē  
 I dislike, a thing.  
 javelin (a heavy  
 Roman infantry,  
 hurled at the enemy  
 during of an action,  
 and their swords).  
 adj., fat, fertile;

pīrāta, -ae, M., a sea-robber, pirate.  
 plāceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to please;  
 plācet, impers. (314. 2), it  
 pleases.  
 plāga, -ae, F., a blow, stroke.  
 plān-itiēs, -iēi (-ae), F. (plānus),  
 level ground, plain.  
 plēbs, plēbis, F. (pleo), the com-  
 mon people.  
 plē-nus, -a, -um, adj. (pleo, to  
 fill), full, filled; complete.  
 plū-rimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl.  
 of multus), very much; most;  
 as adv., plūrimum, mostly.  
 plūs, plūris, adj. (comp. of mul-  
 tus), more. As noun in pl.,  
 plūres, -ium, M., several.  
 plūs, adv., more, too much.  
 poena, -ae, F., punishment, pen-  
 alty; poenās dare, to pay the  
 penalty, be punished; poenās  
 sūmere, to inflict punishment.  
 poen-itet, see paenitet.  
 poēta, -ae, M., a poet.  
 pol-liceor, -licēri, -licītus sum,  
 dep. (pōr-; liceor), to offer,  
 promise.  
 pompa, -ae, F., a procession;  
 suite, retinue; parade, pomp.  
 Pompēi-ānus, -a, -um, adj.  
 (Pompēius), of Pompey, Pom-  
 peian.  
 Pompēius, -iī, M., Gneius Pom-  
 peius Magnus; a Roman gen-  
 eral and rival of Cæsar; de-  
 feated at Pharsalus, B.C. 48.  
 pōmum, -ī, N., fruit.  
 pōne, adv. and prep. with acc.,  
 after, behind, back.  
 pōno, pōnere, pōsuī, pōsitum,  
 to put, place, set, lay; castra  
 pōnere, to pitch camp.  
 pōns, pontis, M., a bridge.  
 pontifex, -ficia, M. (pōns; fā-  
 cio), a high-priest, pontiff.  
 Pontus, -ī, M., the Black Sea  
 (Pontus Euxinus), also a  
 region about the Black Sea.

pōpūlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.  
 (pōpūlus), to lay waste, pil-  
 lage.  
 pōpūlus, -ī, M., a people, nation.  
 porta, -ae, F., a gate, door.  
 porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to carry.  
 posco, poscere, pōposcī, no  
 p. p., to beg, demand (185. 2).  
 posses-siō, -ōnis, F. (possi-  
 deo), a possessing, possession,  
 property.  
 pos-sum, posse, pōtuī, irr.  
 (pōtis; sum), to have the  
 power, can, be able (293);  
 plūrimum posse, to have very  
 great influence.  
 post, adv., and prep. with acc.,  
 behind, back, after, beneath.  
 post-eā, adv., afterwards, here-  
 after.  
 posteā-quam, conj., after that,  
 when (333).  
 postērior, -ius, adj. (comp. of  
 posterus), after, later; infe-  
 rior; latter.  
 post-erus, -a, -um, adj. (post),  
 coming after, following, next, en-  
 suing, future. As noun, pos-  
 tēri, -ōrum, M. pl., descendants,  
 posterity.  
 post-hāc, adv., after this, here-  
 after, henceforth.  
 post-quam, conj., after that,  
 after, as soon as, when (333).  
 postrēm-ō, adv. (postrēmus),  
 at last, lastly, finally.  
 postr-ī-diē, adv. (postērus;  
 diēs), on the day after, on the  
 next day.  
 postūlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 ask, demand (185. 2).  
 pōtēns, -entis, part. (possum),  
 able, powerful, strong.  
 pōtēt-ātus, -ūs, M. (pōtēns),  
 rule, dominion, command.  
 pōtēt-ia, -ae, F. (pōtēns),  
 might, power.  
 pōt-ior, -īri, -ītus sum, dep.

- (pōtis), to become master of, take possession of (306. 2).
- pōtis, -e, adj. powerful; able; possible.
- pōti-us, adv., comp. of pōtis, rather, preferably, more.
- prātum, -ī, N., pasture, meadow.
- prae, adv., and prep. with abl., before, in front of, in composition, before, very.
- prae-cāveo, -cāvēre, -cāvī, -cautum, to guard against beforehand; be on one's guard.
- prae-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum, to go before, precede; surpass, excel.
- praeceptor, -ōris, M., instructor.
- prae-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpī, -ceptum (prae; cāpio), to take in advance; direct, order.
- prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj., very clear; excellent, celebrated.
- prae-cō, -ōnis, M., a crier, herald.
- prae-dīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to make known (before one), publish; boast.
- prae-dīco, -dīcēre, -dīxī, -dīctum, to foretell, predict; warn, command.
- prae-dītus, -a, -um, adj. (prae; do), gifted, endowed with (308. Obs. 4).
- praedō, -ōnis, M. (praedor), one that plunders, a plunderer.
- prae-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -missum, to send before, despatch in advance.
- prae-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsuī, -pōsītum, to put in command.
- prae-scribo, -scribēre, -scripsī, -scriptum, to write down beforehand, command, prescribe.
- praescrip-tum, -ī, N. (praescribo), a precept, order, rule.
- prae-sēns, -entis, adj. (prae; sum), present.
- praesent-ia, -ae, F. (praesēns), presence; readiness; in praesentiā, at present, now.
- prae-sertim, adv. (prae; sēro), especially.
- praesid-ium, -iī, N. (praesideo), a sitting down before, guard; protection.
- praestāns, -antis, part. (praesto), pre-eminent, excellent, distinguished, extraordinary.
- prae-sto, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, to stand before; surpass; praestat (314. 3), it is better.
- prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, irr., to be in front, be in command of, govern; summae rērum praesesse, to have the supreme command.
- praeter, adv. and prep., along by, past, beyond; except, beside.
- praetēr-eo, -īre, -iī, itum, to go past; pass by.
- praetēri-tus, -a, -um, part. (praetēreo), past, gone by, departed. As noun, praetērita, -ōrum, N. pl., the past.
- praetex-ta, -ae, F. (praetexo), the "toga praetexta," a mantle (with purple border, worn by magistrates and children).
- praetōr-ium, -iī, N. (praetor), a general's tent.
- praetōr-ius, -a, -um, adj. (praetor), of the praetor.
- prae-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come before; anticipate, prevent; surpass.
- prēcī, prēcem, prēce, in pl., prēcēs, -um, F., prayer, request.
- prēhendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to seize, grasp, snatch.
- prēmo, prēmēre, pressī, pressum, to press, press hard on.
- prendo, see prēhendo.
- prētium, -iī, N., money; price.
- prēx, see prēcī.
- prī-die, adv. (prae; dies), on the day before.

ness; in prae-  
nt, nom.

(prae; sēro),

(praesideo),  
before, guard;

s, part. (prae-  
nt, excellent, dis-  
ordinary.

-stī, -stātum,  
surpass; prae-  
t is better.

-fui, irr., to be  
ommand of, gor-

rērum prae-  
e supreme com-

prep., along by,  
cept, beside.

-ī, itum, to go

, -um, part.  
ast, gone by, de-

in, praetērita,  
ie past.

(praetexo),  
exta," a mantle

order, worn by  
children).

N. (praetor),

um, adj. (prae-  
or.

-re, -vēnī, -ven-  
ore; anticipate,

prēce, in pl.,  
prayer, request.

-dī, -sum, to  
ch.

pressī, pres-  
ress hard on.

endo.

oney; price.

ae; dies), on

prīm-ō, adv. (prīmus), at first,  
in the beginning, first, firstly.

prīm-um, adv., first, in the first  
place, for the first time; quam  
prīmum, as soon as possible.

prī-mus, -a, -um, adj., superla-  
tive (prae, prior, prīmus),  
first, foremost (see perior).

prīn-ceps, -cīpis, adj. (prīmus;  
cāpio), first. As noun, com-  
gen., chief ruler, emperor; prīn-  
cīpēs, M. pl., chiefs, princes.

prīncīp-ātus, -ūs, M. (prīnceps),  
the chief place, supremacy, do-  
minion; prīncīpātum tēnēre,  
to be at the head of.

prior, prius, adj., comp. (prae,  
prior, prīmus), former, previ-  
ous, prior, first (of two) (150.  
1).

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj., former,  
early, primitive, pristine.

prīus . . . quam, conj., before that,  
before, sooner; priusquam nōn,  
not until.

prīus, comp. adv., before, sooner.  
prīvo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (prī-  
vus), to deprive of, bereave.

prō, prep. with abl., before, in  
front of, for, in behalf of; ac-  
cording to, as.

prōb-ē, adv. (prōbus), rightly,  
well, properly, fitly.

prōb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ap-  
prove, prove.

prō-bus, -a, -um, adj. (prō),  
good, excellent, upright.

Prōca or Procās, -ae, M., Proca,  
a king of Alba.

prō-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -ces-  
sum, to go forward, proceed.

prō-cēr-itās, -ātis, F., height, tall-  
ness.

Procillus, -ī, M., a Roman name.  
prō-clāmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
call or cry out.

prōcul, adv., far, distant, remote.  
prō-curro, -currēre (-cūcurri),

-curri, -cursum, to run forth,  
rush forward; go on, advance.

prō-d-eo, -īre, -īī (-īvi), -ītum,  
irreg. (pro; eo), to go forth;  
advance.

prō-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, to  
place forth; publish, betray; mē-  
mōriā prōdītur, it is handed  
down by memory.

prō-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-  
tum, to lead forth; protract.

proelium, -īī, N., a battle, combat,  
contest.

prōfec-tiō, -ōnis, F. (prōffici-  
cor), a going away, setting out,  
departure.

prō-fect-ō, adv. (pro; factum),  
actually, indeed, truly.

prōfec-tus, -a, -um, part. (prō-  
ffiscor), having set out, gone.

prō-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum,  
irreg., to carry or bring for-  
ward; to reveal.

prō-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum,  
to do beforehand; advance;  
effect.

prō-fic-iscor, -fisciscī, -fectus  
sum, dep. inch. (prō; fācio),  
to make way forward, start;  
march, travel.

prō-fligo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
strike the ground; conquer.

prō-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgī, no p. p.,  
to flee forth, escape.

prō-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus  
sum, dep. (pro; grādior), to  
go forth; go forward, proceed.

prō-hībeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum (prō;  
hābeo), to hold back, hinder;  
prohibit.

prō-icio (pronounced prōjicio),  
-icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (pro;  
jācio), to throw forward; throw  
down; reject.

prō-lābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum,  
dep., to slip forward, fall down.

prō-lāto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, in-  
tens., to lengthen; extend.

- prō-mōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, to move forward, advance, promote.
- prōpe**, adv. and prep. with acc. (**prōpius, prōximē**), near, nigh; near by; nearly; about.
- prō-pensus, -a, -um**, inclined.
- prōpĕro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (prōpĕrus)**, to hasten.
- prōpinquo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (prōpinquus)**, to hasten, accelerate; come nigh; approach.
- prōp-inquus, -a, -um**, adj. (**prōpe**), near, neighboring; akin; similar. As noun, m., a relative, kinsman.
- prōpior, -ius (gen. -ōris)**, adj., comp. of stem contained in **prōpe**, nearer; superlative, **prōximus, -a, -um**, nearest, last (150. 1).
- prō-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pōsuī, -pōsītum**, to place or lay before; set forth; determine; **mihī prō-pōsītum est (313)**, I have determined.
- prop-ter**, adv. and prep. with acc. (**prōpe**), near; on account of, because.
- proptĕr-eā**, adv., on this account, therefore; **proptĕr-eā quod**, because.
- prōpul-so, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, intens. (**prōpello**), to ward off, repulse; avert.
- prō-silio, -silire, -siluī**, no p. p. (**prō; sīlio, -ire, sīluī, or -iī, sultum**), to leap forth; spring up, spring forth.
- prosper, -ĕra, -ĕrum (86. 2)**, fortunate.
- prō-spicio, -spicĕre, -spĕxī, -spectum (pro; spĕcio)**, to look out; to provide for anything (with acc.).
- prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, (293. 3)**, to benefit, profit.
- prō-tinus (tĕnus)**, adv. (**pro; tĕnus**), straightforward, immediately.
- prōvincia, -ae, F.**, a province; a field of duty of the consuls, usually a territory out of Italy, acquired by the Romans, and brought under Roman rule.
- prō-vōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to call forth, challenge, summon; exasperate; **prō-vōcāre ad pōpŭlum**, to appeal to the people.
- prōxim-ē**, adv. (**prōximus**), nearest, very near, next (**prōp, prōpius, prōximē**).
- prōxim-ō**, adv. (**prōximus**), quite recently, very lately.
- prōximus, -a, -um**, adj., the nearest, next; in **prōximō**, close by, near at hand.
- prūdĕns, -entis** (contracted from **prōvidĕns**), foreseeing; discreet; prudent.
- Ptolĕmaeus, -ī, M.**, Ptolemy, king of Egypt.
- public-ē**, adv. (**publicus**), publicly; on account of the state.
- publicus, -a, -um**, adj. (**pōpŭlus**), belonging to the people or state, public, common.
- Publius (Crassus), -ī, M.**, a Roman name.
- puel-la, -ae, F. dim. (puer)**, a girl, maiden.
- puell-ŭlus, -ī, M. dim. (puellus)**, a little boy.
- puer, -ĕrī, M.**, a boy, child, (until 17); **pl.**, children.
- pŭgiō, -ōnis, M.**, a dagger, dirk, poniard.
- pŭgna, -ae, F.**, a battle, dispute.
- pŭgn-āx, -ācis, adj. (pŭgno)**, fond of fighting, warlike, combative; quarrelsome.
- pŭgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pŭgna)**, to fight, engage.
- pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.**, beautiful, fair, handsome.

**pūnio, -ire, -vī and -ī, -itum** (*poena*), to punish; avenge.  
**pūto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to think, consider, reckon, believe.  
**Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj.**, only with **montēs**, the Pyrenees Mountains.

## Q.

**Q.** or **Qu.**, an abbreviation for *Quintus*.  
**quadrāg-ēsīmus, -a, -um, adj.** (*quadrāgintā*), fortieth.  
**quadr-ā-gintā, num. adj. indecl.** (*quātuor*), forty.  
**quadr-in-gentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.** (*quātuor; centum*), four hundred.  
**quaero** (old form *quaeso*), **quae-rēre, quaesivī, quaesitum**, to seek; search; strive for (185. 2); **quaeritur**, the question is.  
**quaes-tor, -ōris, m. (quaero)**, a quaestor (treasurer or quartermaster).  
**quālis, -e, interrog. and rel. adj.**: 1. interrog., of what sort; 2. rel., of which sort; such as; **tālis . . . quālis**, such . . . as.  
**quam, interrog. and rel. adv.**, how; (in comparisons) as, than; (used to strengthen superlatives) **quam māxīmus**, as great as possible.  
**quam-diū, as long as.**  
**quam-ob-rem, interrog. and rel. adv.**, for which or what reason, wherefore, why?  
**quam-quam, conj.**, though, although; however, and yet (329).  
**quam-vīs, adv. and conj. (vīs fr. vōlo)**, however, however much, although (322. 1).  
**quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj.**: 1. interrog., how great? 2. rel., as great, as, such; in abl., **quantō** (as adv.), by how much,

by as much as; **quantō māgis**, how much more.  
**quā-propter, adv.**, for what, why, wherefore?  
**quā-rē, interrog. and rel. adv. (quae; rēs)**, from what cause, wherefore, why?~  
**quart-āna, f. (quartus)**, the quartan ague (recurring every fourth day).  
**quāsi, adv. (quam, as; si, if)**, as if, just as, as it were (330).  
**quāter, num. adv.**, four times.  
**quātuor, num. adj. indecl.**, four.  
**quattuor (quātuor), -dēcim, num. adj. (quātuor; dēcem)**, fourteen.  
**-que, enclitic conj.**, and, also.  
**quēror, quēri, questus sum, dep.**, to complain of, lament.  
**quī, quae, quod, interrog., rel., and indef. pron.**: 1. interrog., which, what; 2. rel., who, which, what (240 & 245); 3. (after **si** and **nē**) any; **īdem quī**, the same as.  
**quia, conj.**, because (332).  
**quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, indef. relative pron. (240. 1)**, whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever.  
**quid, see quis.**  
**quī-dam, quae-dam, quod-** (subst., **quid-**) **dam**, indef. pron., a certain one, somebody, something (246); **quidam hō-mīnēs**, some persons.  
**quīdem, adv.**, indeed, at least; **nē . . . quīdem**, not even (the word or phrase that **nē . . . quīdem** modifies always comes between **nē** and **quīdem**).  
**quī-libet, quae-libet, quod-** (**quid-**) **libet**, indef. pron., any one you please, any one (246).  
**quīn, conj. (quī; nē)**, who . . . not, that not, but that; from (after

- verbs of hindering); **quī** *ē*tiam, moreover, may even.
- Quinctius, -i, m.**, *Quintius*, a Roman name.
- quin-dēcim**, num. adj. indecl. (**quinque**; **dēcem**), *fifteen*.
- quin-gentī, -ae, -a**, num. adj. (**quinque**; **centum**), *five hundred*.
- quin-gintī**, see **quin-gentī (cen-)**.
- quī-nī, -ae, -a**, num. distributive adj. (**quinque**), *five each, by five*.
- quinqu-ā-gintā**, num. adj. indecl. (**quinque**), *fifty*.
- quinque**, num. adj. indecl., *five*.
- quinqu-ies**, adv. (**quinque**), *five times*.
- quin-tus, -a, -um**, num. adj. (**quinque**), *the fifth*.
- Quintus, -i, m.**, see **Cātūlus**.
- quippe**, adv. and conj., *surely, certainly, indeed; for indeed*.
- quis, quae, quid (quod)**, interrog. and indef. pron.: 1. interrog., *who, what, which*; **quid** (used adverbially), *how? why? wherefore?* (245 and 246); 2. after **sī** and **nē**, indef., **sī quis**, *if any one*; **nē quis**, *lest any one, that no one*.
- quis-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam (quod-)**, interrog. pron., *who, pray? which, pray? what, pray?*
- quis-piam, quae-piam, quod-piam**, and (subst.) **quid-piam** or **quip-piam**, indef. pron., *any one, any* (246).
- quis-quam, quae-quam, quic-quam (quid-quam)**, indef. pron., *any, anything*. As noun, *any one* (246).
- quis-que, quae-que, quod-que (subst., quic-que, quid-que)**, indef. pron., *each* (246).
- quis-quis, quae-quae, quod-quod** or **quic-quid** or **quid-quid**, indef. pron., *whatever, whatsoever*. As noun, *whoever, whosoever; every one, each one*.
- quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quod vīs** (subst., **quidvīs**), indef. pron., *any one or what you please* (246).
- quō**, adv. and conj., interrog. and rel., *whither, to what place*; conj., *wherefore, why; in order that* (321, Obs. 2).
- quo-ad**, adv., *how long*; conj., *as long as, until*.
- quod**, conj., *that* (332); *because; quod sī, but if*.
- quō-mīnus**, conj. (**quō**, neut. abl. of rel. pron., **quī**; **mīnus**, *less*), *that thereby the less, that not, from (with part.)* (322).
- quō-mōdō**, adv., *in what manner*.
- quon, dam**, adv., *formerly, once; sometimes, some day, ever*.
- quōn-iam**, adv. (**quom = quum = cum**; **jam**), *seeing that, since* (332).
- quōque**, conj., *also, too* (placed after the word it affects).
- quorsum**, adv. (**quō**; **versus**), *whither; to what purpose*.
- quot**, indecl. interrog. and rel. adj.; 1. interrog., *how many*; 2. rel., *as many; quot . . . tot, as many . . . so many*.
- quōtannis (quot; annus)**, *every year*.
- quōtid-iānus, -a, -um** (see **cot-tidiānus**, or **cōtidiānus**), *every day, daily*.
- quōt-i-diē** (see **cot-tid-** or **cō-tēd-**), adv. (**quōt; diēs**), *daily, every day*.
- quōtus, -a, -um**, interrog. adj., *one of how many, what in number*; **quōta hōra**, *what time; what o'clock*.
- quum** or **quom**, see **cum**.

## R.

**rādīx, -īcis, f.**, *a root; foot (of a hill)*.

noun, *whoever, any one, each one.*  
**quis, quod quis** (a), indef. pron., *whom please (246).*  
 j., interrog. and *that place; conj.,*  
 ; *in order that*

*how long; conj.,*  
 (332); *because;*

j. (quō, neut.  
 l., **quī; minus,**  
 by the less, that  
 part.) (322).  
*in what manner.*  
*formerly, once;*  
*day, ever.*

**quom = quum**  
*seeing that, since*

*also, too* (placed  
 it affects).

(**quō; versus**),  
*it purpose.*

interrog. and rel.  
 og., *how many;*

; **quot . . . tot,**  
*many.*

t; **annus**), *every*

, **-um** (see **cot-**  
**tidianus**), *every*

**cottid-** or **cō-**  
**ōt; diēs**), *daily,*

, interrog. adj.,  
 y, *what in num-*

**ōra**, *what time;*

see **cum.**

a root; *foot* (of

**rāp-āx, -ācis**, adj. (**rāpio**), *grasp-*  
*ing, greedy, rapacious.*

**rāp-īdus, -a, -um**, adj. (**rāpio**),  
*swift, quick, rapid; violent, hasty.*

**rāp-īna, -ae, F.** (**rāpio**), *robbery;*  
*plunder, booty.*

**rāpio, -ēre, -uī, -tum**, *to snatch*  
*away, seize; hurry off.*

**rā-tiō, -ōnis, F.** (**reor**), *a reck-*  
*oning, account; estimate; list.*

**rātis, -is, F.**, *a float, raft, vessel*  
*(made of logs fastened to-*  
*gether).*

**rā-tus, -a, -um**, part. (**reor**),  
*having supposed; established.*

**rē-bello, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to*  
*waage war again; recolt; renew*  
*hostilities.*

**rēcēnus, -entis**, adj., *fresh, recent.*

**rē-cīpio, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-**  
**tum** (**re; cāpio**), *to receive*  
*back; receive; recover; rēcī-*  
*pēre sē dōmum, to return, or*  
*to betake one's self, home.*

**rē-cordor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep.  
**(re; cor)**, *to call to mind, re-*  
*member, recollect (315. 1).*

**rē-creo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to make*  
*anew; to renew; refresh, recruit.*

**rē-cūp-ēro (-cīpēro), -āre, -āvī,**  
**-ātum** (**re; cāpio**), *to regain,*  
*recover.*

**rē-cūso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**re;**  
**causa**), *to decline, reject, re-*  
*fuse.*

**rēd-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum**, *to*  
*give back, return; with two*  
*accs., to make, cause to be.*

**rēd-eo, -īre, -īī, -ītum**, *to go or*  
*come back, return.*

**rēd-īgo, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum**  
**(red; āgo)**, *to drive back;*  
*reduce; compel.*

**rēd-īmo, -īmēre, -ēmī, -emp-**  
**tum** (**rēd; ēmo**), *to buy back;*  
*buy up (304); farm.*

**rēd-intēgro, -āre, -āvī, -ā'um,**  
*to renew (again), restore, renew.*

**rē-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-**  
**tum**, *to lead back, bring back.*

**rē-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum**, irr.,  
*to carry back; restore; grātiām*  
*rēferre, to show gratitude, repay*  
*a favor; rēferre pēdem, to re-*  
*treat; rēferre sē, to return.*

**rē-fert, -ferre, -tūlīt, impers.**  
**(315. 3 (2)) (rēs; fēro)**, *it con-*  
*cerns; is of importance.*

**rē-fōveo, -fōvēre, -fōvī, -fōtum**,  
*to warm again; restore, revive.*

**rē-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgī, no p. p.,**  
*to flee back, escape, retreat.*

**rēg-īna, -ae, F. (rex)**, *a queen.*

**rēg-iō, -ōnis, F. (rēgo)**, *direction;*  
*boundary-line; a territory, dis-*  
*trict, region.*

**rēg-ius, -a, -um**, adj. (**rēx**), *kingly,*  
*royal, regal.*

**rēgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**reg-**  
**num**), *to rule, govern, reign.*

**rēg-num, -ī, N. (rēgo)**, *guide;*  
*dominion, rule, royalty.*

**rēgo, rēgēre, rēxī, rectum**, *to*  
*direct, rule, govern; guide.*

**rē-grēdiōr, -grēdī, -gressus sum,**  
 dep. (**re; grādiōr**), *to go back,*  
*retreat.*

**rēgūla, -ae, F. (rēgo)**, *rule.*

**rē-īcio** (pronounced **rē-jicio**),  
**-īcēre, -jēcī, -jectum** (**re; jā-**  
**cio**), *to throw back; force back;*  
*reject; postpone.*

**rē-lābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum,**  
 dep., *to sink back; fall back.*

**rē-linquo, -linquēre, -līquī, -lic-**  
**tum**, *to leave behind; leave;*  
*appoint.*

**rēlīqu-iae, -ārum, F. pl. (rēlin-**  
**quo)**, *the remains, relics.*

**rēlīqu-us, -a, -um**, adj. (**rēlin-**  
**quo**), *remaining.* As noun,  
**rēlīquum, -ī, N.**, *the rest, re-*  
*mainder; rēlīquum est (313),*  
*it remains, follows.*

**Rēmī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, *the Remi, a*  
*tribe in Gaul.*



- rē-mīn-iscor, -iscī**, no perf., dep. (re; root man-), to recall to mind, recollect, remember (315. 1).
- rēmīto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mīsum**, to send back, remit; dismiss.
- rē-mōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, to move back, remove.
- rēmūs, -ī, M.**, an oar.
- Rēmūs, -ī, M.**, Remus, the twin brother of Romulus.
- rē-nūntio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to bring back word, report, announce.
- rē-nuo, -nuēre, -nuī**, no p. p., to deny, reject, refuse.
- reor, rērī, rātus sum**, dep., to believe, think, suppose.
- rēpent-e, adv. (rēpēns)**, suddenly, unexpectedly.
- rēpent-inus, -a, -um, adj. (rēpēns)**, sudden, unexpected.
- rē-pērio, rēpērīre, rēppērī, rēpertum** (re; pārio), to find out, ascertain, discover.
- rē-pēto, -pētēre, -pētīvī, -pētītum**, to recommence, demand, exact.
- rē-prēhendo, -prēhendēre, -prēhendī, -prēhensum**, to hold back; seize; censure.
- rēpūdīo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (rēpūdīum, a separation), to cast off; reject.
- rē-pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to fight against, oppose, resist.
- rē-quirō, -quirēre, -quīsivī or -quīsī, -quīsītum** (rē; quae-ro), to seek again; require; need.
- rēs, rei, F.**, a thing, circumstance, business; **rē**, in reality, in fact; **rēs familiāris**, private property; **rēs militāris**, military business, science of war; **rēs gestae**, deeds, exploits; **rēs hūmānae**, human affairs.
- rē-scindo, -scindēre, -scidī, -scissum**, to cut off; break down; abolish.
- rē-servo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to keep back; save, reserve.
- rē-sisto, -sistēre, -stītī**, no p. p., to stand back, stay behind; resist (with dat.).
- rē-spicio, -spicēre, -spēxī, -spectum** (re; spēcio), to look back; regard.
- rē-spondeo, -spōndēre, -spōndī, -sponsum**, to answer, reply, respond.
- rēspon-sum, -ī, N. (rēspondeo)**, an answer, reply, response.
- rēs-publica, rēi-publicae, F. (175. 2)**, the state, commonwealth, republic.
- rē-spuo, -spuēre, -spuī**, no p. p., to spit back; reject.
- rē-stituo, -uēre, -uī, -ūtum** (re; stātuo), to set up again, restore.
- rēte, -is, N.**, a net, snare.
- rē-tīneo, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -tentum** (re; tēneo), to keep back; reserve; **rē-trāho, -trāhēre, -trāxī, -tractum**, to draw back, withhold, check; keep or drag back.
- rētro, adv. (rē)**, backwards, back; formerly.
- rētro-rsum, adv. (rētro; ver-sum)**, back, backwards.
- re-us, -ī, M., rea, -ae, F. (rēs)**, a party to an action; one who is accused or arraigned; a defendant, prisoner.
- rē-vello, -ēre, -vellī, -vulsus**, pull or tear away.
- rē-vertor, -vertī, -versus sum**, dep., to turn back, return.
- rēx, rēgis, M. (rēgo)**, a ruler, king.
- Rhēa Sylvia, -ae, F.**, daughter of Numitor, and mother of Romulus and Remus.
- rhēda, -ae, F.**, a four-wheeled carriage; a carriage, chariot.
- Rhēnus, -ī, M.**, the Rhine.

ff; break down;

ivī, -ātum, to  
reserre.

-stīti, no p. p.,  
y behind; resist

ēre, -spēxi,  
pēcio), to look

ndēre, -spon-  
o answer, reply,

(rēspondeo),  
response.

publicae, F.  
state, common-

spuī, no p. p.,  
et.

ī, -ūtum (re;  
again, restore.  
mare.

inuī, -tentum  
keep back; re-

-trāxi, -trac-  
ack, withhold,  
rag back.

skwards, back;

(rētro; ver-  
wards.

ae, F. (rēs), a  
ed; one who is  
ed; a defend-

-vulsus, pull

versus sum,  
return.

, a ruler, king.

F., daughter

l mother of

mus.

four-wheeled  
ge, chariot.

Rhine.

Rhōdānus, -I, M., the Rhone, a  
river in Gaul.

Rhōdus (-os), -I, F., Rhodes; an  
island near the coast of Asia  
Minor.

rīdeo, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum, to  
laugh; laugh at.

rīgeo, rīgēre, no perf., no p. p., to  
be stiff or numb, to stiffen.

rīpa, -ae, F., the bank (of a  
stream).

rīvus, -I, M., a brook, stream.

rōgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to ask, ques-  
tion; propose (a law) (185. 2).

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.

Rōm-ānus, -a, -um, adj. (Rōma),  
Roman; of Rome. As noun,  
M., a Roman.

Rōm-ūlus, -I, M. (Rōma), the  
founder and first king of Rome  
(B.C. 753-717).

rōsa, -ae, F., a rose.

rōs-trum, -I, N. (rōdo), a bill,  
beak; the curved end of a ship's  
prow, ship's beak.

Rūfus, -I, M., Rufus, a Roman  
name.

rūdo, -ire, -ivī -itum, to roar (as  
a lion); bray.

rūmor, -ōris, M., common talk,  
hearsay, rumor.

rūpēs, -is, F. (rumpo), a cliff,  
steep rock.

rursus (-sum), adv. (contracted  
from rēversus), turned back;  
back; in turn, again.

rūs, rūris, N. (in pl. found only  
in nom. and acc.), the country;  
lands, fields; farm, estate; rūri,  
in the country; rūre, from the  
country (270. 1 and 2).

## S.

sācer, sācra, sācrum, adj., holy,  
sacred; accursed. As noun,  
sācra, -ōrum, N. pl., sacred  
rites, sacrifice.

sācer-dōs, -ōtis, com. gen. (sā-  
cer; do), a priest; priestess.

sācrific-ium, -iī, N. (sācrifico),  
a sacrifice.

sācr-i-fic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(sācer; facio), to sacrifice;  
offer in sacrifice.

saepe, adv., often, frequently;  
comp. saepius; super. sae-  
pissime.

saepē-nūmērō, adv., oftentimes,  
over and over again.

saevus, -a, -um, adj., raging,  
mad; fierce, cruel, severe.

sāgitta, -ae, F., an arrow.

sāgitt-ārius, -a, -um, adj. (sāgit-  
ta), of or belonging to an arrow.  
As noun, sāgittārius, -iī, M.,  
an archer, Bowman.

saltus, -tūs, M., a forest pasture;  
woodland pasture.

sālūs, -ūtis, F. (salvus), health,  
safety.

sālūto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sālus),  
to greet, salute.

salve see salveo.

salvus, -a, -um, adj., saved, pre-  
served, sound, well, unhurt.

sancio, sancire, sanxi, sanc-  
tum, to render sacred; to con-  
firm, ratify.

sān-ē, adv. (sānus), truly.

sāno, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum (sānus),  
to make sound, heal.

Santōnī, -ōrum, M., the Santonī, a  
people of Gaul.

sāpiēns, -entis, part. (sāpio),  
wise, judicious.

sāpien-ter, adv. (sāpiens), wisely,  
discreetly.

sāpient-ia, -ae, F. (sāpiēns),  
wisdom, prudence.

sarcīna, -ae, F., a package, bun-  
dle; pl., baggage, packs.

sātelles, -itīs, com. gen., an at-  
tendant; accomplice; in pl.,  
life-guards, an escort.

sātis, adv., enough, sufficiently;

- sātis hābēre**, to deem it sufficient.
- sātis-fācio, -fācēre, -fēcī, -factum**; in pass., **sātis-flo, -fiērī, -factus sum**, to satisfy (193.2).
- scēlns, -ēris, N.**, a crime, sin, enormity.
- schōla, -ae, F.**, a school; dissertation.
- scient-ia, -ae, F. (sciēns)**, a knowing; knowledge, science, skill.
- scī-licet, adv. (scio; licet)**, evidently, certainly.
- scindo, scindēre, scīdī, scisum**, to cut, tear, rend, split, cleave.
- scio, scīre, scīvī, scītum**, to know, understand, perceive.
- Scīpiō, -ōnis, M.**, Scipio, the name of a celebrated family in Rome, the most famous of which were the two conquerors of the Carthaginians, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major*, and *Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus Africanus Minor*.
- scrība, -ae, M. (scrībo)**, a clerk, secretary, scribe.
- scrībo, scrībēre, scrīpsī, scrīptum**, to write, compose; **scrībēre lēgēs**, to draw up laws.
- scrīp-tor, -ōris, M. (scrībo)**, writer.
- scūtum, -ī, N.**, a shield; defence, protection.
- sē, see suī (230).**
- sē-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum**, to go apart, separate, withdraw; **secede**; retire.
- sē-cerno, -cernēre, -crēvī, -crētum**, to put apart; to separate; discern.
- sēco, -āre, -uī, -tum**, to cut.
- sēcrēt-ō, adv. (sēcrētus)**, apart, separately; in secret.
- sēcrēt-us, -a, -um, part. (sēcerno)**, separate; secret, private.
- sec-tor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. intens. (sēquor)**, to follow eagerly, hunt, pursue.
- sēc-undus, -a, -um, adj. (sēquor)**, following; hence, the second; (as not opposing) favorable; **sēcundō flūmīne**, down stream.
- sed, conj.**, but, yet (205.3).
- sēdeo, sēdēre, sēdī, sessum**, to sit; be encamped, settle.
- sēd-ēs, -is, F. (sēdeo)**, a seat; abode; settlement.
- sēd-ī-tiō, -ōnis, F. (sed; eo)**, dissension, civil discord, sedition.
- sēdī-tiō-sus, -a, -um, adj. (sēditio)**, seditious.
- Sēgusiānī (-āvī), -ōrum, M.**, the Segusiāni, a people west of the Rhone.
- sel-la, -ae, F. (sēdeo)**, a seat, chair, stool.
- sēmēl, num. adv.**, once, a single time, once for all; **nōn sēmēl**, not once alone, several times; **sēmēl atque itērum**, once and again, repeatedly.
- sēmētis, -is, F. (sēmīno, to sow)**, a sowing.
- semper, adv.**, ever, always, at all times, for ever.
- sēn-ātus, -ūs, M. (sēnex)**, a council of elders; the senate (gen. sing., sometimes **sēnātī**).
- sēnec-tūs, -tūtis, F.**, old age.
- sēnex, sēnis, adj.** (nom. and acc. of the neuter pl. in the positive, and of the neuter sing. in the comp., are wanting), old, aged (150.3). As noun, **sēnex, -is**, com. gen., an aged person, an old man, an old woman (from 40 and upwards); comp. **sēnex, sēnior, māximus nātū**.
- sēnī, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj. (sex)**, six each, six.
- sēnior, -ius, adj.** (comparative of **sēnex**), older, elder.

ātus, dep. intens.  
to follow eagerly,

-um, adj. (sē-  
ring; hence, the  
not opposing) favor-  
dō flūmine, down

get (205. 3).

sēdī, sessum, to  
ped, settle.

(sēdeo), a seat;  
ient.

F. (sed; eo), dis-  
cord, sedition.

-um, adj. (sēdī-

ī), -ōrum, M., the  
people west of the

(sēdeo), a seat,

v., once, a single  
all; nōn sēmel,  
e, several times;  
itērum, once and  
lly.

(sēmīno, to sow),

er, always, at all

(sēnex), a coun-  
the senate (gen.  
es sēnātī).

s, F., old age.

j. (nom. and acc.

l. in the positive,

uter sing. in the

nting), old, aged

moun, sēnex, is,

aged person, an

woman (from 40

; comp. sēnex,

nus nātū.

m. distributive

each, six.

(comparative of

elder.

Sēnōnēs (or Sēnōnēs), -um, M.  
pl., a people of Gaul.

sentent-ia, -ae, F. (sentio), a  
thinking, an opinion.

sentio, -tīre, -sī, -sum, to dis-  
cern, perceive, observe, know.

sēpārā-tim, adv. (sēpāro), asun-  
der, apart, separately.

septem, num. adj. indecl., seven.

Septen-triō, -ōnis, M., also pl.,  
Septen-triōnēs, -um (septem;  
triō), the seven plough oxen,  
the stars of the Great Bear;  
hence, the North.

sept-imus, -a, -um, num. ordinal  
adj. (septem), the seventh.

septuā-gintā, num. adj. (sep-  
tem), seventy.

sēpul-tūra, -ae, F. (sēpēlio), a  
burying, funeral obsequies, sep-  
ulture.

Sēquāna, -ae, F., the Sequāna, i.e.  
the Seine.

Sēquānus, -a, -um, adj., of the  
Sequani (a tribe of Gaul);  
M. pl., Sēquānī, -ōrum, the  
Sequani; M. sing., Sēquānus,  
-ī, a Sequanian.

sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtus sum,  
dep., to follow, pursue (283).

sēri-ō, adv. (sērius, earnest), in  
earnest, seriously.

sermō, -ōnis, M., talk, speech.

sēr-ō, adv. (sērus), late, too late.

serp-ēns, -entis, M. (serpo), a  
snake, serpent.

serv-ilis, -e, adj. (servus), slav-  
ish, servile.

serv-itūs, -ūtis, F. (servus), slav-  
ery, servitude.

servo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to save,  
preserve; keep.

servus, -ī, M., a slave, servant.

sēsē, reduplicated form of sē,  
acc. of suī.

ses-tertius, -a, -um (sēmīs-ter-  
tius), two and a half; (subst.)  
sestertius, -iī, M., a sesterce =

two and a half asses = about  
four cents; sestertium, -iī, N.  
(gen. pl. used as a subst.), one  
thousand sesterces (about \$40);  
dēcīēs sestertius, 1,000,000  
sesterces (\$40,000).

seu, see sive.

sex, num. adj. indecl., six.

sex-ā-gintā, num. adj. indecl.  
(sex), sixty.

sex-centī, -ae, -a, num. adj.  
(sex; centum), six hundred.

sex-dēcim (sēdēcim), num. adj.  
indecl., sixteen.

sex-tus, -a, -um, num. ordinal  
adj. (sex), the sixth.

sī, conj., if, whether; quod sī,  
but if; sī quis, if any one; sī  
quid, if anything (206. 3).

sīc, adv., in this manner, so, thus.  
siccus, -a, -um, adj., dry, thirsty;  
in siccō, on dry land.

sīcut (and sīcut), adv., so as,  
just as, as; as if.

sīgnum, -ī, N., a mark, sign; (mil-  
itary) standard; signal.

silva, -ae, F., a wood, forest.

sīmilis, -e, adj., like, resembling,  
similar (149. 2).

sīmul, adv. (sīmilis), at the same  
time; sīmul atque or ac, as  
soon as.

sīmūlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sīmī-  
lis), to pretend (a thing is what  
it is not; see dissīmūlo), to  
feign, counterfeit, simulate.

sīn, conj. (sī; nē), but if, if on  
the contrary (326).

sīne, prep. with abl., without.

sīngūlī, -ae, -a, num. distributive  
adj., one to each, single.

sīnister, -tra, -trum, adj., on the  
left hand or side; awkward;  
unlucky.

sīnistra, -ae, F. (sīnister), the  
left hand.

sīno, sīnere, sīvī, sītum, to let,  
suffer, allow, permit.

- sī-quis** or **sī-quī**, **sī-qua**, **sī-quid** (subst.) or **sī-quod**, indef. pron., *if any one; if anything* (246).
- sisto**, **sistere**, **stīti**, **stātum**, *to set, place, stand.*
- sī-ve** (seu), conj., *or if, whether, or.*
- sōbrius**, -a, -um, adj., *not drunk; sober; sensible, moderate.*
- sōcer**, -ērī, M., *a father-in-law.*
- sōl**, **sōlis**, M., *the sun.*
- sōleo**, **sōlere**, **sōlītus sum**, semi-dep. (283), *to be wont.*
- sōl-ītūdo**, -īnis, F. (**sōlus**), *loneliness, solitude; a desert.*
- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj. (209), *alone, only, single, lonely.*
- solvo**, **solvēre**, **solvī**, **sōlūtum**, *to loose, unbind; cast off* (from shore); *pay, break up.*
- sōn-ītus**, -tūs, M. (**sōno**), *a noise, sound, din.*
- sōror**, -ōris, F., *a sister.*
- sōrōr-ius**, -a, -um, adj. (**sōror**), *of or belonging to a sister.*
- sors**, **sortis**, F., *a lot, luck, fate.*
- spātium**, -iī, N., *room, space; interval, period.*
- spēci-ēs**, -ēī, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), (**spēcio**), *a show, appearance, form; view.*
- spēcio**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens. (**spēcio**, *to see*), *to look at, observe.*
- spēcūlor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (**spēcio**), dep., *to spy out, watch, explore.*
- spēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**spēs**), *to hope, expect, trust.*
- spēs**, **speī**, F. (**spēro**), *hope.*
- spīr-ītus**, -ūs, M. (**spīro**), *a breath; the breath of life, life; pl., spirit, airs.*
- splend-or**, -ōris, M. (**splendeo**, *to shine*), *brightness, splendor; honor, dignity.*
- spōlio**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**spōlium**), *to strip; rob. plunder.*
- spōlium**, -iī, N., *booty, prey, spoil.*
- spon-sus**, -ī, M. (**spondeo**), *a betrothed, bridegroom.*
- sponte**, abl.; gen., **spontis**, the only cases found, (**spondeo**), *of free will, of one's own accord.*
- stā-tim**, adv. (**sto**), *forthwith, immediately, at once.*
- stātuo**, **stātuēre**, **stātuī**, **stātūtum**, *to put, place; station.*
- stā-tūra**, -ae, F. (**sto**), *a standing upright; height, size, statue.*
- stel-la**, -ae, F. (**sterno**), (the strewer of light), *a star.*
- stercus**, -ōris, N., *dung; filth.*
- stīpendi-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (**stīpendium**), *tributary, liable to contribution.*
- stīpendium**, -iī, N., *a tax, contribution; pay; military service.*
- sto**, **stāre**, **stētī**, **stātum**, *to stand; to cost* (with abl. of price, 303).
- strēnu-ē**, adv. (**strēnuus**), *briskly, vigorously.*
- strēp-ītus**, -ūs, M. (**strēpo**, *to make a noise*), *a noise.*
- stringo**, **stringēre**, **strinxī**, **strictum**, *to bind tight; grasp.*
- stūdeo**, -ēre, -uī, no p p., *to be eager about; study.*
- stūd-ium**, -iī, N. (**stūdeo**), *zeal, devotion.*
- suādeo**, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsum**, *to advise, exhort, urge.*
- sub**, prep. with acc. and abl. (200.3), *under, beneath, during; sub monte*, at the foot of the mountain.
- sub-dūco**, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -ductum, *to draw up* (especially on shore), *withdraw.*
- sub-ēo**, -īre, -iī, -ītum, irr., *to go under; enter; approach; sustain.*
- sub-īgo**, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum (sub; āgo), *to bring under; subdue; impel; force.*
- sūbīt-ō**, adv. (**sūbītus**), *suddenly.*

. (spondeo), a groom.  
 n., **spontis**, the and, (spondeo), one's own accord.  
 o), forthwith, im-  
 ce.  
 e, **stātūi**, **stā-**  
 place; station.  
 (sto), a standing  
 , size, statue.  
 (sterno), (the  
 at), a star.  
 , dung; filth.  
 a, -um, adj. (stī-  
 butary, liable to  
 N., a tax, contri-  
 butory service.  
 stī, **stātum**, to  
 (with abl. of  
 trēnuus), brisk-  
 M. (strēpo, to  
 a noise.  
 ěre, **strinxī**,  
 and tight; grasp.  
 ; no p p., to be  
 uly.  
 (stūdeo), zeal,  
 e, **suāsī**, **suā-**  
 exhort, urge.  
 acc. and abl.  
 beneath, during;  
 the foot of the  
 re, **-dūxī**, **-duc-**  
 o (especially on  
 t.  
 itum, irr., to go  
 approach; sustain.  
 -ēgī, -actum  
 o bring under;  
 force.  
 sūbītus), sud-

**sūbī-tus**, -a, -um, part. (sūbeo),  
 sudden, unexpected.  
**sūb-īcio** (pronounced **sub-jīcio**),  
 -īcēre, -jēcī, -jectum (sub; jā-  
 cio), to throw under, place under,  
 subject.  
**sub-lēvo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 lighten up, raise up, assist.  
**sub-ōlēs**, -is, F. (sub; ōlesco)  
 (a thing growing up from be-  
 neath); a sprout; posterity, race.  
**sub-sēquor**, -sēquī, -sēctūs sum,  
 dep., to follow close after; fol-  
 low.  
**sub-sīd-ium**, -iī, N. (sub; sēdeo),  
 a body sitting in reserve, aux-  
 iliary forces; assistance, aid;  
**subsīdiō mittere**, to send as  
 support.  
**sub-sisto**, -sistere, -stītī, no p.p.,  
 to stop behind, stand still, stop.  
**sub-sum**, -esse, no perf., to be  
 under; to be present.  
**sub-ter**, prep. with acc. and abl.  
 (sub), below, beneath, under-  
 neath, under; close by.  
**sub-vēho**, -vēhēre, -vēxī, -vēc-  
 tum, to convey up (up stream).  
**sub-vēnio**, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ven-  
 tum, to come under, come to  
 one's assistance; succor.  
**suc-cēdo**, -cēdere, -cēssī, -ces-  
 sum (sub, under, close upon;  
 cēdo), to follow close upon;  
 advance, succeed.  
**suc-cēnseo**, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī,  
 -censum, to be angry at.  
**suc-curro**, -currēre, -currī, -cur-  
 sum (sūb; curro), to run  
 under; help, aid, succor.  
**Suēvī** (or **Suēbī**), -ōrum, m. pl.,  
 a powerful Germanic people in  
 northern Germany; Swabians.  
**suf-figo**, -figēre, -fixī, -fixum  
 (sūb; figo), to fasten upon,  
 affix.  
**sui**, **sibi**, **sē** or **sēsē**, reflexive  
 personal pron. (for all genders

and numbers), of himself, her-  
 self, itself, themselves (230).  
**Sulla**, -ae, m., Lucius Cornelius  
 Sulla Felix, the celebrated Ro-  
 man Dictator, B.C. 138-78.  
**sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **fūtūrus**, irreg., to  
 be; **mihī est**, etc., I have, etc.  
**summa**, -ae, F. (F. of **summus**,  
 sc. **rēs**), the main thing; the  
 top; the amount, sum, whole.  
**summus**, -a, -um, adj. (super-  
 lative of **sūpērus**), chief, top of.  
**sūmo**, **sūmere**, **sumpsī**, **sump-**  
**tum** (sūb; ēmo), to take away,  
 assume; **supplicium** (inflict).  
**sūper**, adv., and prep. with acc.  
 and abl. (200. 3), above; more-  
 over, besides; upon.  
**sūperbē**, adv., proudly, haughtily;  
 comp., **sūperbius**; super., **sū-**  
**perbissimē**.  
**sūpēr-ior**, -ius, adj. (comparative  
 of **sūpērus**; 150. 2), higher;  
 superior.  
**sūpēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sūper),  
 to overtop; hence, to overcome,  
 conquer.  
**sūper-sum**, -esse, -fuī, no p.p.,  
 to be left over, exist still; survive;  
 be in abundance.  
**sūpēr-us**, -a, -um, adj. (sūper),  
 being above, upper, on high (150.  
 2).  
**sūper-vēnio**, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ven-  
 tum, to come upon; come up;  
 follow.  
**sup-pēto**, -pētēre, -pētīvī, -pētī-  
 tum (sūb; pēto), to be at hand,  
 be in store, be sufficient.  
**sup-plex**, -icis, adj. (sub, under;  
 plīco, kneel), kneeling, and so  
 entreating, suppliant. As noun,  
 com. gen., a suppliant.  
**supplic-iter**, adv. (supplex),  
 humbly, suppliantly.  
**supplic-ium**, -iī. (supplīco), a  
 kneeling; hence a supplication;  
 punishment.

**sup-porto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (sūb; porto), to bring up, carry, convey.  
**suprā**, adv., and prep. with acc.  
 1. adv., on the top, above; (of time), before, formerly; 2. prep., beyond, besides; over, above.  
**sūprēmus**, -a, -um, adj. (superlative of sūperus; 150. 2), the highest, greatest, last.  
**sur-go**, surgere, surrēxī, surrectum (sub; rēgo), to raise, lift.  
**sus-cipio**, -cīpere, -cēpī, -ceptum (sub; cāpio), to take up, undertake; inimicitias suscipere, to incur enmities.  
**suspīc-iō**, -ōnis, F. (suspīcor), mistrust, distrust, suspicion.  
**sus-tīneo**, -tīnere, -tīnuī, -tentum (sub; tēneo), to hold up under, support, sustain.  
**sustulī**, perf. ind. of tollō.  
**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. (suī), his, her, their, their own, own (353).

## T.

**T.**, an abbreviation for **Titus**.  
**tābern-ācūlum**, -ī, N. (tāberna), a tent.  
**tābūla**, -ae, F., a board, plank; list (of proscribed persons); a will; writing tablet.  
**tāceo**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to be silent.  
**taedet**, taedēre, taeduit, or taesum est, impers. (314. 2), it disgusts, offends, wearies (one); mē, etc. — I (thon, he, etc.) am disgusted.  
**tālentum**, -ī, N., a talent; a Greek weight, equal to about one-half a hundred weight; a sum of money, equal to about \$1080.  
**tālis**, -e, adj., such, of that kind (the relative adj. corresponding to tālis is quālis).  
**tam**, adv., so, so very; tam . . . quam, as . . . as.  
**tāmen**, conj., nevertheless, yet, still.  
**tām-etsī**, conj. (tāmen; etsī), although, though (332, d).  
**tam-quam** (tan-), adv. (of comparison), as much as, so as, like as, just as; as if, just as though.  
**tan-dem**, adv. (tam-dem), at length, at last, finally; in interrogative clauses, pray, pray now, now, then.  
**tango**, tangere, tētīgī, tactum, to touch, affect.  
**tantō**, see tantus.  
**tantōpere**, see tantus.  
**tant-um**, adv. (tantus), so much, so greatly, to such a degree; only, alone, merely; tantum nōn, almost, all but; tantum quod, only, just then, but just.  
**tan-tus**, -a, -um, adj. (tam), so great; tantōpere (tantō opere), as adv., so much, so greatly; tantō (abl. of degree of difference), by so much, so much the.  
**taurus**, -ī, M., a bull.  
**tec-tum**, -ī, N. (tēgo), (a thing that covers), a roof; a house, dwelling.  
**tē-cum**, see tū.  
**tēgo**, tēgere, tēxī, tectum, to cover, conceal; protect, guard.  
**tēgī-mentum**, -ī, N. (tēgo), covering, helmet.  
**tēlum**, -ī, N., a dart, spear, javelin (offensive weapon).  
**tēmēr-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (tēmērō), rash, indiscreet.  
**tēmēr-itās**, -ātis, F. (tēmēro-), rashness, temerity.  
**tempērant-ia**, -ae, F. (tempērāns), self-control, moderation, discreetness, temperance.  
**tempēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to control, control one's self (with quīn), manage; restrain.  
**tempēs-tās**, -ātis, F. (st. of tem-





trāns-*eo*, -*ire*, -*iī*, -*itum*, irreg., *to cross over*; *cross*.  
 trāns-*figo*, -*figere*, -*fixī*, -*fixum*, *to thrust or pierce through*; *to transfuse*.  
 trāns-*grēdior*, -*grēdī*, -*gressus sum*, dep. (trāns; grādior), *to step across*.  
 trān-*silio* or trans-*silio*, -*silire*, -*silivī*, -*silui*, no p.p. (trāns; sālīo), *to leap or jump across*; *leap or spring over*.  
 trāns-*mitto*, -*mittere*, -*misi*, -*missum*, *to send across, throw across*; *cross over*.  
 trāns-*no* (or trāno), -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *to swim across or over*.  
 trāns-*porto*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *to carry or convey across* (with two acc.); *transport*.  
 trē-*centī*, -*ae*, -*a*, num. adj. (trēs; centum), *three hundred*.  
 trē-*dēcim*, num. adj. indecl. (trēs; dēcem), *thirteen*.  
 trēs, *tria*, num. adj., *three* (213).  
 Trē-*virī*, -*ōrum*, m. pl., *a people of Gaul*.  
 trīb-*ūnus*, -*i*, m. (trēs; trībus, *a tribe*), *a tribune*.  
 trī-*duum*, -*ui*, n. (trēs; diēs), *the space of three days, three days*.  
 trī-*gēmīnī*, -*ōrum*, m. pl. (trēs; gēno = gigno), *three born at a birth, three brothers*.  
 trī-*gintā*, num. indecl. adj., *thirty*.  
 trī-*nī*, -*ae*, -*a*, num. distributive adj. (trēs), *three each, three*.  
 trī-*plex*, -*plīcis*, adj. (trēs; plīco), *threefold*; — *āciēs*, *in three lines, or divisions*.  
 tristis, -*e*, adj., *sad, sorrowful, mournful*.  
 triumpho, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, (trī-*umphus*), *to triumph*; *rejoice at*.  
 trū-*cīdo*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* (trux, *savage*; caedo), *to slaughter*.  
 tū, pers. pron., *thou* (229. 2).

tūba, -*ae*, f., *a trumpet*.  
 tūlī, see fero.  
 Tūlingī, -*ōrum*, m. pl., *Tulingi, a German tribe in Gaul*.  
 Tullia, -*ae*, f., *Tullia, a Roman name*.  
 Tullius, -*iī*, m., *Tullius, a Roman name*.  
 Tullus Hostilius, -*i*, m., *third king of Rome, B.C. 672-640*.  
 tum, adv., *then, at that time*; cum (quum) . . . tum, *both . . . and*; *not only . . . but also*.  
 tūmultus, -*tūs*, m. (tūmeo), *a swelling*; *uprising*; *tumult, insurrection*.  
 tūm-*ūlus*, -*i*, m. (tūmeo, *swell*), *a mound, hillock, hill, tomb*.  
 tunc, adv., *then, at that time*; *immediately*.  
 turba, -*ae*, f., *a crowd*; *a disturbance*.  
 turma, -*ae*, f., *a troop, squadron* (of horse, consisting of thirty men).  
 turpis, -*e*, adj., *ugly*; *foul, filthy*.  
 turris, -*is*, f., *a tower*; *castle*.  
 tuus, -*a*, -*um*, pos. adj. pron., *your, yours*.

## U.

ūber, -*ēris*, n., *a teat, udder, breast*.  
 ūber, -*ēris*, adj., *rich, fruitful, fertile*.  
 ūbī, adv., *where, when*; ubī prī-*mum*, *as soon as*.  
 Ubiī, -*ōrum*, m. pl., *the Ubii* (a German people on the right bank of the Rhine).  
 ūbī-*que*, adv., *wherever*; *everywhere*.  
 ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, dep., *to punish* (an injury or the doer), *avenge* (an injury).  
 ultēr-*ior*, -*ius*, adj., gen. ōris (comparative of ultrā) (150. 1), *farther, ulterior*.

**ultimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of **ultrā**), *the furthest, most distant; last.*  
**ultrā**, adv., and prep. with acc., *beyond; on the other side of; ultrā fidem, beyond belief.*  
**ultrō**, adv., *beyond; besides, moreover; voluntarily.*  
**ul-tus**, -a, -um, part. (**ulciscor**), *having avenged, punished.*  
**umbra**, -ae, F., *a shade, shadow; an image.*  
**ūmērus** (**hūmērus**), -ī, M., *the shoulder.*  
**ūnā**, adv. (**ūnus**), *together, at the same time.*  
**unde**, adv., *from which place, whence.*  
**und-ī-que**, adv. indef. (**unde; que**), *from all sides.*  
**ūn-ī-versus**, -a, -um, adj. (**ūnus; versus**), *all together, all (in a mass), universal.*  
**un-quam** (**um-quam**), adv., *ever.*  
**ūnus**, -a, -um, num. adj. (gen. sing., **ūnius**; dat., **ūnī**), *one, alone, sole, single (213).*  
**ūnus-quisque**, **ūnā-que-que**, **ūnumquodque**, indef. adj. pron., *each, every (246).*  
**urbs**, **urbis**, F., *a city, esp. Rome.*  
**usquam**, adv., *anywhere.*  
**usque**, adv., *all the way, all the while, until; usque āb, all the way from; usque ad, even to, up to.*  
**ūs-ū-que**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**ūsus; rāpio**), *to use, employ.*  
**ūsus**, -ūs, M. (**ūtor**), *use, advantage; experience.*  
**ū-sus**, -a, -um, part. (**ūtor**), *having used.*  
**ut** or **ūtī**, adv. and conj.; interrog., *how; rel., as, so, when, since; that, so that, in order that, that not (with words of fearing) (321 ff.).*  
**ut-cum-que** (-cunque), adv., *in what way soever, whenever.*

**ūter**, **ūtris**, M., *a bag; skin.*  
**ūter**, **ūtra**, **utrum**, adj. pron. (gen. sing., **ūtrius**; dat., **ūtrī**), interrog., *which of the two; rel., which (209).*  
**ūter-que**, **ūtrā-que**, **ūtrum-que**, adj. pron., *each (of two), both; ex utrāque parte, on either side.*  
**ūtī**, see **ut**.  
**ūt-ilis**, -e, adj. (**ūtor**), *useful; advantageous; suitable.*  
**ūtīl-itās**, -ātis, F. (**ūtīlis**), *use, utility.*  
**ūtī-nam**, adv., *oh that! I wish that, would that! (278 ff.).*  
**ūtor**, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, dep., *to use (280).*  
**ūtrim-que** (**ūtrinque**), adv. (**ūter; que**), *on both sides, from both sides.*  
**ūtrum**, adv., *whether; see ūter.*  
**uxor**, -ōris, F., *a wife; dūcēre uxōrem, to marry.*

V.

**vāco**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to be empty or vacant; be free from; (of lands) lie unoccupied.*  
**vād-um** -ī, N. (**vādo**, *to go*), *a shoal, ford (that through which one can go).*  
**vāgio**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, no p.p., *to cry; bray.*  
**vāgi-tus**, -ūs, M. (**vāgio**), *a crying; braying.*  
**vāgor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (**vā-gus**, *to wander about*) (279. 2).  
**vāleo**, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., *to be strong; to be well, healthy; to be able; vālē, farewell, adieu.*  
**Vālērius**, -iī, M., *Valerius (esp., Gaius Val. Proculus), a Roman name.*  
**vālē-tūdō**, -īnis, F. (**vāleo**), *health; also ill-health.*  
**vallum**, -ī, N., *rampart (earthen*



brated Roman  
 il (not Virgil).  
 perf., no p.p.,  
 ls, be situated.  
 ), in truth, in  
 , yes; but.  
 rres, a Roman  
 erto), a turn-  
 rti, versum, to  
 olve.  
 lj., true, real,  
 , vērum, -ī, N.,  
 perf., dep., to  
 (280).  
 M., Vesontio,  
 ia, the chief  
 quani (modern  
 -ērī, M., the  
 hter of Saturn,  
 and herds, and  
 in general.  
 m, possessive  
 r.  
 (vestigo, to  
 ), track, truce,  
 ment, vestment;  
 m, to forbid.  
 d, veteran. As  
 m, M. pl., the  
 rs.  
 , road, street;  
 vio, to go), a  
 r.  
 (vinco), con-  
 ictor), victory.  
 ge.  
 is manifest, of  
 dī, vīsum, to

- see; look at; in pass., appear, seem.  
**vīdua**, -ae, F., a widow.  
**vīgeo**, -ēre, no perf., no p.p., to thrive, flourish, be vigorous.  
**vīgil-ia**, -ae, F. (**vīgīlo**), a watch, night-guard.  
**vīgintī**, num. adj. indecl., twenty.  
**vinco**, **vincēre**, **vīcī**, **victum**, to conquer, defeat, vanquish.  
**vinc-ūlum**, -ī, N. (**vincio**), a bond, chain, fetter, prison.  
**vindīco**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vindex**), to demand; punish, revenge.  
**vīnum**, -ī, N., wine.  
**vi-ōlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vīs**), to injure, violate.  
**vir**, **vīrī**, M., a man, husband.  
**vir-go**, -gīnis, F. (**vīreo**, to bloom), a maid, virgin.  
**vir-tūs**, -ūtis, F. (**vir**), manliness, virtue, valor; worth.  
**vīs**, **vīs**, F. (121), strength, power; **vī et armīs**, by armed force; **vim faciēre**, to do violence, offer violence; in pl., **vīrēs**, -ium, forces, troops.  
**Vistūla**, -ae, F., Vistula, a river of Germany.  
**vī-sus**, -a, -um, part. of **vīdeo**.  
**vī-ta**, -ae, F. (**vīvo**), life.  
**vīto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to shun, avoid.  
**vīvo**, **vīvēre**, **vīxī**, **victum**, to live; (**lacte**) live on.  
**vix**, adv., with difficulty, hardly.  
**vōco**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to call by name, summon, invoke.  
**Vōcontīi**, -ōrum, M. pl., the Vocontii, (a people of Gaul).  
**vōl-īto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens. (**vōlo**, to fly), to fly to and fro, flit, fly, hover.  
**vōlo**, **velle**, **vōlūī**, no p.p., irr. (294), to will, wish, desire.  
**vōlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to fly, hasten.  
**Volsci**, -ōrum, M. pl., Volscians, a people of Latium.  
**vōlun-tās**, -ātis, F. (**vōlēns**), willingness, wish; good feeling; **vōluntāte suā**, of one's own accord.  
**vōluptās**, -ātis, F., pleasure; in pl., sports, pleasure.  
**vōs**, pl. of **tū** (229.2).  
**vōx**, **vōcis**, F. (**vōco**), a voice, sound, word.  
**vulgus**, -ī, N. (rarely M.), the multitude, the common people, mob.  
**vulnēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vulnus**), to wound, hurt.  
**vulnus** (not **volgus**), -ēris, N., a wound, hurt.  
**vulpes**, -is, F., a fox.  
**vultur**, -ūris, M., a vulture.  
**vul-tus** (not **voltus**), -ūs, M. (**vōlo**), the expression (of countenance), countenance, face.

## II. — ENGLISH AND LATIN.

[For Numerals, see p. 184 ff.; for Pronouns, p. 200 ff.]

- a**, generally untranslated; **a certain**, *quidam, quaedam, quoddam; unus, -a, -um.*
- ability**, *ingēnium, -ī, N.*
- able, be**, *possum, posse, pōtū.*
- about**, *dē* (prep. with abl.); *circēter* (prep. with acc.), in point of time, *circēter* (adv. and prep.); with numerals, *ad* (prep. with acc.); or *circēter, fērē*, (adv.).
- abroad**, *fōris* (adv.); after verbs of motion, *fōrās* (adv.).
- absent, be**, *absum, -esse, -fū.*
- abundance**, *cōpia, -ae, F.*
- accomplish**, *cōnficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum; perficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum.*
- accuse**, *accūso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (315. 2).*
- acquit**, *absolvo, -solvēre, -solvī, -sōlūtum (315. 2).*
- across**, *trāns* (prep. with acc.).
- actively**, *strēnuē* (adv.).
- actuate**, *permōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.*
- admire**, *admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum* (dep.).
- admonish**, *admōneo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.*
- adorn**, *orno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*
- advance**, *prōgrēdior, -grēdī, -gresus sum*; — against the enemy, *signa infēro, -ēre, -tūlī, -lātum.*
- advise**, *mōneo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.*
- Aedui**, *Aedui, -ōrum, M.*
- advantage, be**, *intersum, -esse, -fū*; (noun), *commōdum, -ī, N.*
- after, post** (prep. with acc.), *postea*, prep. and adv.; or see **259**; *postquam (333).*
- against**, *contrā* (prep. with acc.); *in* (prep. with acc.); sign of dat. (**203**); *adversus* (prep. with acc.).
- aid**, *auxīlium, -ī, N. (ops), ōpis, r. (verb); aljūvo, -jūvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum.*
- air**, *aer, -ēris, M. (acc. aēra and aērem).*
- alarm**, *pavor, -ōris, M.*
- all** (every), *omnis, -e*; (whole), *tōtus, -a, -ura*; (all things), *omnia* (neut. pl.).
- alone**, *sōlus, -a, -um* (adj.); gen. *sōlus.*
- almost**, *prōpe, fērē* (adv.).
- alongside**, *praeter* (prep. with acc.).
- Alps**, *Alpēs, -ium, F. pl.*
- already**, *jūm* (adv.).
- also**, *etiam* (adv.), *quōque* (adv.).
- although**, *quamquam, ut (329); ab. abs. (259); licet, cum (340).*
- always**, *semper* (adv.).
- ambassador**, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*
- among**, *apud* (prep. with acc.); *inter* (prep. with acc.); *in* (prep. with abl.).
- ancestors**, *mājōrēs, -um, M. (pl.).*
- and**, *et, atque, -que (205).*
- angry, be**, *iraseor, irasēī, irātus sum* (dat.); *irātus, -a, -um, P., act., angry*; (noun), *ira, -ae, F.*; (adj.), *irātus, -a, -um.*
- animal**, *animal, -ālis, N.*
- announce**, *enuntio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

**another**, *alius, -a, -ud*; gen. *-ius*; (of two), *alter, -tēra, -tērum*; one —, *inter sē*.

**answer**, *respondeo, -ēre, -spondi, -sponsum* (with dat.).

**Antiochus**, *Antiōchus, -i, M.*

**Antonius**, *Antōnius, -i, M.*

**any** (in neg. and condit. sentences), *ullus, -a, -um*; (anybody you wish), *quīvis, quilibet*; (interr.), *numquī*; (after *si* or *nē*), *quī, quae (quā), quod*; -thing, *quicquam, or quidquam*.

**apiece**, distributive numeral.

**appeal** *prōroco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**appear**, *appāreo, -ēre, -uī, -ūtum*.

**apple**, *pōnum, -i, N.*

**appoint**, *dico, dicere, dixī, dictum*; appoint the time of the elections, *cōmītūs diēs dico, dicere, dixī, dictum*.

**approach**, *appropinquo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (with dat. or *ad* with aec.); *aggrēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum*; *aleo, -āre, -it, -ūtum*; (noun), *adventus, -ūs, M.*

**Ariovistus**, *Ariovistus, -i, M.*

**arise**, *coōrior, -ōrīrī, -ortus, dep.*

**army**, *exercitus, -ūs, M.*; *āciēs, -ēī, F.*; *āgmen, -ūs, N.*

**around**, *circā* (prep. with aec.).

**arrive**, *advēnio, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum*.

**arrow**, *sāgitta, -ae, F.*

**art**, *ars, artis, F.*

**as**, see 199; conj., *ut*; as . . . as, *tam . . . quam*; such . . . as, *tālis . . . quālis*; as . . . if, *vclut . . . sī*.

**ashamed**, *be, pudet, -ēre, -uit, or -ūtum* (314. 5, Obs. 1).

**Asia**, *Asia, -ae, F.*

**ask**, *rōgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (with two acc., 185); for, *pēto, pētēre, pētīvī, pētītum* (185. 2); inter-rōgo, *-āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**assault**, *oppugno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**assemble**, *convēnio, vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum*.

**assist**, *sublēcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *adjūco, -āre, -jūcī, -jūtum*.

**at**, *ad* (prep. with aec.); or locative (270); or (303); (at the house of), *apud* (with aec.).

**Athens**, *Athēnae, -ārum, F. (pl.)*.

**attack** (subst.), *impētus, -ūs, M.*; *ādōrior, -ōrīrī, -ortus sum* (dep.).

**attempt**, *tento, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *cōnor, -āri, -ātus*.

**attentive**, *attentus, -a, -um* (adj.).

**August** (month of), *Augustus, -a, -um* (adj. *mensis* being understood).

**Augustus**, *Augustus, -i, M.*

**auxiliaries**, *auxilia, -ōrum, N. (pl.)*.

**avenge**, *vindico, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum*.

**away from**, *ā* or *ab* with abl.

B.

**bad**, *mālus, -a, -um* (adj.); (naughty), *imprōbus, -a, -um* (adj.).

**baggage**, *impēdimenta, -ōrum, N. (pl.)*.

**bank** (of a river), *ripa, -ae, F.*

**bark** (verb), *lātro*; (at), *allātro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; (of a tree), *cortex, -icis* (outer), *M.*; (inner), *liber, -brī, M.*

**battle**, *pūgna, -ae, F.*; (engagement), *praelium, -i, N.*

**be**, *sum, esse, fut.*

**beam**, *trabs, -is, F.*

**bear**, *fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum*; **forward**, *infēro, inferre, intūli, illātum*.

**beautiful**, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum*.

**because**, *quod, quia* (conj., 332).

**become**, (be made), *fiō, fierī, factus sum*; (be becoming), *dēcet, dēcēre, dēcūt*; (be appointed), *creor, -ārī, -ātus sum*.

**before** (prep. with acc.), *ante*;  
(conj.), *antēquam*, *priusquam*  
(336).

**begin**, *inceo*, -ire, -ī, -itum, *incipio*,  
-cipere, -cipi, -ceptum; **begin-**  
**ning of** (see 260).

**Belgian**, *Bēlga*, -ae, M.

**believe**, *credo*, -dere, -didi, -ditum  
(with dat. of person).

**beyond**, *perlineo*, -tinere, -tinui,  
no p.p.

**betake** (one's self), *sē confēro*,  
*conferre*, *contūli*, *collatum*.

**beyond**, *trāns* (prep. with acc.);  
*extrā* or *ultrā* (prep. with acc.).

**bird**, *avis*, -is, C.

**black**, *niger*, -gra, -grum (adj.).

**blame**, *culpo*, -are, -avi, -atum.

**boat**, *linter*, -tris, M.

**bold**, *audāx* -ācis (adj.).

**bond**, *vinculum*, -ī, N.

**book**, *liber*, -brī, M.

**born**, **be**, *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus*  
*sum*; *gigno*, *gignere*, *gēnui*,  
*gēnūtum*.

**both** (each of two), *ūterque*, *ūtrā-*  
*que*, *ūtrumque* (pron.); **both**  
... and, *et* ... *et*; (num. adj.),  
*ambo*.

**boundaries**, *fīnēs*, -ium, M. (pl.).

**boy**, *puer*, -erī, M.

**brave**, *fortis*, -e (adj.).

**bravely**, *fortiter* (adv.).

**bridge**, *pōns*, -tis, M.

**bright**, *clārus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**broad**, *lātus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**brother**, *frāter*, -tris, M.

**build**, *aedifico*, -are, -āvī, -ūtum.

**building**, *aedificium*, -ī, N.

**burden**, *onus*, -eris, N.

**burn**, *cremo*, -are, -āvī, -ūtum.

**business**, *nēgōtium*, -ī, N.

**but**, *sed*, *autem* (205. 3); (only),  
*tantum*, *mōdo*; (unless), *nisi*  
(conj.); (except), *praeter*  
(prep. with acc.).

**by** (a person after a passive  
verb), *ā* or *ab*; by day, *inter-*

*diū* (adv.); by night, *noctū*  
(adv.) (256); dative agent  
(288); means, *abl.* (306);  
*per* (prep. with acc.).

## C.

**Cæsar**, *Caesar*, -āris, M.

**call**, *vōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; — out,  
*evōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; — to-  
gether, *convōco*, -āre, -āvī,  
-ātum; (name), *appello*, -āre,  
-āvī, -ātum.

**camp**, *castra*, -ōrum, N. (pl.).

**can**, *possum*, *posse*, *pōtui*; (= may),  
*licet*, *impers.* (314) with dat.

**candidly**, *āpertē* (adv.).

**care**, *cūra*, -ae, F.

**carefully**, *diligenter* (adv.).

**carry**, *porto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; carry  
on, *gēro*, *gēvere*, *gessī*, *gestum*;  
— on war against, *bellum in-*  
*ferro*, -ferre, *intūli*, *illatum*  
(*inlātum*).

**Carthage**, *Carthāgō*, -ōnis, F.

**cast away**, *abicio*, -icere, -jēcī,  
-jectum.

**cavalry**, *equitēs*, -um, M. (pl.).

**cave**, *antrum*, -ī, N.; *spēcus*, -ūs, F.

**central**, *mēdius*, -a, -um; central  
place (with respect to both of  
them), *lōeus mēdius*.

**century**, *centūria*, -ae, F.

**certain one**, *a*, *quidam*, *quaedam*,  
*quoddam*; and subst. (*quid-*  
*dam*); (fixed), *certus*, -a, -um.

**chief**, *princeps*, -cipis, M.; (adj.),  
*summus*, -a, -um.

**children**, *puērī*; (in relation to  
parents), *libērī*, -ōrum, M.; (of  
age), *infāns*, -antis, C.

**choose** (for a purpose), *dēligo*,  
-ligere, -lēxī, -lectum; (out of  
a number), *ēligo*, -ligere, -lēgī,  
-lectum.

**Cicero**, *Cicērō*, -ōnis.

**citizen**, *civis*, -is, C.

city, *urbs, -is, F.*  
 clerk, *scriba, -ae, M.*  
 cloak, *pālūdamentum, -i, N.*  
 close, *claudo, -ēre, -si, -sum.*  
 cloud, *nābēs, -is, F.*  
 cohort, *cōhors, -tis, F.*  
 cold, *frīgīdus, -a, -um (adj.);*  
 (noun), *frīgus, -ōris, N.*  
 collect, *comporto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;*  
*cōfēro, -ferre, -tūh, -lātum.*  
 column, *cōlūma, -ae, F.*  
 come, *vēnio, -āre, vēnī, ventum.*  
 command, *impērium, -i, N.;* (verb),  
*impēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (with  
 dat., or *ut* with subj.).  
 commander, *dux, dūcis, C.;* im-  
*pērātor, -ōris, M.*  
 common, *commūnis, -e (adj.).*  
 company, with, in, *cum* (prep.  
 with abl.).  
 compel, *cōgo, cōgere, cōgī, cōac-  
 tum* (acc. with inf.).  
 complain, *quēror, quēri, questus  
 sum.*  
 conceal, *cēlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (185).  
 concerning, *dē* (prep. with abl.).  
 concerns, *it, intērest, -esse, -fuit*  
 (315. 3 (2)).  
 condemn, *damno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*  
 (315. 2).  
 conference, *conlōquium, -i, N.*  
 confess, *fiteor, fiteri, fessus.*  
 congratulate, *grātūlor, -āvī, -ātus*  
 (dep.).  
 conquer, *vinco, vincēre, vicī, vic-  
 tum.*  
 conqueror, *victor, -ōris, M.*  
 consequence, it is of, *māgnī  
 intērest* (334. 1).  
 consul, *cōsul, -ūtis, M.*  
 consulship, *cōsulātus, -ūs, M.,* or  
 ab. abs.; see 260.  
 consult, *cōsūlo, -ēre, -uī, -tum,*  
 (with acc. or for noun dat.).  
 contend, *contendo, -dēre, -dī, -tum.*  
 contention, *contentiō, -ōnis, F.*  
 conversation, *sermō, -ōnis, M.*  
 convey, *porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;*

— across, *trādūco, -ēre, -didi,  
 -ditum.*  
 Corinth, *Corinthus, -i, F.*  
 corn, *frūmentum, -i, N.*  
 cottage, *cāsa, -ae, F.*  
 could, past tenses of *possum* or  
 subj.  
 country, *terra, -ae, F.;* (native  
 country), *patria, -ae, F.;* (op-  
 posed to town), *rūs, rūrīs, N.;*  
 (commonwealth), *rēs publica,  
 rēi publicae.*  
 cowardly, *ignāvus, -a, -um (adj.).*  
 Crassus, *Crassus, -i, M.*  
 crime, *scēlus, -ōris, N.;* crimen,  
*crīmīs, N.;* faciūs, *-ōris, N.*  
 cross, *transco, -ire, -iī, -itum;* trans-  
*mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.*  
 crown, *cōrōno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 cruel, *crūdēlis, -e (adj.).*  
 cruelty, *crūdēlitās, -ūtis, F.*  
 cultivate, *cōlo, cōlēre, cōlū,  
 cultum.*  
 culture, *cultus, -ūs, M.*  
 cut, *sēco, -āre, -uī, -tum;* — off  
 (from supplies), *prōhibeo, -ēre,  
 -uī, -itum* (with acc. and abl.).

## D.

danger, *pēriteilum, -i, N.*  
 dare, *audeo, -ēre, ausus sum* (283).  
 dark (of color), *niger, -gra, -grum.*  
 daughter, *fīlia, -ae, F.*  
 day (opposed to night), *diēs, -ēī,  
 M.;* (opposed to darkness),  
*nox, lūcis, F.*  
 dear, *cārus, -a, -um.*  
 death, *mors, mortis, F.;* (to sen-  
 tence to death), *cāpūtis* (315. 2).  
 debt, *aes āliēnum.*  
 declare (war), *indico, -dicēre,  
 -dixī, -dictum;* *rēnūntio, -āre,  
 -āvī, -ātum.*  
 deed, *factum, -i, N.;* (in a bad  
 sense), *faciūs, -ōris, N.*  
 deeds (exploits), *rēs gestae, rē-  
 rum gestārū, F. (pl.).*



deep, *altus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
 defend, *defendo*, -dēre, -di, -sum.  
 deliberate, *dēlibēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 deliberation, often perf. part. neut. of *consūlo*.  
 delight, *dēlecto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (trans.); *gaudeo*, -ēre, *gāvīsus sum* (intrans.).  
 deliver, *trādo*, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum; (what is due), *reddo*, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum; (free), *libēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (of a speech), *hābeo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.  
 demand, *postūlo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (185. 2); *plāgūto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (noun), *postūlatum*, -ī, N.  
 dense, *densus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
 depart, *dēcedo* (*discōdo*), -cēdēre, -cēssi, -cēssum; (set out), *prōficiscor*, -ficiscī, -fectus sum.  
 deserve, *mēreor*, -eri, -ītus sum; *dignus sum* (324. 1).  
 deserving, *dignus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
 desert, *dēsēro*, -ēre, -uī, -tum.  
 deserter, *perfūga*, -ae, M.  
 desire, *cūpto*, -ēre, -āvī, -ītum.  
 desirous, *appētēns*, -ntis; *cūpidus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
 destroy (ruin), *perdo*, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum; (annihilate), *dēleo*, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum.  
 detain, *dētīnco*, -tīnēre, -tīnūī, no p.p.; *rētīnco*, -tīnēre, -tīnūī, no p.p.  
 determine, *cōstituo*, -nēre, -uī, -ītum.  
 devour, *dēvorō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 dictator, *dictator*, -ōris, M.  
 die, *mōrior*, -mōrī (or -vī), -mōrtuus; *obeo*, -āre, -uī, -ītum.  
 differ, *differo*, *differre*, no perf. nor p.p.; — from each other, *inter sē differo*.  
 differently, *alīter* (adv.).  
 difficult, *dīffīcīlis*, -e (adj.).  
 diligence, *dīlīgētia*, -ae, F.  
 diligently, *dīlīgēter* (adv.).

discipline, *disciplīna*, -ae, F.  
 disorder, *cōfusio*, -ōnis, F.  
 displeasure, *displiceo*, -plīcēre, -plīcūī, -plīcītum.  
 disposition, *ingēnīum*, -ī, N.  
 dissension, *dīssentiō*, -ōnis, F.  
 distance, *spātīum*, -ī, N.  
 distant, *longīnquus*, -a, -um (adj.); am distant, *disto*, -stāre (no perf., no p.p.).  
 distinguished, *clārus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
 divide, *divīdo*, -vīdēre, -vīsī, -vīsum.  
 Divitiacus, *Divītiācus*, -ī, M.  
 do (auxiliary in questions or commands, not translated); *facio*, *facere*, *fecī*, *factum*.  
 does, see *do*.  
 dog, *cānis*, -is, M.  
 door, *jūnuū*, -ae, F.  
 doubt, *dūbīto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (noun), *dūbīum*, -ī, N.; there is no —, *nōn est dūbīum*, with *quīn* and subj. (333. 2).  
 doubtful, *dūbīus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
 draw up, *instruo*, -struēre, -strūvī, -strūctum.  
 drive, *pello*, *pellēre*, *pēpūltī*, *pulsum*; — back, *rēicio*, *rēicēre*, *rējecī*, *rējectum*.  
 due, *dēbeo*, -bēre, -buī, -bitum; partic., *dēbitus*, -a, -um.  
 duty, *offīcīum*, -ī, N.; or gen. (130. Obs.).  
 dwell, *hābitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *incōlo*, -ēre, -uī, no p.p.

## E.

each (one), *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.), and *quīlque*, or *quīcque* (subst.); *ūnusquisque*; (of two), *ūterque*, *ūtraque*, *utrūque*.  
 each other (i.e. one another), *alīus . . . alīus*, *alter . . . alter*.

**eager**, *āvīdus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**eagle**, *āquila*, -ae, F.  
**earth**, *terra*, -ae, F.; (world), *orbis terrarum*.  
**easily**, *fācile* (adv.).  
**easy**, *fācilis*, -e (adj.).  
**educate**, *ēdūco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**either . . . or, vel . . . vel; aut . . . aut.**  
**elect**, *fācio*, *fācēre*, *fēcī*, *factum*; *creo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**elephant**, *ēlēphantus*, -ī, N.  
**eloquence**, *ēloquentia*, -ae, F.  
**embroider**, *ācū* (306) *pingo*, *pingēre*, *pināvī*, *pinctum*.  
**encompass**, *cīngo*, *cīngēre*, *cīnāvī*, *cinctum*.  
**encourage**, *hortor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
**end**, *cōfācīo*, *fīcēre*, *fēcī*, *fēctum*; noun, *fīnis*, -is, M. (or sometimes in sing. F.).  
**endure**, *perfēro*, -ferre, -tūli, *lutum*; *tōlēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *pātior*, -ī, *passus*.  
**enemy**, *hostīs*, -is, c.; the enemy (collectively), *hostēs*, -ium; (personal), *īnīmīcus*, -ī, M.  
**enjoy**, *fruor*, *frūī*, *fructus* (306. 1).  
**enroll**, *cōscribo*, -hēre, -psī, -ptum.  
**enter**, *ītro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *sūb-ico*, -īre, -ī, -ītum.  
**entrust**, *committo*, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mīssum.  
**Ephesus**, *Ephēsus*, -ī, F.  
**escape**, *effūgio*, *fūgēre*, *fūgī*, no p.p.  
**establish**, *cōfirmo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *stātuo*, *stātūere*, *stātūī*, *stātūtum*.  
**evening**, *vesper*, -erī, M.  
**every (one)**, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.), *quīdque* or *quīc-que* (subst.); (adj.), *omnis*, -e; every tenth (man), *dēcīmus quisque*.  
**excellent**, *excellēns*, -tis.  
**exercise**, *exerceo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.

**exhort**, *hortor* (or *cōhortor*), -ārī, -ātus sum (dep.).  
**expect**, *expecto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**experience**, *experīo*, -īre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**extreme**, *extrēmus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**eye**, *ocūlus*, -ī, M.

F.

**faithful**, *fīdēlis*, -e (adj.).  
**faithfulness**, *fīdēs*, -erī, F.  
**false**, *falsus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**family**, *fāmīlia*, -ae, F.  
**far**, *longē prōcul* (adv.).  
**far and wide**, *lātē* (adv.).  
**farmer**, *agrīcōla*, -ae, M.  
**farther** (adj.), *ulterior*, -us (adj., 150. 7).  
**father**, *pāter*, -tris, M.  
**fault**, *culpa*, -ae, F.  
**fear**, *tīmeo*, -ēre, -uī (no p.p.) (321. 2); *mētuo*, *uētūere*, *uētūī*, no p.p.; *vēreor*, -erī, -ītus sum (dep.); (noun), *tīmor*, -oris, M.  
**February** (month of), *Februārius*, -a, -um (*mensis* being understood).  
**fellow-citizen**, *cīvis*, -is, M.  
**few**, *paucī*, -ae, -a, pl. (adj.); a — words, *pauca*, *plūruū*, N.  
**fidelity**, *fīdēs*, -erī, F.  
**field**, *āger*, *agrī*, M.  
**fierce**, *atrōx*, *atrōcis* (adj.).  
**fiercely**, *acrīter* (adv.).  
**fifth**, *quīntus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**fight**, *dīmīco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *pūgno*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (subst.), *pūgna*, -ae, F.  
**fill**, *compleo*, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum; *repleo*, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum.  
**find** (by search or inquiry), *rēpērio*, *rēpērire*, *rēpēvī*, *rēpertum*; *īnrēnio*, -rēnīre, -rēnī, -ventum.  
**finish**, *fīnio*, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; *cōnfīcio*, *fīcēre*, *fēcī*, *fēctum*.

fire, *ignis*, -is, M.  
**first**, *primus*, -a, -um (adj.); (adv.),  
*primum* and *primò*.  
**fish**, *piscis*, -is, M.  
**flee**, *fugio*, *fugere*, *fugì*, *fugitum*.  
**fleet**, *classis*, -is, F.  
**flight**, *fuga*, -ae, F.  
**flow**, *fluo*, -ere, -xi, -xum.  
**fly**, *volo*, -are, -avi, -atum.  
**following** (day), *posterus*, -a, -um  
(adj., 150. 2).  
**folly**, *stultitia*, -ae, F.  
**foot**, *pēs*, *pēdis*, M.  
**foot-soldier**, *pēdes*, -it̄is, M.  
**for** (see 303); conj., *nam*, *enim*  
(follows the first word or  
words), *et̄enim* (205. 5); prep.,  
*dē* or *prō* with abl.; (sign of  
dat.).  
**forage**, *pābulor*, -ar̄i, -atus *sum*  
(dep.).  
**forbid**, *veto*, -āre, -ui, -itum.  
**force**, *cōgo*, -ere, -eḡi, -actum.  
**forces**, *cōpiae*, -arum, F. (pl.).  
**foresight**, *prudentia*, -ae, F.  
**forest**, *silva*, -ae, F.  
**forget**, *obliscor*, *oblisc̄i*, *oblitus*  
*sum*, dep. (315. 1).  
**form a plan**, *cōsiliū inco*, -ire,  
-i, -itum.  
**fortify**, *mūnio*, -ire, -ivi, -itum.  
**fortunate**, *fortunatus*, -a, -um  
(adj.).  
**fortune**, *fortūna*, -ae, F.  
**found**, *condo*, -dēre, -didi, -ditum.  
**free**, *liber*, -era, -erum (86. 2);  
be free from, *vāco*, -āre, -avi,  
-atum; set free, *libero*, -āre,  
-avi, -atum; of a slave, *mānu-*  
*mitto*, -mittere, -misi, -missum.  
**friend**, *amicus*, -i, M.  
**friendship**, *amicitia*, -ae, F.  
**frog**, *rāna*, -ae, F.  
**from** (away from), *ā*, *ab*; (out  
of), *ē*, *ex*; (denoting cause),  
abl., see 248.  
**fruit** (of trees), *fructus*, -ūs, M.;  
(of fields), *frāgēs*, -um, F. (pl.).

**fugitive**, *fugiens*, part. of *fugio*.  
**full**, *plenus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**further**, adj., *ulterior*, -us (adj.,  
150. 1); (furthermore), *autem*,  
conj. (placed after one or more  
words).  
**fury**, *fūror*, -ōris, M.

## G.

**gain**, *luerem*, -i, N.  
**games**, *ludi*, -ōrum, M. (pl.).  
**garden**, *hortus*, -i, M.  
**gate**, *janua*, -ae, F.; *porta*, -ae, F.  
**Gaul** (the country), *Gallia*, -ae, F.  
**Gaul** (an inhabitant), *Gallus*, -i,  
M.  
**general**, *dux*, *dūcis*, M.; *imp̄rator*,  
-ōris, M.  
**German**, *Germanus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**get**, *acquiro*, -ere, -sivi, -situm;  
*ass̄quor*, -s̄quī, -cūtus *sum*  
(dep.).  
**gift**, *dōnum*, -i, N.  
**girl**, *puella*, -ae, F.  
**give**, *do*, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum*; give  
up, *trādo*, -dēre, -didi, -ditum;  
— what is due, *tribuo*, -uere,  
-ui, -utum.  
**glad**, *lactus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**glory**, *glōria*, -ae, F.  
**go**, *eo*, *ire*, *ii* (*ivi*), *itum* (298);  
go on, pass. of *gēro*, *gēre*,  
*gessi*, *gestum*; — forth, *exeo*,  
-ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum; — through  
(permeate), *permeo*, -āre, -avi,  
-atum.  
**god**, *deus*, -i, M.  
**going to** (fut. act. part.).  
**gold**, *aurum*, -i, N.  
**good**, *bōnus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**goods**, *merx*, *mercis*, F.  
**govern**, *rēgo*, *rēgēre*, *rēxi*, *rectum*;  
*gūberno*, -āre, -avi, -atum; *prae-*  
*sum*, -esse, -fui (202).  
**grain**, *frūmentum*, -i, N.  
**grandfather**, *avus*, -i, M.

great, *māgnus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**Greek**, *Græcus*, -a, -um (adj.);  
 (noun), *Græcus*, -i, M.  
**ground**, *hūmus*, -i, F.; *solum*, -i, N.  
**grow weak**, *languēscō*, *languēs-*  
*cēre*, *languī*, no p.p.  
**guardian**, *custōs*, -ōdis, M.  
**guide** (subst.), *dux*, *dūcis*, M.

## H.

**hall**, *aula*, -ae, F.  
**Hannibal**, *Hannibal*, -ālis, M.  
**happens it**, *accidit*, -cidere, -cidit.  
**happy**, *felix*, -icis (adj.); *beātus*,  
 -a, -um (adj.).  
**harbor**, *portus*, -ūs, M. (174. 2).  
**hard**, *dūrus*, -a, -um (adj.); — to  
 do, *difficilis*, -e.  
**hardship**, *dūrum*, -i, N.  
**hasten**, *māturo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
*festino*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *prō-*  
*pēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**hatred**, *ōdium*, -i, N.  
**have**, *hābeo*, *hābere*, *hābuī*, *hābī-*  
*tum*; *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, with dat.  
 (274).  
**he**, *is*; *ille*; *hic*; or implied in the  
 third person of the verb; in  
 indir. disc. referring to the  
 principal subject, *sē* (353. 1).  
**heal**, *mēdeor*, -vī, no perf.  
**hear**, *audio*, -īre -īvī, -ītum.  
**heavy**, *grāvis*, -e.  
**help**, *jūvo*, -āre, *jūvī*, *jūtum*;  
 (noun), *auxilium*, -i, N.  
**Helvetians**, *Helvētī*, -ōrum, M.  
**hem in**, *contineo*, -īnēri, -īnūī,  
 -tentum (with acc.).  
**hence**, *proinde*; *hinc* (adv.).  
**her**, *ejus*; her own (refl.), *suus*,  
 -a, -um; emph., *ipsius*.  
**herald**, *praecō*, -ōnis, M.  
**here**, *be*, *adsum*, -esse, *fui*.  
**high**, *altus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**highest interests**, *summae res*.  
**highly**, *mūgnī* (304).  
**hill**, *mōus*, *montis*, M.; *collis*, -is, M.

**him**, see **he**; see 271. Obs. G.  
**himself**, *ipse* (reflex. *sē*).  
**hinder**, *impēdio*, -īre, -īvī -ītum;  
*obsto*, -stāre, -stāvī, -stātum.  
**his**, *ejus* (gen. of *is*); his own,  
*suus*, -a, -um; referring to sub-  
 ject, *suus*, -a, -um (emph.),  
*ipsius* (gen.); omitted when  
 implied from the context.  
**hither** (adj.), *citērior*, -us (adj.,  
 150. 1).  
**hold**, *tēneo*, *tēnere*, *tēnī*, *tentum*.  
**home** (to), *dōmum*; (at), at —  
*dōmī* (270. 1).  
**Homer**, *Hōmērus*, -ī, M.  
**honor**, *hōnor*, -ōris, M.  
**hope**, *spēs*, -ei, F.; (verb) *spēro*,  
 -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**horse**, *ēquus*, -ī, M.  
**horseman**, *ēques*, -itīs, M.  
**hostage**, *obses*, -itīs, C.  
**hour**, *hōra*, -ae, F.  
**house**, *dōmus*, -ūs, F.  
**hundred** (one), *centum*.  
**hunger**, *fāmēs*, -is, F.

## I.

**I**, *ego* (326).  
**if**, *si*; — not, *sī nōn*; unless, *nisi*  
 (326).  
**imitate**, *īmītor*, -āvī, -ātus *sum*  
 dep.  
**immediately**, *stātīm*, *cōnfestim*  
 (adv.).  
**immortal**, *immortālis*, -e.  
**implore**, *implōro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**in**, *in* (prep. with abl.); in com-  
 pany with, *cum* (prep. with  
 abl.); in the power of, *pōnes*  
 (prep. with acc.); in turn,  
*invicem* (adv. or abl. alone);  
 in order that, *ut*, *nē*, etc. (see  
 321, 322).  
**increase**, *augeo*, *angere*, *auxī*,  
*auctum*.  
**inform**, *certum* [*certiōrem*] *fācio*,  
*fācere*, *fāci*, *factum*.

**inhabitant**, *incōla*, -ae, M.  
**injure**, *nōcco*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (with dat.); *obsum*, -esse, -fui (203).  
**injury**, *injūria*, -ae, F.  
**inquire**, *quaero*, *quaerere*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum* (185. 2).  
**insist on**, *flāgito*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**instruct**, *crūdīo*, -īre, -āvī or -iī, -itum.  
**interests, it**, *interest*, -esse, -fui (315. 3 (2)).  
**into, in** (prep. with acc.).  
**island**, *insūla*, -ae, F.

**it**, see **he**.

**Italy**, *Itālia*, -ae, F.

**it is**, *est* (see 127, sign of passive voice).

**its** (referring to the subject), *suus*, -a, -um; omitted if implied from the context.

## J.

**January** (month of, *mensis* being understood), *Jānuārius*, -a, -um.

**javelin**, *tēlum*, -ī, N.

**join**, *jungo*, *jungere*, *junxi*, *junctum*.

**journey**, *iter*, *itinēris*, N.

**joy**, *gaudium*, -ī, N.

**joyful**, *laetus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**judge**, *jūdex*, -dīcis, M.

**judgment**, *judicium*, -ī, N.; to pass — upon, *sentio*, -īre, *sensī*, *sensus* (with *dē* and abl.).

**June** (month of) *Julius*, -iī, M.

**just**, *justus*, -a, -um (adv.).

**justice**, *justitia*, -ae, F.

## K.

**keep off**, *prōhibeo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

**kill**, *interficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fecitum; (by cutting down), *occīdo*, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum.

**kind**, *bēnignus*, -a, -um (adj.); (noun), *gēnus*, -ēris, N.

**king**, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.

**kingdom**, *rēgnum*, -ī, N.

**know** (of things), *scio*, *scire*, *scīvī*, *scitum*; *nōsco*, *nōscere*, *nōvī*, *nōtum*; (become acquainted with), *cōgnōsco*, -*gnōscere*, -*gnōvī*, -*gnōtum*; (not to know), *nescio*, -*scire*, -*scīvī* or -*scīi*, -*scitum*; *ignorō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (understand), *intellēgo*, -lēgere, -lēxī, -lectum.

**knowledge**, *scientia*, -ae, F.

## L.

**Labienus**, *Lābiēnus*, -ī, M.

**Lacedaemonian**, *Lācēdaemōnius*, -a, -um (adj.).

**lake**, *lāeus*, -ūs, M. (174. 2).

**lame**, *claudus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**land** (a country), *terra*, -ae, F.; (native land), *pātria*, -ae, F.; (by — and sea), *terrā mārīque*.

**language**, *lingua*, -ae, F.

**large**, *māgnus*, -a, -um (adj.); *amplus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**last**, *ultimus*, -a, -um (150. 1); (nearest, as last night), *prōximus*, -a, -um (150. 1); (most remote), *extrēmus*, -a, -um (150. 2); (at last), *dēmum* (adv.).

**Latin**, *Lātīnus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**law** (statute), *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.

**lawful**, *justus*, -a, -um (adj.); (it is —), *licet* (314. 2); *fās* (indecl.).

**lay before**, *prōpono*, -ponere, -pōsui, -pōsitum.

**lay down** (place), *pōno*, *pōnere*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*; — arms, *ab armīs discēdo*, -ēre, -cēssī, -cessum; *lay waste*, *vasto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**lead**, *dūco*, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *dūctum*; (over), *trānsdūco*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum; (out or from), *ēdūco*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum.

**leader**, *dux, dūcis, c.*  
**leap**, *sālio, -āre, -āvi, or -āvi, -tum*;  
 (over), *transālio, -sālire, -sāliū,*  
 no p.p.  
**learn**, *disco, discere, didicī, no*  
 p.p.; *cōgnōsco, -gnōscere, -gnōvi,*  
*-gnitum.*  
**learned**, *doctus, -a, -um.*  
**leave**, *rēlinquo, -linquere, -liqui,*  
*-lictum.*  
**legate**, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*  
**legion**, *lēgiō, -ōnis, F.*  
**less** (adj.), *minor, -us* (adj.); adv.,  
*minus.*  
**lest**, *nē, etc.* (see 321 and 322).  
**let**, *permitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-*  
*sum*; *sino, sinere, sivi, situm*;  
 in commands and prohibi-  
 tions (278).  
**letter** (of alphabet), *littera, -ae, F.*;  
 (an epistle), *litterae, -arum, F.*;  
 pl., or *epistula, -ae, F.*  
**levy**, *cōscribo, -scribere, -scripsi,*  
*-scriptum.*  
**liberate**, *libero, -āre, -āvi, -atum.*  
**liberty**, *libertās, -ātis, F.*  
**lie**, *jūcco, -ere, -uī, -itum*; (speak  
 falsely), *mentior, -iri, -itus sum*  
 (dep.).  
**lieutenant**, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*  
**life**, *vita, -ae, F.* (with reference  
 to its several stages, as boy-  
 hood, youth, etc.), *actās, -ātis,*  
*F.*; (manner of living), *victus,*  
*ūs, M.*  
**light**, *lūx, lūcis, F.*; (be light),  
*lūceo, lūcere, lūxi, no p.p.*;  
 light, *lēvis, -e* (adj.).  
**lightning** (flash of), *fulgur, -ūris*;  
 (stroke of), *fulmen, -inis, N.*  
**like**, *similis, -e* (adj.).  
**limb**, *artus, -ūs, M.*  
**line** (of battle), *aciēs, -ēi, F.*  
**lion**, *leo, -ōnis, M.*  
**literature**, *litterae, -arum, F.* (pl.).  
**live**, *vivo, vivere, vixi, victum*;  
 (dwell), *habito, -āre, -āvī,*  
*-atum.*

**lofty**, *excessus, -a, -um* (adj.);  
 (for a long time), *diū* (adv.).  
**long**, *longus, -a, -um.*  
**look at**, *specto, -āre, -āvi, -atum, or*  
*aspicio, -ere, -exi, -ectum.*  
**lose**, *amitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.*  
**love**, *āmo, -āre, -āvi, -atum*; (like,  
 esteem), *diligō, -ligere, -lexi,*  
*-lectum*; (subst.), *āmor, -ōris,*  
*M.*

M.

**make**, *fācio, fācere, feci, factum*;  
 (a magistrate), *creo, -āre, -āvi,*  
*-atum*; (war upon), *infēco, in-*  
*ferre, intūli, illatum*; (cloak),  
*cōficio, ficere, feci, factum*;  
 (attack), *aggredior, -gredi,*  
*-gressus sum.*  
**maker**, *fāber, -brī, M.*  
**man**, *vir, viri, M.* (an adult male  
 person, opp. to *mūlier, wo-*  
*man*); *hōmo, -inis, c.* (a hu-  
 man being).  
**maniple**, *mānipūlus, -ī, N.*  
**many**, *multi, -ae, -a* (adj.).  
**march**, *iter, itinēris, N.* (subst.);  
 (verb), *iter fācio, fācere, feci,*  
*factum.*  
**marry** (of the man), *uxōrem*  
*dūco, dūcere, dūxi, ductum*;  
 (of the woman), *virō nūbo,*  
*nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum.*  
**master** (of boys), *māgister, -trī*;  
 (of slaves), *dōmīnus, -ī, M.*  
**may**, *licet, licere, licuit or licitum*  
*est* (impers., 314. 2); *possum,*  
*posse, potui* (293. 2); in final  
 clause, *ut*; of wish (278).  
**May** (month of), *Māius, -a, -um*  
 (adj.). (*mensis* being under-  
 stood).  
**measure**, *mētor, mētrī, mensus*  
*sum* (dep.).  
**meet** (death), *obeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.*  
**memory**, *mēmōria, -ae, F.*  
**men** (with poss. pron.), omitted,  
 as our —, *nōstrī, -ōrum, M.*

**merchant**, *mercator*, -ōris, M.  
**messenger**, *uultius*, -ī, M.  
**midday**, *meridies*, -eī, M.  
**midnight**, *medīa nox*.  
**midst of, in**, *medius*, -a, -um.  
**might**, see **may**.  
**migrate**, *mīgro*, -āre, -āre, -ātum.  
**mile**, *mille passuum*.  
**Miletus**, *Milētus*, -ī, F.  
**military affairs**, *res militaris*.  
**mind**, *ānīmus*, -ī, M.  
**mine**, *meus*, -a, -um.  
**mistaken, be**, *erro*, -āre, -āre, -ātum; *fallor*, *falli*, *falsum* (pass. of *fallō*).  
**money**, *pecūnia*, -ae, F.  
**monster**, *monstrum*, -ī, N.  
**month**, *mensis*, -is, M.  
**moon**, *lūna*, -ae, F.  
**more** (sign of comp. degree), *magis*; (of quantity), *plus* (with expressions of number), *anplius*.  
**morrow** (on the), *postērō diē*.  
**most** (sign of superl. degree), *maximē*.  
**mother**, *māter*, *mātris*, F.  
**mountain**, *mōns*, -tis, M.  
**mourn**, *lūgeo*, *lūgere*, *lūxi*, *luctum*.  
**move**, *mōueo*, *mōuere*, *mōuī*, *mōtum*.  
**music**, *mūsica*, -ae, F.  
**must**, *oportet*, or gerundive (286).  
**my**, *meus*, -a, -um.  
**myself**, *egomet* (230. 1); *ipse*, -a, -um; agreeing with *ego*, expressed or understood.

## N.

**name**, *nōmen*, -īnis, N.  
**narrow**, *angustus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**naturally**, *nātūrā* (abl.).  
**nature**, *nātūra*, -ae, F.  
**near**, *prope*, *ad* (prep. with acc.).  
**nearest**, *proximus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**need**, *opus* (308. Obs. 2); *ēgeo* (*indigeo*), -ēre, -uī, no p.p. (308. Obs. 1).

**neither** (of two), *uterque*, -tra, -trum; *neither . . . nor*, *neque . . . neque* (205. 1).  
**never**, *numquam* (adv.).  
**nevertheless**, *nikilominus* (adv.); *tāmen* (conj.).  
**new** (opp. to *antiquus*), *novus*, -a, -um; *fresh* (opp. to *vetus*), *recens*, -entis; *news*, *nuntius*, -a, -um; *nuntium mittere*, to send word; or *aliquid nōuī*.  
**next**, *proximus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**night**, *nox*, *noctis*, F.; *by night*, *noctū*.  
**no**, adj., *nullus*, -a, -um; *no one*, *nēmō*, -inis (for gen. *nullius* is used).  
**noble**, *dēcorus*, -a, -um; *nōbilis*, -e (adj.).  
**none**, *nullus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**nor**, *neque*, *ne*, (conj.); *neither . . . nor*, *nec . . . nec* (*neque*) (205. 1).  
**not**, *nōn* (adv.); *hauit*, used with adverbs and with *scio*; *nōnne*, interrog. particle; that . . . not (in final, hortatory, imperative, and optative clauses), *nē*.  
**nothing**, *nihil*, N. (indecl.).  
**nourish**, *nūtrio*, -īri, -īri, -ītum; *ālo*, -ēre, -uī, *ālūtum* and *altum*.  
**now**, *nunc* (adv.).  
**nowhere**, *nusquam* (adv.).  
**number**, *numerus*, -ī, M.  
**Numitor**, *Nūmītor*, -ōris, M.

## O.

**oak-tree**, *quercus*, -ūs, F.  
**obey**, *pāreo*, -ēre, -uī, no p.p.; *obēdio*, -īre, -īri or -īri, -ītum.  
**object**, *obsto*, -stāre, -stāri, -stātum.  
**obtain**, *adīpīscor*, -īpīscī, -eptus sum (dep.); (possession), *pōtior*, -īri, -ītus sum, dep. (306. 2).  
**of**, gen. or abl. case; see 292; *ae* (prep. with abl.).

**often**, *saepe* (adv.).  
**old** (**man**), *sēnex, sēnis, m.*; (adj.), *graulis nātū; vētus, -ēris*.  
**older** (comp.), *māior nātū*.  
**on**, *in* (prep. with abl.); on this side, *citrā* (prep. with acc.); of time or instrument, abl.; — this account, *eō* (adv.) or *ob eam causam*; — the ground that, *quod*, conj. (332).  
**once** (for all), *sēmel*; — on a time, *ōlim*; (of time), abl.  
**one**, *ūnus, -a, -um*; gen. *-ius*; one . . . another, *ālius . . . ālius*; one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter*; no —, *nēmō, -inis*; any one, *quīvis*; one of two, *alter, -ēra, -ērum*; the — who, *is quī*; — by —, *singūli, -ae, -a*, (with nouns pl. in form but sing. in meaning, 213. 1), *ūnī, -ae, -a*.  
**only** (adv.), *tantum*; (altogether), *omnīnō* (adv.); if —, *dum* (conj.) with subj.  
**opinion**, *sententia, -ae, f.*  
**oppress**, *opprīmo, -primere, -pressi, -pressum*.  
**or** (conj.), *aut, vel* (205. 1).  
**orator**, *ōrātor, -ōris, m.*  
**order**, or **give orders**, *jūbeo, jūbere, jūssi, jūssum* (acc. and inf., 342. (2)); order special religious services, *supplicātiōnēs dēcerno, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum*; in order that or to, *ut*, see 321; (with comp.), *quō* (with subj., 321, Obs. 2).  
**other**, *ālius, -a, -ud, gen., -ius*; (of two), *alter, -tēra, -tērum*; with each —, *inter sē* or *sēsē*.  
**ought**, *dēbeo, -bēre, -buī, -bitum*; (or, see 286); *oportet, -ēre, -uit*, impers. (with acc. and inf. as subject, or with subst. subj. clause, 343. 3).  
**our**, *nōster, -tra, -trum*.  
**ourselves**, *ipsī*, with 1st person pl. of the verb; reflex., *nōs*.

**out of**, *ē, ex* (prep. with abl.).  
**outside of**, *extrā* (prep. with acc.).  
**over**, *sūper* (prep. with acc.).  
**own** (his, their, etc.), *suus, -a, -um*; (our —), *nōster, -tra, -trum*; (my —), *meus, -a, -um*; *prōprius, -a, -um*.  
**ox**, *bōs, bōtis, c.*

P.

**part**, *pars, -tis, f.*; or gen. (237).  
**pass**, *erigo, -igere, -ēgī, -actum*; — over, *trāseco, -ire, -ī, -itum*; — by, *practereō, -ire, -ī, -itum*.  
**patiently**, *patiēter* (adv.).  
**pay**, *pendo, pendere, pēpendi, pēsum*; (subst.), *mercēs, -cēdis, f.*  
**peace**, *pāx, pācis, f.*  
**people**, *pōpulus, -ī, m.*  
**perceive**, *sentio, sentire, sensī, sensum*; *ānimadverto, -ere, -it, -versum* (with acc.).  
**perform**, *fācio, fācere, fecī, factum*; *conficio, -ficere, feci, -fectum*; — duties, *fungor, fungi, functus sum, dep.* (306. 1.)  
**perish**, *pereo, -ire, -ī, no p.p.*  
**person**, see 290.  
**pine-tree**, *pīnus, -ūs* or *-ī, f.*  
**pity**, *misēret, misēre, misēruit* (314. 2); *misēcor, -eri, -eritus* or *-ertus* (315. 3).  
**place** (subst.), *lōcus, -ī, m.*; (verb), *pōno, pōnere, pōsuī, pōsitum*; place around, *circumdo, -dare, -dēdi, dātum*; take place, pass. of *gēro, gērere, gēssi, gēstum*.  
**plain**, *plānitēs, -ē, f.*  
**plan**, *constānno, -ī, n.*; (system), *rātiō, -ōnis, f.*  
**Plato**, *Platō, -ōnis, m.*  
**play**, *lūdo, -dere, -si, -sum*.  
**please** (give satisfaction), *plāceo, -ere, -uī, -itum* (dat.).  
**pleasing**, *acceptus, -a, -um* (adj.); *grātus, -a, -um* (adj.).



pleasure, *vōluptās, -ātis, F.*; with pleasure, *libenter* (adv.).  
 plough, *āro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; (noun), *ārātrum, -ī, N.*  
 Po, *Pādnus, -ī, M.*  
 poet, *pōeta, -ae, M.*  
 point out, *maestro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 Pompey, *Pompēius, -ī, M.*  
 poor, *paup̄er, -eris* (adj.).  
 possession, obtain, *pōtior, -irī, -itus sum* (306. 2).  
 postman, *tābellārius, -ī, M.*  
 power (in . . . of), *pōnes* (prep. with acc.).  
 powerful, *pōtēns, -tis* (adj.).  
 praise (subst.), *laus, laudis, F.*; (act of praising), *laudātō, -ōnis, F.*; (verb), *laudo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 prefer (wish rather), *mālo, malle, māluī, no p.p.* (294); *antēpōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsitum* (with acc. and dat.); *praefēro, ferre, -fēlī, -fēlūm* (with dat.).  
 prepare, *pāra, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 present, be, *adsūm, -esse, -fui*; — at or in, *intersūm, -esse, -fui.*  
 preserve, *cōservo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 pretend, *simūlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *dissimūlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 prevent, *prōhibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum* (323. 1).  
 price, *prētium, -ī, N.*; 304.  
 prisoner of war, *captivus, -ī, M.*  
 produce, *frūgēs, -um, F.* (pl.); *fructus, -ūs, M.*  
 profit, *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui* (with dat., 203).  
 promise, *prōmissum, -ī, N.*; (verb), *prōmitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum*; *pollīcear, -licēri, -licētus sum.*  
 property, *bōna, -ōrum* (N. pl.).  
 prosper, *sēcundo, -āre, no perf., no p.p.*  
 protection, *praesidium, -ū, N.*  
 provided, *dum, dummodo* (327).

providence, *prōvidentia, -ae, F.*  
 province, *prōvincia, -ae, F.*  
 prowess, *virtūs, -ūtis, F.*  
 public thanksgiving, *supplicatō, -ōnis, F.*  
 punish, *pūnio, -ire, -irī, -itum.*  
 punishment (penalty), *poena, -ae, F.*; *supplicium, -ii, N.*  
 pupil, *discipulus, -ī, M.*  
 put (place), *pōno, pōnere, pōsui, pōsitum*; (— to flight), *in fugam cōiciō, -icēre, -jeci, -jectum.*

## Q.

quæstor, *quaestor, -ōris, M.*  
 queen, *rēgina, -ae, F.*  
 quiet, *quīctus, -a, -um* (adj.).

## R.

rapacious, *rāpār, -ācis* (adj.).  
 rapidly, *cēlērīter* (adv.).  
 rather (had), *mālo, malle, māluī, no p.p.* (294); *pōtius* (adv.); compar. (151, Obs. 1).  
 reach (come to), *vēnio, vēnīre, vēnī, ventum* (with in and acc.); *pervēnio, -rēnīre, -rēnī, -entum*.  
 read, *lēgo, lēgere, lēgī, lectum.*  
 receive, *accipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptum.*  
 recognize, *agnoseo, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōvum* (or *cōg-*).  
 recover (to —, intr.), *sē rēcipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptum*; *rēcipero* (*-cipēro*), *-āre, -āvī, -ātum*; — from disease, *convālēsco, -ēscere, -luī, no p.p.*  
 refresh, *rēficio, -ficere, fēcī, -fectum.*  
 reign, *rēgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; in the — of, ab. abs. (260).  
 rejoice, *gaudeo, gaudere, gāvīsus sum* (semi-dep., 283).  
 relate, *narro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 relying, *frictus, -a, -um* (248. 2, Obs. 3).

*prōculentiā, -ae, F.*  
*ōvinciā, -ae, F.*  
*tūs, -ūtis, F.*  
**giving, supplicātiō,**

*o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
**(penalty), poena,**  
*pplicium, -i, N.*  
*ilus, -i, M.*  
*pōno, pōnere, pōsui,*  
*(— to flight), in fū-*  
*o, -icēre, -jēci, -jectum.*

## Q.

*questor, -ōris, M.*  
*t, -ae, F.*  
*s, -a, -um (adj.).*

## R.

*āpār, -ācis (adj.).*  
*āter (adv.).*  
*mālo, malle, māluī,*  
**294**); *pōtius (adv.);*  
**151, Obs. 1).**  
**re to),** *rēno, rēnre,*  
*um (with in and acc.);*  
*-rēnre, -rēnī, -rentum.*  
*gēre, lēgī, lectum.*  
*cipio, -cipere, -cēpī,*  
*ignosco, -nōscere, -nōcī,*  
*r cōg-).*  
*—, intr.), sē rēcīpio,*  
*cēpī, -ceptum; rēcīpero*  
*-āre, -āvī, -ātum;*  
*disease, convālescō,*  
*ā, no p.p.*  
*ficio, -ficere, fēcī,*  
*-āre, -āvī, -ātum; in*  
*, ab. abs. (260).*  
*udeo, gaudere, gāvīsus*  
*ni-dep., 283).*  
*-āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
*tus, -a, -um (248 2,*

**remain (wait),** *māneo, mānere,*  
*mansī, mansum;* (stay behind),  
*rēmāneo, -ere, -mansī, -mansum.*  
**remember (call to mind),** *rēmīnis-*  
*cor, -iscē, on perf. (dep.); mēmī-*  
*uī, -isse (with gen. or acc., 313).*  
**remind, admōneo, -ere, -uī, -ūtum**  
 (with acc. pers. and gen. of  
 thing, also *dē* with abl.).  
**remove, aufēre, o, -ferre, -stāli,  
*ablātum; (— to a distance),*  
*rēmōreo, -ere, -vī, -tum (or ā-).*  
**render, reddo, -ere, -idi, -itum.****

**renew, rēdintēgro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.**  
**renowned, clārus, -a, -um (adj.).**  
**repent, poenitet, poenitēre, poenitu-**  
*it, no p.p. (impers.) (315.3 (3)).*

**reply, rēsponsum, -i, N.**

**report (noun), fāma, -ae, F.;**  
 (verb), *enuntio (or rē-), -āre,*  
*-āvī, -ātum; (divulge); rēfēro,*  
*-ferre, -tūli, lātum (report).*

**republic, rēs, rei, publica, -ae, F.**

**repulse, rēpello rēpellere, rēpūli,**  
*rēpulsum.*

**restrain, tempēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;**  
*coercco, -ere, -uī, -itum.*

**retreat, sē rēcīpio, -cipere, -cēpī,**  
*-ceptum; pēdem, rēfēro, -ferre,*  
*-tūli, -lātum.*

**return, rēvertor, -vertī, -versus sum**  
 dep. (intr.); *rēdeo, -ere, -ī,*  
*-itum (inst.); reddo, -dēre,*  
*-dīdi, -dītum (trans.).*

**revolution, nōvāe rēs, F. (pl.).**

**reward, praemium, -i, N.**

**Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, M.**

**rich, dives, divitīs (149.4).**

**rise, orior, orīrī or orī, ortus sum**  
 (dep.); *surgo, surgere, surrexi,*  
*surrectum.*

**river, flūvius, -i, M.; flūmen, -inis, N.**

**river-bank, rīpa, -ae, F.**

**road (traveled road), via, -ae, F.;**  
 (journey), *iter, itinēris, N.*

**rob, spōlio (or ex-), -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
 (with acc. and abl.).

**rock, saxum, -i, N.**

**roll, volvo, volvere, volvi, vōlūtum.**

**Roman, Rōmānus, -i, -um.**

**Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.**

**rugged, asper, -era, -erum (adj.).**

**rule, rēgo, -ere, rēxi, rēctum (acc.);**  
 (— the republic), *gēro, gērere,*  
*gessi, gestum; impēro, -āre, -āvī,*  
*-ātum (with dat.); prōsum, -esse,*  
*-fui, no p.p. (dat.).*

**run, curro, currere, cucurrī, cur-**  
*sum; (flee), fūgio, fūgere,*  
*fūgi, fūgitum.*

## S.

**sad, tristis, -e (adj.).**

**safe, salus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um**  
 (adj.).

**safety, salus, -ūtis, F.**

**sailor, nauta, -ae, M.**

**sake, for the, causā or grātiā**  
 (abl. followed by gen.).

**same, idem, eadem, idem.**

**satisfy, sātisfācio, -fācere, -fēcī,**  
*-factum (with dat.).*

**say, dico, dicere, dixī, dictum;**  
 (report), *fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum;*  
 (says he), *inquit* (placed after  
 one or more words of a direct  
 quotation).

**scholar, discipulus, -i, M.**

**school, lūdus, -i, M.**

**Scipio, Scipiō, -ōnis, M.**

**sea, māre, -is, N.**

**sea-shore, ora mārītīma.**

**seated, be, cōsido, -dēre, -sēdī,**  
*-sessum.*

**see, vīdeo, vīdere, vīdī, vīsum.**

**seek, pēto, pētēre, pētīvī pētītum;**  
*quaero, quaerere, quaesivī, quae-*  
*sītum.*

**seem, vīdeor, vīdērī, vīsus sum**  
 (pass. of *vīdeo*).

**seize (take possession of), occīpo,**  
*-āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

**select, dēligo, -ere, dēlegī, dēlectum.**

**self, ipse, -a, -um; (reflex. sē or**  
 pers. pron.).

- seli, vendo, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum;** be sold, *vēneo, -īre, -īītum*.
- senate, sēnātus, -ūs, M.**
- send, mītto, mīttēre, mīstī, mīssum;** (— forward), *praemitto, -ēre, -mīstī, -mīssum*.
- sense, sēnsus, -ūs, M.**
- September** (month of), *September, -bris -bre* (adj.) (*mensis* being understood).
- servant, servus, -ī, M.;** man servant, *fāmulus, -ī, M.;* maid servant, *ancilla, -ae, F.*
- serviceable, utilis, -e** (adj.).
- sesterce, sestertius, -ī, M.;** one thousand —, *sestertium, -ī, N.*
- set out, proficiscor, -ficiscī, -fectus sum, dep.**
- severe, grāvis, -e** (adj.).
- severely, grāviter** (adv.).
- shade, umbra, -ae, F.**
- shall, sign of fut. tense or subj.**
- sharp, acer, -eris, -ere** (adj.).
- she, see he.**
- sheep, ovis, -is, F.**
- ship, navis, -is, F.**
- shore, ora, -ae, F.;** (of the sea), *litus, -ōris, N.*
- short** (adj.), *brēvis, -e;* *parvus, -a, -um;* (scanty), *exiguus, -a, -um*.
- should** (implying duty), *oportet, -ēre, -uit* (impers.); otherwise by subj. (278, 326).
- shoulder, umērus, -ī, M.**
- show, monstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;** *ostendo, -ēre, -tendī, -tentum;* (subst.), *spēciēs, -ēī, F.*
- shudder, horrea, horrēre, no perf., no p.p.;** — at, *perhorresco, etc.*
- Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.**
- side, lātus, -eris, N.;** (on this —), *citra* (prep. with acc.); on all sides, *undique* (adv.).
- signal, signum, -ī, N.**
- silent, be, taceo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.**
- silver, argentum, -ī, N.**
- since, quōniā, cum, conj. (332);** abl. abs.
- singing, cantus, -ūs, M.**
- sister, soror, -ōris, F.**
- sit, sēdeo, scēdere, sēdī, sessum.**
- six, sex;** (six hundred), *sescenti, -ae, -a.*
- sixteen, sēdecim.**
- skilled, pēritus, -a, -um (148).**
- sky, caelum, -ī, N.**
- slaughter, cladēs, -is, F.**
- slave** (male), *servus, -ī, M.;* (female), *serva, -ae, F.*
- sleep, dormio, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītum.**
- small, parvus, -a, -um** (adj.).
- snow,nix, -ivis, F.**
- so, ita, sic** (adv.); (so great), *tantus, -a, -um;* (so many), *tot, tam;* *multi.*
- soldier, miles, -itīs, c.**
- some one, quādam, aliquis;** **some, aliquantum (236);** *nōnnulli;* (somebody), *quispiam;* (something), *aliquid;* see 237.
- some . . . other, alius . . . alius.**
- son, filius, -ī, M.**
- soon, mox** (adv.); *citō* (adv.).
- soul, animus, -ī, M.**
- sovereignty, regnum, -ī, N.**
- Spain, Hispania, -ae, F.**
- spare, parco, parcere, peperci;** no p.p.
- speak, loquor, loqui, locutus sum** (dep.); (of an orator), *dico, dicere, dixi, dictum.*
- spear, sagitta, -ae, F.**
- speech, oratio, -ōnis, F.**
- spring, ver, veris, N.**
- stable, stabilis, -e** (adj.).
- stand, sto, stare, stēti, stātum.**
- standard, signum, -ī, N.**
- star, stella, -ae, F.**
- state, civitas, -atis, F.;** *rēs publica,* gen.; *rei publicae, F.*
- stone, lapis, -idis, M.;** *saxum, -ī, N.*
- stork, cicōnia, -ae, F.**
- storm** (assault), *expugno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;* storm (noun), *tempestas, -atis, F.*
- story, fabula, -ae, F.**

**strange** (new), *nōvus*, -a, -um (adj.); (wonderful), *mīrus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**stream**, *rīvus*, -ī, M.

**strip**, *spōlio*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (abl.).

**strive** (to do a thing), *ītor*, *nīti*, *nīsus* or *nīxus*, dep.

**strong**, *vālidus*, -a, -um (adj.); *fīrmus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**strongly**, *vālidē*; *fīrmīter*; *fortīter* (adv.).

**study**, *stūdeo*, -ēre, -uī, no p.p.

**subdue**, *subīgo*, -īgēre, -ēgi, -actum.

**Suessiones**, *Suessiōnēs*, -um, M. (pl.).

**suitable** (fit), *aptus*, -a, -um (adj.); *īdōneus*, -a, -um, adj. with *ad* and acc., or with dat. (147. 1); also with rel. clause (324. 1).

**summer**, *aestās*, -ātis, F.; mid—, *mēdia aestās*.

**summon**, *vōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; or, *evōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**sun**, *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.

**sure**, *certus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**surrender** (noun), *dēditīō*, -ōnis, F.; (verb), *dēdo*, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum; *trādo*, -ēre, -dēdī, -dītum.

**surround**, *cingo*, *cingēre*, *cingī*, *cinctum*; *circumsto*, -stāre, -stētī, no p.p.; *circumeo*, -īre, -īī, -ītum.

**sustain**, *sustīneo*, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -te-ātum.

**swift** (rivers), *rāpidus*, -a, -um (adj.); (persons, etc.), *vēlōx*, -ōcis (adj.).

**swiftness**, *cēlēritās*, -ātis, F.

**swim**, *nāto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**sword**, *ferrum*, -ī, N.; *glādius*, -ī, M.

## T.

**take**, *cāpio*, *cāpēre*, *cēpī*, *captum*; (possession of), *occūpo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (place), passive of *gēro*, *gērēre*, *gēssi*, *gēstum*; (care), *cūro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**talent**, *talētum*, -ī, N.; (ability), *īngēnium*, -ī, N.

**teach**, *dōceo*, -ēre, -uī, -tum, with two acc. (185).

**teacher**, *doctor*, -ōris, M.; *māgister*, -trī, M.

**tell**, *narro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *dico*, *dicēre*, *dixi*, *dictum*.

**temper**, *ānīmus*, -ī, M.

**ten**, *dēcem*.

**tenacious**, *tēnāx*, -ācis (adj.).

**tenth**, *dēcimus*, -a, -um (num. adj.).

**Tarentine**, *Tārentīnus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**territory or territories**, *finēs*, -ium, M. (pl.).

**than**, *quam*, or abl. case (143).

**that**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (234); *is*, *ea*, *id* (238); *iste*, *ista*, *istud* (234 and 235, Obs. 1); (rel.) *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (240); (in final clauses), *ut* (*utī*) (321); (with comp.), *quō* (321, Obs. 2); — not, *nē* (Obs. before 321); (in consecutive clauses) (322); (after negatives, etc.), *quīn* (323, Obs. 2; 321. 3); (after verbs of fearing), *nē* (321. 2); would — (278. 1 (1)) (321 and 322).

**theatre**, *theātrum*, -ī, N.

**their** (referring to subject), *suus*, -a, -um; *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*; (of them, of these), gen. pl. of *is* (238); omitted when implied from context and not emphatic.

**themselves**, *ipsī*, -ae, -a (intens., 238. 3); (reflex., *suī*, *sibi*, *se* or *sēsē*), (230).

**then** (of time), *tum* (adv.); (secondly), *deinde* (adv.); *tunc* (adv.).

**there**, *ibi*, *illic* (adv.); (thither), *eō* (adv.); (there is), *est*; (is there), *estne*; (there are some), see 324.

**therefore**, *itāque*, *īgītur* (usually following the first word of the sentence).

- these**, see **this**; (these things), *haec* (234).
- they**, see **he**; dat. pl. of the, demon. (288).
- thick**, *densus*, -a, -um; (wall), *latus*, -a, -um.
- thing**, *res, rei*, F.; neut. sing. adj. (83. 4).
- think**, *pūto*, -āre, -āri, -ātum; (form an idea), *cogito*, -āre, -āri, -atum; (judge), *judico*, -āre, -āri, -atum; (as a view, be sensible of), *sentio*, -īre, -sī, -sum; (estimate, or an official opinion as a senator), *censco*, -īre, -ni, -um; (an individual opinion), *opinor*, -āri, -ātus sum, dep.
- third**, *tertius*, -a, -um (ord. num. adj.).
- thirst** (noun), *sitis*, -is, F.; (verb), *sitio*, -āre, -iri or -i, no p.p.
- thirteen**, *tridēcim*.
- this**, *hic, haec, hoc* (234); something to be mentioned, *ille, illa, illud*.
- this side of**, *citra* (prep. with acc.).
- thoroughly**, *prōbē* (adv.).
- those**, *illi*, -ae, -a (234), anteced. of rel., pl. of *is*; these . . . those, *hi* . . . *illi*.
- though**, *quāmvis* (331); *licet* (331); even — (*d* before 331).
- thousand**, *mille* (213. 2).
- three**, *trēs, tria* (num. adj.).
- through**, *per* (prep. with acc.); (cause), *abl*.
- throw**, *jūcio, jūcere, jēci, jectum*; — to, *adicio*, -ere, -jēci, -jectum.
- Tiber**, *Tiberis*, -is, M.; (acc. -im).
- time**, *tempus*, -ōris, N.; (season), *tempētās*, -ātis, F.; (times), num. adv.
- timid**, *timidus*, -a, -um (adj.).
- Titus**, *Titus*, -i, M.
- to** (of motion), *ad*, or *in*, prep. with acc. (200. 3); (of relation), dat., or by the infin. before a verb; denoting purpose (321, and Obs. 2 and 3).
- to-day**, *hōdiē* (adv.).
- together** (in company with), *una* (adv.); (at once), *simul* (adv.).
- to-morrow**, *eras* (adv.).
- top** (*of*), *summus*, -a, -um (adj.).
- towards**, *ad* (prep. with acc.); (of time), *sub* (prep. with acc., or abl.); (into or against), *in* (with acc.).
- tower**, *turris*, -is, F.
- town**, *oppidum*, -i, N.
- train**, *exercito*, -īre, -ni, -atum.
- transfer**, *trānsfēro*, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum.
- treachery**, *prōditio*, -ōnis, F.
- treason**, *prōditio*, -ōnis, F.
- treat**, *āgo, āgere, ēgi, actum*.
- tremble**, *contrēmisco*, -iscere, -mui.
- tribune**, *tribūnus*, -i, M.
- tribuneship**, *tribūnātus*, -ūs, M.
- tribute**, *stipendium*, -i, N.
- triumph**, *triumpho*, -āre, -āri, -ātum; (noun), *triumphus*, -i, M.
- troops**, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F. (pl.).
- troublesome**, *molestus*, -a, -um (adj.).
- true**, *vērns*, -a, -um (adj.).
- trust**, *crēdo*, -dere, -didi, -ditum; *fido*, -dere, -fisis sum (semi-dep., 283).
- truth** (true things), *vēra*, N. (pl.), *vērītās*, -ātis, F.
- tumult**, *tūmultus*, -ūs, M.
- turn** (verb), *verto, vertēre, verti, ver-sum*; (adv., by turn), *invicem*.
- Tuscans**, *Tuscī*, -ōrum, M. (pl.).
- two**, *duo*, -ae, -o (num. adj.); (with nouns pl. in form, but sing. in meaning), *binī*, -ae, -a (213. 3).

## U.

- uncertain**, *incertus*, -a, -um (adj.).
- under**, *sub* (with verbs of motion) with acc.; (with verbs of rest) with abl., or see 259.

**understanding**, *intellectus*, -ūs, M.

**undertake**, *suscipio*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.

**undertaking**, *inceptum*, -ī, N.; (work), *opus*, -eris, N.

**unequal**, *impar*, -āris (adj.).

**unfriendly**, *inimicus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**unless**, *nisi* (conj.; with subj. 326).

**unlike**, *dissimilis*, -e (adj.).

**until** (= up to), *ad*, prep. with acc.; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, conj. (334); (before), *antēquam*, *priusquam*, (336).

**unwilling**, *be*, *nōlo*, *nolle*, *nōlū* (294).

**unwilling**, *inuitus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**unworthy**, *indignus*, -a, -um (307). Obs. 4).

**upon**, *in*, *sūper* (200); or see verb or other word of a phrase, as *wait for*; see **wait**.

**us**, objective of **we**, see 229. 1; 278.

**use** (verb), *utor*, *ūti*, *ūsus sum* dep. (306. 1); (nom), *ūsus*, -ūs, M.; to — force, *vim facere*.

## V.

**valor**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.

**value**, *aestimo*, -āre, -āci, -ātum; *existimo*, -āre, -āci, -ātum; (nom), *pretium*, -ī, N.

**Verres**, *errēs*, -is, M.

**very** (superlative degree); *valdē* (adv.); *magnōpere* (adv.); — easily (after neg.), *sātis commōdē*; (self), see 238, 239, Ex. 3.

**vessel**, *nāvis*, -is, F.; *vās*, *vāsīs*, N.

**vexed at, be**, *pīget*, *pīgere*, *pīguit* and *pīguitum est* (impers., 314).

**victory**, *victōria*, -ae, F.

**villa**, *villa*, -ae, F.

**Volsinii**, *Volsinī*, -ōrum.

**vulture**, *vultur*, -ūris, M.

## W.

**wage**, *gero*, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*; (upon or against), *infero*, *inferre*, *intūli*, *illātum* (with dat. and acc.).

**wait**, — for, *expecto*, -āre, -āci, -ātum; (remain), *māneo*, *mānere*, *mansī*, *mansum*.

**walk**, or take a walk, *ambulo*, -āre, -āci, -ātum.

**wall** (general term), *mūrus*, -ī, M.; (of a city), *moenia*, -iūm, N;

(pl.); (of a house), *pariēs*, -ētis, M.; (rampart about a camp), *vallum*, -ī, N.

**wander**, *erro*, -āre, -āci, -ātum; (about), *rāgor*, -āci, -ātus sum (dep.).

**want**, *cāreo*, -ēre, -nī, -ātum; (to be wanting), *dēsum*, -esse, -fui.

**war**, *bellum*, -ī, N.; (wage — against), *infero*, *inferre*, *intūli*, *illātum*; (in —), *belli* (271. 1).

**warn**, *mōneo*, -āre, -āci, -ātum.

**waste, lay**, *casto*, -āre, -āci, -ātum; *pōpūlor*, -āri, -ātus sum, dep.

**watch**, *vigilia*, -ae, F.; — men, *vigiliae*, -ārum, M.; (verb), *vigilo*, -āre, -āci, -ātum.

**water**, *āqua*, -ae, F.

**wave**, *fluctus*, -ūs, M.

**way**, *via*, -ae, F.

**we**, *nōs*, see I.

**weak, grow**, *linguēscō*, -nēscere, -nī (no p.p.).

**weapon**, *telum*, -ī, N.

**wearied**, *fessus*, -a, -um; (be weary, pained), (verb), *taedet*, *taedere*, *taeduit* or *taesum est* impers. (314).

**weeping**, *flēns*, *flentis* (pres. part.)

**well**, *bene* (adv.); (adj., in good health), *sānus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**went**, see **go**.

**what**, interrog., *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (adj.) and *quid* (subst.); — rel., *id quod*; see 240 and 245.

**whatever**, *quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque* (indef. rel. pron.); any —, *quivis, quaevis, quodvis* (adj.), and *quidvis* (subst.) indef. pron.

**what o'clock**, *quāta hōra*.

**when**, *cum* (338 and 339), *ubi* (or an appositive) ; or 259 ; (when?) , *quando?* (adv.), *postquam, postea*, etc. (233).

**where**, *ubi* (interrog. & rel. adv.).  
**wherefore**, *quamobrem, quare, unde*.

**whether**, *num, nē* (91. 1, a, b, c).

**which** (of two), *uter* ; (rel.), see **who**.

**while**, *dum* (334).

**white**, *albus, -a, -um* (adj.).

**who** (which), relative, *qui, quae, quod* (321, 324) ; **who** (what), interrog., *quis (quī), quae, quod (quid)* (245).

**whoever**, *quicumque*, (adj.) *quaecumque, quodcumque* (indef. rel. pron.) ; — you please, *quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet*, and (subst.), *quidlibet*, indef. pron.

**whose**, rel., see **who**.

**why**, *cūr* (adv.) ; *quid* (neut. acc. used adv.) ; (for what reason), *quā dē causā*.

**wide**, *lātus, -a, -um* (adj.).

**will**, *vōlo*, or (subj. or sign of future tense) ; (noun), *vōluntās, -ātis, F.* ; *testāmentum, -ī, N.*

**wind**, *ventus, -ī, M.*

**winter**, *hiems, -is, F.* ; (winter quarters), *hiberna, -ōrum, N.* (pl.) (to winter or pass —), *hiemo, -āre, -āri, -ātum*.

**wise**, *sāpiēns, -ntis* (adj.).

**wish**, *vōlo, velle, vōlū* (no p.p., 294) ; (— well to), *cūpio, -ēre, -īri, -itum* (with dat.).

**with**, abl. case (309) ; (in company —), *cum* (prep., 81. Obs., or 259) ; — each other, *inter sē* or *sēsē*.

**within**, *intrā* (prep. with acc.) ; sign of abl. of time (196).

**without**, *sine* (prep. with abl.) ; or 261. N. 5 (with partic. noun after neg. expressions) *quān* (323. 2).

**wolf**, *lūpus, -ī, M.*

**woman**, *mūlier, mūliēris, F.*

**wood** (forest), *silva, -ae, F.* ; (fuel), *lignum, -ī, N.* ; (building-wood), *māteria, -ae, F.*

**worthy**, *dignus, -a, -um* (adj., 307. Obs. 4) ; with rel. clause with subj. (324. 1).

**would** (subj.), *would that*, 278, 326), *utinam*.

**wound**, *vulnēro, -āre, -āri, -ātum* ; (noun), *vulnus, -eris, N.*

**write**, *scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum*.

## Y.

**year**, *annus, -ī, M.* ; (be in the year, to be — old), *annum — āgo, āgēre, ēgi, actum* ; the — after, *annō post* (307. Obs. 6).

**yearly**, *quōtannis* (adv.).

**yes**, repeat the verb with or without *etiam, verum*, etc. (347).

**yesterday**, *hērī*.

**yet** (nevertheless), *tāmen* ; (not yet), *nōndum* (adv.).

**you**, sing., *tū* ; pl., *vōs* ; to — (i.e. where you are), *istū, c.* (adv.).

**your**, sing., *tuus, -a, -um* ; (of more than one), *vester, -tra, -trum*.

**yourself**, *tuī, tibi, tē*, pers. pron. used, reflex (230 and 1).

**youth** (young man), *ādūlescēns, -entis, c.* ; *iūvēnis, -is, c.* ; (younger), *mīnor nātū* (adj.) ; (abst. n.), *ādūlescēntia, -ae, F.*

## Z.

**Zeno**, *Zēnō, -ōnis, M.*

## LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

### Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.

For Schools and Colleges. Founded on comparative grammar, revised and enlarged by JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH assisted by GEORGE L. KITTRIDGE, Professors in Harvard University. Copyright Edition of 1888. 12mo. Half leather. xiii + 488 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.30. For introduction, \$1.20. Allowance for an old book in exchange, 40 cents.

TO issue a new edition of such a book as this Latin Grammar was in a sense venturesome, for the book as it stood was giving excellent satisfaction. The hearty welcome accorded the revision has shown, however, that a great advance has been made where improvement was not generally considered possible.

The aim was nothing less than this, — to make the grammar as *perfect as such a book possibly can be*. The latest conclusions of sound scholarship are presented, and everything is put in the best form for use.

Some of the features of the new edition are its constant regard for the needs of the class-room; its combining scientific accuracy with clearness and simplicity of statement; the intelligibility and quotableness of the rules, secured without concessions to mechanical ways of treating grammar; the addition of much new matter of great value; the marking of all long vowels; the increase of the number of illustrative examples; the numerous cross references; the excellence of the typography; and the indexes, glossary, list of authors, and list of rules.

In short, "the best has been made better."

#### A FEW REPRESENTATIVE OPINIONS.

**Tracy Peck, Prof. of Latin, Yale University:** The steady advances in Latin scholarship during the last decade, and the more practical exactions of the class-room, seem to me to be here amply recognized. At several points I notice that the essential facts of the language are stated with greater clearness, and that there is

a richer suggestiveness as to the rationale of constructions. The book will thus be of quicker service to younger students, and a better equipment and stimulus to teachers and more advanced scholars.

**John K. Lord, Prof. of Latin, Dartmouth College, Hanover, N.H.:** It



is a great advance upon the former edition. Degrees of excellence are difficult to estimate, but it is safe to say the grammar is doubled in value. It has gained very much that was lacking before by way of illustration, and especially in fulness and clearness of statement. It represents the latest results of classical scholarship in a way that is intelligible to young students.

**Harold N. Fowler**, *Instructor in Latin, Phillips Exeter Academy*: Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar has always been the most scientific Latin grammar published in the United States. The new edition has been revised in such a way as to retain the excellence of its predecessors and embody the results of the latest researches. . . . The new edition is also greatly superior to the earlier ones in clearness of expression and in the arrangement and appearance of the printed page. . . . In short, the book seems to me admirably adapted for use in schools and colleges, containing as it does all that the college youth needs, expressed in language which the school-boy can understand.

**John Tetlow**, *Head Master of Girls' High and Latin Schools, Boston*: The changes, whether in the direction of simplification, correction, or addition—and there are numerous instances of each kind of change—seem to me distinctly to have improved a book which was already excellent.

**William C. Collar**, *Head Master of Roxbury Latin School, Boston*: Up to the present moment I have been obliged to limit my examination of the revised edition of Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar mainly to the Syntax, but for that I have only words of the heartiest praise.

So far, its superiority to other Latin grammars for school use seems to me incontestable. I am also struck with the skill with which a multitude of additions and improvements have been wrought into this edition, without materially affecting the unity or symmetry of the original work.

**Franklin A. Dakin**, *Teacher of Latin, St. Johnsbury Academy, Vt.*: During seven years' constant use in the class-room, I have always regarded the Allen & Greenough as the best of the school grammars. . . . The improvements make the superiority more marked than ever.

**D. W. Abercrombie**, *Prin. of Worcester (Mass.) Academy*: In my opinion, it has no equal among books on the same subject intended for use in secondary schools.

**J. W. Scudder**, *Teacher of Latin, Albany Academy, N. Y.*: The changes will commend themselves to all good teachers. The grammar is now scholarly and up to the times. It is by far the best grammar published in America for school work.

**W. B. Owen**, *Prof. of Latin, Lafayette College, Easton, Pa.*: I am much pleased with the changes. They are all improvements.

**George W. Harper**, *Prin. of Woodward High School, Cincinnati, O.*: I thought Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar could hardly be surpassed, but the revised edition is a decided improvement.

**Lucius Heritage**, *Prof. of Latin, University of Wisconsin, Madison, Wis.*: We have long used the old edition here: the new edition I have examined with some care in the form of the bound volume as well as in the proof-sheets. I think it the best manual grammar for our preparatory schools and colleges.

other Latin seems to me struck with multitude of editions, with the unity or work.

*Teacher of Academy, Vt.:* Instant use in always re-nough as the mmars. . . e the supen cver.

*Prin. of Wor-*  
In my opin-  
g books on  
d for use in

*er of Latin,*  
The changes  
s to all good  
is now schol-  
es. It is by  
published in  
.

*Latin, Lafay-*  
: I am much  
s. They are

*Prin. of Wood-*  
*scimati, O.:*  
ough's Latin  
be surpassed,  
is a decided

*of Latin,*  
*in, Madison,*  
used the old  
dition I have  
e in the form  
as well as in  
k it the best  
r preparatory

**D. Y. Comstock, Teacher of Latin, Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.:** Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar has, in my opinion, now attained a degree of excellence which not only places it in the front rank of manuals in this department intended for the practical use of students, but makes it *facile princeps* among its rivals. I observe many very marked improvements; the form of statement employed in the presentation of general principles, the increased number of examples (all good), the fuller treatment in many departments, — all these points mark a distinct advance and give a new worth to the book. We shall continue to use it in the academy. (Feb. 13, 1889.)

**F. W. Tilton, Prin. of High School, Newport, R.I.:** I have known the value of the older edition, and this is in many respects an improvement even upon that. . . . Another very important feature of the book is the clearness with which the principles are stated. (Jan. 24, 1889.)

**A. G. Hopkins, Prof. of Latin, Hamilton College, Clinton, N.Y.:** In its previous form I found it a most valuable book; but the new Grammar is a marked advance. In mechanical execution, in clearness and fulness, I do not see that it leaves anything to be desired. (Jan. 21, 1889.)

**A. E. Colgrove, Prof. of Latin, Allegheny College, Meadville, Pa.:** It is as near perfect as such a book can be. So far as my observation reaches, it is the most attractive Latin Grammar published. (Jan. 12, 1889.)

**C. L. Baker, Prof. of Latin, St. Lawrence University, Canton, N.Y.:** I most heartily agree that every change made in the book has been an improvement, and think the aim of the editors and publishers, viz., to

make as perfect a book as possible, has been realized fully. (Feb. 4, 1889.)

**J. O. Notestein, Prof. of Latin, Wooster University, Wooster, O.:** I am pleased with the changes and additions. . . . I think the new Grammar decidedly the best manual we have for Latin study. The new edition will be used with our next Freshman class. (Feb., 1889.)

**J. H. Kirkland, Prof. of Latin, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Tenn.:** So far as my examination has extended, I have been highly delighted with it, and have found it a decided advance over the old edition. The authors have succeeded in making a work at once full enough for all college purposes, and yet so lucid in expression and simple in arrangement that even the beginner may read and understand. (Jan. 29, 1889.)

**J. L. Lampson, Prof. of Latin, State Normal College, Nashville, Tenn.:** I like the new book very much. I am sure it will be the school Latin Grammar. (Feb. 8, 1889.)

**Walter Miller, Asst. Prof. of Latin, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Mich.:** It seems to be a most admirable piece of work now. (Jan. 29, 1889.)

**J. G. Pattengill, Prin. of High School, Ann Arbor, Mich.:** It seems to me that the revision has been thoroughly done, and that every change has been a real improvement and not simply a change.

**J. D. Crawford, Prof. of Ancient Languages, University of Illinois, Champaign, Ill.:** I counted the former edition the best Latin Grammar, and this new edition has many excellences not found in the old. I congratulate you on the perfection of the whole work. (Jan. 12, 1889.)

### The Beginner's Latin Book.

*Complete with Grammar, Exercises, Selections for Translation, and Vocabulary.*

By WM. C. COLLAR, A.M., Head Master Roxbury Latin School, and M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M., Principal Chauncy-Hall School, Boston. 12mo. Cloth. xii+283 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.10; for Introduction, \$1.00. Allowance for an old book in exchange, 35 cents.

THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and (to a less degree) for speaking Latin, and to effect this object by grounding the learner thoroughly in the elements through abundant and varied exercises on the forms and more important constructions of the language.

The idea determining and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin by the young learner must be more art than science, — more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

An effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin. Means to this end are the *colloquia* (simple Latin Dialogues), the choice of extracts for translation, introduced as early as possible, and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words and to the construction of the exercises.

This book can be completed and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and may be followed by any Latin Reader, by *Viri Romae*, or by *Nepos* or *Cæsar*.

It supplies, by means of the *Colloquia* and *Glossarium Grammaticum*, precisely the kind of help that teachers need who desire to make some practical use of Latin in oral teaching.

Over two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of *Cæsar's Gallic War*; little less than two-thirds to the vocabulary of *Nepos*.

The book is pronounced a well-nigh perfect combination of scholarship and teachableness. Only a very few testimonials are presented here.

**John Williams White**, *Harvard College*, Author of "First Lessons in Greek," etc.: It is at once symmetrical in arrangement, clear in statement, scholarly in execution, and sufficient in amount.

**F. A. Hill**, *Prin. of High School, Cambridge, Mass.*: It is working admirably.

**Charles G. Dodge**, *Teacher of Latin and Greek, High School, Salem, Mass.*: Last year The Beginner's Latin Book was introduced into our school. The class this year in Cæsar, which, it is true, is an excellent one, is doing more than double the work of any class since my connection with the school—seven years. Not only that, but it has a better understanding of constructions than any class which has studied Latin the same length of time. As the teachers are the same, the only explanation can be in the excellence of the class, and of the new method.

**M. S. Bartlett**, *High School, Haverhill, Mass.*: I am using it with a large class, and find it altogether the most satisfactory book that I know of for beginners in the study of Latin.

**John H. Peck**, *Prin. New Britain High School, New Britain, Conn.*: Yours of yesterday is received. I have taken one section of the class using Collar and Daniell's Latin Book myself through the year. I am free to say that I am perfectly satisfied with it; at least, I have never used a

beginner's Latin book that I liked nearly so well. I am confident that my assistant, who has also used it, is of the same opinion.

**H. P. Warren**, *Prin. of Boys' Academy, Albany, N. Y.*: It is the model book for beginners,—incomparably the best book we have tried.

**E. M. Jones**, *Head Master of William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, Pa.*: It seems to me the best introductory Latin book yet produced in this country.

**L. B. Hall**, *Associate Prof. of Latin, Oberlin College, O.*: I think it more satisfactory than anything else of the kind I have seen.

**H. S. Lehr**, *Pres. of Ohio Normal Univ., Ada*: We like it very much indeed. It saves us a term's work.

**Wallace P. Dick**, *Vice-Prin. Central State Normal School, Lock Haven, Pa.*: My class is improving rapidly. It is a superb little book.

**T. O. Deaderick**, *Prof. of Ancient Languages, Knoxville, Tenn.*: We are still using it with successful results. I must say that I have found it the most practical work of the kind, and the best in every respect that I have ever seen.

**W. W. Lambdin**, *Prin. of West End Academy, Atlanta, Ga.*: I am very much pleased with The Beginner's Latin Book, which I introduced at the beginning of the term.

### Latine Reddenda.

The English-Latin Exercises from *The Beginner's Latin Book*.  
With Glossarium Grammaticum. 12mo. 41 pages. Paper. Introd-  
uction and Mailing Price, 20 cents.  
With Glossarium Grammaticum and English-Latin Vocabulary. 12mo.  
58 pages. Cloth. Mailing Price, 33 cents; for introduction, 30 cents.

### New Latin Method.

A Manual of Instruction in Latin, on the basis of Allen & Greenough's Latin Method, prepared by J. H. ALLEN. 12mo. Cloth. 263 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.00; Introduction, 90 cents; Allowance, 30 cents.

A FULL year's course in Latin, which can be studied without the grammar. The book has been prepared from the point of view of the elementary class-room, and is specially valuable as an introduction to Cæsar, to Latin composition, and to sight-reading.

### Gradatim.

An easy Latin Translation book for beginners. By Heatley and Kingdon. Revised for American schools by W. C. COLLAR, Head Master of the Roxbury Latin School, Boston. 16mo. Cloth. viii + 139 pages. Mailing Price, 45 cents; Introduction, 40 cents.

IT is a charming reading book for young scholars, in easy but pure Latin, and may be used to precede Cæsar, or as a companion and supplement to the Beginner's Latin Book or its equivalent. The English edition has met with an enormous sale in England.

W. G. Lord, *Prin. of Rugby School*, | niche. My class is aroused to new  
*Covington, Ky.*: It filled just the | life by it. (Nov. 11, 1889.)

### First Steps in Latin.

By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.), recently Principal Brooklyn (N.Y.) High School, Author of *Critical History of Cicero's Epistulae ad Familiares*, *History of Rome*, *Latin Lessons*, *Greek Lessons*, etc. 12mo. Half-morocco. 518 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.25; for Introduction, \$1.12; allowance for an old book in exchange, 35 cents.

THE aim of this book is to furnish young pupils who are none too well equipped in English grammar a complete course in Latin for one year. It contains Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabulary, based on material drawn from Cæsar, with exercises for sight-reading, and a course of elementary Latin reading.

The review of English grammar at the beginning, and the frequent illustrative references to English forms and constructions are important features of this book. Special attention has been given to order and arrangement.

Charles Fish, *Prin. of High School*,  
*Brunswick, Me.*: In my judgment it  
is an admirable book for the first  
year in Latin, and ought to have a  
wide circulation. (March 29, 1886.)

C. M. Lowe, *Prof. of Latin*,  
*Heidelberg College, Tiffin, O.*: I welcome  
Leighton's First Steps in Latin as a  
full, clear, and systematic course for  
the first year. (April 14, 1886.)

Leighton's Latin Lessons.

By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.), formerly Principal of the Brooklyn (N.Y.) High School. Revised Edition, with full Vocabularies prepared by R. F. Pennell. 12mo. Half-morocco. xviii + 357 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.25; Introduction, \$1.12; Allowance, 35 cents.

**P**REPARED to accompany Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. Containing also references to the grammars of Andrews and Stoddard, Harkness, and Gildersleeve. A thoroughly approved text-book.

**W. C. Morey**, *Prof. of Latin, Rochester University*: I would especially recommend it and the Grammar as admirably calculated to facilitate the study of Latin for beginners.

**Merrill E. Gates**, *Pres. of Rutgers College*: I have used it with greater satisfaction than I have known in the use of any other book of exercises in Latin.

Tetlow's Inductive Latin Lessons.

By JOHN TETLOW, Principal Girls' High and Latin Schools, Boston. Illustrated. 12mo. Half-morocco. xi + 340 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.25; Introduction, \$1.12. Allowance for old book, 35 cents.

**T**HE particular attention of teachers is invited to these points: the strictly inductive method; the sentences for translation all drawn from classical authors; the adoption of reforms in Latin orthography; quantities carefully marked; early introduction of connected translation and of the study of word formation; the exact etymologies of the vocabulary; illustrations, etc.

**Moses Merrill**, *Head Master of Latin School, Boston, Mass.*: It brings to us the latest results of scholarship and scientific treatment in elementary Latin. The plan of the work is safe and practical.

Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Cæsar.

*A New Edition.* Designed to accompany a Grammar, and to prepare pupils for reading at sight. Adapted to Allen & Greenough's, Gildersleeve's, and Harkness' Grammars. By JAMES M. WHITON, formerly Principal of Williston Seminary. 18mo. Cloth. 107 pages. Mailing Price, 45 cents; Introduction, 40 cents. Allowance for old book, 15 cents.

**T**HE special object pursued is that early familiarity with the inflections and common concords of the Latin, which is at the foundation of all accurate scholarship. Everything for which a grammar needs to be consulted, *except the paradigms*, is put before the eye in connection with the lesson. The method is based upon a long and successful experience.

Allen & Greenough's New Cæsar.

*Seven Books. Illustrated. With six double-page colored maps.*

Edited by Prof. W. F. ALLEN, of the University of Wisconsin, J. H. ALLEN, of Cambridge, and H. P. JUDSON, Professor of History, University of Minnesota, with a special Vocabulary by Prof. J. B. GREENOUGH, of Harvard College. 12mo. xxvi + 543 pages, red edges, bound in half-morocco. Mailing Price, \$1.35; for introduction, \$1.25; Allowance for an old book in exchange, 40 cents.

**A**TTENTION is invited to these features, which, with other merits, have gained this edition an extraordinary success:—

1. The judicious **notes**,—their full grammatical references, crisp, idiomatic renderings, scholarly interpretations of difficult passages, clear treatment of indirect discourse, the helpful maps, diagrams, and pictures; in particular, the military notes, throwing light on the text, and giving life and reality to the narrative.

2. The **vocabulary**,—convenient, comprehensive, and scholarly, combining the benefits of the full lexicon with the advantages of the special vocabulary, and every way superior to the ordinary vocabulary.

3. The mechanical features of the volume, its clear type, convenient size and shape, superior paper, and attractive binding.

4. In general, **this edition represents the combined work of several specialists in different departments**, and so ought to excel an edition edited by any single scholar.

The Notes on the second book have just been rewritten to adapt them for those who begin Cæsar with this book. Full grammatical references have been given.

**Tracy Peck, Prof. of Latin, Yale College:** With quite unusual satisfaction I have noticed the beautiful paper and type; the carefully edited text; the truly helpful notes, which neither tend to deaden enthusiasm with superfluous grammar, nor blink real difficulties; the very valuable illustrations and remarks on the Roman military art; and the scholarly and stimulating vocabulary.

**John Tetlow, Prin. of Girls' High and Latin Schools, Boston:** The clear type, judicious annotation,

copious pictorial illustration, full explanation of terms and usages belonging to the military art, and excellent vocabulary, combine to make this edition easily first among the school editions of Cæsar.

**G. W. Shurtleff, Prof. of Latin, Oberlin (Ohio) College:** I do not hesitate to pronounce it the best edition I have ever seen.

**J. L. Lampson, Teacher of Latin, State Normal College, Nashville, Tenn.:** It is the best Cæsar published.

Allen & Greenough's New Cicero.*Thirteen Orations. Illustrated.*

Edited by Prof. W. F. ALLEN, of the University of Wisconsin, J. H. ALLEN, of Cambridge, and Prof. J. B. GREENOUGH, of Harvard University. With a special Vocabulary by Professor Greenough. 12mo. Half-morocco. xix + 670 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.40; for introduction, \$1.25; Allowance for an old book in exchange, 40 cents.

THIS edition includes **thirteen orations** arranged chronologically, and covering the entire public life of Cicero. The introductions connect the orations, and, with them, supply a complete historical study of this most interesting and eventful period. The Life of Cicero, List of his Writings, and Chronological Table will be found of great value. The **orations** are: Defence of Roscius, Impeachment of Verres (*The Plunder of Syracuse and Crucifixion of a Roman Citizen*), The Manilian Law, the four orations against Catiline, For Archias, For Sestius, For Milo, The Pardon of Marcellus, For Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic.

The notes have been thoroughly rewritten in the light of the most recent investigations and the best experience of the classroom. Topics of special importance, as, for instance, the Antiquities, are given full treatment in brief essays or excursions, printed in small type. References are given to the grammars of Allen & Greenough, Gildersleeve, and Harkness.

**A. E. Chase**, *Prin. of High School, Portland, Me.*: I am full better pleased with it than with the others of the series, although I thought those the best of the kind. (Oct. 28, 1886.)

**Alfred S. Roe**, *Prin. of High School, Worcester, Mass.*: It is the finest Cicero I have ever seen, and is worthy of the very highest praise.

**O. D. Robinson**, *Prin. of High School, Albany, N.Y.*: I find it a worthy companion, in every way, of its two predecessors, the Virgil and the Cæsar. I can say no more than

this in its praise, for I have already spoken sincerely, in almost unqualified terms, of these two books.

**John L. Lampson**, *Prof. of Latin, State Normal College, Nashville, Tenn.*: The text, in appearance and authority, is the best; the notes, ample, judicious, modern; the vocabulary is the best school-book vocabulary published.

**Lucius Heritage**, *Prof. of Latin, University of Wisconsin, Madison*: It is the best English edition of Cicero's orations for the use of schools that I have seen.

Allen & Greenough's Cicero. The Old Edition.

Eight Orations and Notes, with Vocabulary. Mailing Price, \$1.25; for introduction, \$1.12.



Greenough's Virgil.

Fully annotated, for School and College Use, by J. B. GREENOUGH, of Harvard University. Supplied in the following editions:—

	Mall. Price.	Intro. Price.	Allow. Old Book
Bucolics, and Six Books of Æneid, with Vocab. . . . .	\$1.75	\$1.60	\$0.40
Bucolics, and Six Books of Æneid, without Vocab. . . . .	1.25	1.12	
Bucolics, Georgics, and the Æneid complete, with Notes, . . . . .	1.75	1.60	
Georgics, and last Six Books of Æneid, with Notes . . . . .	1.25	1.12	
Vocabulary to Virgil's Complete Works . . . . .	1.10	1.00	
Complete Text of Virgil . . . . .	.85	.75	

**C**ONTAINING Life of the Poet, Introductions, a Synopsis preceding each Book, and an Index of Plants. Also full illustrations from ancient objects of art.

The text follows Ribbeck in the main, variations being noted in the margin; and the references are to Allen & Greenough's, Gildersleeve's, and Harkness's Latin Grammars.

**Tracy Peck, Prof. of Latin, Yale College:** The Vocabulary, both in plan and execution, is superior to any schoolbook vocabulary known to me.

**E. P. Crowell, Prof. of Latin, Amherst College:** In all respects a very scholarly and excellent edition.

**Jno. K. Lord, Prof. of Latin, Dartmouth College:** The best school edition of the works of Virgil with which I am acquainted.

**F. E. Lord, Prof. of Latin, Wellesley College:** There is an admirable richness and appropriateness to the notes.

Allen & Greenough's Preparatory Course of LatinProse.

Containing Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic War, and Eight Orations of Cicero. With Vocabulary by R. F. PENNELL. 12mo. Half morocco. 618 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.55; Introduction, \$1.40; Allowance for old book, 40 cents.

Allen & Greenough's Sallust.

The Conspiracy of Catiline as related by Sallust. With Introduction and Notes, explanatory and historical. 12mo. Cloth. 96 pages. Mailing Price, 65 cents; Introduction, 60 cents.

Allen & Greenough's De Senectute.

Cicero's Dialogue on Old Age. With Introduction (on the adoption in Rome of the Greek philosophy) and Notes. 12mo. Cloth. 67 pages. Mailing Price, 55 cents; Introduction, 50 cents.

J. GREENOUGH, of  
his:—

Full Price.	Intro. Price.	Allow. Old Book
.75	\$1.60	\$0.40
.25	1.12	
.75	1.60	
.25	1.12	
.10	1.00	
.85	.75	

ns, a Synopsis  
nts. Also full

being noted in  
Greenough's, Gil-

*f. of Latin, Dart-*  
e best school edi-  
Virgil with which

*of Latin, Welles-*  
is an admirable  
propriateness to the

### se of Latin

ight Orations of  
Half morocco.  
allowance for old

ith Introduction  
96 pages. Mail-

the adoption in  
cloth. 67 pages.

